

तमसो मा ज्योतिर्गमय

SANTINIKETAN  
VISWA BHARATI  
LIBRARY

D. B

942

F311 t











**THE TUTORIAL**  
**HISTORY OF ENGLAND**

## Text-Books on Modern History.

---

GROUNDWORK OF ENGLISH HISTORY. By M. E. CARTER,  
Honour School of Modern History, Oxford. 2s.

PRELIMINARY HISTORY OF ENGLAND. By M. S. ELLIOTT  
and M. K. ELLIOTT, B.A. 2s.

SCHOOL HISTORY OF ENGLAND. By M. E. CARTER. 3s. 6d.  
Also in Three Parts:—(1) To 1603, (2) 1485 to 1714, (3) 1660 to  
1910. 1s. 6d. each Part.

TUTORIAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND (To 1901). By C. S.  
FEARENSIDE, M.A. 4s. 6d.

This contains the text of the following three books.

EARLIER HISTORY OF ENGLAND (To 1485). With Bio-  
graphies, Maps, and Plans. By C. S. FEARENSIDE, M.A., and  
H. P. ADAMS, M.A. 2s. 6d.

MODERN HISTORY OF ENGLAND. With Biographies, Maps,  
and Plans. By C. S. FEARENSIDE, M.A.

PART I. From 1485 to 1714. 2s. 6d.

PART II. (*England since the Revolution.*) From 1688 to 1901  
(with a concise Introduction down to 1714). 2s. 6d.

The two Parts of *Modern History of England* may be had in one  
volume under the title of—

MATRICULATION MODERN HISTORY. 4s. 6d.

MAIN LANDMARKS OF EUROPEAN HISTORY. By F. N.  
DIXON, B.A. 2s.

"A capable sketch in which historical movements are indicated  
accurately and with vigour."—*Guardian*.

---

LONDON: W. B. CLIVE.

THE  
TUTORIAL HISTORY  
OF  
ENGLAND

BY

C. S. FEARENSIDE, M.A. OXON.

AUTHOR OF "THE INTERMEDIATE TEXT-BOOK OF ENGLISH HISTORY"  
"MATRICULATION MODERN HISTORY," ETC.

*Fourth Impression*



LONDON: W. B. CLIVE

University Tutorial Press Ltd

HIGH ST., NEW OXFORD ST., W.C.

1916



## PREFACE.

---

THIS book is mainly intended for use in the upper forms of schools. The term "English History" is therefore somewhat liberally interpreted, and considerable attention has been paid to international affairs and, in the later chapters, to colonial developments.

The principal features of the book may be summarised as follows. Great pains have been taken to observe due proportion in treating the several periods of our history, to indicate the general trend of events in each period before proceeding to a detailed narrative, and to facilitate problem-work by providing lists of topics in the chapter headings and by inserting numerous cross-references. These references are especially designed to make the story intelligible to those who are studying not the whole book but only special periods.

A large number of names and dates which could not well be omitted but with which it is unnecessary for the reader to burden his memory have been relegated to the genealogical and other tables. Some details, however, not intended for memorisation have been inserted in the text: the month-dates, for instance, in § 251 are added as the best means of conveying a definite impression of a rapid succession of important events. On the other hand, many names which have been wont to appear in books of this kind have been suppressed when they seemed to be incapable of serving any useful purpose: *e.g.* no attempt has been made to supply answers to such questions as "who killed William Rufus?" In short, the author has



selected and arranged his facts not for the student's *memory* but for his *understanding*; and he ventures to believe that educational and examinational considerations combine to render this course the only safe one to adopt in a short historical manual not intended for use by very young persons.

# MAPS AND PLANS.

## FULL-PAGE MAPS.

	PAGE
ROMAN BRITAIN . . . . .	4
THE ENGLISH CONQUEST OF SOUTH BRITAIN . . . . .	16
FRENCH TERRITORIES OF ENGLISH KINGS . . . . .	72
(a) HENRY II., c. 1181.                      (c) EDWARD III., 1360.	
(b) HENRY III., c. 1259.                      (d) HENRY VI., 1422-1453.	
ENGLAND UNDER THE LATER PLANTAGENETS . . . . .	92
FRANCE TOWARDS THE CLOSE OF THE MIDDLE AGES . . . . .	120
THE WORLD IN THE SIXTEENTH CENTURY . . . . .	170
SOUTH BRITAIN UNDER THE STUARTS . . . . .	228
THE SOUTHERN NETHERLANDS . . . . .	312
THE UNITED STATES OF NORTH AMERICA, 1783 . . . . .	368
EUROPE AT THE HEIGHT OF NAPOLEON'S POWER, 1812 . . . . .	406
SPAIN AND PORTUGAL DURING THE PENINSULAR WAR . . . . .	422
BRITISH DOMINIONS IN INDIA, 1837 . . . . .	454

## PLANS AND SMALL MAPS.

BATTLE OF CRECY . . . . .	130	BATTLE OF NASEBY . . . . .	267
BATTLE OF POICTIERS . . . . .	133	BATTLE OF BLENHEIM . . . . .	336
BATTLE OF AGINCOURT . . . . .	152	SIEGE OF QUEBEC . . . . .	379
BATTLE OF MARSTON MOOR . . . . .	264	BATTLE OF WATERLOO . . . . .	434
ENGLAND AS DIVIDED IN FIRST CIVIL WAR . . . . .			257
ENVIRONS OF SEBASTOPOL DURING THE CRIMEAN WAR . . . . .			474

# GENEALOGICAL AND OTHER TABLES.

## GENEALOGIES.

	PAGE
THE OLD ENGLISH KINGS: EUGERHIT TO EADWEARD CONFESSOR .	30
THE NORMAN DUKES . . . . .	31
THE NORMAN AND ANGEVIN KINGS . . . . .	42
THE FAMILY OF EARL GODWIN . . . . .	52
MERCIAN EARLS IN THE ELEVENTH CENTURY . . . . .	53
SCOTTISH KINGS . . . . .	108
FRENCH KINGS . . . . .	124
THE DESCENDANTS OF EDWARD III. . . . .	144
THE HOUSE OF NEVILLE . . . . .	169
THE ROYAL HOUSE OF TUDOR . . . . .	176
ANCESTORS AND DESCENDANTS OF THE EMPEROR CHARLES V. .	190
THE ROYAL HOUSE OF STUART . . . . .	280
THE SPANISH SUCCESSION: HAPSBURGS AND BOURBONS . .	332
THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK OR HANNOVER . . . . .	344

## SYNOPSSES.

CHIEF TEUTONIC SETTLEMENTS IN BRITAIN . . . . .	20
CHRISTIAN MISSIONS AMONG THE ENGLISH . . . . .	25
RAVAGES OF THE NORTHMEN . . . . .	32
CENTRIPETAL AND CENTRIFUGAL TENDENCIES IN ENGLAND . .	37
THE WARS OF THE ROSES . . . . .	158
THE GREAT CIVIL WAR . . . . .	258, 259
BRITISH COLONIES IN 1714 . . . . .	316
THE SEVEN YEARS' WAR: BRITISH ASPECTS . . . . .	372
THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION . . . . .	388

NOTE.—*These synopsis are intended not only to be useful in themselves but also to serve as models on which the student can construct for himself similar time charts of other notable periods and episodes.*

# CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## GENERAL INTRODUCTION.

	SECTIONS
The Sphere of History .. .. .	1
<i>Twelve Main Divisions of English History</i> .. .. .	3
<b>BOOK I.—BRITAIN BEFORE THE ENGLISH</b> .. .. .	15-16

### CHAPTER I.—EARLY BRITAIN.

<i>Prehistoric Britain, Palaeolithic and Neolithic</i> .. .. .	17
B.C. The Bronze Age and the "Kelts" .. .. .	19
<b>55, 54. The Invasions of Julius Caesar</b> .. .. .	21

### CHAPTER II.—ROMAN BRITAIN.

<b>43. Invasion of the Emperor Claudius</b> .. .. .	24
61. Rising of the Iceni under Boadicea .. .. .	25
<b>78-84. Governorship of Agricola</b> .. .. .	26
121. Hadrian's Wall .. .. .	27
<i>Material and Social Condition of Roman Britain</i> .. .. .	28
283?. Martyrdom of S. Alban .. .. .	30
<b>410. Roman Evacuation of Britain</b> .. .. .	29
<b>BOOK II.—THE MAKING OF ENGLAND, 410-979.</b> .. .. .	31-35

### CHAPTER III.—THE COMING OF THE ENGLISH.

446. "The Groans of the Britons" .. .. .	36
<b>449. Settlement of the Jutes in Kent</b> .. .. .	37
<b>577. The Saxon Settlements (477-584): B. of Deorham</b> .. .. .	39
<b>613. The Anglian Settlements (547-613): B. of Chester</b> .. .. .	40
<i>The Division of the Britons (Welsh) into Three Groups</i> .. .. .	41
<i>Institutions of the Heathen English</i> .. .. .	42

### CHAPTER IV.—THE CHRISTIANISATION OF THE ENGLISH.

#### (i) SUPREMACY OF NORTHUMBRIA, 593-685.

<b>597. Augustine's Mission to Kent</b> .. .. .	43
633. Penda defeats Eadwin at Heathfield .. .. .	44
642. Penda defeats Oswald at Maserfield .. .. .	45
655. Penda defeated by Oswiu at Winwidfield .. .. .	46
<b>664. Synod of Whitby</b> .. .. .	46
668. Theodore of Tarsus Archbishop of Canterbury .. .. .	47
<b>685. Egfrith defeated by the Picts at Nechtansmere</b> .. .. .	48
Early Northumbrian Writers: Cædmon, Cynewulf, Bæda .. .. .	49

#### (ii) SUPREMACY OF MERCIA, 685-825.

<b>757-796. Offa, King of the Mercians</b> .. .. .	52
--	----

## CHAPTER V.—THE COMING OF THE DANES.

(i) THE PERIOD OF PLUNDER, 787-855.	SECTIONS
<i>Main Stages in the Attacks of the Northmen</i> .. ..	53
836. Ecgbert, King of Wessax, 802-839: B. of Hengestesdun .	54
855. Æthelwulf, King, 839-858: Danes winter in Sheppey ..	55
(ii) THE PERIOD OF SETTLEMENT, 855-901	
858-878. Æthelbald, Æthelberht and Æthelred I. .. ..	56
878. Ælfred the Great, 871-901: Treaty of Wedmore ..	57
843. Union of the Picts and Scots under Kenneth McAlpine ..	60

## CHAPTER VI.—THE CONSOLIDATION OF THE ENGLISH.

(i) THE CONQUEST OF THE DANELAGH, 901-925.	
<i>Results of the Danish Settlements on English Social Life</i> ..	61
924. Eadweard the Elder, 901-925: The Scottish Homage ..	62
(ii) THE IMPERIAL CLAIMS OF WESSEX, 925-979.	
937. Æthelstan, King, 925-940: B. of Brunanburh .. ..	63
945. Eadmund, King, 940-946: Strathclyde granted to Scots King	63
966. Eadgar, King, 959-975: Lothian transferred to Scots King.	64
960-988. Dunstan, Archbishop; the Monastic Revival .. ..	65
<i>English Institutions in the Tenth Century</i> .. ..	66

## BOOK III.—ENGLAND UNDER FOREIGN KINGS, 979-1216. 68-75

## CHAPTER VII.—THE DANISH KINGS AND THE ENGLISH RESTORATION.

(i) THE RENEWAL OF DANISH INROADS, 980-1016.	
991. Æthelred the Unready and the Danes: B. of Maldon ..	76
1016. Eadmund Ironside: B. of Ashdown: Treaty of Alney ..	80
(ii) THREE DANISH KINGS, 1016-1042.	
1018. Cnut the Great, 1016-1035: B. of Carham .. ..	81
Two Sons of Cnut, 1035-1042: Harold I. and Harthacnut	83
(iii) THE ENGLISH RESTORATION, 1042-1066.	
Eadweard the Confessor and the Godwin Family .. ..	84
1066. Harold II.: Battles of Stamford Bridge and Hastings ..	86

## CHAPTER VIII.—WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR.

(i) COMPLETION OF THE NORMAN CONQUEST, 1066-1072.	
1071. Conquest of West and North: Hereward's Camp of Refuge	90
1072. Malcolm Canmore's Submission at Abernethy .. ..	92
(ii) CONSEQUENCES OF THE NORMAN CONQUEST, 1070-1087.	
<i>Effects of the Norman Conquest in Church and State</i> .. ..	93
1086. Domesday Book and the Great Gemot of Salisbury ..	97

## CHAPTER IX.—THREE NORMAN KINGS.

(i) WILLIAM RUFUS, 1087-1100.	
1087-93. William II.'s relations with Normandy, Wales, Scotland..	99
Balf Flambard develops the financial aspects of Feudalism..	101

	SECTIONS	
1095. Anselm of Aosta and the Council of Rockingham ..	102	
„ The Council of Clermont and the First Crusade ..	103	
(ii) HENRY BEAUCLEERC, 1100-1135.		
1106. Henry I.'s Charter and Marriage, 1100; B. of Tinchebrai	105	
1107. The Investitures Controversy and the Compromise of Bec ..	107	
Roger of Salisbury and the Curia Regis .. ..	108	
(iii) STEPHEN OF BLOIS, 1135-1154.		
1138. The Struggle with Matilda, 1135-1141: B. of the Standard	111	
1153. The Struggle with Matilda's Son; Treaty of Wallingford..	113	
The English Chronicle on Feudalism in Government ..	114	

## CHAPTER X.—HENRY II.

(i) THE RESTORATION OF ORDER, 1154-1162.		
The Component Parts of the Angevin Empire .. ..	115	
1159. The Toulouse War and the Imposition of Scutage ..	117	
(ii) THE STRUGGLE BETWEEN CHURCH AND STATE, 1162-1170.		
1164. The Constitutions of Clarendon and the Flight of Thomas..	121	
1170. The Return and Murder of Archbishop Thomas ..	122	
(iii) STRUGGLES BETWEEN KINGSHIP AND FEUDALISM, 1170-1189.		
1169-71. The Norman "Conquest of Ireland": Synod of Cashel..	123	
1174. The Last Great Feudal Rising: Treaty of Falaise ..	126	
The Curia Regis and the Jury System .. ..	127	

## CHAPTER XI.—THE SONS OF HENRY II.

(i) RICHARD LION-HEART, 1189-1199.		
1189-92. Richard and the Third Crusade .. ..	132	
1194-9. Richard's Struggle with Philip Augustus .. ..	134	
(ii) JOHN'S LOSS OF NORMANDY, 1199-1204.		
1204. Death of Arthur, 1202; French Conquest of Normandy ..	137	
Development of English Nationality .. ..	138	
(iii) THE QUARREL WITH THE POPE, 1205-1213.		
1213. John's Submission to the Papacy .. ..	140	
(iv) THE STRUGGLE FOR THE CHARTER, 1213-1216.		
1213. The National Assemblies of St. Albans and Oxford..	141	
1214. Defeat of John's Allies at the Battle of Bouvines ..	142	
1215. Magna Carta, June 15: its Contents and Importance ..	143	

## BOOK IV.—THE RISE OF PARLIAMENT, 1216-1327. 146-150

## CHAPTER XII.—HENRY III.

(i) THE GOVERNMENT OF HUBERT DE BURGH, 1216-1232.		
1217. Battles of Lincoln and Dover: Expulsion of the French ..	151	
(ii) THE MISRULE OF HENRY III., 1232-1258.		
1232. Peter des Roches supplants Hubert de Burgh .. ..	154	
(iii) BARONIAL ATTEMPT TO CONTROL THE CROWN, 1258-1272.		
1258. The Provisions of Oxford .. ..	156	
1263-5. The Barons' War: Battle and Mise of Lewes .. ..	158	
1265. Simon de Montfort's Parliamentary Assembly; B. of Evesham	159	
The Coming of the Friars and the Universities .. ..	160	

**CHAPTER XIII.—EDWARD I. AND WALES.**

(i) THE CONQUEST OF WALES, 1272-1285.	<b>SECTIONS</b>
1284. Death of Llewelyn, 1282, and the Statute of Wales	.. 163
(ii) EDWARD I.'s LEGISLATION, 1275-1290.	
<i>Edward's legislative methods and objects</i>	.. .. 164
1290. The Expulsion of the Jews	.. .. 168

**CHAPTER XIV.—EDWARD I. AND SCOTLAND.**

(i) EDWARD I.'s FIRST CONQUEST OF SCOTLAND, 1290-1296.	
<i>Review of Anglo-Scottish Relations, 924-1189..</i>	.. 169
1292. The Scots Succession and Award of Norham	.. 170
1295. Balliol's Kingship, 1292-1296; Franco-Scots Alliance	.. 171
(ii) CONSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENTS, 1294-1297.	
1295. The Model Parliament of the Three Estates	.. 173
1297. Confirmatio Cartarum: De Tallagio non Concedendo	.. 175
(iii) EDWARD I.'s SECOND CONQUEST OF SCOTLAND, 1297-1305.	
1298. Battles of Cambuskenneth (Stirling), 1287, and Falkirk	.. 176
1305. Anglo-Scottish Union, 1304; Capture of Wallace..	.. 178
(iv) EDWARD I.'s THIRD CONQUEST OF SCOTLAND.	
1306. Scots Rising under Robert Bruce, the Younger	.. .. 180

**CHAPTER XV.—EDWARD II.**

(i) EDWARD'S LOSS OF SCOTLAND, 1307-1314.	
1310-12. The Lords Ordainers and their Ordinances	.. .. 182
1314. Battle of Bannockburn..	.. .. 183
(ii) EDWARD'S LOSS OF ENGLAND, 1314-1327.	
1322. Battle of Boroughbridge, 1321: Statute of York	.. .. 185

**BOOK V.—THE HUNDRED YEARS' WAR, 1327-1485** .. 187-193

**CHAPTER XVI.—EDWARD III.**

(i) EDWARD III.'s FIRST TEN YEARS, 1327-1337.	
1328. Mortimer's Rule: "Shameful Treaty" of Northampton	.. 195
(ii) FIRST STAGE OF THE FRENCH WAR, 1337-1355.	
<i>French Succession Question: Causes of the Anglo-French War</i>	197
1340. Edward's Alliance with Flanders: Battle of Sluys..	.. 199
1346. Battle of Crécy; English Capture of Calais..	.. 201
1348-53. Black Death; Statutes of Provisors, Treasons, Praemunire	202
(iii) SECOND STAGE OF THE FRENCH WAR, 1356-1360.	
1356. Battle of Poitiers	.. .. 205
1360. Treaty of Bretigny	.. .. 206
(iv) THIRD STAGE OF THE FRENCH WAR, 1360-1377.	
1367. The Black Prince's Spanish Expedition: B. of Navarete	208
1375. B. of La Rochelle, 1372: Truce of Bruges	.. 209
1376. <i>Factions in the Royal Family: The Good Parliament</i>	.. 211

## CHAPTER XVII.—RICHARD II.

(i) RICHARD II.'s MINORITY, 1377-1389.	SECTIONS
The King's Uncles and the Development of Villanage ..	213
1381. The Peasants' Rising and the attacks on Wyclif ..	216
1388. The Lords Appellants and the Merciless Parliament ..	218
(ii) RICHARD II.'s PERSONAL RULE, 1389-1398.	
1391-3. Statutes of Provisors, Praemunire and Mortmain re-enacted	219
1398. Death of Gloucester, 1397; Parliament of Shrewsbury ..	220
(iii) THE LANCASTRIAN REVOLUTION, 1399.	
1399. The Return of Bolingbroke; Deposition of Richard II. ..	221

## CHAPTER XVIII.—LANCASTRIAN CONSTITUTIONALISM.

1401. Statute De Heretico Comburendo .. .. .	225
1403. Owen Glendower and the Percies: Battle of Shrewsbury ..	228
English Relations with the Valois Dukes of Burgundy ..	230

## CHAPTER XIX.—LANCASTRIAN FOREIGN POLICY.

(i) REIGN OF HENRY V., 1413-1422.	
1415. Henry's First Invasion: Battle of Agincourt .. ..	234
1420. Henry's Second Invasion: Treaty of Troyes .. ..	236
(ii) HENRY VI.'s YEARS OF PROSPERITY, 1422-1435.	
1423-4. Battles of Crevant and Verneuil .. .. .	239
1428-9. Siege of Orleans and Appearance of Joan Darc .. ..	240
1435. Congress of Arras; Bedford's Death; Defection of Burgundy	241
(iii) THE LOSS OF FRANCE, 1435-1450.	
Beaufort and Somerset v. Gloucester and York .. ..	242
1447. Truce of Tours, 1444; Deaths of Beaufort and Gloucester..	243
1450. B. of Formigny: French Conquest of Normandy .. ..	244

## CHAPTER XX.—THE STRUGGLE BETWEEN THE ROSES.

(i) THE MINISTERIAL STRUGGLE, 1450-1460.	
1450. Suffolk's Murder and Cade's Rising in Kent .. ..	245
1453. B. of Chastillon: French Conquest of Guienne .. ..	246
1455. First B. of St. Albans: Death of Somerset .. ..	248
1459. B. of Bloreheath: Yorkist Rout at Ludford .. ..	249
(ii) BEGINNINGS OF THE DYNASTIC STRUGGLE, 1460-1461.	
1460. B. of Northampton; Richard's Claim; B. of Wakefield ..	250
1461. B. of Mortimer's Cross; Edward of York assumes the Crown	251
(iii) KING AND KING-MAKER, 1461-1471.	
General Character of The Wars of the Roses .. .. .	252
1461. B. of Towton: Edward of York secures the Crown .. ..	253
1464-70. Quarrels between Edward IV. and Warwick .. ..	254
1471. Battles of Barnet and Tewkesbury .. .. .	255

## CHAPTER XXI.—THE HOUSE OF YORK IN POSSESSION.

1475. Edward and Burgundy: Treaty of Pecquigny .. ..	256
1483. Outbreak of Party Strife on Edward IV.'s Death .. ..	258
1485. Henry Tudor defeats Richard III. at Bosworth .. ..	260



	SECTIONS
<b>BOOK VI.—THE TUDOR PERIOD, 1485-1603 .. ..</b>	<b>261-266</b>

### *CHAPTER XXII.—HENRY VII.*

(i) <b>THE PERIOD OF INSTABILITY, 1485-1497.</b>	
<i>Henry VII.'s Dynastic Position and Difficulties .. ..</i>	267
1487. Lambert Simnel; B. of Stoke; Court of Star Chamber .. ..	269
1492. Treaty of Estaples and Perkin Warbeck .. ..	271
1495. Poynings in Ireland: Statute of Drogheda .. ..	274
1497. Battle of Blackheath; Capture of Warbeck .. ..	276
(ii) <b>DOMESTIC SECURITY AND FOREIGN ENTERPRISE, 1497-1509.</b>	
1497. The Cabots' Voyage to Newfoundland .. ..	280
1501-3. The Spanish and Scottish Marriages .. ..	278
1506. Henry's Relations with Flanders: <i>Malus Intercursus</i> .. ..	279

### *CHAPTER XXIII.—HENRY VIII. AND CARDINAL WOLSEY.*

(i) <b>LEAGUES AGAINST FRANCE, 1509-1525.</b>	
1513. The Holy League, 1511-1514: <i>Guinegate</i> and <i>Flodden</i> .. ..	283
1520. <i>Field of the Cloth of Gold</i> .. ..	287
(ii) <b>ALLIANCE WITH FRANCE, 1525-1529.</b>	
1527-9. The Divorce Question and Fall of Wolsey .. ..	288

### *CHAPTER XXIV.—HENRY VIII.'S CHURCH REVOLUTION.*

(i) <b>THE DIVORCE QUESTION, 1529-1533.</b>	
1531. The Clerical Recognition of the Headship .. ..	292
1532. The Submission of the Clergy .. ..	293
1533. The Statute of Appeals: Henry marries Anne Boleyn .. ..	295
(ii) <b>THE BREACH WITH ROME, 1533-1536.</b>	
1534. First Statute of Supremacy .. ..	298
1535. Cromwell, Vicar-General: Execution of Fisher and More .. ..	299
1536. Suppression of the Smaller Monasteries .. ..	300
(iii) <b>THE TRIALS OF A LAY POPE, 1536-1547</b>	
1536-7. The Pilgrimage of Grace and of the Bull of Deposition .. ..	303
1539. Suppression of the Larger Monasteries; <i>The Six Articles</i> .. ..	305
1540. Marriage with Anne of Kleves: Fall of Cromwell .. ..	309
1536-43. Anglo-Welsh Parliamentary Union .. ..	310
1542-6. Wars with France and Scotland: B. of Solway Moss .. ..	312

### *CHAPTER XXV.—ENGLAND UNDER FOREIGN INFLUENCES*

(i) <b>THE PROTECTORATE OF SOMERSET, 1547-1549.</b>	
1547. The Scottish War: B. of Pinkie .. ..	317
1549. First Act of Uniformity: Risings in West and East .. ..	319
(ii) <b>THE ASCENDANCY OF NORTHUMBERLAND, 1549-1553.</b>	
1552. Second Act of Uniformity; Tampering with the Succession. .. ..	322
(iii) <b>MARY AS SOLE QUEEN, 1553-1554.</b>	
1553. Northumberland and Lady Jane Grey .. ..	324
1554. Wyatt's Rising and the Anglo-Spanish Marriage .. ..	326
(iv) <b>PHILIP AND MARY, 1554-1558.</b>	
1554-58. Reconciliation with Rome: Marian Persecution .. ..	328
1558. French Capture of Calais: Death of Cardinal Pole .. ..	330

## CHAPTER XXVI.—ELIZABETH'S CHURCH SETTLEMENT.

(i) THE ELIZABETHAN CHURCH SETTLEMENT, 1558-1559.	SECTIONS
<i>Survey of Elizabeth's Dynastic Position and Reign</i> ..	331
1559. Second Act of Supremacy; Third Act of Uniformity ..	333
(ii) THE STRUGGLE WITH MARY, QUEEN OF SCOTS, 1559-1569.	
1560. The Scottish Reformation and the Treaty of Berwick ..	337
1562. Return of Mary, 1561; Elizabeth's Occupation of Havre ..	338
1565-7. <i>The Question of the English Royal Succession</i> ..	339
1569. Mary's English Flight, 1568: Rising of the Northern Earls	341

## CHAPTER XXVII.—THE STRUGGLE FOR NATIONAL INDEPENDENCE.

(i) THE PAPAL ATTACK, 1570-1584.	
1570. Pius V.'s Bull of Deposition: <i>Regnans in Excelsis</i> ..	342
1571. English Anti-Papal Legislation; Thirty-Nine Articles ..	343
1571. <i>Elizabeth's Relations with Spain: the Ridolfi Plot</i> ..	346
1577-80. Drake's Circumnavigation of the Globe ..	349
1579-84. The Jesuit Invasion of the British Isles ..	350
(ii) THE STRUGGLE WITH SPAIN, 1585-1603.	
1585. Elizabeth's Alliance with Scotland and the Netherlands ..	353
1587. Execution of Mary Queen of Scots ..	355
1588. The Defeat of the Spanish Armada ..	356
1596-03. The Rebellion of Hugh O'Neil, Earl of Tyrone ..	358
1601. The First General Poor Law and the Monopolies Question	360

## BOOK VII.—THE PURITAN REVOLUTION, 1603-1660 .. 361-368

## CHAPTER XXVIII.—JAMES I.

(i) JAMES I. AND SALISBURY, 1603-1612.	
<i>James's British and Colonial Position</i> ..	369
1604. The Puritans and Hampton Court Conference ..	372
1605. The Roman Catholics and Gunpowder Plot ..	373
1606. Bate's Case and Salisbury's Financial Methods ..	374
(ii) JAMES I. UNDER SPANISH INFLUENCE, 1613-1625.	
1614. The Addled Parliament: Bacon and the Undertakers ..	376
1618. Execution of Raleigh and the Bohemian War ..	377
1620. The Voyage of the Pilgrim Fathers ..	377
1621. James's Third Parliament and the Commons' Protestation	379
1624. James's Fourth Parliament and the Monopolies Act ..	381

## CHAPTER XXIX.—CHARLES I.'S CONSTITUTIONAL EXPERIMENTS.

(i) BUCKINGHAM AND THE FIRST THREE PARLIAMENTS, 1625-1629.	
1625. First Parliament: <i>Tonnage and Poundage</i> ..	383
1626. Second Parliament: <i>Impeachment of Buckingham</i> ..	384
1627. Buckingham's First Expedition to La Rochelle ..	385
1628. Third Parliament: <i>Petition of Right</i> ..	386
,, Death of Buckingham; Fall of La Rochelle ..	388
(ii) ELEVEN YEARS' PERSONAL RULE, 1629-1640.	
<i>Charles's Foreign and Colonial Policy</i> ..	390

	SECTIONS
1637. English Finance: Ship Money and Hampden's Case ..	393
1638. Laud's Ecclesiastical Policy: Scottish National Covenant ..	394
1638-40. The Bishops' Wars, and the Short Parliament, 1640 ..	395
(i) BEGINNINGS OF THE LONG PARLIAMENT, 1640-1642.	
1641. Strafford's Execution; Ulster Rising; Grand Remonstrance ..	398
1642. Arrest of the Five Members; Militia Bill; XIX Propositions ..	404

### CHAPTER XXX.—THE GREAT CIVIL WAR.

(i) THE FIRST CIVIL WAR, 1642-1646.	
<i>Social and Military Aspects of the Great Rebellion ..</i>	406
1642. Battles of Edgehill and Brentford: Treaty of Oxford ..	409
1643. Year of Sieges: Solemn League and Covenant; Cessation ..	410
1644. Battles of Marston Moor, Cropredy Bridge, Tippermuir ..	414
1645. New Model; Naseby and Philiphaugh; Glamorgan Treaty ..	417
(ii) KING, PARLIAMENT, AND ARMY, 1646-1649.	
1643-7. Westminster Assembly of Divines .. .. .	420
1647. The Army's Heads of Proposals .. .. .	421
1648. Second Civil War; Treaty of Newport; Pride's Purge ..	422
1649. Trial and Execution of the King .. .. .	424

### CHAPTER XXXI.—THE COMMONWEALTH.

(i) PARLIAMENTARY REPUBLIC, 1649-1653.	
<i>Constitutional and International Perils of the Republic ..</i>	425
1649. Second Conquest of Ireland: Cromwell's Sack of Drogheda ..	427
1650-1. Conquest of Scotland: Battles of Dunbar and Worcester ..	428
1651-4. Navigation Act, 1651; First Dutch War; Monk and Blake ..	429
1653. Dissolution of the Rump; Assembly of Nominees .. ..	431
(ii) THE PROTECTORATE, 1653-1659	
1653. The Instrument of Government; Anglo-Scottish Union ..	433
1655. Cromwell's Foreign Policy: Capture of Jamaica .. ..	436
1658. Death of Oliver Cromwell; Richard, Protector .. ..	438
(iii) THE YEAR OF ANARCHY, 1659-1660.	
1660. Monk's March; Charles's Declaration from Breda .. ..	440

## BOOK VIII.—THE PROTESTANT REVOLUTION, 1660-1688 442-444

### CHAPTER XXXII.—CHARLES II. AND THE PROTESTANT NONCONFORMISTS.

(i) THE RESTORATION SETTLEMENT IN THE THREE KINGDOMS.	
1660. English Convention: Indemnity, Oblivion, Revenue, Army ..	415
1662. Savoy Conference, 1661: Fourth Act of Uniformity .. ..	449
1661. Scots Restoration, re-establishment of Episcopacy .. ..	450
1662-6. Irish Restoration: Acts of Settlement and Explanation ..	451
(ii) THE ANTI-PURITAN MOVEMENT, 1661-1670.	
1661-5. Clarendon Code: Corporation, Conventicle, Five-Mile Acts ..	453
<i>Clarendon's Foreign and Colonial Policy .. .. .</i>	454
1665-7. Second Anglo-Dutch War; Great Plague and Great Fire ..	456
1667-8. Fall of Clarendon; the Cabal; Triple Alliance .. ..	457
1670. The Secret and the Sham Treaty of Dover .. .. .	460

**CHAPTER XXXIII.—CHARLES II. AND THE CATHOLIC  
NONCONFORMISTS.**

(i) THE ANTI-ROMANIST MOVEMENT, 1670-1681.	SECTIONS
1672 Third Anglo-Dutch War; Declaration of Indulgence ..	461
1673. The Test Act; Break up of the Cabal. . . . .	464
1673-8. Danby's Ministry and the Anglo-Dutch Marriage, 1677 ..	465
1678 The Popish Plot and the Impeachment of Danby ..	466
1679. Temple's Privy Council: Shaftesbury's Habeas Corpus Act	467
1679-81. Exclusion Bill Struggle; Three Short Parliaments ..	469
(ii) THE ROYALIST REACTION, 1681-1685.	
1683. Flight of Shaftesbury, 1682, Rye House Plot ..	472
1684. Rule of the Chits: Remodelling of the Corporations ..	473

**CHAPTER XXXIV.—JAMES II.**

(i) THE APPEAL TO THE ESTABLISHED CHURCH, 1685-1686.	
1685. Risings of Argyll and Monmouth; Jeffreys' Bloody Assize	478
1686. Dispensing Power: Hale's Case; Ecclesiastical Commission	481
(ii) THE APPEAL TO THE NONCONFORMISTS, 1687-1688.	
1687. Fall of the Hydes: <i>Scottish and Irish Policy</i> ..	483
1688. Declarations of Indulgence; Trial of the Seven Bishops ..	486
(iii) THE INVASION OF ENGLAND, 1688.	
1688. Arrival of William of Orange; Flight of James II. ..	490
1689. The English Convention and the Declaration of Right ..	494

**BOOK IX.—THE RISE OF PARTY GOVERNMENT. 1689-1754** 496-503

**CHAPTER XXXV.—WILLIAM AND MARY.**

(i) REVOLUTION SETTLEMENT IN THE THREE KINGDOMS, 1689-1691.	
1689. <i>England</i> : Mutiny Act, Toleration Act, Bill of Rights ..	504
„ <i>Scotland</i> : Claim of Right: Battle of Killiecrankie ..	510
1690. Restoration of Presbyterianism in the Scots Kirk ..	510
„ <i>Ireland</i> : Battles of Beachy Head, Boyne, and Limerick ..	513
1691. B. of Aghrim and Treaty of Limerick ..	514
(ii) DEFENCE OF THE REVOLUTION, 1691-1694.	
1692. Battles of La Hogue and Steinkirk ..	516
1694. Bank of England; Third Triennial Act; Death of Mary ..	518

**CHAPTER XXXVI.—WILLIAM III.**

(i) CONCLUSION OF THE WAR OF THE ENGLISH SUCCESSION, 1695-1697.	
<i>The Whig Junto and the Experiment in Party Government</i> ..	520
1695. Lapse of the Licensing Act ..	522
1696. Jacobite Plots; Loyal Association; Restoration of Coinage	523
1697. General Peace of Ryswick ..	525
(ii) THE SWING OF THE PARTY PENDULUM, 1698-1702.	
1698. Attacks on Dutch William; Scots Darien Scheme ..	526
1698-00. The Spanish Succession and the Partition Treaties ..	528
1701. Act of Settlement: Death of James II. ..	529
1600-98. <i>Survey of the Work of the East India Company</i> ..	532

CHAPTER XXXVII.—QUEEN ANNE.

(i) MARLBOROUGH'S EARLY TRIUMPHS, 1702-1706.	SECTIONS
<i>Motives in the War of the Spanish Succession</i> .. ..	533
1704. Battle of <b>Blenheim</b> : Capture of <b>Gibraltar</b> .. ..	537
1706. Battle of <b>Ramillies</b> : general success of Archduke Charles	538
(ii) THE ANGLO-SCOTTISH UNION, 1707.	
1699-07. <i>Causes and Conditions of the Parliamentary Union</i> .. ..	539
(iii) THE WHIGS AND THE WAR, 1707-1710.	
1708. Battle of <b>Almanza</b> (1707): <b>Oudenarde</b> and <b>Minorca</b> ..	541
1709. Battles of <b>Malplaquet</b> and <b>La Gudina</b> .. ..	545
1710. Conference of <b>Gertruydenburg</b> : <b>Fall of the Whigs</b> ..	546
(iv) THE TORIES AND THE PEACE, 1710-1714.	
1711. Accession of Charles VI. as Emperor: <b>Fall of Marlborough</b>	549
1713. <b>Peace of Utrecht</b> : Great Britain, France, and Spain ..	550
Domestic Policy of the Tories in Church and State ..	551

CHAPTER XXXVIII.—GEORGE I.

(i) THE STUART AND THE GUELF, 1714-1716.	
1715. The <b>Riot Act</b> and the <b>Jacobite Rising</b> in the North ..	554
1716. The <b>Septennial Act</b> : its constitutional significance ..	556
1717. The <b>Triple Alliance</b> against Spain and Sweden .. ..	558
(ii) THE FIRST WHIG SCHISM, 1717-1720.	
1718. <b>Byng's Victory off Cape Passaro</b> : <b>Glenshiel</b> , 1719 ..	560
1719. <b>Stanhope's Protestant Interests Act</b> : <b>Peerage Bill</b> ..	561
1720. <b>South Sea Bubble</b> : <b>Walpole</b> replaces <b>Stanhope</b> .. ..	562
(iii) BEGINNINGS OF WALPOLE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1721-1727.	
1722. <b>Banishment of Atterbury</b> : <b>Return of Bolingbroke</b> , 1723 ..	564
1724. <b>Wood's Halfpence</b> and <b>Swift's Drapier's Letters</b> .. ..	565
1725. <b>Rival Alliances of Vienna and Hanover</b> .. ..	566

CHAPTER XXXIX.—GEORGE II. AND WALPOLE.

(i) WALPOLE AND QUEEN CAROLINE, 1727-1737.	
1727. <b>Walpole v. Compton</b> : <b>First Indemnity Act</b> for Dissenters	567
1731. <b>Second Treaty of Vienna</b> : the <b>Pragmatic Sanction</b> ..	568
1733. <b>Excise Bill</b> ; <b>Polish Election</b> ; <b>First Family Compact</b> ..	569
(ii) THE SECOND WHIG SCHISM, 1737-1742.	
<i>Walpole as Prime Minister, and the Parliamentary Opposition</i>	572
<i>Rise of Methodism, 1729-1739</i> : <b>Wesley</b> and <b>Whitefield</b> ..	573
1739. Outbreak of the <b>War of Jenkins' Ear</b> : its Character ..	574
1740. <b>Wars of the Austrian Succession</b> : <b>Causes and Parties</b> ..	576
1742. <b>Resignation of Walpole</b> .. ..	577

CHAPTER XL.—GEORGE II. AND THE PELHAMS.

(i) CARTERET'S "DRUNKEN ADMINISTRATION," 1742-1744.	
1743. Battle of <b>Dettingen</b> : <b>Second Family Compact</b> .. ..	579
1744. <b>Pelhams</b> force <b>Carteret</b> ( <b>Granville</b> ) out of the Ministry ..	581

	SECTIONS
(ii) PELHAM'S "BROAD-BOTTOM ADMINISTRATION," 1744-1754.	
1745. Battle of Fontenoy: the Forty-Five..	582
1746. Abortive Bath-Granville Ministry: Loss of Madras ..	585
1748. Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle: its inconclusive character ..	588
1751. Death of Frederick Prince of Wales: Calendar Act ..	589
1754. Hardwicke's Marriage Act, 1753: Death of Henry Pelham	589

<b>BOOK X.—THE MAKING AND RE-MAKING OF EMPIRE,</b>	
1754-1793 .. .. .	590-594

## CHAPTER XLI.—THE SEVEN YEARS' WAR.

(i) THE CAUSES OF THE WAR, 1748-1756.	
1600-1750. <i>European Merchants in India—English, Dutch, French</i> ..	596
1744-8. First Anglo-French War in Coromandel: Dupleix ..	597
1748-54. Second Anglo-French War in Coromandel: Clive ..	598
1757. The Black Hole, 1756, and the Battle of Plassey ..	599
1600-1750. <i>European Colonies in North America—English, Dutch, French</i>	600
1752-5. Fort Duquesne: Washington, Braddock, and Boscawen..	601
1756. Treaties of Westminster and Versailles: Loss of Minorca	603
(ii) THE COURSE OF THE WAR, 1756-1763.	
1756-7. Ministerial Changes: Newcastle, Devonshire, and W. Pitt	605
1757. Convention of Klosterseven: Invasion of Canada ..	606
1759. Great Year: Minden, Lagos, Quebec, Quiberon Bay ..	607
1760. Battle of Wandiwash: Death of George II. ..	608
1761. Charles III., Choiseul, and the Third Family Compact ..	609
1762. Bute, Prussia, and Spain: Havana and Manila ..	610
1763. Treaties of Paris and Hubertsburg .. ..	612

## CHAPTER XLII.—GEORGE III.'S CONSTITUTIONAL EXPERIMENTS.

(i) BUTE, GRENVILLE, AND WILKES, 1760-1765.	
1760. Accession of George III.: Bute supplants Pitt and New-	
castle .. .. .	613
1763. Wilkes and the North Briton, No. 45 .. ..	616
1765. Grenville's Ministry, 1763-5: Stamp Act; Regency Bill..	617
(ii) ROCKINGHAM, GRAFTON, AND JUNIUS, 1765-1770.	
1765-8. Ministries of Rockingham (1765-6), and Chatham (1766-8)	620
1768-70. Grafton's Ministry: Wilkes and the Middlesex Election..	622
1765-7. Clive's Second Governorship of Bengal, 1765-7 ..	624

## CHAPTER XLIII.—THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

(i) LORD NORTH AND THE EAST, 1770-1773.	
1770. North's Ministry: Falkland Isles: Election Petitions ..	625
1773. North's Regulating Act: Boston Tea Party ..	628
(ii) LORD NORTH AND THE WEST, 1773-1777.	
1607-1763. <i>The North American Colonies and the Mother Country</i> ..	629
1763-73. Question of Imperial Taxation: Grenville, Townshend,	
North.. .. .	631

	SECTIONS
1774. North's "Intolerable Acts": First Continental Congress	632
1775. Battles of Lexington and Bunker Hill .. ..	633
1776. American Declaration of Independence .. ..	634
1777. Burgoyne's Surrender at Saratoga .. ..	636
(iii) THE BOURBON INTERVENTION, 1778-1783.	
1778. Franco-American Alliance and its General Effects.. ..	637
1773-82. Warren Hastings in India: Bengal, Maráthás, Mysore ..	639
1779-82. Henry Grattan and the Irish Volunteers .. ..	640
1780. The Gordon Riots: Dunning's Resolution: <b>Armed Neutrality</b>	641
1781. Cornwallis's Surrender at Yorktown.. ..	643
1782. Rodney's Victory off the Saints: Elliott at Gibraltar ..	644
1783. Peace of Versailles recognises American Independence ..	645

#### CHAPTER XLIV.—PITT'S YEARS OF PEACE.

(i) GEORGE III.'S SECOND STRUGGLE, 1782-1784.	
1782. Rockingham's Second Ministry (March-June) .. ..	646
1782-3. Shelburne's Ministry (July-February): Renunciatory Act	647
1783. Portland's Coalition Ministry (April-December) .. ..	648
1783. Pitt's First Ministry begins with Parliamentary Struggle..	649
(ii) PITT AS PEACE MINISTER, 1783-1793.	
1784. Pitt's India Act: Hastings and Cornwallis .. ..	651
1785-6. Pitt's Projects of Parliamentary and Financial Reform ..	652
1788. Pitt's Triple Alliance: Botany Bay: Regency Question ..	654
1791-2. Pitt's Canada Act, 1791: Fox's Libel Act, 1792 .. ..	657

<b>BOOK XI.—THE GREAT WAR AND THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION, 1793-1837</b> .. ..	<b>658-665</b>
--	----------------

#### CHAPTER XLV.—THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

(i) THE FIRST COALITION, 1793-1797.	
1789-92. <i>British Opinion on the French Revolution</i> .. ..	666
1793. Outbreak of Anglo-French War: Dunkirk, Toulon .. ..	667
1794. Glorious First of June: Whig Split .. ..	668
1795. <b>Treaties of Basel</b> : Repressive Measures: Poor Law .. ..	669
1797. Treaty of Campo-Formio: <b>St. Vincent</b> : Camperdown ..	670
(ii) THE SECOND COALITION, 1798-1802.	
1798. Bonaparte's Eastern Expedition: <b>Battle of the Nile</b> .. ..	672
1799. Capitulation of Alkmaar; Bonaparte as First Consul .. ..	673
1800. British Capture of Malta leads to Second Armed Neutrality	674
1801. Treaty of Lunéville: Pitt's Resignation: B. Alexandria..	675
1802. <b>Peace of Amiens</b> : Causes and Conditions .. ..	676
(iii) INDIA AND IRELAND, 1789-1805.	
1782-98. The United Irishmen and the <b>Ninety-Eight</b> . .. ..	677
1800. <b>Brito-Irish Union</b> : Terms and Omissions .. ..	678
1786-91. Cornwallis and Shore in India: Mysore Wars of 1792, 1799	679
1798-05. Wellesley in India: Battles of <b>Assaye</b> , <b>Argaum</b> , and Taswari .. ..	680

## CHAPTER XLVI.—THE NAPOLEONIC WAR.

## (i) NAPOLEON'S MARITIME ATTACK, 1803-1805.

<i>General Features of the Napoleonic Period</i> .. ..	681
1803. Breach of the Treaties of Amiens and Lunéville: Emmett	682
1804. Pitt's Second Ministry: Third Coalition .. ..	683
Formation of the French and Austrian Empires .. ..	683
1805. Battles of Trafalgar and Austerlitz .. ..	684
1806. Death of Pitt and Fox: Maida and Cape Colony .. ..	686
1807. Expeditions to Alexandria, Constantinople, and the River Plate .. ..	687

## (ii) THE CONTINENTAL SYSTEM, 1806-1808.

1806. Battle of Jena: Berlin Decrees: Orders in Council ..	688
1807. Franco-Russian Treaty of Tilsit: Copenhagen and Heligo- land .. ..	690

## (iii) THE PENINSULAR WAR, 1808-1814.

1808. Napoleon, Wellesley and Moore in Spain and Portugal ..	692
1809. Fourth Coalition: Wagram, Walcheren, Talavera ..	693
1810-2. Peninsular Campaigns: Torres Vedras, Albuera, Salamanca	694
1810-2. The Regency and the Beginning of the Liverpool Ministry	696
1812-4. Anglo-American War: Causes and Incidents .. ..	697
1812-3. Napoleon's Invasion of Russia, and the War of Liberation	698
1814. First Downfall of Napoleon: First Treaty of Paris ..	699

## (iv) THE CONGRESS OF VIENNA, 1814-1815.

1815. The Hundred Days and the Waterloo Campaign .. ..	700
Territorial Settlement at the Congress of Vienna .. ..	703

## CHAPTER XLVII.—ROMAN CATHOLIC EMANCIPATION.

## (i) CASTLEREAGH AND SIDMOUTH, 1815-1822.

<i>Political Condition of Britain and Europe after Great War</i>	704
1815-9. Corn Law: Manchester Massacre; Sidmouth's Six Acts ..	706
1820. Accession of George IV.: Queen Caroline; New Men ..	707

## (ii) CANNING AND HUSKISSON, 1822-1827.

1823-6. Huskisson's Commercial Policy: Reciprocity .. ..	709
1823. Canning's Foreign Policy: the Monroe Doctrine .. ..	710
1827. Greek Revolt: Treaty of London: Battle of Navarino ..	711

## (iii) WELLINGTON AND O'CONNELL, 1827-1830.

1828. Wellington and the Protestant Nonconformists .. ..	713
1829. Wellington and the Catholic Nonconformists .. ..	714
1830. State of Political Parties at the Death of George IV. ..	715

## CHAPTER XLVIII.—PARLIAMENTARY REFORM.

## (i) THE GREAT REFORM BILL, 1830-1832.

1830. Revolution in France, Belgium, and Poland .. ..	716
Wellington gives place to Grey's Whig Ministry .. ..	717
1832. First Reform Act: the Contest and its Results .. ..	718
1830-2. Palmerston's Foreign Policy: Friendship with France ..	721



	SECTIONS
(ii) THE FIRST TWO REFORMED PARLIAMENTS, 1832-1837.	
1833. Abolition of Slavery; Bank Charter Act .. ..	722
" First Education Grant; Factory Act .. ..	723
1834. Melbourne succeeds Grey: Poor Law Amendment Act ..	725
1834. Peel's First Ministry: Tamworth Manifesto and Conservatism .. ..	727
1835. Return of Melbourne: Municipal Reform Act .. ..	728
1833-5. Beginnings of the Oxford Movement .. ..	730
1833-7. Palmerston and the Eastern Question: Mehemet Ali and France .. ..	731
1805-35. British India under Moira, Amherst, and Bentinck ..	732

## BOOK XII.—THE VICTORIAN AGE, 1837-1901 .. .. 734-739

### CHAPTER XLIX.—PEEL AND THE CORN LAWS.

(i) END OF MELBOURNE'S MINISTRY, 1837-1841.	
1837-41. <i>Social and Political Conditions at Victoria's Accession</i> ..	740
1837-40. Unrest in Canada; Durham's Report, 1839; Act of Union	743
1835-43. The Great Trek of the Boers: Annexation of Natal, 1843	744
1840. Palmerston's Second Quadruple Alliance against France ..	745
1838-42. Auckland and the First Afghan War. .. ..	746
1838-42. First Chinese War: Acquisition of Aden and Hong-Kong	747
(ii) PEEL'S SECOND MINISTRY, 1841-1846.	
1841-46. Indian Affairs: Sindh annexed; First Sikh War .. ..	749
1843. The Disruption: Founding of the Free Church of Scotland	750
1846. Irish Potato Famine: Repeal of the Corn Laws .. ..	751

### CHAPTER L.—PALMERSTON AND DERBY.

(i) RUSSELL, DERBY, AND ABERDEEN, 1846-1855.	
1846. Spanish Marriages and Anglo-French Relations .. ..	752
1846-8. Young Ireland and the Chartists .. ..	753
1848. The Year of Revolutions: France, Sardinia, Hungary, Bohemia .. ..	754
1851. Queen and Ministers: Dismissal of Palmerston .. ..	755
1851. Great Exhibition: Other Domestic Events under Russell	756
1852. First Derby Ministry: Aberdeen Coalition Ministry ..	757
1850. Australian Colonies Act: Responsible Self-Government ..	759
1846-52. South Africa under Sir Harry Smith: the Boer Republics	760
1848-56. India under Dalhousie: Punjab, Pegu, Oudh .. ..	761
(ii) THE CRIMEAN WAR AND THE INDIAN MUTINY, 1854-1858.	
1854-6. The Crimean War: Causes, Course, Results .. ..	762
1856-60. Persian and Chinese Wars .. ..	766
1857-8. The Indian Mutiny and the End of John Company ..	767
(iii) DERBY AND PALMERSTON, 1858-1865.	
1858-9. Second Derby Ministry: Rise of the Volunteers .. ..	769
1860. Palmerston's Second Ministry: Question of Money Bills ..	770
1859-64. Palmerston's Relations with France, Italy, Denmark ..	771
1861-5. American Civil War: Cotton Famine: the Alabama ..	772

## CHAPTER LI.—DISRAELI AND GLADSTONE.

## (i) THE LEAP IN THE DARK, 1865-1868.

1865-6. Russell's Second Ministry: Seven Weeks' War .. ..	773
1867. Derby's Third Ministry (1866-8): Second Reform Act ..	774
1867. Carnarvon's British North America Act .. ..	775
1868. Disraeli's First Ministry: Abyssinian War .. ..	776

## (ii) GLADSTONE'S FIRST MINISTRY, 1868-1874.

1871. Foreign Affairs: German Empire: Treaty of Washington.	777
Colonial Affairs: Diamonds at Kimberley: Wolseley at Kumasi .. .. .	778
1869. Irish Legislation: Irish Church Act: Irish Land Act, 1870	779
1870. English Legislation: Forster's Elementary Education Act.	780
1872. British Legislation: Cardwell's Army Reforms .. ..	781

## (iii) DISRAELI'S SECOND MINISTRY, 1874-1880.

1873-9. Formation of the Home Rule and Irish Land Leagues ..	783
1877. Queen Proclaimed Empress of India: Two Afghan Wars ..	784
1879. Establishment of the Dual Control in Egypt .. ..	784
1878. Russo-Turkish War and the Treaty of Berlin .. ..	785
1877. South Africa, 1875-1880: Annexation of the Transvaal ..	786

## (iv) GLADSTONE'S SECOND MINISTRY, 1880-1886.

1881. Battle of Majuba Hill: Pretoria Convention .. ..	787
1882. Defeat of Arabi Pasha: Appearance of the Mahdi .. ..	788
1880-5. Irish Affairs: Boycotting and the Phoenix Park Murders .	789
1884-5. Franchise Act: Redistribution of Seats Act .. ..	790

## CHAPTER LII.—DEMOCRACY AND EMPIRE.

## (i) MINISTERIAL HISTORY, 1885-1901.

1885-6. First Salisbury Ministry: Third Burmese War .. ..	791
1886. Third Gladstone Ministry: First Home Rule Bill .. ..	792
1886-92. Second Salisbury Ministry: Local Government Act, 1888..	793
1892-4. Fourth Gladstone Ministry: Parish Councils Act, 1891 ..	794
1894-5. Rosebery Ministry: Harcourt's Budget. .. ..	795
1895-02. Third Salisbury Ministry: Death of Queen Victoria, 1901.	796

## (ii) THE SCRAMBLE FOR AFRICA, 1885-1902.

1884-5. London Convention: Berlin Conference .. ..	797
North-East Africa: Uganda and Egypt: France and Ger- many .. .. .	798
West Africa: Niger Company: Anglo-French Agreements	799
1884-02. South Africa: Rhodes, Hofmeyr, Kruger .. ..	800
1884-02. Asia: Penjdeh: Chitral: Boxer Rising .. ..	803
1900. The Pacific: Australian Commonwealth Act: Federation .	805



## GENERAL INTRODUCTION.

**§ 1. Survey of the Sphere of History.**—The astronomer and the geologist tell us that the Earth has been in existence for millions of years. But man has existed on the Earth only during a small portion of this time, and he has kept records of himself and of his doings only during a small portion of the time of his existence. Man in this short and recent phase of his existence—during which he has had the leisure, the interest, and the means “to take himself up by the roots and see how he is growing”—forms the subject-matter of History. As soon as any set of men became sufficiently civilized to advance from worshipping their ancestors to feeling curiosity about them, myths sprang up to supply the want created by this curiosity; but no authentic record appears to exist regarding any portion of the human race much earlier than six thousand years ago. The Chinese of the Hoang-Ho Valley, the Egyptians of the Nile Valley, and the Chaldeans of the Tigris and Euphrates Valley have left records carved on stone or stamped on burnt-clay tiles that reach back possibly as far as 6000 B.C., certainly as far as 4000 B.C. That is, as yet, the furthestmost span of History.

**§ 2. Proportion in History.**—Suppose we represent this span of history by a line half-a-foot long, and let each inch represent one thousand years. The history of England lies wholly within the last two inches of this space, and its most important portion lies within the last inch: it is closely connected with the fourth inch—the Greek and Roman period; and it has very little to do with the first three inches—the period of the great Oriental Monarchies. If therefore one were to write a history of civilized man according to strict chronological scale—giving the same amount of space to each year—it is obvious that the history of England would take up only a small portion of a third of the book. But a book written on such lines of mechanical proportion would be neither possible nor useful: for both our knowledge of past times and the intrinsic importance of the events of different years vary infinitely. Generally speaking, as we approach our own times, we not only have fuller records of what happened, but also have more interest in what happened, because it

has a more obvious connection with the circumstances in which we ourselves live and move to-day. Without any real disproportion, therefore, we are able to cover the first half of the time-span of our history down to 1900 in a tenth part of the space assigned to the whole story, and devote as much attention to the last half-century as to the first thousand years.

§ 3. **Britain before the English, to 410 A.D.**—Our first book will briefly set forth the successive settlement of these islands by various uncivilized peoples in prehistoric times, and the occupation of South Britain in historic times by the armies of civilized Rome. These far-off ages are not wholly disconnected with our surroundings to-day: the world-wide British Empire into which England and Great Britain are merged in the nineteenth century includes those uncivilized peoples among the ancestors of its citizens, and owes much to Rome as a pioneer in civilization.

§ 4. **The Making of England, 410-979.**—Our second book will show how various hordes of Teutonic adventurers crossed from Germany to Britain and won homes for themselves there; how, partly under the influence of Christianity, partly through the ambition of kings, and partly under pressure of the Danish invasions, the several English settlements attained political unity in South Britain; and how, during the same period, a similar measure of political unity in North Britain was attained by the union of Picts, Scots, and English into the historic kingdom of Scotland.

§ 5. **England under Foreign Kings, 979-1216.**—Our third book will show how this England, thus loosely *bolled* together by her native kings, was more securely *riveted* together by a succession of foreign rulers—first a Danish dynasty, then a Norman dynasty, and lastly an Angevin dynasty. The main results of this discipline were to sever England from her connection with North Europe and bring her into closer touch with Central Europe—especially France and Rome—and also to create her first effective system of uniform and central government.

§ 6. **The Rise of Parliament, 1216-1327.**—Our fourth book, besides giving an account of Edward I's premature attempt to effect the political unity of the whole British Isles, will show how the well-to-do classes obtained, through Parliament, a voice in the control of the central government built up in England by Norman and Angevin despots.

§ 7. **The Hundred Years' War, 1327-1485.**—Our fifth book will show how the failure of the English kings in their attempt to

conquer France (1338-1453) left England a prey to civil war (1450-1485), but also left her free from Continental connections.

§ 8. **The Tudor Period, 1485-1603.**—Our sixth book will set forth the successful attempts of the Tudor monarchs to restore order in England and to secure her civil and ecclesiastical independence against the attacks of foreign potentates—ecclesiastical as well as civil.

§ 9. **The Puritan Revolution, 1603-1660.**—Our seventh book will treat of the international and constitutional relations of an England whose ruler now for the first time bore sway over the whole of the British Isles, and over colonies beyond the sea: it will exhibit the inability of King and Parliament, though they quarrelled so violently as to appeal to arms, to do without one another.

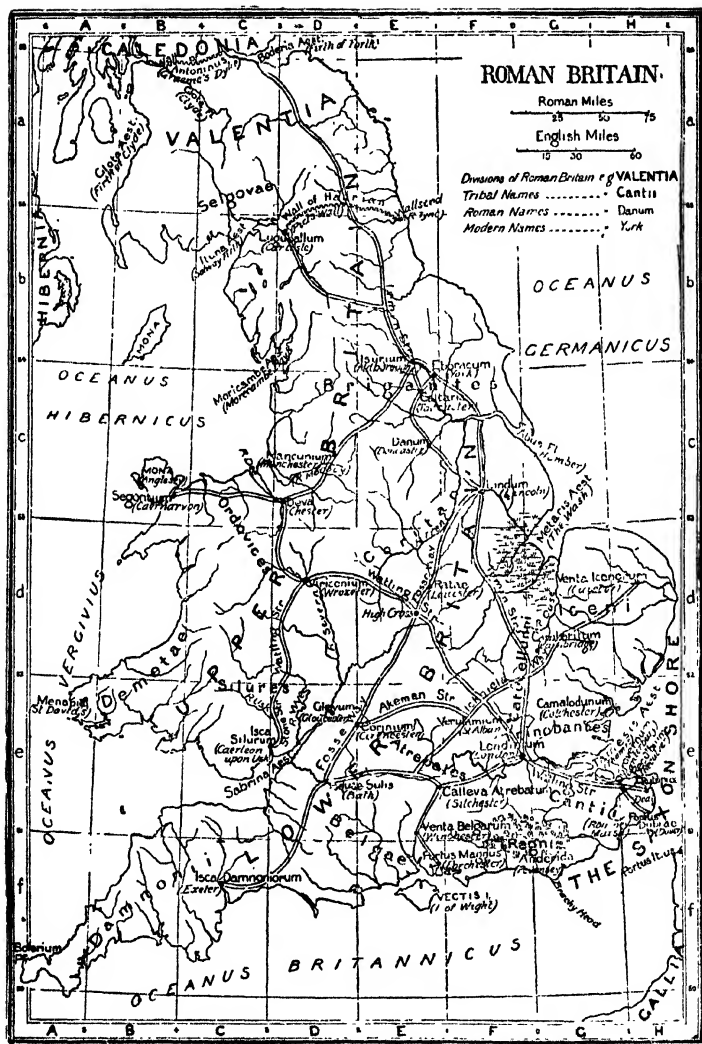
§ 10. **The Protestant Revolution, 1660-1688.**—Our eighth book will show how the attempt of two Stuart kings to impose their religion, Roman Catholicism, on a hostile majority led to the replacement of the personal kingship by a parliamentary monarchy.

§ 11. **The Rise of Party-Government, 1688-1756.**—Our ninth book will deal with the struggles of the "United Kingdom of Great Britain" (1707) to maintain the Protestant Succession and to obtain trade-facilities in a series of wars against the House of Bourbon: it will also show how the great landowners, who had brought about the Revolution of 1688, obtained a veiled but effective control over both King and Parliament.

§ 12. **The Making and Re-making of Empire, 1756-1793.**—Our tenth book will recount the acquisition of great territories in Canada and India, the severance of the older colonies in America from the Mother Country, the partial restoration of royal authority by George III., the grant of legislative independence to Ireland, and the establishment of the first British colony in Australia.

§ 13. **The Great War and the Industrial Revolution, 1793-1837.**—Our eleventh book will tell the story of the great international struggle which sprang from the French Revolution of 1789, and of the great constitutional struggle which sprang out of the Industrial Revolution within Great Britain.

§ 14. **The Victorian Age, 1837-1901.**—Our twelfth book will sketch the growth of democracy in the Victorian Era: the extension of the franchise, the reform of local government, the rapid alternation of party-ministries within "the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland" (1801), the grant of self-government to the British Colonies—all these illustrate the growth of democracy.



NOTE.—The direction of the principal Roman roads is known, but their names are disputed. The nomenclature here adopted is not accepted by all authorities.

## BOOK I.

### BRITAIN BEFORE THE COMING OF THE ENGLISH.

#### INTRODUCTION.

§ 15. **History of the Land? or of the People?**—Histories of England sometimes commence with the history of the region that is now called England—the southern portion of the island of Britain—sometimes with the history of the people whose immigration to that island gave it its historic name: in either case such histories are compelled to widen their horizon as the varied activity of the mixed nation of which the English people form a part extends first over the whole British Isles, and then—during the last three hundred years or so—over the whole world. The present book conforms to the more usual practice of beginning with the *land* to which the English gave their name, not with the *people* who gave their name to the land. That practice, besides being customary and convenient, has certain advantages on strictly historical grounds. The history of any nation is determined mainly by its geographical circumstances and by its racial composition. Now, in the case of “England,” the geographical circumstances are infinitely more clear and certain—if not more important—than the racial composition of the inhabitants of “England.” The insularity of the British Isles is a matter of *fact*, and is a fact which all authorities, from Shakspeare downwards, recognize as being of the highest importance: the ethnology of the British Isles is a matter of *opinion*, concerning which there is as yet little agreement among the best authorities. We shall start from the sure ground of geography, not from the quicksand of race.

§ 16. **Main Points in the History of Early Britain.**—Our first book will have nothing to say about “England” or the “English”: its subject-matter will be the British Isles in prehistoric and early historic times. Our business will be threefold:—to summarize the main facts known or credibly guessed about the people who inhabited these islands before the dawn of history, and whose descendants undoubtedly form part of the population of these islands to-day; to show how these islands and their inhabitants slowly came within the ken of the civilized peoples that dwelt round the Mediterranean—Phoenicians, Greeks, and Romans; and to trace briefly the history of the attempt—only partly successful—to subdue these islands made by the most powerful of these Mediterranean nations—Rome.



## CHAPTER I.

### EARLY BRITAIN.

§ 17. **The Men of the Old Stone Age.**—If we look at a map of Europe showing the depth of the surrounding seas we observe that at a distance varying from one hundred to three hundred miles west of Ireland and Britain the floor of the ocean makes a sudden dip: the curving line marking this dip marks also the former western coast line of the continent which we call Europe. It was probably while the British Isles still formed part of the Continent—in the period which geologists call the Quaternary or Pleistocene Epoch—that man made his appearance in this land. From the nature of the roughly sharpened flint implements which form almost the only surviving evidence of their existence, these stunted savages are known as “palaeolithic”—the Men of the Old Stone Age. They can be traced in two stages—an earlier, when they dwelt “in the river drift,” and a later, when they dwelt in caves. The chief sign of progress shown by the Cave Men was their ability to make handles to their weapons; but in neither stage did the palaeolithic man cultivate the ground or know other food than the flesh of the wild beasts which he had slain. Like the beasts on which they preyed—for instance, the mammoth and the woolly rhinoceros—these men seem to have been utterly destroyed by a change of climate which covered the north-western parts of Europe with an ice-cap like that which now covers Greenland. In race the men of the Old Stone Age have been supposed to be akin to the *Eskimos*.

§ 18. **The Men of the New Stone Age.**—After the glaciers had begun to melt, and apparently after the British Isles had been separated from the mainland, a fresh set of men appeared here. Their tools and weapons were polished and had some pretensions to regular shape, but they were still made of stone: hence they are distinguished from their predecessors by the name of “neolithic”—the Men of the New Stone Age. In many ways they were more advanced than the men whom they replaced. They spun wool and wove garments of the same; they made a sort of pottery which would

carry water but would not stand fire ; and, unlike their predecessors, who had no regard for their dead, they buried their corpses in *egg-shaped barrows*. They were "short of stature, with long narrow heads, large jaws and high cheek-bones." From the point of view of *race* the men of the New Stone Age are called *Iberians* or *Ivernians*, and are commonly supposed to have been akin to the *Basques*, who still retain a semi-independent existence in the Pyrenaean angle of the Bay of Biscay. They were by no means exterminated by the next batch of settlers ; their type of skull and figure is said to be prevalent in parts of South Wales ; the oldest known names of these islands, "Albion" and "Iernē," have been widely ascribed to an Ivernian origin ; and the known skill of the Ivernians in drawing and carving has often been regarded as the source of whatever artistic skill the present inhabitants possess.

§ 19. **The Men of the Bronze Age.**—During the thousand years immediately preceding the Christian Era there can be traced three successive waves of immigrants into these islands—(1) the Goidels, Gadhaels or Gaels ; (2) the Brythons or Britons ; (3) the Belgae, who came over from the region between the Seine and the Scheldt, part of which now bears their name (*Belgium*). All these new-comers were probably acquainted with the use of metals, and can therefore be broadly distinguished from the older inhabitants as the men of the Bronze Age. These Bronze Men were different not only in degree of civilization but also in race from the Stone Men among whom they settled : they had tall, well-made figures, fair hair, and round heads. It is less certain that all the Bronze Men belonged to the same race ; but as they all seem to have spoken different dialects of the Keltic branch of the "Aryan" family of languages,\* they are commonly spoken of as "Kelts." Each successive set of invaders, as it swarmed into these islands, either displaced or enslaved the previous occupants. That intermarriage took place is shown both by the fact that the *oval* burial mounds of the Stone Men and the *round* barrows in which the Bronze Men placed the ashes of their cremated dead are found in close connection, and by the fact that the Ivernian type of body still predominates in isolated regions where woods or hills afforded a refuge—*e. g.* in South Wales. But whereas the Ivernians adopted the language of their conquerors, the Gaels and the Britons preserved their own several dialects ; and from the prevalence of Gaelic speech in Ireland and the Scottish Highlands it is inferred that the Gaels were driven thither by the

\* See Low's *English Language*, ch. I.

Britons, and there made themselves predominant over the previous inhabitants. The Belgae crossed over from the mainland of Gaul in historic times (§ 20).

§ 20. **Intercourse of Britain with the Civilized World.**—So far our account of the British Isles rests on the scanty and disconnected remains left by their inhabitants and pieced together by archaeologists, philologists, and anthropologists in quite modern times. But as we approach the beginning of the Christian Era we obtain some positive information about the islands from the records of the more civilized peoples of the Mediterranean who were acquainted with the art of writing. Probably the Phœnician merchants of Tyre in Syria, and of Karthage in North Africa (*Tunis*), visited the British Isles; but they kept their knowledge to themselves as a trade secret. The great historian Herodotus, writing in the middle of the fifth century B.C., says that the Phœnicians obtained tin from some "Tin Islands" (*Cassiterides*), which have commonly been regarded as the Scilly Isles and Cornwall. A century later, a geographical treatise, written by the Greek philosopher Aristotle or by one of his pupils, mentions the "Bretanic Islands" by name; and the fact that coins of Aristotle's pupil Alexander the Great have been found here indicates that Greeks had begun to trade so far away. About the same time (330 B.C.), a Greek explorer, Pytheas, starting from the Greek colony of Massalia (*Marseilles*), coasted past the Pillars of Hercules (*Straits of Gibraltar*), and sailed along and beyond the British Isles until he came sufficiently far north to see the "Midnight Sun." Pytheas wrote an account of his explorations; but the fragments which have been preserved by later writers tell us little about these islands. It was probably through his voyage, however, that there sprang up a trade in tin from Cornwall to the Mediterranean: the route was overland to Ictis\* (*Thanet*?), thence by sea to Portus Itius (*Boulogne*?), thence overland to the Rhone, and by boat down that river and along the coast to the emporium of Massalia. The existence of regular commercial intercourse through Gaul with the civilized world and the migration of Belgic tribes from Gaul to Southern Britain are the main facts known about the British Isles during the interval between the visits of the Greek Pytheas and of the Roman Julius Caesar (330-55 B.C.).

§ 21. **First Invasion of Julius Caesar, 55 B.C.**—It was during the same interval that the Republic of Rome subdued all the countries lying round the Mediterranean Sea—including the Karthaginians

\* Some authorities identify Ictis with St. Michael's Mount in Cornwall.

and the various fragments of Alexander's Graeco-Macedonian Empire—and was thus brought into conflict with the more or less barbarous peoples that occupied the hinterlands of her dominions. In the sixth decade before the commencement of the Christian Era Gaius Julius Caesar, the governor of the Roman province of Gaul—which included what is now the northern part of the kingdom of Italy and the southern part of the French Republic—undertook the conquest of “all Gaul”—the region lying between this province and the Western Ocean. His enterprise, which sprang partly out of his desire to extend the dominions of Rome, partly out of a desire to enhance his own reputation, led him on to attack the tribes which, from their homes beyond the north-western and the north-eastern frontiers of Gaul, had aided the tribes of Gaul in their struggles against Rome. Hence it was that in the summer of 55 B.C., after an expedition across the Rhine into Germany, Caesar made a kind of “reconnaissance in force” into Britain. He found it difficult to effect a landing, still more difficult to maintain his foothold when he had landed; and, the season being late, he deemed it prudent to withdraw into Gaul.

§ 22. **Caesar's Second Invasion, 54 B.C.**—Profiting by this experience, Caesar next year began his operations earlier, and took with him a larger number of troops and ships. Landing without opposition somewhere near Deal, he fortified a camp on the coast; then, defeating the Cantii—whose name survives in the county-name of *Kent*—he pushed up country beyond the Thames. Resistance to the invaders was organized by Caswallon or Cassivelaunus, a chieftain north of the Thames, whose head-quarters are supposed to have occupied the site of the later town of Verulamium (*St. Albans*). Besides ruling his own people, Caswallon was the head-king of various subject tribes, some of which—e. g. the Trinobantes, who lived in the region now called *Essex*—deserted him and helped the Romans to storm his stronghold. Caswallon thereupon sent in his submission, which was accepted. Caesar exacted tribute and a promise not to help the Gauls; and, taking with him hostages as security for the fulfilment of these terms, he withdrew from the island. Owing to a series of internal struggles within the Roman Republic which changed both its constitution and its policy, Britain was left undisturbed for nearly a hundred years. The testimony of the coins found shows that friendly intercourse with Gaul, now in rapid process of romanization, continued and increased, and that civilized habits were spreading from Gaul over South Britain. The most notable Briton personality during this time was Cunobelin—Shakspeare's “radiant Cymbeline”

—who early in the first century of our Era recovered the power of his ancestor Caswallon, and shifted his capital to the head-town of the Trinobantes—Camalodunum (*Colchester*).

§ 23. **Caesar's Account of Britain.**—In the fourth and fifth books of his *Notes on the Gallic War*, Caesar gives us our earliest connected account of the British Isles. He says little about Ireland, and knows nothing definite about the northern part of Britain: the only tribes with whom he came into direct contact were the comparatively recent immigrants from Gaul. Naturally, therefore, he saw a great resemblance between Briton and Gallic customs which may or may not have extended all over the island. He notes that the peoples living nearest Gaul were the most civilized—wearing woven garments instead of merely skins; that all alike had a tribal organization; that in every branch of life they were much under the influence of a priestly caste—the Druids; that these Druids offered human beings in sacrifice, and taught the doctrine of the transmigration of souls. The principal facts in Caesar's description are these:—

“The interior of Britain is inhabited by tribes which according to their own tradition are indigenous in the island. The country along the coast is inhabited by those who, for purposes of plunder and of war, have come over from Belgium (almost all of whom are called by the name of the state to which they belonged when they came to the island), and, after making their attack, have stayed there and begun to cultivate the land. There is an immense population, the houses are very numerous and almost exactly like those of Gaul, and cattle abound. They use either a gold coinage or, instead of coin, iron bars adjusted to a certain weight. In this country tin is found in the inland districts, iron in those on the coast, but of the latter there is but a scanty supply: the bronze they use is imported. There is timber of every kind, as in Gaul, except beech and pine. They do not think it lawful to eat the hare, the hen, or the goose: however, they keep these animals for their diversion and pleasure. The climate is more temperate than in Gaul, the cold being less severe. The island is triangular in shape, one side of it facing Gaul. . . . Of all these peoples by far the most civilized are those who inhabit Cantium, a district the whole of which borders on the sea, and their customs are not very different from those of Gaul. The inland peoples as a rule do not sow corn, but live on milk and flesh, and are clad in skins. But all the Britons stain themselves with woad, which produces a blue colour, and thus they are more alarming to look on in battle; and they wear their hair long, and are shaved all over the body except on the head and the upper lip.” [*Gallic War*, Book v, Ch. xiv-xvi.]

## CHAPTER II.

### ROMAN BRITAIN, 43-410 A.D.

§ 24. **Britain under the Emperor Claudius, 43-54.**—In 43 A.D. the Emperor Claudius, abandoning the anti-expansion policy of his predecessors, sent Aulus Plautius to occupy Britain. With the help of the Regni—whose name survives in *Ringwood*, Hants—Aulus Plautius overthrew the sons of Cunobelin, slaying Togidumnus and driving Caradoc (Caractacus) into exile, and established Roman influence in South Britain. Claudius himself came over to inspect his new territories, and received the formal submission of many chiefs, who had previously made similar submissions to stronger native chiefs. But when Ostorius Scapula, the successor of Aulus Plautius (47-51), endeavoured to turn a nominal overlordship into a real control, revolts broke out which involved a second conquest. Ostorius not only established a military colony in Caradoc's old capital, Camalodunum, to guard South Britain, but also attempted to extend the Roman dominions. He overran the Midlands and attacked the western mountaineers—especially the Silures on the Wye and the Ordovices on the upper Severn and Dee. Though he captured Caradoc, the Catuvellaunian chief whom the Ivernian Silures had chosen to lead them, in 51, Ostorius was unable to subdue the regions beyond the Severn. To guard the western frontier, therefore, he fortified and garrisoned camps at Deva (*Chester*) on the Dee, Viriconium on the Severn (*Wroxeter*), and Isca Silurum on the Usk (*Caerleon*). The region west of the line connecting these three stations has always tended to have a more or less distinct history of its own (cf. §§ 41, 52, 85, 162, 163).

§ 25. **Britain under the Emperor Nero, 54-68.**—During the reign of Claudius' successor, Nero, Suetonius Paullinus was Governor of Britain for four years (59-62). In 61 he conquered the island of Mona (*Anglesey*), and put to death the Druids who from that centre had stimulated resistance to Roman rule. During his absence in the North-West, there broke out in the South-East a formidable insurrec-

tion, caused by the cruelty and oppression which so often accompany the pioneer work of civilized states among uncivilized races. The leader of the revolt—variously named Buddig, Boudicca, and Boadicea—was Queen of the Iconi, a tribe occupying the eastern peninsula of Britain, later known as East Anglia (§ 40). The insurgents stormed Camalodunum and other Roman stations, but were speedily crushed by Suetonius. The leader committed suicide, and her followers were slaughtered no less ruthlessly than they had slaughtered their oppressors: it is said that about 70,000 fell on each side during the struggle. The rising, though it failed to expel the Romans, attracted the attention of the central government and brought the period of misrule to a close.

§ 26. **Britain under Agricola, 78-84.**--The next notable Governor was Gnaeus Julius Agricola, who during seven years' rule did all he could to give his province good government and to protect it from the attacks of the northern tribes. His son-in-law, the historian Tacitus, has given us a full account of Agricola's work, and of the state of Britain in his time. Agricola educated the natives—especially the children of the chiefs—in Roman ways; he reconquered the region west of the Severn; he pushed north of the Humber, and absorbed the buffer-state of the Brigantes into the Roman province, establishing a garrison at Eboracum (*York*): he built a line of forts—sometimes known as "Agricola's Wall" (§ 27)—across the isthmus between the Firth of Forth and the Firth of Clyde; in 84 he defeated the wild Caledonians who dwelt beyond that isthmus, and who probably came of a mixed Ivernian and Goidelic stock (§ 19), in a great battle at the Graupian Hill, near the mouth of the River Tay; he sent his fleet round the north of the island; and he meditated the conquest of Ireland. This "forward policy" was not approved by the home authorities; and Agricola was recalled by the Emperor Domitian.

§ 27. **Limits, Frontiers, and Divisions of Roman Britain.**—Agricola practically fixed the limits of Roman Britain. No attempt was ever made to conquer Ireland; and though there were occasionally what we should call punitive expeditions or "little wars" in the hilly country beyond the Forth, no serious attempt was made to subdue the Caledonians. The northern limit of the Empire varied, in the island province as on the continent of Europe. The Emperor Hadrian, during his visit in 121, ordered the construction of a wall across the narrow neck of land between the mouths of the rivers Tyne and Solway. During the reign of Hadrian's successor, Antoninus

Pius (138-161), the frontier was again advanced to the line of Agricola's forts, which were connected by the earthen rampart (*vallum*) now known as Graeme's Dyke. The Emperor Septimius Severus, after invading the country of the Caledonians, fell back on Hadrian's Wall, which he strengthened before he died at Eboracum in 211. A century and a half later the region between the Forth-Clyde and the Tyne-Solway lines of fortification was again occupied and constituted as a separate province, named Valentia in honour of the reigning Emperor Valens (364-378). Valentia is the only one of the five subdivisions of Roman Britain the position of which is known. But this fivefold subdivision of Britain was of less permanent importance than the usual twofold division for administrative purposes—Upper Britain (N.W.) and Lower Britain (S.E.). During the latter portion of the Roman period a military officer, called "Duke of the Britains" (*Dux Britanniarum*), ruled Upper Britain, having his head-quarters at Eboracum, while a naval officer, called "Count of the Saxon Shore" (*Comes Littoris Saxonici*), ruled Lower Britain, having his head-quarters at Londinium (*London*). Both officers were subordinate to a civil superior called a Vicar.

§ 28. **Material Improvements in Roman Britain**—For about four centuries South Britain remained a comparatively remote and unimportant dependency of the Roman Empire. There was no new migration of a people into the island like the previous immigration of the Goidels or the Brythons (§ 19): the existing population was merely subjected to a new ruling class supported by a small but disciplined force of foreign mercenaries. This military occupation of Britain by a civilized Power brought about many great changes in the face of the land, and smaller, but still considerable, changes in the habits of the subject people. It was primarily for military purposes that a network of roads was constructed, connecting and guarded by the garrison-towns. Some of the roads followed old Briton tracks; some of the towns occupied old Briton sites; but towns and roads alike, whether old or new, were so solidly built that they were used long after the dominion of their designers had passed away. The roads were wide, straight, drained, and paved (*strata*—hence "street"): they were, therefore, usable in all weathers. The towns were so well placed that most of them, whether they have maintained a continuous existence or not, are still important centres in our own times. The names of some of them still testify to their Roman origin. The Welsh prefix *caer*- (probably),



the English suffixes *-caster*, *-cester*, *-chester*, *-xeter* (certainly), bear witness to the fact that there were Roman camps (*castra*) at the places whose modern names contain those components: e.g. *Oxarnarvon*, *Caerleon*, *Doncaster*, *Leicester*, *Manchester*, *Exeter*. The principal towns, as well as the roads connecting them, are shown in the map of Roman Britain (p. 4). The roads and towns which came into existence for the military purpose of keeping order were equally serviceable for more peaceful purposes. The towns became centres of civilization—places where the neighbouring natives learned to acquire new wants and to desire more comfort in their homes: the roads became highways for the commerce which catered for the new wants. As the population increased in numbers owing to the cessation of the old inter-tribal warfare, and in wants owing to the spread of civilization, more land had to be brought into cultivation: hence forests were cleared and swamps were drained, until Britain became so important a wheat-exporting country that it was called “the Granary of the North.” Besides wheat, Britain also exported tin, lead, hunting-dogs, slaves, and oysters.

§ 29. **Social Changes in Roman Britain.**—The material improvements effected by the Romans in Britain were not accompanied by a complete romanization of the Britons. The Gauls across the Channel adopted the language of their conquerors: the Britons for the most part retained their own Keltic speech, however much it was affected by Latin elements. Roman rule brought with it greater peace and greater prosperity, more comforts and fewer hardships; in the reign of the Emperor Caracalla, the son of Severus (211–217), it raised the Britons to the position of “Roman citizens”; it gave greater facilities for the entrance of Christian missionaries (§ 30); but it did not tend to unite Britons in a political organization animated by a national patriotism. Hence the main events in the political history of Britain during the Roman period are integral parts of the history of the Roman Empire. The earlier emperors treated the province mainly as an outpost against the northern barbarians. Somewhat later, when the Empire was passing through divisions and civil strife, persons commanding the military forces in Britain attempted to use their power not to create an independent state in Britain, but to gain the sole emperorship: such were Carausius and his murderer Allectus, who successively rebelled against the Emperor Diocletian (284–305); such were Maximus and Constantine, who a century later—in 383 and 409 respectively—took their troops over to the mainland in the vain hope of gaining the Imperial purple.

By that time the Empire was being so hard pressed by the barbarian tribes on its frontier that it could not spare troops to replace those who had been thus led away to serve the purposes of private ambition; and when the Britons implored the Emperor Honorius to send them aid against their foreign foes he told them that they must look to their own defence. This refusal of Honorius in 410 marks the end of the Roman occupation of Britain: his impotence was proved in the same year by the sack of Rome by Alaric, King of the Visigoths. Britain dropped so completely out of the knowledge of the Romans of Italy that in the sixth century they regarded the island as the inaccessible place set apart for the habitation of the spirits of the dead.

§ 30. **Christianity in the British Isles.**— Besides paved streets and walled towns, drained marshes and tilled land, the Romans left behind them the beginnings of a Christian Church. Christianity was apparently introduced towards the end of the second century: Irenaeus does not mention a Briton Church in his list of Christian Churches in 177, whereas Tertullian, writing about thirty years later, speaks of the “haunts of the Britons” as “subjugated to Christ.” About a century later—probably during the persecution of Diocletian—Britain is said to have had its first Christian martyr in Alban, the resting-place of whose bones is marked by the present name of Verulamium (*St. Albans*). One of Diocletian’s colleagues in the Empire, Constantius—who ruled Britain and who died at York in 306—was the father of the first Christian Emperor of Rome—Constantine the Great (306–337). Three Briton bishops took part in the Church Council held at Arles, on the Lower Rhone, in 314, during the reign of Constantine. During the fourth century the Briton Church produced the notable heretic Morgan—a name which the Greeks spelt Pelagios—and began to send missions to the heathen parts of the British Isles. Shortly before the Roman evacuation, it is said, Ninian began to evangelize the Picts of Galloway, fixing his head-quarters at Whithorn; and some time afterwards Patrick is reported to have crossed from his home on the Clyde to Ireland and “preached Christ to the heathen Fenians”—as one of the primitive Irish peoples was named. But Briton Christianity in Roman times seems to have been but a feeble growth (§ 43): it is not certain either that these two missionaries, Ninian and Patrick, ever existed, or that, if they existed, they owed their impulse towards missionary work to the Briton Church of which they were members.



## BOOK II.

### *THE MAKING OF ENGLAND, 410-979.*

#### INTRODUCTION.

§ 31. General Survey of the Period, 410-979.—The Roman Empire, before Britain ceased to be a part of it, had divided into two sections which seldom came together again. The East Roman Empire, whose capital was fixed at Constantinople, contrived to beat back the Goths, Huns, Avars, Bulgars, Russians, and other barbarians who assailed it from the north, and to hold at bay for centuries the Parthians, Persians, Arabs, and Turks who successively attacked it from the south and east: it maintained its existence as a Christian State till 1453, and as a Muhammadan State (still called *Roum* or *Rome*) until this day. The West Roman Empire, which had no fixed capital, was partitioned by its barbarian invaders in the fifth century; its line of Emperors came to an end in 476; but three centuries later the name of Roman Emperor was restored in the West (§§ 33, 35) and survived for a thousand years—until 1806. In modern Europe the Eastern Empire is represented partly by the Ottoman, and partly by the Russian, Empire: the Western Empire is represented by various states, two of whose rulers have, in the nineteenth century, assumed the imperial style, as “Emperor of Austria” (1804) and “German Emperor” (1871). Broadly speaking, the British Isles shared the fortunes of the West Roman Empire, even after they had been cast off by its ruler. This generalization is illustrated by the main facts of West European and British history during the six centuries following the Roman evacuation of Britain. Britain, like the Western mainland, was successively overrun by heathen tribes mainly of Teutonic “race” (ch. iii.), rechristianized partly by Keltic, partly by Roman missionaries (ch. iv.), ravaged by the Northmen (ch. v.), and consolidated into national kingdoms, all looking to Rome, no longer as a temporal mistress, but as a spiritual mother (ch. vi.).

§ 32. **The Wandering of the Nations.**—Towards the end of the fourth century there began a great restlessness among the inhabitants of North Central Europe which led to what is called “The Wandering of the Nations.” Probably under the pressure of the Huns and other Mongol immigrants from Asia, a number of tribes, who may be generically described as “Teutons” or “Germans,” but who did not necessarily belong to the same race, swarmed into the Roman Empire. In the western portion they succeeded in making various settlements which have left their mark on the more or less romanized peoples among whom they planted themselves. The mere geographical extent of their influence is well illustrated by the district-names of modern Europe. For instance, the Vandals have left their name in *Andalusia*—where they rested before crossing to Africa to meet destruction by the orders of the Emperor Justinian (527–565); the Burgundians, in *Burgundy*—a name given at different times to different parts of the Rhone Valley; the Longobardi, in *Lombardy*; the Suevi, in *Swabia*; the Franks, in *France*; the Saxons, in various parts of Germany (*Saxony*, *Saxe-Coburg*, etc.), and of Britain (*Sussex*, *Essex*); and the English, in *England*. Our concern is with these last movements; but it is well to remember that the Teutonic migrations into Britain were only a few out of many similar wanderings of the age.

§ 33. **The Conversion of the German Immigrants.**—The invading hordes of Germans were broadly characterized by vigorous bodies, a healthy home life, simple institutions, and great loyalty to the tribal chief. Usually they despised the *people* whom they conquered, but they were much impressed by the political *institutions*, ecclesiastical as well as civil, of the Roman Empire. Hence those Germans who settled in the thoroughly romanized parts of the Roman Empire were readily absorbed by the vanquished: in Italy, in Gaul, and in Spain they adopted the law and language of Rome, and now form a part of what are called Latin or Romance nations. In the less completely romanized parts of the Roman Empire—*e. g.* Britain and the valleys of the Rhine and Danube—they kept their own language, if not always their own laws. But in either case they had all accepted the Christian religion before the end of the eighth century; and whether they owed their conversion to Keltic, or Oriental, or Roman missionaries, they all came to regard Rome as their Mother-Church. The Bishop of Rome—“commonly called the Pope”—partly because the mere name of Rome had acquired a certain awe, partly because the See of Rome was the only episcopal see in Western Europe that

claimed Apostolical foundation, naturally stepped into the place of the Emperor of Rome as the rallying-point of the motley nationalities in Western Christendom. It was at the initiative of the Pope that the Roman Empire in the West was, in 800, revived in the person of the Frankish king, Charles the Great (§§ 52-54).

§ 34. **The Ravages of the Northmen.**—Before the converted Germans had time to settle down fairly into civilized ways they were exposed to fresh attacks from without. On the Mediterranean sea-face of Western Europe their assailants were the Saracens, the followers of the Arab prophet Muhammad (*d.* 632): on the Atlantic sea-face of Western Europe their assailants were the more savage sea-pirates from the north. The ravages of the Northmen were at their worst during the ninth century—the only portion of the mediæval period that can fairly be called “the Dark Ages”: they helped to destroy the revived Roman Empire on the mainland, and they put back the growing unity of the Teuton tribes in South Britain.

§ 35. **Rise of National Kingdoms.**—After a time the Northmen followed the example of their German predecessors in adopting Christianity and being absorbed by the peoples among whom they settled. They thus helped to strengthen the various national kingdoms which had been unable to drive them away. Hence the tenth century witnessed the growth of large and strong monarchies not only in Scandinavia, whence the Northmen had gone forth to ravage and to conquer, but in the various regions of Western Europe, wherein they had settled. Otto the Great, the Saxon king of the Germans, who revived the Roman Empire in 962, and Hugh Capet, who became King of the West Franks (*France*) in 987, have their analogues in the great West Saxon kings who effected the consolidation of the English in the tenth century—Eadweard the Elder, Æthelstan, and Eadgar. Imitating their contemporaries on the Continent, these kings assumed imperial titles (§§ 63, 70): whereby they implied that they not only ruled all the English but also claimed supremacy over all the peoples in Britain.

**BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE.**—The relations between English History and General History of Europe—the former cannot properly be understood without some knowledge of the latter—can be profitably studied in the books mentioned below. The first-named book is the best suited for young people, and it gives useful hints regarding further sources of information; the third is distinctly a book for adults, but for them it is invaluable; the second is so highly condensed that it is hardly intelligible to a beginner.

- (a) G. B. ADAMS, *European History* . . . . . Macmillan, 6s. 6d. net.  
 (b) E. A. FREEMAN, *General Sketch of European History* . . . . . Macmillan, 3s. 6d.  
 (c) JAMES BRYCE, *The Holy Roman Empire* . . . . . Macmillan, 7s. 6d.

## CHAPTER III.

### THE COMING OF THE ENGLISH, 449-613.

#### TRADITIONAL DATES OF THE CHIEF TEUTONIC SETTLEMENTS.

##### I. "JUTES."

449. *Kent*, under Hengist and Horsa.

470. Isle of Wight.

##### II. "SAXONS."

477. *Sussex*, under Ælle.

495. *Wessex*, under Cerdic and Cynric.

527. *Essex*, under Ercenwin.

Conquest  
of the  
"Saxon Shore."

##### III. "ENGLISH."

547. *Bernicia*, under Ida } united by Æthelric to form

560. *Deira*, under Iffa } *Northumbria*, 588.

575. *East Anglia* (North Folk and South Folk), under Uffa.

585. *Mercia* (which ultimately included the *Gaiinas*, *Lindiswaras*, *Hwiccas*, *Hecanas*, etc.), under Croda.

NOTE.—The italicized names mark the seven kingdoms of the so-called Heptarchy.

§ 36. "The Groans of the Britons," 446.—The heathen assailants against whom the Britons sought in vain the help of the Emperor Honorius (§ 29) were of three kinds: the Picts from Caledonia, the Scots from Ireland, and various German tribes from the lowlands lying round the mouth of the Elbe. In a petition addressed in 446 to Aëtius—a Roman general who, five years later, by his great victory at Chalons on the River Marne delivered the Gauls from the Huns—the Britons thus expressed their sad plight: "The barbarians drive us to the sea; the sea drives us back to the barbarians; between them we have but the choice of two kinds of death—slaughter or drowning." From the wording of these *Groans of the Britons* it may be inferred that the attacks of the Picts, who made their raids by land, were at that time held to be more formidable than the raids of the sea-faring Germans. In that case there may be some truth in the legend, that the Germans obtained their first

settlement in the land—the island of Thanet—as a reward for aiding Vortigern, King of Kent, against the Picts.

§ 37. **Settlement of the Jutes in Kent, 449.**—The received date for the settlement of the Jutes in Kent is 449; but it is to be noted that that date, like most of the dates and names exhibited above, rests on no contemporary evidence. It is not even known for certain whether Arthur, the hero of the Briton resistance to the heathen invaders, was a real or an imaginary person; and the scenes of his adventures have been variously located all along the west country from Clyde to Cornwall. But the traditional dates all seem to justify the inference that the Germans directed their earliest attacks against the southern parts of Britain. These parts, being the most civilized, were the wealthiest and most attractive; but they were also the most difficult to attack. All along the coast, from the Thames to the Solent, there stood the fortresses erected by the Counts of the Saxon Shore (§ 27). It took the Teutonic invaders nearly two generations (449-520) to conquer the strip of country protected by these fortresses on the sea-front and shut off from the interior by forests that have now for the most part disappeared (Map, p. 16). Towards the end of the fifth century the Picts seem to have been diverted from the plunder of the Britons by the necessity of defending themselves against the Scots who, crossing from Ireland to Kintyre, began that attack which ultimately resulted in the transference of the name "Scotland" from Erin to Caledonia (cf. §§ 45, 60, 64, 81).

§ 38. **Jutes, Saxons, and English.**—The German tribes who flocked over to Britain were the Jutes, the Saxons, and the Engle. These last are often called "Angles," which represents the Latin spelling of their name (*Angli*), or "English," which represents the name of their language (*Englisc*). The Jutes, Saxons, and Angles may or may not have been of the same race, but they all spoke a similar language—varieties of Low German; and no perceptible difference can be traced between the religious and secular institutions of the three peoples. The Jutes are supposed to have come from the northward-pointing peninsula which still bears their name; the Saxons from the low-lying lands that stretch along the mouths of the Ems and Weser; the English from the intervening territory now known as Schleswig and Holstein. The Jutes played a minor part throughout, founding only one important settlement, in Kent (449-473). At first the Saxons took a more prominent place than the English: the Roman officer appointed to guard the Narrow



Seas against the northern vikings or sea-rovers had been called Count of the *Saxon Shore* (§ 27); and the Keltic-speaking peoples whom the Germans attacked call them Saxons (*Sassenach*, *Sassenagh*, or *Saeson*) to this day. But in the long run the English—whose settlements in Britain were more numerous and more extensive than those of the Saxons and Jutes, and whose dialect was the first to express itself in literature (§ 49)—gave their name to the whole people and to the portion of Britain which the three peoples won for themselves.

§ 39. **The Saxon Settlements, 477-584.**—The first Saxon settlements were made on the south coast. Landing at Selsey, one horde of invaders conquered the region lying between the sea and the Andredes-Weald in the course of about fourteen years (477-491): Chichester, the cathedral city of Sussex, derives its name from Cissa, one of the sons of Ælle, the leader of these South Saxons. In 495, four years after the South Saxons had completed their conquest by the storming of Anderida (*Pevensey*), another horde landed at the head of Southampton Water. These were the pioneers of various tribes—Gewissas, Wilsaetas, Somersaetas, etc.—who gradually combined, together with the Jutes in the Isle of Wight, to form the West Saxon folk. In 520 their leader Cerdic was defeated, possibly by King Arthur, in a great battle at Mons Badon (*Badbury* in Dorset?); and for a whole generation the West Saxon settlement made no further advance. Meanwhile, that part of the Saxon Shore which lay immediately north of the Thames was being assailed by war-bands which came to call themselves the East Saxons (*Essex*) and the Middle Saxons (*Middlesex*). To the share of the Middle Saxons fell the important Roman town of Londinium (*London*), concerning the fate of which much has been guessed but nothing is known. About the middle of the sixth century the fortunes of the West Saxons began to rise again under the leadership of Cerdic's grandson Ceawlin (560-591). Advancing first in an easterly direction, Ceawlin came into collision with the westward-expanding Jutes of Kent at Wibbandun (*Wimbledon*) in 568. Then, turning north, he defeated the Britons at Bedford three years later; but instead of marching down the Ouse, and so coming into conflict with the Anglian invaders (§ 40), Ceawlin faced westwards, and in 577 cut his way to Severn Sea by his notable victory at Deorham near Bath. But when he pushed up the Severn valley he was defeated at Fethanlea (*Faddiley*, near Chester?) in 584. Besides overrunning much country and severely crippling the Britons (§ 41), Ceawlin

had in these campaigns enriched his followers with the plunder of the Roman towns of Aquae Sulis (*Bath*), Corinium (*Cirencester*), Glevum (*Gloucester*), and Viriconium (*Wroxeter*).

§ 40. **The English Settlements, 547-613.**—It was during this great burst of West Saxon activity under Ceawlin that the English proper began either to form settlements on the east coast or to amalgamate their existing war-bands into more formidable groups. Thus at the end of the sixth century the North Folk and the South Folk, who settled in the region parted off from the Midlands by the Fens, are found united under one strong king—Rædwald of East Anglia (599-617). By that time various independent settlements had been made on the many navigable rivers which drain the Midlands into the Humber and the Wash: such, for instance, were the Men of the March or Borders—who, under the name of Mercians, were to absorb their kinsfolk—the Middle English, the South English, the Lindiswaras, whose name incorporates the Roman place-name of Lindum (*Lincoln*) and survives in the modern “part” of Lincolnshire called *Lindsey*, and the Gainas, whose name survives in the town-name of *Gainsborough*. But the principal English settlements were those stretching from Humber to Forth, which blended first into two—Bernicia (Forth to Tees), and Deira (Tees to Humber)—and later into one, Northumbria. This latter unification was effected in 588 by Æthelric of Bernicia; and his son Æthelfrith (593-617) devoted the strength of the joint kingdom to a great struggle with the Britons north and west of the Pennine Chain. In 603 he defeated a combined army of North Britons, Picts, and Scots at Dægsastan (*Dawstone*, between Jedburgh and Carlisle), and in 613 he overthrew a great West Briton army near Chester.

§ 41. **Survey of the English Conquest.**—The West Saxon victory of Deorham in 577, and the Northumbrian victory of Chester in 613, together form the chief landmarks in the story of the English Conquest. By bringing the frontiers of the invaders to the western sea, the two battles broke the Britons into three distinct masses—the South Welsh of Damnonia (*Cornwall* and *Devon*), the West Welsh of Cambria (*Wales*), and the North Welsh of Cumbria (*Cumberland* or *Strathclyde*). Some of these names sprang up in the struggle: the English, not being able to understand their enemies’ speech, called them foreigners or *Welsh* (hence *Wales*, *Cornwall*); the Britons, feeling the need of union against their heathen assailants, dropped their tribal feuds and called themselves comrades or *Cymry* (hence *Cambria*, *Cumbria*). At first—during the conquest of the

Saxon Shore—the struggle seems to have been to the death on both sides—as at Anderida (§ 39): in the later phases of the struggle, quarter was given. Hence, though different dialects of English had become the predominant speech in Eastern Britain from Forth to Solent within two centuries of the Roman evacuation (410–613), it is probable that, except in the extreme south-east, a considerable intermixture of blood took place between the homelings Britons and the comelings English. So many of the expelled Britons fled over sea into the Armoric peninsula that it became known as *Brittany*.

§ 42. **Institutions of the Heathen English.**—When the English came to Britain they were probably in much the same stage of development as Tacitus, the biographer of Agricola (§ 26), depicts in his *Germania*. Each tribe consisted of a number of small village communities (*tuns*, or townships) headed by an elected chief, whom Tacitus calls *princeps*, but whom the English themselves spoke of as an *ealdorman* in time of peace or as a *heretoga* in time of war. Sometimes these villages were grouped together into cantons (*pagi*), each of which, according to Tacitus, was expected to send forth one hundred warriors to join the host of the tribe. It is supposed that the *hundred*—one of the local divisions which still exists in England, though it has long ceased to possess any practical importance—is connected in origin with this part of the primitive German military system. The communities consisted of both the unfree and the free. The unfree (*theows*) included debtors, captives in war, and those who, in days when famine was much more common than it is now, had “sold themselves for bread.” The free fell into two classes—a small noble class (*eorls*), and a larger non-noble class (*ceorls*). The principal occupation of the *ceorls* was agriculture, while that of the *eorls* was fighting: they formed a kind of bodyguard round the chief. They were his companions (*comites*, *gesiths*): they defended him, and he fed them as their loaf-giver (*hlaford*) or lord. All the freemen of the community (*folc*) had a voice in the general management of its affairs: for everyday matters the chief held council with the wise men (*witan*) of the community. This system is supposed to have undergone various modifications in being transplanted from the mainland to this island: in particular, the *ealdorman* or *heretoga*, during the prolonged strain of offensive warfare, obtained higher powers and more permanent tenure of office under the new title of *King* (*cýning* = father of a family).

## CHAPTER IV.

### THE CHRISTIANIZATION OF THE ENGLISH, 597-796.

#### CHIEF MISSIONS AMONG THE ENGLISH.

##### I. ROMAN.

**563-597.** Columba, the Scots evangelist from Ireland, starting from his head-quarters at Hii (*Iona*), conducts missions among the Picts.

**597.** Augustine in Kent: *Canterbury* and *Rochester*.

**627.** Paullinus in Northumbria: *York*.

**631.** Felix in East Anglia: *Dunwich*, \* *Elmharn* \* (later, *Thetford* \*).

**635.** Birinus in Wessex: *Dorchester*, *Winchester*, *Sherborne* \*.

**664.** Synod of Streonshalch (*Whitby*), assembled by King Oswin.

**681.** Wilfred in Sussex: *Selsey* \* (later, *Chichester*).

##### II. KELTIC.

**531.** Fursey in East Anglia: *Dunwich* \*.

**634.** Aidan in Northumbria: *Lindisfarne* \*.

**653.** Cedd in Essex: *London* (first founded by Mellitus, **604**).

**653.** Chad in Mercia: *Lichfield*, *Worcester*, *Hereford*, *Leicester* \*.

NOTE.—The names in italics represent episcopal sees: those marked with an asterisk became extinct before the Norman Conquest.

#### I. SUPREMACY OF NORTHUMBRIA, 593-685.

**§ 43. The Mission of Augustine, 597.**—The onslaughts of the heathen English had the effect of quickening the Christianity of the Britons (§ 30): their common religion joined with common danger to draw them together in political union. The fifth century witnessed their evangelization of the Scots in Ireland: the sixth century witnessed the beginnings of Keltic missionary enterprise, not only among the Picts of North Britain, but also among the barbarian invaders of Western Europe. It was not till the seventh century that the Briton Christians sufficiently forgave their English enemies to begin preaching the gospel to them. In 597, the year of the death of Columba, the Scots missionary to the Picts, Christian missionaries first came to the English: these, however, came not from the neighbouring Keltic Church, but from the distant Church of Rome. That year the Benedictine monk Augustine, sent by Pope Gregory the Great (590-604), landed in Kent and obtained leave to

preach Christianity. The way had been already paved for his mission by the marriage of the reigning king Æthelberht (568-616) to Bertha, the Christian daughter of the Frankish King who reigned at Paris. It was partly in consequence of similar marriage connections, partly because Æthelberht was the most powerful English king of his day, that the kingdoms of Essex and Northumbria received their first Christian missionaries from Kent. Mellitus and Paullinus, who set up their bishop's stools at London and York respectively, were subordinate to the successors of Augustine in the archiepiscopal see of Canterbury. Political causes, which thus contributed to the rapid spread of Christianity among the English, also led to various reactions, in the course of which all the three kingdoms so far evangelized passed under the sway of non-Christian kings.

§ 44. **The Reign of Eadwin the Deiran, 617-633.**—In 617, Rædwald of East Anglia, who had accepted Christianity at the bidding of his Kentish overlord, helped Eadwin, the exiled representative of the royal house of Deira, to overthrow his brother-in-law Æthelfrith in a great battle on the Idle, near Retford. Eadwin followed up the conquering policy of his predecessor: he subdued the forest of Elmet, the principal tract in Northumbria still occupied by the Britons; he established in Lothian the fortress that still bears his name (*Edinburgh*); he placed a fleet upon the western sea which made Mona an "English island" (*Anglesey*); and, to mark his power, he adopted insignia of royalty, hitherto unknown among the English. His marriage with the daughter of Æthelberht, King of Kent, led to his conversion by Paullinus in 627. Six years later he was defeated and slain at Heathfield (*Hatfield*), near Doncaster, by the united forces of the Welsh king Cadwallon, and Penda, King of the Mercians. Penda had absorbed all the English settlements in the Midlands, as well as the isolated West Saxon settlements in the Welsh Marches, into the kingdom of Greater Mercia.

§ 45. **The Reign of Oswald the Bernician, 633-642.**—On the death of Eadwin without children, the kingdom of Northumbria passed successively to the sons of his sister by Æthelfrith—Oswald and Oswiu. In their exile the brothers had been sheltered by the Scottish monks of Iona: and in their reigns they encouraged their former protectors to evangelize not only Northumbria, but also the neighbouring kingdoms. The work of Paullinus, which had had little time to grow before the disaster at Heathfield, was done again in Northumbria by Aidan and his successors, Colman and Cuthbert, and was extended southwards by Chad in Mercia, and by Cedd in

**Essex.** In 635 Oswald established himself firmly on the throne by defeating Cadwallon at Heavenfield, near Wall's End on Tyne, and also acquired the overlordship of Wessex. The West Saxon acceptance of Christianity and of Northumbrian supremacy in the same year, marked an alliance of the Christian States against Penda, who had constituted himself the champion of the older and more militant religion of the English. In 642 Oswald fell in battle against Penda at Maserfield, near the place which still bears his name—Oswestry.

**§ 46. The Reign of Oswiu, 642-670.**—Oswald's brother Oswiu, after reigning nine years in Bernicia, overthrew his cousin Oswin in 651, and thus restored the unity of Northumbria. In 655 he was attacked by the nonagenarian king Penda, who ended his career in the battle of Winwæd or Winwidfield, in the forest of Loidis (*Leeds*). Oswiu followed up his success by overrunning Mercia; but in 659 Penda's nephew Wulphere recovered the independence of the non-Christian kingdom. Meanwhile the controversies between the Roman and the Keltic missionaries—which had existed in the days of Augustine—had come to a head: they observed Easter at different times, and the clergy had their heads shaved in different ways. To settle these controversies, Oswiu in 664 called a church assembly at Streoneshalch (*Whitby*), which decided in favour of the Roman Use. When Wilfred of Ripon pointed out that the Roman method had the sanction of S. Peter, Oswiu threw his weight on the side of Rome, lest S. Peter, as keeper of the keys of Heaven, should lock him out of Paradise.

**§ 47. Theodore of Tarsus, Archbishop of Canterbury, 668-690.**—The Synod of Whitby established throughout England a general uniformity in ritual and doctrine, which the next Archbishop of Canterbury extended to the sphere of church-government. Theodore of Tarsus, who was appointed by Pope Vitalian to be Archbishop in 668, became the "second founder of the English Church." He increased the number of bishops, so that there was one bishop for each English folk. Moreover, these bishops, instead of being missionary bishops, each had fixed head-quarters in the church containing his bishop's stool (*cathedral*); and this establishment of bishops with regular dioceses gathered round a recognized centre was speedily followed by the establishment of a parochial clergy. Thus, over and above the influence which Christianity had in softening the harshness and ruggedness of the individual, it also had a great political influence: the erection of a single church

system in which all Englishmen were embraced, and which was held together by obedience to the Primate, prepared the way for the union of all Englishmen in a single State owing allegiance to a single King. The first assembly which represented Englishmen of all folks was the national church-synod convened by Theodore at Hertford in 673.

§ 48. **The Reign of Ecgrith, 670-685.**—The likelihood that it would be the King of Northumbria who would achieve the civil unity of the English passed away with Oswiu's son and successor Ecgrith. His attempt to convert into a real headship his nominal supremacy over the Britons of Strathclyde and the Northern Picts was frustrated by his defeat at Nechtansmere (*Dunnichen*, near Forfar) in 685; and after this blow Northumbria fell into a condition of anarchy marked by the succession of no fewer than fifteen kings in the next one hundred and twenty years.

§ 49. **Literary Activity in Northumbria.**—But even when plunged into political chaos Northumbria long remained the centre of English learning. Education was given in the monasteries founded by Benedict Biscop at Wearmouth and Jarrow in the days of King Ecgrith. Biscop's contemporary, Cædmon, the monk of Whitby who sang the Creation in the *Paraphrase*, had a follower in Cynewulf of Lindisfarne, who, a hundred years after Cædmon, wrote the religious poems, *Elene* and *Christ*. But the greatest name in Northumbrian literature is Baeda, "the Venerable Bede" (673-735). In his monastic cell at Jarrow, Baeda not only translated part of the Bible into English, but also wrote in Latin that *Ecclesiastical History of the English Nation* which forms our main authority for the story of the settlement and conversion of the English.

## II. SUPREMACY OF MERCIA, 685-825.

§ 50. **Ine of Wessex, 688-725.**—Bede's life roughly coincides in point of time with a period in which none of the English kingdoms took a definite lead: the political supremacy of Northumbria was a thing of the past, and Mercia had not yet taken its place. It was during this period that Wessex, long suffering from internal divisions and from its over-rapid expansion under Ceawlin (§ 39), again swung to the fore. King Ine resumed the war against the Welsh in the Devonian peninsula, and secured his advance by the occupation of Taunton and Exeter; and he established a new bishopric at Sherborne—afterwards moved to Sarum or Salisbury—to look after the western extensions of his realm. His attempt to push into South

Cambria brought him into conflict with the Mercians, whom he routed in 715 at Wanborough near Swindon. Ine was also one of the most notable among the Old English legislators: his collection of laws is the oldest—save that made by Æthelberht, King of Kent—which has come down to us. Like most primitive legislation, these laws profess not to alter or improve, but rather to place clearly on record, the existing customs as remembered by immemorial tradition. Ine followed the example of many of the best kings of his time in resigning his crown that he might end his days in the cloister, preparing for death.

§ 51. **Æthelbald of Mercia, 716-755.**—On Ine's abdication the reigning King of Mercia, Æthelbald, a nephew of Penda, overran Wessex and acquired so much power, that he claimed to be "King not only of the Mercians, but also of all the folks that are called by the general name of South English." Though defeated by the West Saxons at Burford in 754, he laid the foundations of a Mercian supremacy, and set the example of assuming a title which, though in fact an exaggeration, embodied a political ideal—*Rex Britanniae*.

§ 52. **Offa of Mercia, 757-796.**—After an interval Æthelbald was succeeded by Offa, the great King of the Mercians. In 775 he overthrew Kent at the battle of Otford, and four years later his victory at Bensington not only restored the supremacy of Mercia over Wessex, but also enabled him to add to his dominions the West Saxon territories north of the Thames. Then marching westward he wrested the eastern part of Powys from the Welsh, turning their stronghold of Pengwern into the English Shrewsbury; and he forbade them to cross the earthen rampart which he drew from the mouth of the Dee to that of the Wye, and which is still known as Offa's Dyke. He also gave his dominions an ecclesiastical unity by inducing the Pope to grant to the bishop of Lichfield archiepiscopal authority over all the sees in Mercia and East Anglia. This establishment of the short-lived archbishopric of Lichfield (787-803) was a retrograde step, insomuch as it involved both the break-up of the ecclesiastical unity which Theodore had achieved (§ 47) and the lessening of the autonomy of the English Church by the payment of Rome-scot or Peter-pence to the Papacy; but it enhanced the dignity of Mercia. Moreover, Offa was treated as an equal by the greatest monarch in Western Europe—Charles the Great, the Frankish King who afterwards became Roman Emperor. The supremacy of Mercia was continued under Cenwulf (796-819), but was brought to a close in 825 by the West Saxon victory of Ellandun (§ 54).



# The Old English Kings.

EOGBERHT, 11th in descent from Oerdic, 1st King of the West Saxons.  
(502-549).

ÆTHELWULF = *Judith*, dan. of Charles  
(837-855). the Bald, Emperor.  
sub-king in Kent and Sussex

ÆLFRED, the Great  
(871-901).

ÆTHELBERHT  
(860-866).

Æthelwald, d. 905.  
revolted against Eadweard.

Æthel-frith =  
*Baldwyn, C. of Flanders.*

EADWEARD, the Elder  
(901-925).

Æthelred, d. 918.  
"Lady of the Mercians."

ÆTHELSTAN  
(925-940)

EADMUND  
(940-946).

Eadgiftu =  
*Charles the Simple.*

EADRED  
(946-955).

Eadbold =  
*Hugh, o. Paris.*  
[v. 1-4].

Eadgyth =  
*Otto the Great.*

Elfgifu =  
*Levis of Burgundy*

ÆADWIG  
(955-959).

Æthelreda = (1) EADGAR, (2) = Elfhryth.  
the Pacific  
(959-975).

Richard I., the Fearless,  
Duke of the Normans

SWEON (1013-1014),  
King of the Danes

EADWEARD,  
the Martyr  
(975-979).

Æthelreda = (1) ÆTHELRED II., (2) = (1) *Emma of Normandy*, (2) = (2) GNUT, the Great (1) = Elfgifu.  
the Unready  
(979-1016).

HARTHACNUT  
(1035-1042).

HAROLD HAREFOOT  
(1035-1039)

Four daughters,  
who marry *Earls*  
in England.

EADMUND, Ironside  
(1016).

Eadweard, d. 1057.

Godwin.

Eadgar the Ætheling,  
d. 1120.

Matilda = Margaret,  
K. of the Scots,  
d. 1043.

Æthelred, d. 1036.

Godgiftu =  
*Eustace of Boulogne.*

EADWEARD = Eadgyth,  
the Confessor d. 1075.

HAROLD  
(1066).

HENRY I. = Eadgyth, or  
(1100-1135) Matilda.

Mary = Eustace.

NOTE.—The above Table shows : (1) in CAPITALS, all the West Saxon, later English, kings from Eogberht to Harold—the dates in brackets marking the limits of their reigns; (2) in *italics*, eight notable marriage connections between those kings and Continental rulers; (3) in this table, the line of descent from Eogberht to Victoria as far as Henry I. From one of Harold's daughters is descended Alexandra, wife of Edward VII. The many connections of the Norman Dukes and Danish Kings are shown fully on p. 31.

# Family Connections of the Danish and Norman Kings of England.

## NORMANDY.

ROLF, the Ganger  
(911-927).

WILLIAM I., Longsword  
(927-943).

RICHARD I., the Fearless  
(943-996).

RICHARD II., the Good  
(996-1026).

RICHARD III.  
(1026-1028).

ROBERT I., the Devil  
(1028-1036).

WILLIAM I. (1085-1087).  
WILLIAM I. (1066-1087).

ROBERT II.,  
Curthose  
(1087-1106)  
d. 1135.

WILLIAM II.,  
Rufus  
(1087-1100).

HENRY I. = Matilda.  
(1100-1135). ↓ d. 1115.

Dukes of Normandy ...  
Kings of England ...  
Kings of Denmark ...  
Kings of Scotland ...  
Kings of Norway ...

... SMALL CAPITALS.  
... LARGE CAPITALS.  
... Dark type.  
... *Small italics*.  
... ITALIC CAPITALS.

... Rulers of both countries in DARK CAPITALS.  
... Similarity of type calls attention to close connection of the two countries.  
... The three Norwegian Kings shown were all descended from HAKALD FAIRHAIR, the Unkle.

DENMARK.  
Gorm, the Old  
(860-895).

Harald, Bluetooth  
(935-985).

OLAF TRYGGVASSON = Thyre  
(990-1000).

SWEGN, Forkbeard  
(Denmark: 985-1014.  
England: 1013-1014.)

ENUT, the Great, (1) = Elfgifu.  
(E. 1016-1085.  
D. 1018-1085.  
N. 1028-1035.)

EADWARD,  
the Confessor  
(1042-1066).

EADMUND,  
Ironside  
(1016).  
Eadweard.  
Margaret = Malcolme,  
Canmore  
d. 1093.  
(1057-1063).

HARThACNUT  
(D. 1035-1042.  
E. 1039-1042.)

HAROLD  
(1035-1039).

SWEGN,  
Estridson  
(1047-1074),  
who fought against  
HAKALD HARADADA  
(1047-1036)

succeeded in Denmark  
by MAGNUS THE GOOD  
(1035-1047).

Adela = Stephen = Mary = Eustace  
of Blois.  
STEPHEN = Matilda.  
(1135-1154).

David I  
(1124-1153)  
(see p. 12)

KEY TO VARIETIES OF TYPE

[ (963-982)  
the Unkle

## CHAPTER V.

### THE COMING OF THE DANES, 787-901.

#### THREE CENTURIES OF SCANDINAVIAN DOINGS OVER SEA.

##### I. IN THE BRITISH ISLES.

###### (1) *Period of Plunder.*

- 787. First Attack on England.
- 794. First Attack on Scotland.
- 795. First Attack on Ireland.
- 836. B. Hengestesdun : Danes defeated.

###### (2) *Period of Settlement.*

- 855 Danes winter in Sheppey.
- 876-7. Danes occupy Northumbria and Mercia.
- 880. Danes occupy East Anglia.
- 901-937. West Saxon Reconquest of Danelagh.

###### (3) *Period of Conquest.*

- 1014. Ostmen defeated at Clontarf by the Irish king, Brian Boru.
- 1016-1042. Danish kings rule England.
- 1066. William the Norman, King of England.
- 1098. Last Norse Raid on S. Britain (*Anglesey*) by Magnus Bareleg.

##### II. OUTSIDE THE BRITISH ISLES.

- 799. First Attack on West Frankland (*France*).
- 835. First Attack on East Frankland (*Germany*).
- 845. Northman Sack of Paris.
- 861-875. Norwegian Discovery and Settlement of Iceland.
- 876. Rolf sails up Seine.
- 885. Northman Siege of Paris.
- 913. Rolf the Northman becomes Duke in "Normandy."
- 983-1000. Norwegians settle in Greenland and discover Vinland (*America*).
- 1040-60. Norman Conquest of South Italy.
- 1060-90. Norman Conquest of Sicily.
- 1095-9. First Crusade : largely led by Normans.

900-1263. The Hebrides (Western Isles of Scotland or Sudreys) remained in Norse hands till the battle of Largs, 1263.

NOTE.—The date-limits of these three periods, so far as ENGLAND is concerned, are these : *Plunder*, 787-855 ; *Settlement*, 855-980 ; *Conquest*, 980-1042.

##### I. THE PERIOD OF PLUNDER, 787-855.

§ 53. **Main Stages in the Attacks of the Northmen.**—In 787, while Offa was still King of the Mercians, "the first ships of the Danish men sought the land of the English" (*English Chronicle*); and about the same time they began to attack by land and sea the

dominions of Charles the Great. The Danes and the Norwegians—collectively called Northmen or Scandinavians—were during the eighth century in much the same stage of development as the English and other German tribes had been four centuries earlier (§§ 31, 32); but it was apparently over-population and sheer love of adventure, not the pressure of more savage peoples in their rear, that sent them forth to scour the southward seas and lands in search of sport and spoil. At first their object was merely to fight and plunder; but in the ninth century the rise of strong kings in their Scandinavian peninsulas impelled the petty chiefs who would not acknowledge a master to lead their followers forth to win homes beyond the sea; and in the eleventh century the great kings of the mother-land embarked on a brief career of dynastic conquest (ch. vii.). Throughout these three stages it was mainly with the Danes that England had to deal: the Norwegians devoted themselves chiefly to the Keltic portions of the British Isles and to the northern islands of the Atlantic.

§ 54. **Ecgberht, King of Wessex, 802-839.**—It was through heading the English resistance to the Danes that Wessex acquired a supremacy more lasting, if not much more complete, than that which Northumbria and Mercia had successively held. Since the abdication of Ine (§ 50), Wessex had passed through a period of anarchy and subjection, from which it was raised by Egberht, who had learnt much about the art of government during his exile at the court of Charles the Great (§ 52). Recalled in 802 by the West Saxons to be their king, Egberht first set himself to organize his kingdom, and then turned to face the Mercians, whom he defeated at Ellandun (*Allington* in Wilts) in 825. His victory was followed by the submission of all the English kingdoms: Kent, Sussex, and Essex he entrusted to rulers of his own house; East Anglia, Mercia, and Northumbria he left in charge of their native kings. In 836 he defeated a coalition of South Welsh and Danes at Hengestesdun on the Cornish side of the river Tamar; and in the following year he resigned the crown. Egberht once called himself *Rex Anglorum*—King of the English; but he was not the only king. Like his contemporary and model, Charles the Great, he divided his realm among his sons, assigning Wessex and the pre-eminence to his eldest son Æthelwulf.

§ 55. **Æthelwulf, King of Wessex, 839-858.**—The incursions of the Danes, comparatively infrequent in the reign of Egberht, became an almost annual occurrence during the reigns of his sons. In

851 Æthelwulf defeated at Ockley, in Surrey, a horde which had just sacked Canterbury and London. Four years later a Danish band wintered in England for the first time—in Sheppey: this novelty, like the similar establishment of the Jutes in Thanet four hundred years before (§ 37), marks the transition from the plundering to the settling stages in the invaders' expeditions (§ 53). In the same year (855), on his way back from a pilgrimage to Rome, Æthelwulf married Judith, a daughter of Charles the Bald, grandson of Charles the Great, and King of the West Franks (840-877). This alliance expressed mutual sympathy, but led to no mutual aid against the common foe. English and Franks alike were driven back upon their own resources. In England the principal effects of the early Northman raids were twofold: they compelled the West Saxon kingship to enter into closer alliance with the church-authorities, and particularly with the Archbishop of Canterbury, in the life-and-death conflict between Christianity and heathendom; and they also forced the State to strengthen its military organization in such a way as to enable it to stand the strain of prolonged warfare against enemies who were equipped with better offensive and defensive arms, and who were more practised warriors than the English farmers (§ 58).

## II. THE PERIOD OF SETTLEMENT, 855-901.

§ 56. **The Three Elder Sons of Æthelwulf, 858-871.**—The successive reigns of the four sons of Æthelwulf were contemporary with the beginnings of the long reigns of the two first great unifying kings in Scandinavia—Gorm the Old, in Denmark (860-935), and Harald Fairhair, in Norway (863-932). Their "tyranny" both increased the activity of the roaming Northmen and changed its direction. Æthelwulf's eldest son, Æthelbald, did nothing notable in his two years' reign except marry his stepmother Judith. His brother, Æthelberht, was unable to save his capital, Winchester, from the Danes (860-866). During the reign of the next brother, Æthelred I. (866-871), the Danes successively ravaged southern Northumbria (they seem to have left Bernicia alone) and Mercia, taking York and Nottingham; then, crossing to East Anglia in 870, they slew the King, Eadmund, in the town that still bears his name—*Bury St. Edmunds*. In the following year (871) they pitched their camp at Reading, with a view to serving Wessex as they had served the tributary kingdoms. "In that year," says the *English Chronicle*, "nine folk-fights were fought south of the Thames, and many a

raid that is not numbered"; though victorious in one of the principal battles—fought at *Æscesdun* (*Ashdown*) on the northern slopes of the Berkshire Downs—the English were usually defeated. During the struggle *Æthelred* fell in battle and was succeeded by his youngest brother, *Ælfred*.

§ 57. **The Fourth Son of *Æthelwulf*, *Ælfred*, 871-901.**—The dogged resistance of the West Saxons induced the Danes to seek easier prey; and they left *Ælfred* in comparative peace for the first seven years of his reign. In 876-7 many of them settled down in the southern portion of Northumbria and in Mercia; but early in 878 the more restless among them suddenly swooped down upon *Ælfred*, capturing his stronghold of Chippenham and driving him to take refuge at Athelney, in the marshes of the Parret. From this shelter *Ælfred* organized his troops, and defeating the Danes at Ethandun (*Edington* in Wilts?), besieged them at Chippenham. About Easter the Danish host was starved into surrender; and by the *Treaty of Wedmore* its leader Guthrum promised to receive baptism, and to leave *Ælfred* unmolested within the limits of his kingdom. By this treaty the boundary-line between the West Saxon realm and Guthrum's kingdom of East Anglia ran up the Thames as far as Henley, and thence struck across country in a north-westerly direction to Brackley on the head-waters of the Great Ouse. Some years later *Ælfred* was able to punish Guthrum for permitting raids from his kingdom into Wessex by forcing him to accept a revision of the Wedmore treaty which transferred London to the West Saxon dominion. The revised treaty of 886 thus fixed the border-line: "up on the Thames and then up the Lea, and along the Lea unto its source, then right to Bedford and up on the Ouse unto Watling Street."

§ 58. ***Ælfred's* Reforms during the Years of Peace, 878-893.**—North of Guthrum's kingdom there lay other Danish ruler-ships, the chief of which were "the Five Boroughs" of Danish Mercia—Stamford, Leicester, Derby, Nottingham, Lincoln (Map, p. 16)—and Deira. The greater part of the Anglian settlements in Britain were thus subjected to Danish rule and therefore became known as the *Danelagh* or *Danelaw*. So far as we know, *Ælfred* entered into treaty relations with only one of these states—that of East Anglia. Practically, therefore, *Ælfred* abandoned his shadowy claims to the overlordship of all England, and obtained in return undivided possession of a Wessex enlarged by the addition of Kent, Sussex, part of Essex, and half Mercia. He used the fifteen years

of almost unbroken peace which followed his victory in strengthening his kingdom in every way that he could devise. He organized a navy, and used part of it for the peaceful purpose of exploration by sending Others to the White Sea. He also reconstituted his army, arranging that in the summer months one-third of his fighting force should be under arms, while the rest were attending to their ordinary work. Besides providing for the military necessities of the present, he tried to raise the entire social tone of his subjects: for instance, he drew up a code of laws, improved methods of education, and encouraged literature. He himself translated into English many of the most highly esteemed works of the time—*e. g.* Bede's *History*, and Boethius' *Consolations of Philosophy*; and he started the *English Chronicle*—the earliest account of any modern nation in its own native tongue. The wisdom of his reforms, coupled with his nobility of character and loveableness, have won for him the undisputed title of "the Great."

**§ 59. Ælfred's last Years and Death, 893-901.**—The efficiency of Ælfred's military preparations was proved in a six years' struggle with a Danish host under Hæsten or Hasting, who came over from Frankland in 893. He chased this host up and down the land—defeating it one time near London, another time at Buttington, near Shrewsbury, sometimes by land, sometimes by sea, until it broke up; some of its members settled down among their kinsmen north of Watling Street, some went over sea and joined the band of Rolf the Ganger—to whom the Frankish King gave "Normandy" a few years later (§§ 77, 93). Four years after his final triumph in 897, Ælfred died: he had fulfilled his ideal of "living worthily," and he had saved his country from imminent destruction, and equipped it for a century of growth (ch. vi.).

**§ 60. Union of the Picts and Scots, 843.**—During the ninth century the Northmen played a great part in the history of the non-English parts of the British Isles. It was with the aid of Northmen that Kenneth McAlpine, King of the Scots, made good his claim, derived through his Pictish mother, to be King of the Picts also. Thus all Caledonia north of Graeme's Dyke (Map, p. 4) was brought under one nominal ruler. Kenneth foreshadowed the later expansion southwards of his kingdom by attacking the isolated English in northern Bernicia (*Lothian*), and by forming a marriage alliance with the Briton king of Strathclyde (§§ 63, 64, 81). His importance in his own day was marked by the marriage of two daughters in Ireland. But that is another story (§ 123).

## CHAPTER VI.

### THE CONSOLIDATION OF THE ENGLISH, 901-979.

#### ILLUSTRATIONS OF CENTRIFUGAL AND OF CENTRIPETAL TENDENCIES IN ENGLAND.

##### *I. Centrifugal.*

878. *Treaty of Wedmore*: West Saxons *v.* Danes.

937. B. Brunanburh: Scots, North Welsh, and Danes ranged against Æthelstan.

945. Eadmund grants Strathclyde to Scots King.

948. Northumbrians join Danes against Eadred.

957. Eadgar with Northumbria and Mercia *v.* Eadwig in Wessex.

966. Eadgar grants Lothian to Scots King.

1016. Eadmund with Wessex, Essex, and East Anglia *v.* Cnut with Mercia and Northumbria.

1035. Harold Harefoot with North England *v.* Harthacnut with South England.

1066. William the Norman conquers the South-East of England.

1075. Project to divide England into three earldoms.

##### *II. Centripetal.*

922. Submission of the Five Bororhgs.

924. Scots, Northumbrian and Strathclyde Welsh take Eadweard "to father and lord."

928. South and West Welsh, Scots and Northumbrians swear fealty to Æthelstan.

947. Northumbrians submit to Eadred.

959. Eadgar unites all England.

973. Eadgar's under-kings at Chester.

1017. Cnut unites all England under his sway, but—

(a) it is only part of his dominions,  
(b) it is divided into earldoms.

1037. Harold Harefoot reunites England.

1066-1071. William conquers West and North of England.

1072. Malcolm, King of Scots, submits to William at Abernethy.

#### I. THE CONQUEST OF THE DANELAGH, 901-925.

§ 61. **Results of the Danish Settlements.**—At Ælfred's death England was almost evenly divided between the West Saxon kingdom and a number of Danish states; and it was one of the tasks of Ælfred's successors in the tenth century to establish their authority over these Danish states (§ 58). The existence of place-names ending in *-by*, or *-thorpe*, or *-toft*, shows that the Danes settled thickest in East Anglia, in the country lying between Nene and Trent, and along the valleys of Ouse and Tees; while the existence of place-names ending in *-thwaite*, *-fell*, or *-garth*, shows that Norwegians settled thickest in the Lake District—which had not yet become part of England (§ 100). The Danes soon intermarried with



the people among whom they settled; the new blood had a bracing effect on the English character; the new-comers enriched the language with new words, such as *jarl*, later *earl*, for *ealdorman*, and *grith* for *frith*, *are* for *be*, *law* for *doom*; and throughout the Danelagh—the regions where Danish *law* prevailed—they probably checked the tendency of the landless ceorl to sink into serfdom (§ 66). In the long run the effect of the Danish inroads and settlement was to increase town-life and to spread commerce in England: in days of frequent raids and counter-raids men naturally lived together in towns for greater security; the sea-faring habits of the invaders helped to develop maritime commerce; and the growth of trade and town-life together worked a great change in English social habits. Besides introducing a rougher, stronger, and perhaps freer element into the language and life of the English, the Danes helped to break down the old tribal jealousies in Mercia and Northumbria. They thus prepared the way for the West Saxon reconquest, which was made easier by the absence of fresh immigrants from over sea for nearly a century after Ælfred's death (§ 76), and by the high political ability of most of the tenth-century kings in Wessex.

§ 62. **Eadweard the Elder, 901-925.**—The military methods which Ælfred had used for defence were used for offensive purposes by his son Eadweard and by his daughter Æthelflæda, the "Lady of the Mercians." Ælfred had already won back London before his death (§ 57): his successors drew a line of fortresses along the frontier, extending from Hereford through Chester, Stafford, Tamworth, and Warwick to Bedford. Pushing in advance of these fortresses, they took Derby and Leicester—the nearest of the "Five Boroughs" of Danish Southumbria (§ 58)—before Æthelflæda's death in 918. The rest of the Five Boroughs—Stamford, Lincoln, and Nottingham—yielded in the course of the next six years. Before then Eadweard had received the submission of Essex and East Anglia; and in 924, the year of the capture of Nottingham, it is said that not only the Danes and English of Northumbria, but also the Britons of Strathclyde, and Constantine, King of the Picts and Scots (§ 60), acknowledged his overlordship—or, as the *Chronicle* puts it, "took him to father and lord."

## II. THE IMPERIAL CLAIMS OF WESSEX, 925-979.

§ 63. **The Three Sons of Eadweard, 925-955.**—Whether Eadweard ever received such a submission is as uncertain as its exact political significance; but his sons showed that they took

their supremacy seriously, not only by styling themselves "*Caesar*," or "*Basileus totius Britanniae*," but also by enforcing obedience to their claims (§ 35). Moreover, the fact that their sisters were taken in marriage by the most prominent princes on the Continent shows that they were held in high esteem abroad: one sister married Charles the Simple, King of the West Franks; another married Hugh the Great, Duke of the Franks, whose son became the first of a line of French Kings (Table, p. 124); a third married Otto the Saxon, King of the East Franks, who in 962 revived the title of Roman Emperor in the West (§ 35). In 937 Æthelstan (925-940) crushed the Scots and Strathclyde Britons, who had called in Northmen from Ireland to help them throw off his yoke, in a great battle at Brunanburh, the site of which is unknown.\* In 945 Eadmund the Magnificent (940-946) conquered the northern part of Strathclyde and bestowed it on the Scottish King in order to secure his fidelity. In 948 Eadred the Excellent (946-955) defeated an attempt made by the Northumbrians, with the aid of the Danish King, Harald Bluetooth, to assert their independence. The supremacy of the West Saxon House was thus shown to be real enough both to inspire and to crush resistance among its more distant dependents.

§ 64. **Eadgar the Pacific, 959-975.**—On the death of Eadred the throne passed successively to the two sons of Eadmund—Eadwig (955-8), and Eadgar (959-975). A quarrel between Eadwig and the clergy—usually the staunch allies of the Royal House (§ 55)—caused the greater part of England to desert him for his brother Eadgar, who succeeded him as sole king on his death in 959. His tactful dealings with his under-kings secured Eadgar a complete immunity from revolt, which earned him the name of "*Pacific*." The best instance of his conciliatory methods is supplied by his imitation of his father's policy towards the northern kingdom: in 966 he handed over Lothian—that part of Bernicia which lay between Tweed and Forth—to the Scottish King on condition that he should be fellow-worker by sea and by land with the donor. Eadgar's cession of Lothian lopped off a part of England, but it had the effect of leavening a hitherto Keltic kingdom with a vigorous English element, and of making English the dominant speech in the Picto-Scottish kingdom (§§ 81, 92).

§ 65. **Dunstan, Archbishop, 960-988.**—Eadgar's chief adviser was Dunstan, a Benedictine monk of Glastonbury, who had had great influence with his father and uncle, and who was the first

\* Sir James Ramsay makes out a strong case for Bourne in Lincolnshire.

ecclesiastic to attain a leading place in the councils of an English King. Dunstan's voice was always in favour of a moderate and sane yet straightforward policy. As a statesman he upheld the wisdom of delegating much power to local authorities, in opposition to the centralizing policy supported by the West Saxon nobility. In his ecclesiastical capacity—whether as Abbot of Glastonbury or as Archbishop—he gave a guarded support to the monastic revival of his day. Monasticism means the practice of withdrawing as far as possible from the world for the purpose of leading a strictly religious life. The early Christian monks had lived solitary lives: later, they collected together into communities which frequently met for common prayer and spent the rest of the day in useful work. When such communities of “religious” became rich through the gifts of men who admired their piety and self-denial, they tended to become lazy and sometimes positively vicious. Such was the case in England in the tenth century; and the remedy proposed was the strict enforcement of the *Rule of S. Benedict*—that is the elaborate rule (*regula*, or, as we say, regulations) drawn up by the Benedict of Nursia (Italy) in the sixth century. Dunstan helped to refound the monasteries destroyed by the Danes, and he tried to make the “regular” clergy obey the rule of conduct to which they were pledged; but he did not follow the extreme reformers of his day in enforcing strict celibacy upon the “secular” clergy (§ 95). Hence he supported Eadgar's eldest son, Eadweard the Martyr (975–979), in opposition to the monkish party. He survived the accession of Eadweard's half-brother Æthelred II. for eight years, but lost his influence at court: before he died in 988 the renewal of the Danish inroads had opened another chapter in English History (§§ 68, 69, 76).

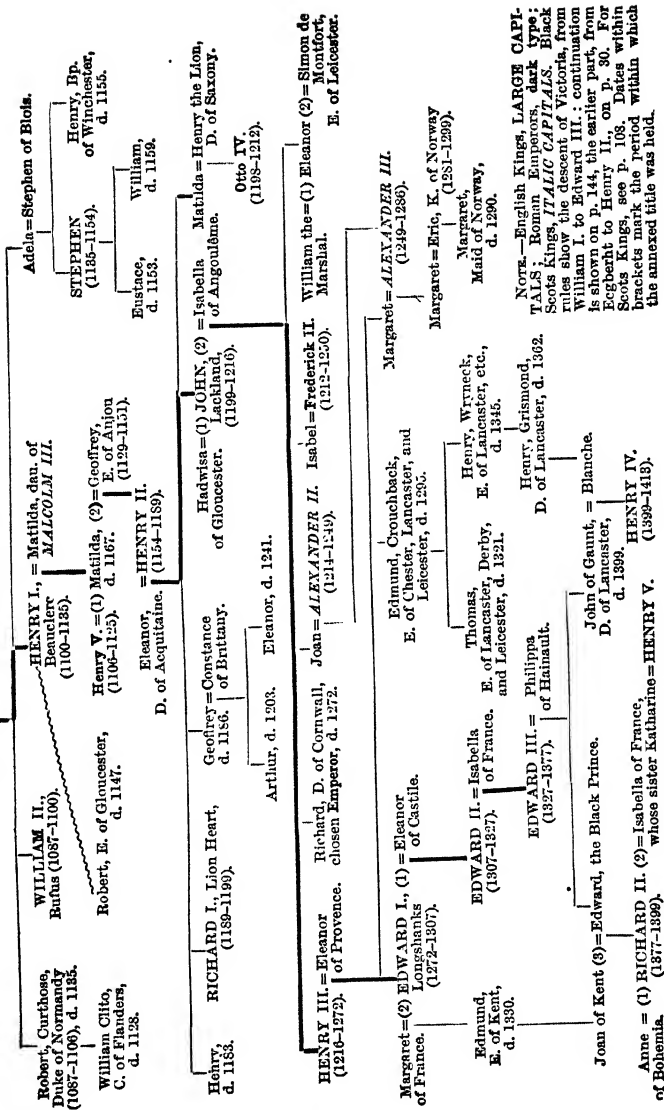
**§ 66. The Tenth-Century Constitution of England:** (i) **Local.**—The prolonged struggle with the Welsh and the Danes, and the expansion of a small folk-leadership into a large territorial kingdom, naturally effected great changes in the institutions which the English brought over with them from Germany (§ 42). The constant warfare had made both the King and the cultivators of the soil more dependent on the professional fighting-men. The King's thegns—those of his gesiths (§ 42) who were warriors—were rewarded with landed estates, and became an official nobility which quite overshadowed the older nobility of blood (*eorls*); and the ordinary villagers, though they continued to settle their disputes and arrange the cultivation of the common fields in their town-meeting (*tungemot*), tended more and more to “commend” themselves to a thegn

powerful enough to protect them (§ 74). The hundred-moot and the folk-moot continued to meet; but they each adopted the practice of leaving to a few of the members the work which had formerly been done by all. As the West Saxon realm extended, the territory occupied by each of its component folks was treated as a *shire* or division of the larger whole, and new shires were mapped out in the Midlands and the North, as land was reconquered from the Danes. These artificial shires created in and after the tenth century are readily distinguishable from the older folk-shires: they take their name from the principal town in the shire—as Oxfordshire, Cambridgeshire, etc. The old folk-moot thus became a mere shire-moot, in which the former president, the ealdorman, was assisted by the bishop of the diocese and by the King's officer, the sheriff.

§ 67. (ii) *Central*.—No new popular assembly sprang up to be to the whole realm what the folk-moot had been to the original folk: it was impossible for all the freemen of a kingdom which reached from Exeter to Hexham to meet together in one place for purposes of deliberation. The King therefore conducted the general management of affairs with the help of a meeting of "wise men" (*witena-gemot*). The "wisdom" of the members of this assembly was proved either by the fact that they held the office of bishop or ealdorman, or by the fact that they were personal friends of the King. They were all persons who had had some sort of practical business training in the administration of a shire or diocese or in the management of their landed estates; and they probably represented the prevalent sentiments of the more important personages and classes of the community quite as faithfully as the modern Parliament, with all its elaborate machinery of constituencies and elections, represents the British nation in our own day. The Witan were few in numbers, the average attendance being about thirty; and though their "powers" have been enumerated at great length by modern theorists, they usually had but little real power. They had a limited power of electing a king, and occasionally they deposed a king for misgovernment: when once a king was chosen they were expected to place their experience at his disposal and he was expected to make use of their experience. Practically, therefore, the Witenagemot could counsel, but it had no means of controlling the King; and the good administration of the realm which Ælfred and his great successors had built up depended entirely, not on the system of government, but on the personal character of the King.

English Kings from William 3. to Henry 3d.

WILLIAM I., the Conqueror (1066-1087).



## BOOK III.

### ENGLAND UNDER FOREIGN KINGS, 979-1216.

#### INTRODUCTION.

§ 68. **Retrospect, 410-979.**—During the six centuries which followed the departure of the Romans the island of Britain was slowly struggling from darkness to light, from chaos to order. In the course of this long struggle each of the two broad parts of the island tended to gather together into two distinct political aggregations of units, and to quarrel with one another as to where in the long and narrow and inhospitable waist of the island the frontier should be drawn between them. The former division of Britain into Roman and non-Roman thus tended to recur under the two names of England and Scotland; but it is well to remember that England included not only Englishmen but also Britons (or Welsh) and Danes, and that Scotland included not only the Irish Scotsmen but also Picts, Norwegians, Britons, and English. As yet neither England nor Scotland had attained a stable political unity: there was usually one king supreme in each, but his supremacy was a name and an assertion rather than an achieved fact. In England the unity was more complete on the ecclesiastical than on the civil side. But the Church, though one, was partly dependent on the Papacy, which had organized its unity (§§ 43, 47); and after the Norman Conquest the occasional influence exercised by the Papacy on the daughter-church stiffened into a regular, though not unlimited, control (§§ 95, 102). The English State owed the completion of its unity, as the English Church owed the very inception of its unity, to foreign influences: it was from the foreign kings who ruled England during the two hundred and forty years covered by our third book that England attained a much greater measure of civil unity than had been won for her by her native kings of the House of Wessex.

§ 69. **The Foreign Kings of England, 1014-1216: (i) International Aspects.**—Æthelred II. forsook the conciliatory counsels which had won for his father the name of "Pacific," and failed to rally the different peoples under his rule into offering a national resistance to the returning Danes: he was therefore expelled, and ultimately succeeded, by Cnut, King of the Danes. Cnut afterwards added Norway to his dominions, but his northern empire fell to pieces soon after his death. In 1042 all the English united

in inviting Eadweard, son of Æthelred, to the throne of his fathers. Throughout Eadweard's reign there was a struggle going on between native English, Scandinavian, and Norman influences ; and the year which saw his death witnessed also the decisive triumph of the last-named in the person of William, Duke of Normandy (ch. vii.). William was the first of four Norman kings of England, who were succeeded by four Angevin kings : it was nearly two hundred years before England again passed, in 1272, under the rule of a man who though of Norman and Angevin descent, was dominated by the sense of being an Englishman, and was called by an English name—Edward I. (ch. viii.–xi.). The rule of foreign kings—Danish, Norman, and Angevin—gives a certain unity to this period ; but it is divided into two distinct portions by the events of 1066, which form one of the great lines of cleavage in English History. The accession of William the Conqueror, for which the events recorded in our seventh chapter may be regarded as a preparation, definitely removed England, as a State, from the circle of the northern kingdoms to that of central Europe, and brought it, as a Church, into closer dependence on Rome (§ 95). For nearly five centuries the ruler of England ruled also some part of France ; and the year 1558, which witnessed the loss of Calais by the English State, witnessed also the accession of the monarch who definitely effected the breach between Rome and the English Church (§§ 330–334).

§ 70. (ii) **Constitutional Aspects.**—The Norman and Angevin kings effected as great a change in the constitutional as in the international relations of England ; and here also the importance of the change can be measured only by reference to the immediately preceding history. Under a series of strong and able kings of the House of Cerdic, England had become one, but had been unable to evolve any machinery to keep herself united. Some kings had tried a policy of centralization ; some had tried the plan of delegating power to local magnates ; but neither policy had succeeded in welding the formerly independent kingdoms into one coherent whole, dominated by the consciousness of a common nationality. England was constantly tending to fall to pieces again, and during the first half of the eleventh century there were many partitions, either between contending kings or among the great earls nominally subject to a single king (Table, p. 37 ; §§ 84, 85). These tendencies to division were effectively checked by William the Conqueror and his successors : they substituted the firm consolidation of a compact kingdom having an efficient central government for the loose con-

solidation of an empire aimed at by the native English kings (§§ 63-67). In order to understand the difficulties and the significance of this change, it is necessary to have some idea of the social and political phenomena known by the delusively simple name of "Feudalism," "Feudality," or the "Feudal System."

§ 71. **The General Meaning of Feudalism.**—"Feudalism" means an organization of society based on that conception of property, especially in land, which is called "feudal." The word "feudal" is a latinized derivative of an old German word, *feoh*, the modern equivalent of which is *Vieh*, and which means *cattle*. The common origin of our words *cattle* and *chattel* is a suggestive reminder that there was a time when men's possessions were contained in, and measured by, not metal money but live-stock. Men begin to form societies through the gregarious instincts which result in the family; but when different families come together, the idea of *property* to some extent supplants or supplements the idea of *kinship*. Men naturally quarrel with one another, and perhaps kill one another, in their eagerness to obtain what they regard as good things, until they come to some sort of agreement to recognize one another's property: "I will acknowledge what you have as your *very own* [*i. e.* your *property*] if you will also acknowledge what I have as my *very own*." The growth of some such mutual acknowledgment forms one at least of the foundations of society. Now-a-days all these latent acknowledgments are concealed under one common allegiance to the impersonal thing called "the State": we pay our taxes to the State, and the State, amongst other things, protects our property. But when the Germans swept over Western Europe, they destroyed the Roman State as a protecting power; and the security of property depended not on the mysterious force of a distant abstraction, but on the good-will of the nearest strong man. But those who wanted the said strong man's protection for life or property did not *pay* him so much money, they *did something* for him. Men were knit together by mutual obligations of protection and service; and in Western Europe, during the centuries immediately before and after 1000 A.D., these mutual obligations were mainly based on the tenure of land. That is the essence of Feudalism. In detail it differed in different places and at different times; and there is no one variety which can rightly be picked out from the rest and labelled "*the Feudal System*." But in all times and in all places Feudalism included some at least of the three features described in the three following sections (§§ 72-74).



§ 72. **Social Aspects of Feudalism : Comitatus.**—The *Comitatus*, or comrade-ship, was the German practice, described by Tacitus, whereby men of good birth (*eorls*) gathered round the head-man (*princeps*) and became his comrades (*comites* or *gesiths*). In return, he fed them and clothed them—in other words, he was their *hlaford*, or lord, their “loaf-giver”; later, in reward for their past services, he gave them of the lands which he had conquered, and they became *thegns* (§§ 42, 66); later still, the lord made the tie more enduring by substituting the sense of favours to come for the sense of favours received as the bond of union (§ 73).

§ 73. **Economic Aspects of Feudalism : Tenure.**—When lands or other good things were not merely *given* for service done in the *past*, but *granted* on condition of *future* service, they were said to be “benefices” (*beneficia*); and every “benefice” or benefit was enjoyed on condition of a corresponding “office” or service. This *beneficiary* mode of tenure, which was slowly spreading before the Norman Conquest and gradually became universal afterwards (§ 75), was the distinctive feature of feudality (§§ 94, 101, 117). All manner of quaint services are recorded : one of the Norman kings granted a Kentishman a piece of ground on condition that he “held the King’s head” whenever he crossed the choppy waters of the Channel. But the commonest services were the performance of agricultural labour (by *socmen* and *villans*) and the rendering of military service (by *earls*, *barons*, and *knights*): in an age of perpetual warfare the latter kind of service was naturally esteemed the more honourable (cf. § 118). The King alone *owned* land : others only *held* it of him. Military tenants who held land of the King directly or immediately—*i. e.* without the intervention of a middle (*medius*) man—were called tenants-in-chief (*tenentes in capite*) or crown-vassals : those who held land of the King indirectly or mediately—*i. e.* through the medium of a crown-vassal—were called *mesne tenants*. Feudalism in land-tenure aimed at securing the responsibility to some higher person of every one who was permitted to enjoy the use of the land. Even the King did not in strict theory own the land : he merely held it of God on condition of doing Him service.

§ 74. **Political Aspects of Feudalism : Jurisdiction.**—The idea that justice—or even government generally—was best administered by those who had a “stake in the country,” in the shape of landed possessions, led to the partial substitution of the jurisdiction of lords in their seigniorial courts for the jurisdiction of the whole body of the freemen assembled in the old popular courts (§§ 66, 67). The Northman invasions of the ninth and tenth

centuries did much to hasten this revolution in England ; and the change was markedly the growth and rapid spread of the constitutional practice known as *commendation*. This practice was partly voluntary, partly compulsory. On the one hand, small landowners "commended themselves" to (*i. e.* sought the protection of) their big neighbour ; and, on the other, landless freemen were, for police purposes, compelled by law to place themselves under the protection of such (§ 66). If the large landowner had received from the King a grant of those powers of jurisdiction known as *sac* and *soc* (*i. e.* certain powers of holding courts independent of the hundred-moot and shire-moot, and of receiving the fees paid by those who sought justice at his hands), such commendatories were said to "owe suit" at his court ; and, after the Norman Conquest at any rate, to "owe service" also to him—usually villan services—for the land which they occupied. On the Continent these rights of jurisdiction tended to grow into full rights of government. The great landowners set up courts of their own, enforced local customs in them, established private mints, raised forces and fought wars on their own account, and, in a word, created *imperia in imperio*, reducing the royal power from sovereignty to mere suzerainty.

**§ 75. Feudalism in England before and after the Norman Conquest.**—Full fledged Feudalism, thus consisting of social, economic, and political elements, has been described as "a complete organisation of society, through the medium of land-tenure, in which, from the King down to the lowest landholder, all were bound together by obligation of service and defence—the lord to protect his vassal, the vassal to do service to his lord, the defence and service being based on and regulated by the nature and extent of the land held by the one of the other." No such complete system existed in England before the coming of Duke William ; nor did he inaugurate such a system by a stroke of the pen. The Norman Conquest did not introduce Feudalism into England, but rather changed the direction of feudal development. Before that time the social element (*comitatus*) and the political element (jurisdiction) were both highly developed, but feudal tenure of land was almost unknown. The Norman kings effected a great change in English Feudalism. They made feudal tenure of land universal, and completed the feudal organisation of society. But they steadily set themselves to destroy feudal jurisdiction, and to recover the true and undivided sovereignty which had been allowed to slip out of the hands of the imperial Cnut and the feeble Confessor (§§ 94, 97, 101, 108).

## CHAPTER VII.

### THE DANISH KINGS AND THE ENGLISH RESTORATION, 979-1066.

**A. PERSONAL DETAILS.**—For the family connections of the English kings in this chapter, see Table, p. 30: for those of the Danish kings, see Table, p. 31.

#### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

EASTERN EMPIRE.	WESTERN EMPIRE.	PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SCOTLAND.
Basil II. (969-1025)	Revived by Otto I. (962) Otto II. (973) Otto III. (983)	Benedict VII. (974)	Lothar (954)	Kenneth II. (971)
Constantine IX. (976-1028)		John XIV. (983)	Louis V. (986)	Constantine IV. (995)
		John XV. (985)	Last Carling	Kenneth III. (997)
		Gregory V. (996)	Hugh Capet (987)	Malcolm II. (997)
		John XVI. ? (996)	Robert (996)	
	Henry II. (1002)	Sylvester II. (999)		
		John XVII. (1003)		
Romanus III. (1028)		John XVIII. (1003)		
Michael IV. (1034)	Conrad II. (1024)	Sergius IV. (1009)		
Michael V. (1041)	Henry III. (1039)	Benedict VIII. (1012)		
Constantine X. (1042)		John XIX. (1024)		
Theodora (1054)		Benedict IX. (1033)	Henry I. (1031)	Duncan I. (1034)
Michael VI. (1056)		Gregory VI. (1045)		Macbeth (1040)
Isaac I. (1057)		Clement II. (1046)		
Constantine XI. (1059)		Damasus II. (1048)		
		Leo IX. (1048)		
		Victor II. (1054)		
	Henry IV. (1056-1106)	Stephen IX. (1057)		Malcolm III. <i>Cannmore</i> (1057-1093)
		Benedict X. (1058)		
		Nicolas II. (1059)	Philip I. (1060-1108)	
		Alexander II. (1061)		

#### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) Scotland: §§ 81, 85.
- (2) Ireland: §§ 77, 84.
- (3) Denmark: §§ 76-83.
- (4) Norway: §§ 76, 77, 81, 86, 87.
- (5) Normandy: §§ 77, 82-89.
- (6) Flanders: § 84.
- (7) The Empire: § 81.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) Partitions of England: §§ 78-80, 83.
- (2) Earldoms: §§ 79, 82, 84, 85.
- (3) Church: §§ 82, 84.
- (4) Witenagemot: §§ 77, 78, 80, 86, 89.
- (5) Wales: §§ 85, 86.

#### I. THE RENEWAL OF DANISH INROADS, 980-1016.

§ 76. **The Character and Circumstances of Æthelred II., 979-991.**—Æthelred II. reigned for a longer period than any

other English king during the four centuries between Ecgberht and Henry III. His reign was as unfortunate as it was long. It began with the murder of his half-brother, Eadweard, whom men called "the Martyr" (§ 65): it was marked throughout by disasters, which were made more disastrous by Æthelred's personal incapacity. His deeds justified his nickname of "the Unready,"—i. e. "one that does not take counsel" (*ræd*). He allowed himself to be dominated by the West Saxon nobility, who disliked Dunstan's policy of dealing gently with the other peoples in the kingdom, especially the Danes (§ 65). He thus revived the old local jealousies at the very moment when the country was again exposed, after an interval of nearly a century, to the inroads of fresh hordes of Northmen from over sea (§ 61). The invasions began in the year after Æthelred's accession, and were repeated year after year. They were now conducted not only by the petty chiefs of the Scandinavians, but by the head-kings themselves; and they soon developed from mere plundering raids into a systematic attempt at dynastic conquest (cf. § 53). The task of meeting the invaders was mostly left to the local authorities, who sometimes made the best terms they could for themselves, and sometimes offered a gallant but usually futile resistance. The memory of one of these unequal fights is perpetuated in a great war-song which has come down to us: it tells how Brihtnoth, Ealdorman of the East English, fell at Maldon, Essex, in 991, in a vain endeavour to beat back the army of the Norwegian King, Olaf Tryggvasson.

§ 77. **Æthelred's Methods of dealing with the Danes, 991-1013.**—In the year of the fight at Maldon, Æthelred tried to get rid of the invaders by paying them to go away. The money required was raised by the novel expedient of a general land-tax, imposed by the authority of the Witan on all the kingdom. But the respite thus bought was not used to organize the national defences, and when the Northmen returned they demanded a higher ransom. In 991 they were content with £10,000: twenty years later the amount of the *Danegeld* had risen fivefold. Fighting was really the cheaper policy, if only it had been well conducted on a large scale. In 994 Olaf was so severely handled by the Londoners that he left England for good; but an attempt to create a national fleet five years later ended in disaster. In 1002 Æthelred had recourse to two fresh devices: he made a marriage with Emma, daughter of Richard the Fearless, Duke of Normandy (Table, p. 31), and he also ordered a general massacre of the Danes who had

recently settled in Wessex, to take place on St. Brice's Day (November 13). But the massacre only gave the invaders an additional reason for coming—a desire for vengeance as well as a desire of gain; and the Norman marriage, though it deprived the wild Northmen of their rallying-ground among their civilized kinsmen on the Seine, did not bring Æthelred any positive strength. In 1014 even the disunited Irish, gathered together for a moment under the leadership of Brian Boru, were able to inflict a crushing blow on their Northman foes at Clontarf (§ 123): in the previous year Æthelred, the inheritor of the strong English kingdom, showed his sense of the hopelessness of the struggle by taking refuge in Normandy.

§ 78. **Swegn, King of the English, 1013-1014.**—Æthelred's place was taken, with the consent of all parties, by Swegn, King of the Danes, who had been ravaging the country at intervals during the past twenty years, and whose activity had been increased and embittered by the death of his sister Gunhild in the Massacre of St. Brice's Day. But when Swegn died in 1014, after ruling for less than a year, the old divisions were renewed. The Danes chose as their king, Cnut, youngson of Swegn: the English Witan invited Æthelred to return "if he would rule them better than he did before."

§ 79. **Æthelred II.'s Restoration, 1014-1016.**—Æthelred came back and was at first successful in his struggle with Cnut. He now had the help of two able men—his eldest son, Eadmund, and his son-in-law, Eadric the Ealdorman of the Mercians. But Eadric was entirely influenced by selfish considerations—men called him *Streona* or "the Grasper"; and in 1015 he quarrelled with Eadmund and took up the cause of Cnut. Cnut had already overrun Wessex; Eadric's change of sides gave him Mercia; and he had almost mastered England when Æthelred died early in 1016.

§ 80. **Eadmund Ironside, 1016.**—On the death of Æthelred, the Londoners and the West Saxons generally, joined by Eadric, rallied round his son Eadmund, while the Danelagh and the North remained obedient to Cnut. Eadmund struggled with a doggedness which won for him the name of Ironside; and in the course of seven months fought six pitched battles in South England, extending from Pen Selwood in Somerset to Assandun (*Ashington?* or *Ashdown?*) in Essex, and comparable to Ælfred's campaign in 871 (§ 56). Eadric, by treacherously deserting Eadmund at Assandun, gave Cnut the victory; but the victory was so far from being complete that he was glad to come to terms with his adversary. *The Treaty of*

*Alney*, negotiated by the English Witan on an island in the Severn, assigned Wessex (including Kent and Sussex), East Anglia, and Essex to Eadmund and the rest of the country to the Dane. The partition had hardly been arranged, when Eadmund was murdered by Eadric the Grasper at the end of November, and Cnut became sole king.

## II. THREE DANISH KINGS, 1016-1042.

§ 81. **Cnut the Great, 1016-1035:** (i) **International Position.**—In 1018 Cnut became King of Denmark on his brother's death, and in 1028 he also acquired Norway. During the latter years of his reign he was thus the ruler, and the effective ruler, of vast dominions, forming a kind of Northern Empire modelled on that Roman Empire which had recently been revived in the West by the Saxon kings of Germany. Cnut's empire was short-lived, but while it lasted it was so secure that Cnut could absent himself from it for two years to make a pilgrimage to Rome. While at Rome, in 1027, he witnessed the coronation of the Emperor Conrad, and obtained from him and the other kings present the grant of various facilities for such of his subjects as should make religious or commercial journeys in Western Europe. Cnut showed his appreciation of the real centre of affairs by this pilgrimage and by making England the head-quarters of his rule. Before he was quite settled on the English throne, Malcolm II. King of Scots had finally acquired Lothian by his victory over the Northumbrians at Carham in 1018; but towards the end of Cnut's reign, in 1031, Malcolm was forced to recognize the English overlordship (cf. §§ 63, 64). The extent of the overlordship thus acknowledged is unknown (§ 92): on the other hand, it is quite certain that Lothian was thenceforth part of what was now beginning to be called "the kingdom of Scotia."

§ 82. (ii) **Cnut as an English King.**—Cnut began his reign in England by trying to heal up old sores, and by taking measures to prevent them breaking out again. He married Æthelred's widow, Emma of Normandy; he had the mischief-making Eadric put to death; and he sent back to Denmark all his Danish fighting-men save a small force of six thousand *hus-carls* to be his bodyguard. He thus showed that he trusted the loyalty of the English as a whole, but that he deemed it prudent to be safe from a surprise attack by such a man as Eadric. He continued the policy of dividing England into large rulerships for administrative purposes: there were usually four—Wessex, Mercia, Northumbria, and East Anglia—

and their rulers now began to drop their old English style of ealdorman for the shorter Danish form of earl (*jarl*). Two of these earls, Godwin \* of Wessex, and Leofwin of Mercia, founded families which retained their importance for half a century. They were powerful, but were kept in due subordination so long as Cnut lived. Cnut himself developed from a savage warrior into a wise and firm ruler, not unworthy of being coupled with Ælfred as bearing the title of "the Great." Besides governing well, he built bridges, drained fens, endowed churches, and encouraged learning. In his letter from Rome to his English subjects he truly wrote, "I have never spared, nor will I ever spare, myself or my labour in taking care for the needs of my people."

§ 83. **The Sons of Cnut, 1035-1042.**—Cnut died in 1035, and with him perished the peace and unity of his dominions. He left two sons, Harold and Harthacnut, the one born of his first wife, an Englishwoman, the other born of the Norman Emma. Harold was accepted as king by most of the English, headed by Leofwin's son Leofric; but Godwin and the West Saxons chose Harthacnut, who had inherited Denmark. While this partition yet lasted Harold inveigled Emma's two sons by her first marriage over to England: one of them, Ælfred, he put to death, but the other, Eadweard, escaped back to Normandy. In the following year (1037) the West Saxons, weary of waiting for their absent king—who was trying to recover Norway—abandoned Harthacnut, banished his mother, and accepted Harold Harefoot. England was thus united under one king; it remained united during the rest of Harold's reign; when he died in 1040, it accepted Harthacnut; and when Harthacnut died, "as he stood at his drink," in June 1042, all the English folk chose Eadweard, his half-brother, to be their king.

### III. THE ENGLISH RESTORATION, 1042-1066

§ 84. **Eadweard the Confessor: (i) Relations with Earl Godwin, 1042-1053.**—The removal of the Northman dynasty made room for a king who came of the Old English stock, but who was far from being English in his ways. Brought up in his mother's country, Eadweard had become more Norman than English. He was more interested in spiritual than in secular concerns: while he

\* Godwin (d. 1053)

Swegn d. 1052	HAROLD d. 1066	Tostig d. 1066	Leofwin d. 1066	Gurth d. 1066	Wulfnoth	Eadgyth = Eadweard Confessor
------------------	-------------------	-------------------	--------------------	------------------	----------	---------------------------------

yet lived men called him "the Confessor," and after his death he was revered as a saint. Thus his natural instincts and his convictions alike led him to attempt the improvement of the English Church by appointing officials trained in the severer schools of the Continent (§ 95): for instance, he made his Norman friend, Robert of Jumieges, successively Bishop of London and Archbishop of Canterbury. The work of civil government he left largely in the experienced hands of those whom he found in possession—Godwin, Leofric, and Siward the Stout, Earl of Northumbria. Three years after his accession he married Godwin's daughter Eadgyth; but when in 1051 Godwin refused to punish his eldest son Swegn—who had abducted the Abbess of Leominster,—and the men of Dover—who had attacked Eustace, the Count of Boulogne and the King's brother-in-law—Eadweard summoned the other earls\* to his assistance, and with their support banished Godwin and his sons. The outlaws took refuge in Flanders and Ireland. Eadweard turned his victory to the advantage of his Norman friends: he gave them offices, and when his cousin, Duke William, came over on a visit, he is said to have promised him the succession to the throne, which was not his to give (§ 67). Eadweard's foreign favouritism led to a reaction, which the Godwin family used as a means to force themselves back to power in 1052. Archbishop Robert took to flight, and Stigand, an Englishman, was uncanonically put in his place. In the year following his return Godwin died suddenly at the King's table, under circumstances which were held to prove his guilt in taking part in the murder of the King's brother Ælfred (§ 83).

§ 85. (ii) **Earl Harold and the Welsh, 1053-1066.**—Godwin's power passed to his eldest surviving son, Harold—Sweyn having died on his way back from a pilgrimage to Jerusalem. Harold became Earl of Wessex; when Siward died in 1055, after an unsuccessful expedition against the Scots King Macbeth, the earldom of Northumbria was given to Harold's brother Tostig; and in 1057 his younger brothers Gurth and Leofwin were respectively made earls of East Anglia and Kent (including Essex, Middlesex, and Berkshire). All England except Mercia was thus practically in the hands of the Godwins; and in self-defence Ælfgar, Earl

\* Leofwin, Earl of Mercia

Leofric, Earl of Mercia

Ælfgar, Earl of Mercia

Eadwin, Earl of Mercia

Morkere, Earl of Northumbria



of Mercia (1057-1063), made alliance with the Welsh, giving his daughter in marriage to Gruffydd-ap-Illewelyn, Prince of Gwynedd. National and family considerations thus combined to lead Harold to attack Wales, and in 1063, aided by his brother Tostig, Harold defeated and slew the Welsh king. Having dealt this indirect blow at the Mercian house, Harold strove to conciliate it. In 1065 the Northumbrians expelled Tostig and chose as their earl, Morkere, younger brother of Eadwin, Ælfgar's son and successor. Harold assented to his brother's fall and the aggrandizement of the rival house. While parties were thus balanced Eadweard died in January 1066.

§ 86. **King Harold II. and his Rivals, 1066.**—Eadweard died childless, and the nearest representative of the royal house, Eadgar the Ætheling (i. e. Prince), grandson of Eadmund Ironside, seemed too young to face the troubles which were known to be brewing. It was not usual for the Witan to accept any one as king who was not of the blood royal; but they had accepted Cnut, and now they chose Harold Godwinson to be king. Harold tried to strengthen his position not only by organizing his forces, but also by marrying Ealdgyth, widow of Gruffydd, and sister of the Earls Eadwin and Morkere. His succession to the kingship was threatened by his brother Tostig, by Harald Hardrada, the adventurous King of Norway, and by William, Duke of the Normans. William was the nearest and most dangerous rival: he was connected by marriage with the English royal house (Table, p. 31): he claimed to have received from Eadweard the promise of the succession, and from Harold—wrecked on the coast of Normandy at some unknown time—an oath to support his claims. From a legal point of view, William's claims were worthless: from a moral point of view, it might be contended that Harold's oaths, if taken at all, were extorted by compulsion and deception, and were not binding. Nevertheless, William obtained the sanction and blessing of the Pope for his intended expedition against the alleged perjurer and usurper (§§ 94, 95).

§ 87. **Battle of Stamford Bridge, September 25, 1066.**—All through the summer Harold awaited William's arrival on the south coast; but in September provisions ran short, and his men dispersed to their homes to get in the harvest. Meanwhile Tostig had appeared in the Humber, but had been driven away by Eadwin and Morkere. He then joined forces with the Norwegian King, Harald Hardrada; together they sailed up the Humber, and defeated the sons of Ælfgar at Fulford on September 20. Five days later

the invaders were surprised and defeated by Harold at Stamford Bridge on the Derwent, a few miles east of York. How Tostig and his ally fell on the field—is it not told in the *Saga of King Harold Sigurdson*?

§ 88. **Battle of Hastings, October 14, 1066.**—Harold Godwinson had pushed north by forced marches to the help of Eadwin and Morkere; but when the news came that, three days after the victory at Stamford Bridge, the Norman Duke had landed at Pevensey in Sussex, the northern earls hung back from helping in turn their rescuer and their brother-in-law. Harold went south, collecting what troops he could and, refusing to listen to his brothers' advice to await reinforcements, took up a position on the hill of Senlac near Hastings, in order to force on the battle at once. As his men were mostly ill-trained and ill-armed peasants, he placed them on the defensive. Early in the morning of S. Calixtus' Day, William attacked the English; but for many hours his archers and his mailed horsemen alike failed to dislodge them. Towards evening a feigned retreat of the Normans caused the English to sally forth from their defences: the Normans turned on the pursuers and gained the crest of the hill. Having thus broken the wings, the Normans closed round the picked troops forming the centre of the English host. William ordered his archers to shoot in the air, so that the arrows fell on the defenceless faces of the men who were using their shields as a protection against the weapons of the knights fighting them hand to hand. By sunset Harold, his brothers, and his household troops had fallen round the royal standard. William pitched his tent in the midst of the slain, and ordered the body of the perjured traitor to be buried on the shore—a fit sepulchre for "the one English King who has died fighting for his fatherland."

§ 89. **William's Coronation, Christmas Day, 1066.**—The English Witan chose Eadgar the Ætheling to be king; but there was no man left to organize resistance to the invader. William marched past London—which was gradually taking the place of Winchester as the national capital—and, crossing the Thames at Wallingford, took up a position at Berkhamstead in the Chilterns. He thus cut off the Londoners from the considerable forces which Eadwin and Morkere could have brought to them, had they cared to do so. Eadgar's adherents were helpless: they invited William to reign over them. On Christmas Day, 1066, he was crowned by Ealdred, Archbishop of York, in the Abbey recently built by the Confessor on Thorney—the island nucleus of the modern city of Westminster.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR, 1066-1087.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—The illegitimate son of Robert the Devil, Duke of the Normans, by Harlotta, or Haleva, daughter of a tanner of Falaise; born in 1027; succeeded his father as Duke in 1035; married Matilda of Flanders, a descendant of Ælfred the Great, 1053; crowned King of the English, December 25, 1066; died, September 9, 1087; buried at Caen in Normandy. For his descent, see Table, p. 31: for his descendants, see Table, p. 42.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

EASTERN EMPIRE.	WESTERN EMPIRE.	PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SCOTLAND.
Romanus IV. (1067)	Henry IV. (1056-1106)	Alexander II. (1061)	Philip I. (1060-1108)	Malcolm III. <i>Canmore</i> (1057-1093)
Michael VII. (1071)	<i>Various Rivals</i> — Rudolf of Swabia (1071)	Gregory VII. <i>Hildebrand</i> (1073)		
Nicephorus III. (1078)	Hermann of Luxem- burg (1081)	Victor III. (1086)		
Alexis I. (1081)	Conrad of Fran- conia (1093)			

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) Papacy: § 95.
- (2) Scotland: §§ 90, 92.
- (3) France: §§ 93, 98.
- (4) Norway: § 96.
- (5) Denmark: §§ 91, 96.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) English Risings: §§ 90, 91.
- (2) Baronial Risings: § 96.
- (3) The Church: § 95.
- (4) Feudalism: §§ 93, 94, 97
- (5) Taxation: §§ 96, 97.

### I. COMPLETION OF THE NORMAN CONQUEST, 1066-1072.

§ 90. **Conquest of the West, 1067-1068.**—The Norman Conquest of England was neither begun nor finished at the battle of Hastings. The successive marriages of the Norman Emma to Æthelred and Cnut, and the normanizing influences of Emma's son led up to William's intervention (§§ 77, 82, 84): the battle of Hastings merely removed his greatest obstacle. Harold's defeat and death gave

William the English crown ; but he had still much hard fighting to do before he made good his position. Nevertheless, in 1067 everything seemed so quiet that William returned to Normandy for nine months, leaving his half-brother Odo, Bishop of Bayeux, in charge of England. During the government of Odo, who was less conciliatory than his master, insurrections broke out in Kent and Hereford, and Eadgar Ætheling practically renounced his submission to William by taking flight to Scotland. In 1068, however, William was so successful in suppressing various risings—beating back the sons of Harold from Exeter and Bristol, and forcing the Northumbrians to submit—that the Scots King, Malcolm III., deemed it prudent to make peace.

**§ 91. Conquest of the North and of the Fens, 1069-1071.—**

In 1069 a second rising took place in the North, assisted by a great fleet sent by Cnut's nephew, Swegn, King of Denmark. But the Danes did little except plunder York and other places, and sail away with their booty. William determined to stop this unrest, and ordered the whole of the fertile valleys draining into the Yorkshire Ouse to be laid waste. In the winter he crossed the hills to Chester and reduced the Marches and Wales to submission in the spring of 1070. The English who still declined to bow to William took refuge either in Scotland or in the Fens—the almost inaccessible swamp through which various rivers wound their sluggish way into the Wash. The head-quarters of these malcontents was the Isle of Ely, and their leader was Hereward, “the last of the English.” In 1071 William penetrated into this Camp of Refuge, and Hereward disappeared: accounts differ as to whether he died in defending Ely, or escaped to foreign parts, or accepted William's pardon and favour. Certainly Morkere (§ 85) was pardoned: his brother Eadwin had already been slain as he was making his way to Ely.

**§ 92. Malcolm Canmore's Submission at Abernethy, 1072.**

—The English, unable to organize a national resistance, had been beaten piecemeal; their hopes of help from the Danes had been shattered; and they now had but one possible source of help—the Scots King, Malcolm III., surnamed Canmore or Bighead, who had married Eadgar the Ætheling's sister Margaret some time between 1067 and 1070. Accordingly in 1072 William led an army northwards, not only across the Tweed but beyond the Forth; and at Abernethy, on the Tay, Malcolm “became his man.” William thus reasserted the imperial position of the Old English kings (§§ 35, 63, 64, 81): whether the acknowledged suzerainty of the English King was to

be nominal or real depended on circumstances. The Norman Conquest of England affected Scotland almost as much as it affected England. The English element in the Lothians was increased by the settlement there of refugees from England. From being a mere appurtenance to a Gaelic kingdom, the Lothians thus came to be regarded as the most valuable part of the Scottish King's dominions. Following on the alliance between the Norman and Scottish kings, Normans also settled in the Lowlands (§ 106); and the Anglo-Norman element in the South remained in close connection with England until alienated by the Edwardian War of Independence (ch. xiv.).

## II. CONSEQUENCES OF THE NORMAN CONQUEST, 1070-1087.

§ 93. **The Normans and their Duke.**—The Norman Conquest owed its success as a military operation mainly to the divisions existing among the English: its constitutional effects were largely shaped by the character of the Normans and their leader, and by the conditions of their joint enterprise. The Normans were the descendants of those vikings who, in 913, had forced the West Frankish King to give formal sanction to their settlement on the lower Seine (§ 59). The hardy Northmen quickly adopted the language, customs, and religion of those among whom they settled: in France they became French, in England they became English, in Italy they became Italian; but in all cases they infected with their own vigour and resourcefulness the people by whom they were absorbed. Thus Normandy became a kind of French Danelagh—with the important difference that it retained a position of semi-independence under the rule of the family of Rolf the Ganger. William, descended from Rolf in the fifth generation (Table, p. 31), had succeeded to the dukedom under the double disadvantage of youth and illegitimacy. He had had to face opposition both from his feudal lord, the French King, and from his feudal vassals, the Norman Baronage; and his successful struggle had given him that deep experience, quick insight, and strong will which shaped the destinies of England. The wide-reaching social effects of the Norman settlement on the English were throughout guided and controlled by the political ability of the Norman kings.

§ 94. **Effects of the Conquest:** (i) **On the Civil Constitution.**—William's policy as an English King was to make the control of the Kingship over all England as effective as he made his dukeship effective over all Normandy. To gain this end, he acted in the rôle of elected national king, of feudal lord, or of conqueror,

as suited his purpose: he especially strove to check the revival, in any form, of the semi-independent local rulerships which had sprung up and choked the Old English Kingship in its latter days. Regarding himself as the rightful King of England from the day of Eadweard's death, he inferred that those Englishmen who had fought for Harold had forfeited their property, and that those Englishmen who had abstained from helping their rightful king to put down the perjured usurper were liable to a fine for neglect of duty. These legal assumptions—for the Normans had a genius for jurisprudence—practically placed all the land at the disposal of the Conqueror; and he naturally proceeded to deal with it in the "feudal" fashion to which he was accustomed (§ 73). Some of the land was restored, wholly or in part, to the former owners, but on condition of their doing "service": most of it was "granted" to the men who had helped William to obtain the kingdom. For the Norman expedition, though dynastic and religious in outward show (§ 86), was really a commercial speculation: the adventurers from various countries who gathered round Duke William were his partners and expected their share of the profits. In distributing the confiscated property William took pains to avoid granting great blocks of land to any one individual lest the large landowners should attain a position of independence on their own domains. Other means of checking the growth of territorialism were the careful maintenance of the laws, the *fyrð*, or national militia, and the local assemblies of the conquered English; the retention of the castles in his own hands (§§ 114, 116); the enforcement of the oath of allegiance (§ 97); and the gradual transference of governing powers from the earls to the sheriffs. Earldoms ceased to be offices and became little more than titles of honour. An exception was made in the case of the "palatine earldoms" of Kent, Durham, Chester, Shrewsbury, and Hereford: there the earl needed to be invested with administrative powers in order to guard the frontiers. In the cases of Shrewsbury and Hereford, however, these powers were soon withdrawn.

§ 95. (ii) **On the Ecclesiastical Constitution.**—The Norman Conquest introduced a greater measure of orderliness and system not only into civil but also into ecclesiastical affairs. For some time the Church on the Continent had been stirred by various impulses towards reform. This movement was first begun in the Benedictine Abbey of Clugny in Burgundy (Saône valley), and it was brought into the sphere of practical politics by Hildebrand, who, after being the chief adviser to three popes in succession, became Pope himself

under the title of Gregory VII. (1073-1085): hence this movement is variously known as the Clugniac, and as the Hildebrandine, Reformation. The main ideas of the Reformers were the necessity for a clear separation between the spiritual and the temporal, as regards both things and persons, and for the predominance of the spiritual over the temporal. Translated into practice, these ideas meant the celibacy of the clergy and the supremacy of the Pope. Closely connected with these ideas were the formulation of the doctrine of Transubstantiation, and the elaboration of the system of ecclesiastical rules known as Canon Law. William was a warm supporter of the Clugniac reforms—so long as they did not interfere with his determination to be absolute master of his own dominions. His friend, Lanfranc of Pavia, whom he appointed Archbishop of Canterbury (1070-1089) in the room of Stigand (§ 84), improved the working of the English Church by transferring the bishops' sees from small villages to large towns (*e.g.* from Dorchester, in Oxfordshire, to Lincoln), and by making the marriage of the clergy illegal in future. By Lanfranc's advice, William separated the ecclesiastical from the secular jurisdiction more sharply than in Old English times: the bishops were ordered not to hear spiritual cases, as heretofore, in the shire-moot, now called the county-court (*comitatus*), but to do so exclusively in their own courts, and they were further empowered to judge such cases by ecclesiastical law (§§ 120-122). But when Gregory VII., in 1076, demanded that William should repay the Papacy for its support of his attack on Harold by acknowledging that he held the kingdom as a fief of the Papacy, William declined, saying that he could find no precedent for such an acknowledgment (§ 140). Lanfranc agreed both in this refusal and in William's assertion of his right to a general control over the Church. William's three *Rules of the Royal Supremacy* (cf. ch. xxiv) laid it down that, without the King's assent—

- (1) No Pope was to be acknowledged in England, and no Papal Letters were to be received in England ;
- (2) No Church synod was to be assembled, and none of its canons or laws were to be valid, in England ;
- (3) No Crown-vassal—*i.e.* no *tenant-in-capite* (tenant-in-chief), or man holding land by military service directly from the King—was to be excommunicated by the Church.

§ 96. **Disturbances in England and Normandy, 1075-1084.**—William's methods of government were resented even more by his Norman barons than by the great mass of his English subjects.

In 1075 two of these barons—Ralf Guader, Earl of Norfolk, and Roger, Earl of Hereford—made a plot, known as the “Bridal of Norwich,” to get rid of “the Bastard” and divide England between them. With the help of the native English, William put down the rising of the Earls: Ralf escaped, Roger was imprisoned, but Waltheof, the popular son of Siward the Stout, who had declined to take a share in the enterprise, was put to death in May 1076. Two years later, William’s eldest son, Robert Curthose, annoyed because his father would not give him territory during his own lifetime, made a rebellion in Normandy with the help of some of the discontented barons there. In 1079 he wounded his father at the siege of Gerberoi and sought his forgiveness. In 1082 William had to imprison his half-brother Odo, Bishop of Bayeux and Earl of Kent, for conspiracy. These tumults encouraged the belief that William could be dispossessed if only his enemies made a great effort; and in 1084 the Kings of Norway and Denmark arranged a joint expedition to expel William. The expedition fell through, but the expense of the preparations for defence forced William to revive the Danegeld (§ 77)—at thrice its former rate of two shillings a hide.\*

§ 97. **Domesday Book and the Salisbury Gemot, 1085-1086.**—This necessity of raising a special tax to meet special emergencies seems to have suggested to William the expediency of making an accurate survey of the country as a basis of assessment. Royal Commissioners were sent all over England—except the district which now forms the four northern counties—to learn the extent of each estate, the name of its owner, the number of its inhabitants, and the amount of live and dead stock. The results of their investigations were embodied in *Domesday Book*—a book from whose records, as from those of the Last Judgment, there could be no appeal. These results—which give a minute account of the state of society at the time—are scarcely more important than the methods by which they were obtained. That method was technically known as “recognition by sworn inquest”: that is to say, the Royal Commissioners obtained the information required from the parish priest, the reeve, and the four best men of each township, put on oath. A similar method had been used in 1070 to discover the English laws. Those who knew, or rather a *representative* selection from those who knew, were required to place their knowledge at the

\* The *hide* was a land measure based not on scientific principles but on the practical difficulties of ploughing: it represented what one plough (*caruca*: cf. § 183), drawn by one team of eight oxen, could plough in one season—and so varied with the nature of the land. It was ultimately fixed at its average amount—120 acres.



service of the State: this expedient, as we shall see (§§ 129, 141, 148), was the practical origin of the later English institutions, Trial by Jury and the House of Commons. William turned the financial information thus obtained to other purposes: in 1086 he held a great meeting at Sarum (*Salisbury*), and there compelled all landholders, "*whosoever men they were*," to swear allegiance to him. This oath meant that William was resolved that *allegiance* to the *King* should be a higher duty than *fealty* to the immediate lord: in modern phrase, the duties of a *citizen* were to outweigh those of a *tenant*. William thus clearly asserted the principle of national unity: it was left to his successors to contrive the administrative machinery required for making that principle uniform and effective (§§ 101, 108, 127-129).

§ 98. *William's Death, 1087.*—In the year following the Gemot at Salisbury, William died in Normandy, while making war against the French King. A modern school-boy once described his headmaster as "a beast, but a just beast." That criticism aptly expresses the feelings of the average contemporary Englishmen about William: they did not like or appreciate the value of his discipline, but they recognized that he was fair according to his lights. Anyhow, it was better to be thrashed by him than by a number of irresponsible underlings. The English usually rallied round the Norman kings against the Norman barons; and William himself was warmly eulogized by one who would naturally be expected to regard him as an enemy—the contemporary writer of the *English Chronicle*:—

"This King William was a very wise and a great man, and more honoured and more powerful than any of his predecessors. He was mild to those good men who loved God, but severe beyond measure towards those who withstood his will. . . . King William was also held in much reverence: he wore his crown three times every year when he was in England: at Easter he wore it at Winchester, at Pentecost at Westminster, and at Christmas at Gloucester. And at these times all the men of England were with him, archbishops, bishops, abbots, and earls, thegns and knights. So, also, was he a very stern and a wrathful man, so that none durst do anything against his will, and he kept in prison those earls who acted against his pleasure. . . . Amongst other things the good order that William established is not to be forgotten: it was such that any man, who was himself aught, might travel over the kingdom with a bosomful of gold unmolested; and no man durst kill another, however great the injury he might have received from him."

## CHAPTER IX.

### THREE NORMAN KINGS, 1087-1154.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—The relationships of these three kings are shown in the Tables, pp. 31, 42.

(a) **WILLIAM II.**, Rufus: third son of William I. and Matilda; born, 1056; crowned King, September 26, 1087; died childless, August 2, 1100; buried at Winchester.

(b) **HENRY I.**, Beauclerc: fourth son of William I. and Matilda; born at Selby, Yorkshire, 1068; crowned King, August 5, 1100; died near Rouen, without male heirs, December 1, 1135; buried in Reading Abbey.

(c) **STEPHEN**, Count of Blois: third son of Stephen, Count of Blois, and Adela, daughter of William I.; born at Blois, 1105; crowned King, December 26, 1135; died at Dover, October 25, 1154; buried in Faversham Abbey, Kent.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

EASTERN EMPIRE.	WESTERN EMPIRE.	PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SCOTLAND.
<i>House of Comnenus</i> (1081-1185)	Henry IV. (1056)	Victor III. (1086)	Philip I. (1060)	Malcolm III. (1057)
	Henry V. (1106)	Urban II. (1087)	Louis VI. (1108)	Donald Bane (1093)
Alexis I. (1081)		Paschal II. (1099)		Edmund (1094)
Joannes II. (1118)	Lothar II. (1125)	Gelasius II. (1118)		Edgar (1097)
		Calixtus II. (1119)		Alexander I. (1106)
		Honorius II. (1124)		David I. (1124)
Manuel I. (1148)	Conrad III. (1138)	Innocent II. (1130)		
	Frederick I. (1152)	Celestine II. (1143)	Louis VII. (1137)	Malcolm IV. (1158)
		Lucius II. (1144)		
		Eugenius III. (1145)		
		Anastasius IV. (1153)		

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

#### (i) International: *relations with—*

- (1) The Crusades: §§ 103, 104.
- (2) Scotland: §§ 100, 106, 111.
- (3) France: § 109
- (4) The Empire: §§ 109, 110.
- (5) Anjou: §§ 109, 110, 113.
- (6) Norway: § 104

#### (ii) Constitutional.

- (1) The Church: §§ 101, 102, 105, 107, 112, 114.
- (2) Feudalism: §§ 101, 105, 114.
- (3) Curia Regis: § 108.
- (4) Royal Succession: §§ 99, 105, 110, 111, 112.
- (5) Native English: §§ 99, 105, 106, 110.
- (6) Wales: § 100.

### WILLIAM RUFUS, 1087-1100.

§ 99. **William and Robert, 1087-1089.**—William I. on his death-bed gave Normandy to his eldest son Robert, England to his second surviving son William, and to the third son, Henry, a

sum of money with which he bought the Norman peninsula of Cotentin from his brother. William Rufus hastened over to England, and was crowned at once by Lanfranc. In 1088 a number of the Barons, headed by Odo of Bayeux and Roger of Shrewsbury, rose in rebellion, hoping to substitute the easy-going Robert for the strong-handed Rufus. But William, supported by Lanfranc, appealed to the native English, and with their aid drove away Robert and put down the rising. Lanfranc died in the following year; and, directly his good influence was removed, William broke the promises of just government by which he had rallied the English to his side. In the words of the *Chronicle*: "he feared God but a little, and man not at all." He was coarse and brutal, but able and energetic; and on the whole it was better for England to be under the rule of a man who would allow nobody but himself to rob, than under a man like Robert, himself orderly, who put no restraint on the disorderliness of his Barons.

§ 100. **Wales and Scotland, 1090-1093.**—William devoted much of his ability as a soldier to securing the English Borders. He subdued South Wales, but finding that he could make no impression on the hillier North, he gave permission in 1090 to any of his subjects to take what they could of North Wales; from this permission there sprang into existence the Lords-Marchers, who played so prominent a part in Anglo-Welsh history during the next four centuries (§§ 163, 185). In 1092 he conquered the middle portion of the old kingdom of Strathclyde, formed it into the shire of Cumberland, and rebuilt Carlisle to defend his new possession from the Scots (cf. § 63). Malcolm Canmore retaliated next year by ravaging Northumberland, but was killed at Alnwick. His death brought about fierce quarrels between the Keltic and the English parties in his kingdom: William, so far as his wars in Normandy allowed, supported the English party headed by the sons of the "Saxon" Margaret (§ 92).

§ 101. **Ralf Flambard's Fiscal Devices.**—On the death of Lanfranc, Rufus took as his chief minister a clerk (i. e. *clericus*, *clergyman*, or man in holy orders), whom his Norman countrymen called Ranulf Flambard, and whom the English called Ralf the Torch. For nearly five hundred years after the Norman Conquest the English kings drew the majority of their officials from the ranks of the clergy. This practice was at once safe and cheap: these clerks—often intelligent persons of humble birth, who could not escape from manual to brain work, except by taking orders in the Church—were

more dependent on the King, to whom they owed their position, than members of the baronial class would be; they could be paid for their services by the gift of ecclesiastical benefices. These ministers naturally took their tone from their master: William I. wanted efficiency; William II. wanted money. Ralf dutifully set himself to obtain money, and he did so by pressing the feudal conception of land-tenure to its logical issues. The King was the sole landowner in the kingdom: those who held land held it on condition of doing service (§ 73). If a man died he could not do the service: therefore, let the man—whether the son of the deceased or not—who took up the service, make a payment for the benefice (§ 73). This fine was called a *relief*: in the case of tenants-in-chief—such of the King's immediate tenants as paid their rent by fighting, or, in technical language, held "by knight-service" or "in chivalry"—there was imposed an additional fine known as *primer seisin*. If a man died, leaving as his heir either a minor or a girl, incapable of military service, the King claimed the right of *wardship*: that is, he took the land into his own hands until the boy grew up to manhood, or the girl was married to a man who could earn the land by his service. Ralf Flambard also asserted the King's right to control the marriage of the widows or heirs minors of his tenants, and turned this claim to the pecuniary profit of the King. Ralf, if he did not invent this system, applied it systematically and extended it to church-lands. They were treated as lands held of the King in return for spiritual service, in technical language, "by *francalmoign*." When the holder of a church-benefice died (cf. § 73), the King claimed a right, analogous to *wardship* in lay benefices or fiefs, of enjoying the revenues during the vacancy, and of exacting a fine, analogous to a *relief*, from the person appointed. Now the purchase, direct or indirect, of the cure of souls was one of the abuses ear-marked for reform by the Clugniacs: they likened it to the sin of Simon Magus (*Acts of Apostles*, viii. 20) and branded it *simony*.

§ 102. **Anselm of Aosta and the Council of Rockingham, 1095.**—It was not till four years after Lanfranc's death that the King, thinking himself about to die, forced Anselm of Aosta to accept the archbishopric of Canterbury. Like Lanfranc, Anselm was an Italian who had been head of the abbey of Bec in Normandy before his promotion to the English primacy; but in him the ecclesiastic predominated over the politician to a far greater extent than in his predecessor. Anselm, himself a meek and saintly man, stood up for righteousness without respect of persons; offended the

King and his courtiers by rebuking their vices; withstood the extortions practised on clergy and laity alike; and finally quarrelled with the King on one of the points specifically laid down in the Conqueror's regulations concerning the Royal Supremacy (§ 95). There was a dispute as to which of two rivals was the rightful Pope; and the King was unwilling to acknowledge Urban II., the claimant recognized by Anselm. In 1095 a compromise was patched up in a council held at Rockingham; but shortly afterwards Anselm left the country, and Rufus seized the lands of his archbishopric.

**§ 103. Council of Clermont and the First Crusade, 1095.—**

In the same year as the English Council of Rockingham there was held a more important church-council at Clermont in Auvergne. At that council Pope Urban II. proclaimed a crusade—*i. e.* a holy war on behalf of the Cross (Latin, *crucem*)—against the Muhammadan occupiers of the pilgrim resorts in the Holy Land. The Arabs or Saracens, the early champions of Muhammad's teaching (§ 34), had recently been conquered by hordes of Seljuk Turks from Central Asia; and these Seljuks, though quite as civilized as the peoples of Western Europe, were less civilized and more intolerant than the Saracens. They consequently treated Christian pilgrims visiting Jerusalem, Bethlehem, and other holy places in Palestine, with greater harshness than the Saracens in recent years had done. In urging that an attempt should be made to wrest Palestine from the Moslems, Urban II. was partly influenced by a desire to extend the Pope's sphere of influence: the Papacy, having obtained at any rate a nominal submission from all the Western Church, naturally embarked on a foreign policy—to reduce the followers of Muhammad and the members of the "schismatic" Greek Church to its obedience. The Crusade of 1095-9 was the first of a series of enterprises which, in the course of four centuries, gradually passed from religious into commercial and colonizing movements (§§ 132, 159, 265). The First Crusade, in which the Eastern Roman Emperor joined hands with the Westerns, resulted in the capture of Jerusalem (§ 132), and the establishment of several Frank\* principalities in Syria.

**§ 104. Relations of Robert and William, 1095-1100.—**

Among those who took part in the First Crusade was Robert Duke of Normandy. The two brothers had quarrelled almost incessantly since their father's death; but Robert now obtained funds for his expedition by leasing his duchy to William for 10,000 marks

\* The first Crusaders were largely Frank: hence their Moslem enemies called them generally "Franks," and to this day call Europe Frangistan.

(£6,666). William thus ruled more territory than his father, and was thinking of adding Ireland to his possessions, when in August 1100, he was shot with an arrow—whether accidentally or not is unknown—while hunting in the New Forest. Two years previously the last notable Northman descent on South Britain took place, when the Norwegian King, Magnus Bareleg, accompanied by one of the sons of King Harold Godwinson, defeated some Norman barons who were conquering the Welsh island of Anglesey (§§ 44, 100).

## II. HENRY BEAUCLERC, 1100-1135.

**§ 105. Henry I.'s Charter of Liberties, 1100.**—The Conqueror's youngest son, Henry, at once seized the royal treasury at Winchester, and three days after his brother's death was crowned King at Westminster. He tried to win the good-will of all parties by arresting Ralf Flambard, by inviting Anselm to return to England, and by issuing a Charter pledging himself to keep certain promises which he had orally made at his coronation:—

- (1) That the Church should be free, especially from the extortions made during the reign of Rufus: in particular, that ecclesiastical lands should not be sold or farmed out, and that the higher ecclesiastical benefices should not be kept vacant [§ 101].
- (2) That Feudal Incidents—Relief, Wardship, etc.—whether exacted by the King or by any other feudal lord, should be “just and legitimate.”
- (3) That the laws of Eadweard Confessor, as amended by William I., should be maintained.

**§ 106. The Opposition to Henry, 1100-1106.**—These three promises appealed respectively to the Clergy, the Barons, and the native English. But Henry showed that he felt the last-named to be his safest friends, by marrying Eadgyth or Matilda, the daughter of the Scottish Queen Margaret, and niece of Eadgar Ætheling (§ 92). The Barons sneered at his choice, but it soon justified itself by the results. For it was by the aid of English levies that Henry defeated his brother's attempt to gain the English crown in 1101, suppressed a baronial rising under Robert de Bellesme in 1102, and obtained the person and duchy of his brother at the battle of Tinchebrai in South Normandy in 1106. Eadgar the Ætheling was captured at Tinchebrai, and during the rest of his long life—he lived to the age of one hundred—he took no prominent part in public affairs.

**§ 107. Anselm and the Compromise of Bec, 1107.**—Anselm loyally supported Henry in warring down his opponents, but at the same time he was engaged in a long dispute with the King. During

his exile he had come to believe that the Church must be far more independent than was permitted by the Conqueror's conception of the Royal Supremacy (§ 95). In particular, he maintained that bishops and abbots ought to be freely chosen by the chapter or community of the see or abbey that was vacant, and that they ought not to receive from lay hands the ring and the staff (or crozier), which were the symbols of their ecclesiastical authority. Henry, like the Emperor and other kings of his time, maintained that he must have some control over persons who were not only church-officers, but also large landowners, and had great political authority. Ultimately, in 1107, the dispute was settled, as far as England was concerned, by the *Compromise of Bec*, which provided:—

- (1) That the Chapters should elect the Bishop or Abbot, but should make their choice "in the King's Court"—*i. e.* in the presence of the King or his representatives.
- (2) That the Bishop or Abbot should not be invested with the ring and pastoral staff (or "spiritualities" of the office) by the King, but should (a) before consecration, do *homage* to the King for the lauds (or "temporalities") belonging to the see or abbey, and (b) after consecration, swear *fealty* to the King.

**§ 108. Roger of Salisbury and the Curia Regis.**—In the year that the Investiture question was thus settled, Henry made Roger the Poor, Bishop of Salisbury, his chief minister. The main object of government was not then regarded as making fresh laws but the enforcement of existing laws (cf. § 50). It was natural, therefore, that the King's chief minister should take the title of *Justiciar*. Roger, the first to bear the title, was the principal organizer of the Norman system of government. In particular, he tried to manage the financial side of the government in such a way that the King's income should be as large as in Ralf Flambard's days, without the same amount of oppression. The body of trained officials, which had been growing up during the last two reigns, was placed under the control of the Barons of the Exchequer, who took their name from the chequered cover of the account-table in their place of business. There Roger and his subordinates received the moneys collected by the sheriffs and their officers, and paid them out as required for the expenses of the King's household and government. One of the chief sources of revenue was the fees paid by those who asked the King's officers, or justices, to settle their disputes; and in order to increase these fees Henry and Roger occasionally sent round the country the trained officials to settle disputes. The Barons had rights of jurisdiction on

their estates (§ 75); and it both increased the King's authority and swelled his income if he could provide cheaper, better, and more effective justice than the Barons could offer. The occasional journeys of these "itinerant justices"—whence arose the still-existing circuits by judges of assize—were thus partly financial, partly judicial: their general tendency was to bring the reality of the King's authority home to every one all over the land, and so prevent the allegiance of all landowners to the King (cf. §§ 97, 101) from becoming of less practical importance than the fealty due to the nearest great baron. Under Henry this system was so fairly worked, that he was called "the Lion of Justice."

### § 109. Henry I.'s Foreign Wars and Alliances, 1114-1128.

—Henry's power was exemplified by the excellent marriages arranged for his children: he married his daughters to the Roman Emperor, Henry V. (1114), and to the Count of Brittany, and his son William to the daughter of Fulk, Count of Anjou, the hereditary enemy of the Norman House. But his power raised enemies as well as friends; and in 1117 the French King and the Barons of Normandy took up the cause of Robert's son, William Clito. In 1119 Henry defeated the coalition at Brenville or Brémule, near Rouen, and forced William to abandon his attempts on Normandy for a more promising attempt to acquire Flanders. In 1128 William was killed in besieging Alost.

§ 110. Henry and the Succession, 1120-1135.—Henry I. had thus got rid of all his enemies and rivals; but the latter years of his reign were troubled by the thought of what was to become of his dominions after his death. His only legitimate son William—whom the English fondly called the Ætheling, but who himself detested the English—was drowned on the way back from Brenville in 1120. In the following year, his father took a second wife, Adela of Louvain; but she bore him no children. Henry then set himself to secure the succession of his daughter Matilda, who, after the death of her first husband, the Emperor, was married to Geoffrey, son of the Count of Anjou (1128). During the years 1126-1133 Henry thrice caused his Barons to swear fealty to Matilda. In 1135 Henry I. died in Normandy, and his deposed brother Robert died in prison.

### III. STEPHEN OF BLOIS, 1135-1154.

§ 111. Stephen and the Scots, 1135-1139.—Henry's pains to secure the succession of his daughter proved unavailing. The times were not yet ripe for a woman's rule; and Matilda's Angevin husband was distasteful to the Norman Barons. Hence Stephen, Count



of Blois, a younger son of the Conqueror's daughter Adela (Table, p. 42), was easily able to seize the throne, with the assent both of the Londoners and of the Barons. Stephen, like his two predecessors and many other English kings, has been called "a usurper" by persons who antedate the general acceptance of the principle of hereditary succession. The English crown was still elective rather than hereditary; and Stephen was chosen king by the constitutional authorities which had the right to fill the vacant throne. But the cause of the "Empress Maud"—as she was called to distinguish her from Stephen's wife, Maud—was taken up by her uncle, David I., King of Scots. In 1137 Stephen drove back a Scottish invasion; in the following year David came again, and was defeated by the men of Yorkshire, summoned to arms by Thurstan, Archbishop of York, at the "battle of the Standard," near Northallerton; and in 1139 Stephen deemed it prudent to buy off the Scottish King by ceding Cumberland to him and granting Northumberland as a fief to his son Henry, Earl of Huntingdon (§ 116).

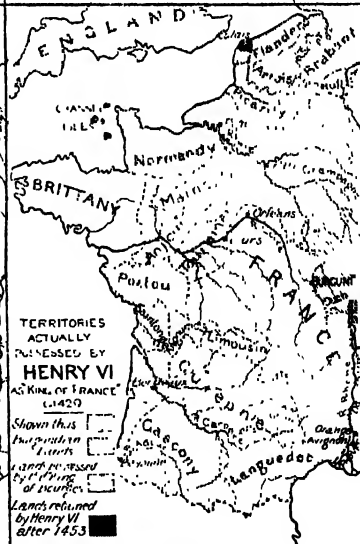
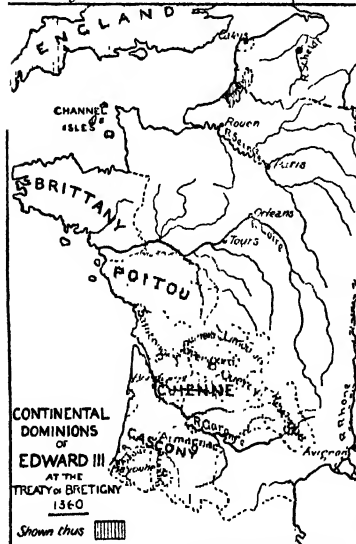
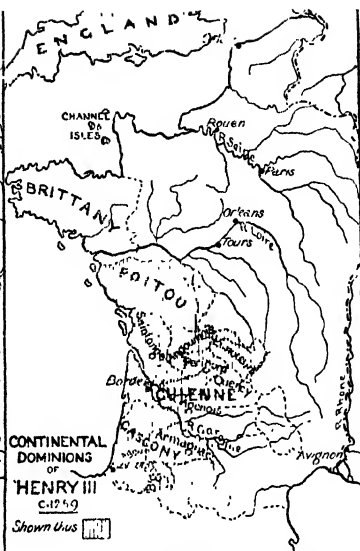
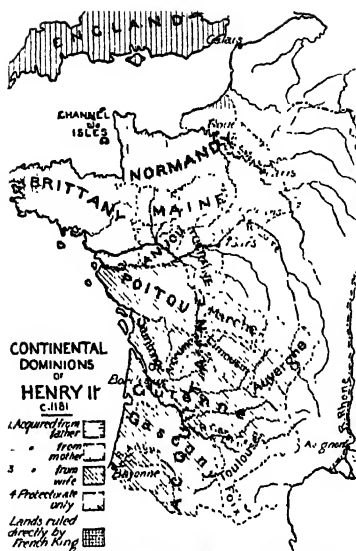
§ 112. **The Civil War between Stephen and Matilda, 1139-1148.**—Stephen had no sooner secured himself in possession of the throne than he proceeded to throw away his advantages. In 1139 he attacked the powerful family connections of Roger of Salisbury—including his son, the Chancellor, and his nephews, Nigel, Bishop of Ely, and Alexander, Bishop of Lincoln (§ 108); and his method of attacking these ecclesiastics estranged the Clergy as a class. Even his own brother, Henry, Bishop of Winchester, turned against him and gave his support to the Empress Maud and her half-brother, Robert, Earl of Gloucester. The country was plunged into disorder during the rest of the reign. In 1141 Stephen was captured at Lincoln, and the greater part of England acknowledged his rival as Queen, or rather as "Lady of the English." But the Empress Maud offended the Londoners. Stephen's wife kept alive the king's cause, and before the end of 1141 her adherents captured Earl Robert and exchanged him for Stephen. Seven years later Robert died, and Maud withdrew from England.

§ 113. **The Treaty of Wallingford, 1153.**—Meanwhile Maud's son by her second marriage had been growing old enough to fight his own cause. During the years 1149-1152, Henry successively acquired extensive territories in France, which made him far more powerful than his nominal suzerain the French King, or indeed than any prince in Western Christendom (§ 115). When, therefore, he came over to conquer England in 1153, Stephen accepted the peace-

proposals put forth by his brother Henry and Archbishop Theobald. By the *Treaty of Wallingford*, November 1153, Stephen associated his rival with himself in the government of England, with the title of Justiciar, agreed to various measures of reform, adopted Henry as his heir, and acknowledged his right of succession. In the following October Stephen died.

§ 114. **The Anarchy of Stephen's Reign.**—Stephen, like his uncle Robert, was a good-hearted and generous man, but, unlike his less amiable predecessor, he did not keep a firm hand on the government. The Barons took advantage of his easy-going disposition and of the civil war, to make themselves petty despots on their own estates. "Every one did right in his own eyes"; and the result is thus depicted in the last pages of the *English Chronicle*:—

"When the traitors perceived that Stephen was a mild man, and soft and good, and did no justice, then did they all wonder. They had done homage to him and sworn oaths, but they held no faith; for every powerful man made his castles and held them against him, and they filled the land full of castles. They cruelly oppressed the wretched men of the land with castle works. When the castles were made, they filled them with devils and evil men. Then they took those men that they thought had any property, both by night and by day, peasant men and women, and put them in prison for their gold and silver, and tortured them with unutterable torture; for never were martyrs so tortured as they were. They hanged them up by the feet and smoked them with foul smoke; they hanged them up by thumbs or by the head, and hung chains on their feet; they put knotted strings about their heads, and writhed them so that it went to the brain. They put them in dungeons, in which were adders, and snakes, and toads, and killed them so. Some they put in a chest that was short and narrow and shallow, and put sharp stones therein, and pressed the man therein, so that they brake all his limbs. . . . They laid imposts on the towns continually; and when the wretched men had no more to give, they robbed and burned all the towns, so that thou mightest well go all a day's journey, and thou shouldest never find a man sitting in a town, or the land tilled. Then was corn dear, and flesh and cheese and butter; for there was none in the land. Wretched men died of hunger; some went seeking alms who at one time were rich men; some fled out of the land. Never yet had more wretchedness been in the land, nor did heathen men ever do worse than they did. . . . If two or three men came riding to a town, all the township fled before them, imagining them to be robbers. The bishops and clergy constantly cursed them; but nothing came of it, for they were all accursed, and forsworn, and lost. However a man tilled, the earth bare no corn; for the land was all foredone by such deeds, and they said openly that Christ and His Saints slept."



The Eastern Frontier of the French Kingdom shown thus

## CHAPTER X.

### HENRY II., 1154-1189.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Born at Le Mans in Maine, March 5, 1133; son of Henry I.'s daughter Matilda or Maud by her second husband, Geoffrey, Count of Anjou; succeeded his father in 1151; married the heiress Eleanor of Aquitaine (*d.* 1204), 1152; crowned King of the English, December 19, 1154; died at Chinon in Normandy, July 6, 1189; buried at Fontevraud in Anjou. His descent from the Old English kings is shown in Table, p. 31: his descendants are shown in Table, p. 42.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

EASTERN EMPIRE.	WESTERN EMPIRE.	PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SCOTLAND.
Manuel I. (1143) Alexis II. (1181) Andronicus I. (1183) Isaac II. (1185) <i>Angelus</i> (1185)	Frederick I. <i>Barbarossa</i> . (1152-1190)	Hadrian IV (1154) Alexander III. (1159) Lucius III. (1181) Urban III. (1185) Gregory VIII. (1187) Clement III (1187)	Louis VII. (1137)  Philip II. <i>Augustus</i> . (1180-1228)	Malcolm IV. (1153) William I. <i>the Lion</i> . (1165-1214)

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

(i) **International:** *relations with—*

- (1) France: §§ 115, 117, 122, 126, 130.
- (2) Papacy: §§ 122, 125, 126.
- (3) Empire: § 122.
- (4) Scotland: §§ 116, 126.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) The Church: §§ 118-122, 125.
- (2) Feudalism: §§ 116-119, 124, 126.
- (3) Curia Regis: §§ 119, 127-129.
- (4) Wales: § 116.
- (5) Ireland: §§ 123-125.

### I. THE RESTORATION OF ORDER, 1154-1162.

§ 115. **Henry II. and the Angevin Empire.**—Stephen's successor, Henry II., is notable, among other things, for his personality, his ancestry, and the extent of his possessions. His personality—wide of outlook, careless of convention, methodical, unscrupulous, untiring in action—will be illustrated in the record of his doings. His ancestry endowed him with the blood of three great ruling families: on his father's side, he was descended from the Breton peasant who won the county of Anjou as a reward for resisting the Northman inroads of the ninth century; on his mother's side, he was descended both from the Norman dukes and from the Old English kings (Tables, pp. 31, 42). Before he became King of the

English he had acquired, by descent or by marriage, three distinct groups of territories in France (Map, p. 72), which were throughout the reign much more important than the kingdom of England :—

- (1) *Through his Mother*: Normandy and Maine, which Maud claimed as the heiress of William the Conqueror, which her husband Geoffrey of Anjou had occupied, and which were in 1151 formally conferred on young Henry by their feudal owner, Louis VII., King of France.
- (2) *Through his Father*: Anjou and Touraine, inherited on his father's death in 1151.
- (3) *Through his Wife* (Eleanor of Aquitaine, whom he married in 1152 directly after she had been divorced by Louis VII.): the various territories collectively known as Aquitaine, viz. Poitou, Marche, Saintonge, Angoumois, Limousin, Auvergne, Guienne, Gascony.

§ 116. **The Repression of the Anarchy, 1154-1157.**—Henry began his reign as King of the English when, two months after Stephen's death, he was crowned at Westminster. He at once set himself to carry out the provisions of the *Treaty of Wallingford* (§ 113) for restoring order in England on the lines laid down by his grandfather, Henry the Scholar (§§ 107, 108). He resumed possession of the Crown lands which Stephen had lavishly bestowed on men who promised their support of his claims; he destroyed hundreds of the strongholds which the robber Barons had built to defend their power and their misdeeds, and which, being built without royal permission, were known as "adulterine castles" (§ 114); he forced the Barons to abandon the mints whence they had issued private coins for use in their domains; and finally, in 1157, he marched through Wales and also compelled the Scots King to evacuate the northern counties (§ 111) and to do homage for his English earldom of Huntingdon. In order to put down the opposition to these measures, he employed not only the native English *fyrð* or militia (§ 129), who had a duty as citizens to fight for their king, but also foreign mercenaries who served not from duty but for pay, and who thus came to be called *soldiers* (Latin, *solidi*, shillings). As soon as he had restored order in England, he took his mercenaries over-sea and used them to assert his wife's claims to the overlordship of the great county or earldom of Toulouse.

§ 117. **The Toulouse War and the Imposition of Scutage, 1158-1162.**—It was during the War of Toulouse that Henry, in 1159, brought into general use an important financial expedient which had been applied previously to the holders of ecclesiastical lands in England. His tenants in chivalry owed him military

service, but this was limited by custom to forty days per annum. Such short service was no good for distant warfare: it inconvenienced the Barons without greatly benefiting the King. Henry therefore commuted the military services for a money payment, known as *scutage* or shield-money (Latin, *scutum*, "shield"), with the proceeds of which he hired mercenaries. Thus the King both weakened the Baronage as a fighting force, and also obtained the means of equipping an army composed of more manageable troops than the self-willed Barons. The commutation of military service for money payment tended to destroy feudalism in the higher ranges of tenure, just as the later commutation of villan services for money rents tended to destroy feudalism in the lower ranks of society (§ 214).

§ 118. **Knighthood and the Ideal of Chivalry.**—Scutage was usually, though not invariably, fixed at 20s. on each knight's fee or fief, which practically represented a tax of five per cent., or "one shilling in the pound," on the annual value of the area of land technically known as a knight's fee. The knight's fee was that amount of land—fixed in Henry II.'s time as land having a yearly value of £20—which enabled its holder to maintain the dignity of knighthood. We shall come across the term knight so often in the course of our story, that it is just as well to have a clear notion as to its original meaning. The *knight* of Norman times was the Old English *thegn*—with a difference: the equivalent of each term in the universal language of the day was *miles*, a fighting-man; but the term knight involves the additional idea of attempting to christianize the occupation of fighting—then regarded as the only proper business of "a gentleman." Knighthood or chivalry was one of the products of the Clugniac movement (§ 95). The person who wished to be a knight—to devote his physical strength to God "in the world"—like the person who wished to devote his moral ardour to God in the cloister, went through a long training or novitiate; and he was afterwards admitted to the status of knighthood, on taking vows to keep faith, to speak truth, to be courageous, and to protect the helpless and oppressed. "Truth and honour, freedom and courtesey," in Chaucer's phrase, were the virtues of the knight. Naturally this ideal of knighthood became smirched in practice: one cause of its deterioration was its necessary connection with the idea of property.

§ 119. **Henry II.'s Chief Ministers, 1154-1162.**—Henry's chief advisers in the work of restoring order, and in the conduct of the English government during his five years' absence on the Continent (1158-1162), were two laymen and two ecclesiastics. The laymen

were the two Justiciars, Robert de Beaumont, Earl of Leicester (1154-1167), and Richard de Lucy (1154-1179), whose main business was the restoration of what Henry commonly called "*avite consuetudines*"—the governmental practices adopted in his grandfather's reign (§ 108). The ecclesiastics were Theobald, Archbishop of Canterbury, and Thomas of London, who occupied the increasingly important post of Chancellor, *i.e.* the keeper of the King's seal and the manager of his secretaries. Thomas was the son of Gilbert Bocket, a merchant of London who rose to be its port-reeve, a position corresponding to that of the Lord Mayor of later days. While in Theobald's service, Thomas had done much to smooth the way for Henry's peaceful accession. Henry rewarded him with the Chancery, and in 1162, on the death of Theobald, secured his election as Archbishop of Canterbury. Henry expected Thomas to help him in the work of curtailing the clerical privileges, which, like those of the Baronage, had grown apace during the anarchy of Stephen's reign.

## II. THE STRUGGLE BETWEEN CHURCH AND STATE, 1163-1170.

§ 120. **The Quarrel between Henry and Thomas, 1163.**—Thomas was one of those whole-souled men who are what they are for the time being with all their might. As Archbishop he threw himself into the cause of the Clergy no less eagerly than, as King's minister, he had thrown himself into the cause of the State. He resigned the Seal, and put on an ascetic bearing which stood in pointed contrast to his splendour as Chancellor. In the year after his elevation to the Primacy Thomas contravened the Conqueror's ecclesiastical law by excommunicating a baron without the King's leave. Then there arose a larger issue—the problem of the relations between the civil and the ecclesiastical courts. William I. had removed ecclesiastical *causes* from the jurisdiction of the temporal courts (§ 95): since his time the idea had sprung up that ecclesiastical *persons* also should be exempt from lay jurisdiction. Henry II. wished to make the judicial system uniform and efficient. With this end in view, he desired that his own courts should decide what cases fell, and what did not fall, within the purview of the courts spiritual, and that persons found guilty of crime should not escape secular punishment merely because they were in holy orders.

§ 121. **The Constitutions of Clarendon, January 1164.**—The quarrel came to a head over the case of a man in orders who had committed a murder: the Archbishop maintained that it was sufficient punishment for a "criminal clerk," if found guilty by a

court spiritual, to be deprived of his orders by the same authority ; the King maintained that such degradation should be followed by punishment in the lay court. Finally, Thomas and his suffragans agreed—"saving the rights of their order"—to accept Henry's proposal that the customs of the realm should be observed. He appointed commissioners to find out what were these customs ; their report is known as the *Constitutions of Clarendon* :—

- (1) The King's Court decides whether a criminous person is clerk or layman ; if a clerk, the ecclesiastical court tries him ; if found guilty there, he is degraded and handed over to the King's officer for punishment.
- (2) No bishop or abbot may quit the realm without the King's consent.
- (3) Appeals from the courts spiritual go to the King, and may not be carried out of the realm without the King's assent.
- (4) No crown-vassal may be excommunicated without the King's leave.
- (5) Bishops and Abbots owe the King the same duties as lay barons.
- (6) Elections of bishops and abbots take place in the King's chapel.
- (7) Sons of villans may not be ordained without their lord's consent.

§ 122. *Course of the Quarrel, 1164-1170.*—Thomas at first accepted the customs thus enumerated as binding ; but overcome by his scruples he withdrew his consent in a Council held at Northampton, and, being threatened with violence, he fled the country. For the next six years he was an exile in France, and was used as a tool by all Henry's enemies. Pope Alexander III. gave him as much support as was allowed by the exigencies of his long struggle with the Emperor, Frederick Barbarossa. Finally in 1170 a reconciliation was patched up, and Thomas returned to England. Soon after landing he excommunicated several of the King's adherents, and especially the Archbishop of York, who had recently infringed the privileges of the See of Canterbury by performing the coronation of Henry II.'s son Henry (§§ 126, 130). On hearing of this the King expressed an angry wish that some one would relieve him of "this turbulent priest." Four knights at his Court took him at his word, crossed to England, and on December 29, 1170, murdered the Archbishop in Canterbury Cathedral. The murder horrified the conscience of Western Christendom ; and Henry deemed it prudent to withdraw to Ireland till the storm had blown over.

### III. THE STRUGGLE BETWEEN KINGSHIP AND FEUDALISM, 1170-1189.

§ 123. *Outlines of Irish History, to 1169.*—The history of Ireland down to the eleventh century of the Christian Era has been described as "piles of tinted cloud which cannot be condensed into



solid fact." In the national legends truth cannot be winnowed from the imaginative detail; and the buildings have left no story that can be decisively interpreted. But some facts at least may be regarded as established. In early times Ireland was occupied by at least two waves of settlers—Iberians and Gaels (cf. §§ 18, 19); it was neither conquered by the generals of Rome nor christianized by the later missionaries of Rome; it received its Christianity from the Briton Church, and later sent out missionaries to Caledonia and to the mainland of Europe (§§ 30, 43); it attained a fairly high standard of civilization, which was destroyed by the inroads of the Norwegians, here called Ostmen; but it never attained any such measure of political unity as South Britain attained under the kings of the House of Cerdic, or as North Britain attained under the kings of the Scottish immigrants from Ireland. Brian Boru, who defeated the Ostmen in the great battle of Clontarf (1014), died in the moment of victory, and during the next hundred and fifty years, though there was usually one head-king, his authority was purely nominal.

§ 124. *The Norman "Conquest of Ireland."*—In 1166, when Roderick O'Connor, King of Connaught, was head-king, Dermot McMurrough was expelled from his kingdom of Leinster, and crossed to England seeking forces to recover his throne. By Henry's leave he enlisted the services of some of the Norman barons who had been winning lands for themselves in South Wales (§ 100). In May 1169 Dermot landed near Wexford with Fitz-Gerald and Fitz-Stephen; Richard Strongbow de Clare, Earl of Pembroke, followed; and though the Normans were few in number, their superiority in arms and armour enabled them to obtain a firm footing in the south-eastern angle of the island. Roderick failed to dislodge the newcomers from Dublin: the men who had come to serve remained to rule. Alarmed lest an independent Norman kingdom should be set up in Ireland, Henry ordered Strongbow to return to England and do homage for his new possessions in 1171; and in October 1172 he himself crossed to Ireland and received the homage both of the Norman adventurers and of the Irish chiefs. He could not stay in Ireland long enough to make the homage a reality by establishing an effective central government as in England.

§ 125. *The Synod of Cashel, 1172.*—While Henry was yet in Ireland he assembled a synod of the Irish clergy which adopted the customs of the Roman Church and acknowledged the authority of the Pope. He thus fulfilled the commission which had been given him in 1154 when Pope Hadrian IV.—Nicolas Breakspear, the only

Englishman who has ever been Pope—authorized him to subdue the island on condition that he corrected the abuses of its church (cf. § 95). Having thus a new daughter-church to present to the Papacy, Henry was able in 1172 to obtain absolution for the murder of Thomas from Pope Alexander III. Henry had to agree to the formal cancelling of the *Constitutions of Clarendon*; but as a matter of fact his judges largely recognized the practices there set down.

§ 126. **The Great Feudal Revolt, 1173-4.**—Henry's involuntary complicity in the murder of Archbishop Thomas greatly shook his power and prestige. The reconciliation with the Papacy partly restored him to his former position, but he still seemed vulnerable enough to invite attack. In 1173 a combined onslaught was made upon him by his many enemies. His sons, Henry, Richard, and Geoffrey, instigated by their mother, joined hands with the discontented Baronage, with Philip, Count of Flanders, and with the Kings of France and Scotland. Henry himself defeated his opponents in Brittany and Poitou, while his Justiciar in England defeated the Barons in East Anglia. In 1174 the King's son Henry—called in his own day "Henry III."—proposed to invade the eastern counties, while William the Lion of Scotland invaded the northern counties. Henry II. came over to England to face the danger, and on his way to London he did penance for the murder of Archbishop Thomas—who had been formally declared a saint and a martyr—at the shrine in Canterbury Cathedral. Immediately afterwards he was informed that his forces in the North had captured William the Lion at Alnwick on July 13. William's capture was soon followed by the submission of all Henry's rebel subjects and the conclusion of peace with the independent enemies of the King. William himself was not released until he had permitted the English occupation of Edinburgh and other castles in the Lothians, and acknowledged the vassalage of his entire kingdom in the *Treaty of Falaise* (December 1174).

§ 127. **The Development of the Curia Regis, 1066-1189.**—The rising of 1173-4—which was suppressed, so far as England was concerned, by the help of the native English and of the Northern Barons—was the last great feudal revolt in England. That is to say, the Barons, instead of striving to make their territories independent rulerships, grew content to take their part in the rule of the whole kingdom. One of the duties owed to a lord was the giving of counsel when asked; and Henry II. was more diligent in enforcing this duty than any of his predecessors. After the Norman Conquest

the gathering of the great men of the realm, which the Old English had called the Witenagemot, came to consist exclusively of crown-vassals, and to be called the King's Court (*Curia Regis*) or Great Council (*Magnum Concilium*). But in Henry II.'s time the term *Curia Regis* came to be applied more particularly to the permanent body of officials who were continually engaged in judicial work or in other kinds of *administration*, while the term *Magnum Concilium* was applied to those larger assemblies of the Barons which met on special occasions for purposes of *consultation*. Nearly all the legislative enactments of Henry II. were issued "by the advice and assent" of such Great Councils. As yet the King was the sole law-giver, and consulted the principal persons of the realm merely as a matter of convenience. But this practice of consultation prepared the way for many notable changes in the future (§§ 155-159).

**§ 128. Henry II.'s Administrative Reforms, 1176-1188.**—The laws, or "assizes," put forth by Henry II. with the advice of his Barons, were mainly designed to develop the administrative machinery set up by his grandfather. The elementary difficulty about money had been so far overcome that Henry I.'s Exchequer now became merely a branch of the *Curia Regis* in its administrative sense. All the complicated machinery of the central government in our own days has been developed out of this body by process of specialization. In Henry II.'s time Richard de Lucy and his successor in the office of Justiciar, Ranulf de Glanvil (1179-1189), directed their efforts to the amalgamation of the Old English machinery of local government with the Norman machinery of central government. The assemblies of the hundred and of the shire were kept in regular working order; the county-court was kept in close touch with the *Curia Regis* by the revival and increased frequency of the visits of the travelling justices; and the control of the sheriff, who was usually a local magnate, over the county-court was lessened in consequence of the *Inquest of Sheriffs*, 1170. As the officials of the King's Court could not possibly possess such local knowledge as the sheriffs possessed, recourse was increasingly had to the practice of recognition by sworn inquest (§ 97).

**§ 129. Varied Developments of the Jury System.**—Henry used the information supplied on oath by freemen of good character in any given locality in various ways. By the *Grand Assize* he applied this method to finding out the facts in cases of land-disputes (origin of Civil Jury); by the *Assize of Clarendon*, 1166 (repeated, with amendments, ten years later in the *Assize of Northampton*),

he ordered well-informed representatives of the shires to discover and present for trial those whom they suspected of crime in their hundred or township (origin of Criminal Grand Jury); the trial was by ordeal till 1218, when the Criminal Petty Jury was instituted. Henry also essayed to find out how much a man ought to pay in taxation by using the knowledge of his neighbours. The principal, but not the only, instances of the financial uses of recognition are found in the *Assize of Arms*, 1181, and the *Ordinance of the Saladin Tithe*, 1188. The object of the *Assize of Arms* was to make the Old English *fyrð* a force thoroughly capable of maintaining order at home: it prescribed the amount of arms and armour which freemen must have and be able to use—according to the amount of their property; and the assessment of each man was fixed by the sworn evidence of the men of the neighbourhood. The *Saladin Tithe* (§ 132) was the first experiment in extending the principle of money taxation from land to personal property: each man was to estimate the value of his own property, but if he made false returns the neighbours were to show him up. All this inquisitiveness by government officials was annoying at first, but the next two or three generations found means to turn these troublesome practices to their own advantage (§§ 148-150). It was left for the future ages to appreciate the value of the changes expressed in Bishop Stubbs's formula: "the reign of Henry II. initiates the rule of law."

**§ 130. Henry's Last Years and Death, 1176-1189.**—Besides conducting these administrative experiments—of which the above is only a meagre selection—in England, Henry was also engaged in similar work in his Continental domains. But he could not even attempt to bind together his varied possessions in France in any such administrative unity as he found practicable in England. He had to treat each province separately, and he tried to make his power effective by placing one of his sons over each group of Continental territories. But his sons quarrelled with one another and with their father; and these quarrels were carefully fomented by Philip Augustus, the astute King of France, who aimed—and in the end successfully (§§ 136-138)—at taking into his own hands the bulk of the Angevin Empire. Henry lost his sons Henry and Geoffrey in 1183 and 1186 respectively; and in July 1189, after being defeated by his two surviving sons, Richard and John, Henry himself passed away muttering, "Shame, shame on a conquered King!"

## CHAPTER XI.

### THE SONS OF HENRY II., 1189-1216.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—See Table, p. 42, for the family connections of—

(a) **RICHARD I., *Cœur-de-Lion***: born at Woodstock, September 8, 1157; crowned King of the English, September 3, 1189; married Berengaria, daughter of Sanchez, King of Navarre (*d.* 1230), May 12, 1191; died, without issue, at Chaluz in Poitou, April 6, 1199; buried at Chaluz, Rouen, and Fontevraud.

(b) **JOHN, *Lackland***: born at Oxford, December 24, 1167; crowned King of England, September 27, 1199; married (a) Hadwisa of Gloucester (divorced, 1200), 1189, (b) Isabella of Angoulême (*d.* 1246), 1201, by whom he had issue; died at Newark, October 19, 1216; buried at Fontevraud and Worcester.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

EASTERN EMPIRE.	WESTERN EMPIRE.	PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SCOTLAND.
Isaac II. (1185) Alexis III. (1195) Alexis IV. (1203) Alexis V. (1204) ( <i>Latin Empire at Constantinople, 1204-1261</i> )	Henry VI. (1190) <i>Rivalry between—</i> Philip of Swabia (1197) Otto IV. (1198) Frederick II. (1212-1250)	Clement III. (1187) Celestine III. (1191) Innocent III. (1198-1216)	Philip II. <i>Augustus</i> (1180-1223)	William I. <i>the Lion</i> (1165)  Alexander II. (1214-1249)

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

#### (i) International: relations with—

- (1) Crusades: §§ 132, 133.
- (2) France: §§ 131-134, 136-142, 145.
- (3) Scotland: §§ 132, 139.
- (4) Empire: §§ 133, 140, 142.
- (5) Papacy: §§ 139-141, 145.
- (6) Austria: § 133.
- (7) Flanders: §§ 141, 142.

#### (ii) Constitutional.

- (1) The Church: §§ 136, 139-145.
- (2) Justiciarship: §§ 133, 135, 141.
- (3) Finance: §§ 133, 135, 143, 144.
- (4) Growth of English Nationality: §§ 131, 138, 145.
- (5) Representation: §§ 135, 143.
- (6) Royal Succession: §§ 131, 136.
- (7) Growth of Towns: §§ 133, 135.

### I. RICHARD LION-HEART, 1189-1199.

§ 131. **International and Constitutional Aspects of the Period, 1189-1216.**—Henry II. was succeeded by his two surviving sons, Richard and John, in the order of their birth. The quiet accession of Richard, without any formal acceptance by the English

magnates, illustrates the tendency of the English crown to become hereditary: the fact that John easily obtained the crown, though the son of an elder brother was alive and was put forward as a candidate (§ 136), illustrates the fact that the modern rules about hereditary succession were not yet accepted (§ 111). The main interest of these two short reigns is twofold: on the external side, they were marked by the break-up of the Angevin Empire, which Richard succeeded in averting, but which was accomplished in the reign of John; on the internal side, they were marked by notable developments of the governmental system established by Henry II. Richard, except for two brief visits in 1189 and 1194, was absent from England throughout his ten-years reign; but his absence hardly affected the smooth working of the government machine. John, on the other hand, spent most of his time in England, and by his wastefulness and interference threw the machine out of gear. Richard's absence enabled the trained ministers of the *Curia Regis* to learn how to carry on the government by themselves: John's misrule forced the ministers, with the support of all classes, to direct against the King that "rule of law" which Henry II. had elaborated as a royal defence against the Baronage (§§ 127-129).

**§ 132. Richard I. and the Third Crusade, 1189-1192.**—Richard had for some years been the ruler of his mother's dowry-lands in Aquitaine (§ 115); and on his father's death he was invested with Normandy and received the English crown. Straightway he set about making preparations to take part in the impending crusade. The Latin feudal principalities set up in Syria during the First Crusade (§ 103) had grown weaker despite the reinforcements sent out in the crusade of Stephen's reign (1147-9). In 1187 Saladin, the great Seljuk Sultan, had captured Jerusalem; and preparations were at once set on foot in Western Europe to attempt its recovery. In 1188 Henry II. and his great rival, the French King, had each levied tithes on the personal property of their subjects for the purpose of fighting Saladin (§ 129); and in 1189 Philip Augustus and Henry's successor both prepared to take part themselves in the work. Richard raised money by selling offices to ambitious individuals and privileges of self-government to the towns (§ 135); and he obtained 10,000 marks (£6,666) from William the Lion for releasing him from the homage promised at Falaise (§§ 126, 169). At the end of the year he started overland to Marseilles, where he was picked up by his fleet; thence he proceeded to Messina in Sicily, where he quarrelled with the natives and with the French

King; in the spring of 1191 he sailed to Cyprus, where he took prisoner the ruling prince Isaac, who styled himself Emperor, and married Berengaria of Navarre; and in June he joined the main body of Crusaders in the siege of Acre. After forcing Acre to surrender he marched south along the coast, winning a battle at Arsouf on the way; and twice he came within a few miles of Jerusalem. But disease had so weakened the numbers, and national jealousies had so broken the harmony of the Crusaders that he could make no attempt to recover the Holy City. In September 1192 he made a three-years truce with Saladin and next month started home.

§ 133. *England during Richard's First Absence, 1190-1194.*—Richard had left England in charge of William Longchamp, Bishop of Ely, as Justiciar, and had tried to secure the loyalty of his younger brother John by marrying him to an heiress and by making him Earl of Cornwall (and four other counties). After the King's departure there were riots all over the land directed against Jews, who were unpopular because they grew rich by lending money (§ 168). Then Earl John became unruly and put himself at the head of the baronial opposition to the Justiciar; and in 1191 William was deposed in favour of Walter of Coutances, Archbishop of Rouen. One of Walter's first public acts was the formal grant to the wealthy citizens of London of power to act together as a commune or corporation for common objects. Two years later it leaked out that Richard, landing at the head of the Adriatic on his return from Palestine, had been captured by Leopold, Duke of Austria, and by him sold to his suzerain, the Emperor Henry VI. The Duke had a grudge against Richard, who had treated him contemptuously at Acre in the course of the Third Crusade: the Emperor was glad to have possession of Richard, because he was the brother-in-law and ally of his great enemy, Henry the Lion,\* Duke of Saxony (Table, p. 42). Philip of France, helped by Earl John, did his best to induce the Emperor to keep "the devil" in captivity; but Walter of Coutances, with the support of Eleanor the Queen-mother, strove to secure his release. The ransom was fixed at £100,000—a sum which represented more than the whole average revenue of the kingdom; and Walter obtained the money partly by means of feudal aids, partly by a tax of 25% on personal property. Among the feudal aids levied were the ordinary feudal aid which every tenant in chivalry was bound to pay to

\* Henry the Lion was a member of the great family of Welf or Guelph: by his marriage with Henry II.'s daughter Matilda he was ancestor of the reigning House of Brunswick-Hanover which acquired the British throne in 1714.

ransom his lord from captivity, a *Tallage* imposed upon the towns and villan tenants of the Crown, and a land-tax on all freeholders, very much like the Danegeld, but now called *Hidage* or *Carucage*. Queen Eleanor herself took the ransom-money over to Germany; but her son was not released until he had done homage for his kingdom to the Emperor (cf. § 140). Richard was also formally invested with the kingdom of Burgundy—the region bounded on the west by the Saône and Rhone, and on the east by the Jura and the Alps.

§ 134. **Richard's Wars in France, 1194-1199.**—In March 1194 Richard landed at Sandwich. He put down the adherents of Earl John, whom he pardoned for his attempt to gain the kingdom, collected the rest of his ransom-money, and washed away the stain of his captivity and homage by having himself crowned a second time at Winchester. In May he left the country and spent the rest of the reign in his Continental territories—especially his favourite land of Aquitaine. By his victory at Fretteval on the Loir (July 1194), and at the bridge of Gisors over the Epte (1195), he foiled the attempts of Philip Augustus to conquer his dominions; but Richard did not live to make his kingship of Burgundy a reality. In the spring of 1199 he was mortally wounded in besieging the castle of Chaluz in Limousin. The enterprise in which he met his death—forcing an insubordinate vassal to give up treasure found on his land—aptly illustrates his character: its motive was a curious combination of greed and legality; it was conducted with military skill, and with generosity towards the man who shot the mortal arrow. Richard's type of character does not greatly appeal to the modern mind; but he was one of the best representatives of the ideal which was most admired by the knightly class of his time (cf. § 118).

§ 135. **England during Richard's Second Absence, 1194-1199.**—During Richard's second absence, affairs in England were administered by Hubert Walter, Archbishop of Canterbury, who had become Justiciar shortly before Richard's return from captivity, and by Geoffrey Fitz-Peter, who succeeded Hubert as Justiciar in 1198. Hubert Walter carefully maintained the traditions of government laid down by his uncle, Ranulf de Glanvil (§ 128). His main business was to supply money for the King's military necessities; and though the taxation was heavy, it seems to have been raised quietly and with the co-operation of the taxpayers (cf. § 129). In 1198, however, a Great Council, following the lead of Hugh, Bishop of Lincoln, refused to accede to Hubert's demands on the ground that they were not obliged to serve the King abroad, and consequently were not obliged



to pay money instead of such service. Among the ways extensively adopted by Hubert Walter for raising money was the sale of charters to towns. The towns were rising in numbers and importance, and they were both willing and able to purchase such "liberties" (*i. e.* privileges) as exemption from the jurisdiction of the sheriff, the right to elect their own municipal officers and collect their taxes, and the legalization of the local gild of merchants. The gild-merchant was an application to the sphere of commerce of that spirit of association which caused the formation of religious orders and orders of knighthood, and which was beginning to cause the formation of those gilds of scholars that soon came to bear the name of universities (§ 160). This extension of the practice of voluntary action by corporate bodies for local purposes, combined with the compulsory collective action of juries for purposes of taxation, etc., did much to prepare the way for the rise and growth of Parliament (§§ 141, 146-150).

## II. JOHN'S LOSS OF NORMANDY, 1199-1204.

§ 136. **John's First War with France, 1199-1200.**—Richard I. on his death-bed expressed a wish that he should be succeeded by his brother John; and, thanks to his mother's influence, John was speedily accepted in most of the Continental dominions of his father and also in England. At his English coronation, Archbishop Hubert was at some pains to impress upon John that he was expected to keep the oaths which he then took. The warning proved useless; but its seasonableness was shown by the facts of his past and future career. John had all the faults of his house but not its energy, and perhaps not its ability. He has come down to us in history as the worst of English kings: the chroniclers of his own day used stronger language—"Foul as Hell is, Hell itself is defiled by the fouler presence of John." Philip II. of France took up the cause of Arthur, the twelve-year old son of John's elder brother Geoffrey. Arthur was supported by his mother, Constance, the Duchess of Brittany, and by many barons in the neighbouring provinces of Anjou, Maine, and Touraine; but after a short struggle he gave up the contest and did homage to his uncle for Brittany.

§ 137 **John's Second War with France, 1201-1204.**—Shortly after making peace with Philip, John put away his wife and married Isabella of Angoulême. Isabella's betrothed, Hugh de Lusignan, Earl of Marche, stirred up his neighbours against John, and appealed to John's overlord, Philip Augustus, for redress of

grievances. When John refused to appear before his lord in answer to the accusations made against him, Philip declared John's fiefs forfeited. Arthur again took the field, but in July 1202, while besieging Queen Eleanor in the castle of Mirabeau, he fell into his uncle's hands. John offered his nephew fair terms; the high-spirited lad refused to repeat his former submission; he was imprisoned and disappeared. John's supposed murder of his nephew was another excuse for Philip's attack; and John made no attempt to defend himself. Before the end of 1204 Philip had completed his conquest of Normandy, Maine, Anjou, and Touraine by the capture of Château Gaillard—the "saucy castle" which Richard had built at Les Andelys for the defence of Normandy.

§ 138. **Development of English Nationality.**—Having conquered the territories which Henry II. had inherited from the Houses of Normandy and Anjou (§ 115), Philip proceeded to attack the broad lands which formed Eleanor's dowry. But though he overran Poitou and other parts of Aquitaine, he was less successful there than in the North. To the men of Aquitaine France was just as "foreign" as England; and, now as in the future (§§ 172, 177), they preferred the distant overlordship of the English king to the nearer sway of the French king. The severance of Normandy, etc., from England compelled those Barons who had possessions in both lands to choose with which country they would cast in their lot. John's incapacity thus greatly developed that blending together of the native English and their Norman conquerors which had already been begun by the natural process of intermarriage and by the accession of monarchs like Henry II. and his sons, who were "foreign" to both. A sense of common nationality and of pride in the self-sufficiency of England had already been enshrined in the pages of Henry of Huntingdon, a chronicler of Stephen's reign:—

"Anglia, terra ferax et fertilis angulus orbis,  
Est contenta sui fertilitate boni." \*

### III. THE QUARREL WITH THE POPE, 1205-1213.

§ 139. **The Papal Appointment of an Archbishop, 1205-1212.**—While John was losing his fairest lands he was also losing his best friends. His aged mother died in 1204, and Archbishop Hubert in the following year. The death of Hubert not only removed a restraining good influence from John, but also involved

\* "England (Angle-land), a fruitful land and fertile angle of the earth, is content with the fertility of its own good things."

him in a quarrel with Pope Innocent III., one of the best and ablest men that ever sat in the Chair of Peter. As the Archbishop was a great national personage, as well as a great ecclesiastic, the custom was for the Pope and the King to agree as to whom the formal electors, the monks of Christchurch, Canterbury, were to choose. The monks now chose Reginald their sub-prior; John made them choose his friend John de Grey; on reference to Rome, the Pope caused the monks to ignore both elections and choose Stephen Langton, a native-born Englishman, a great scholar, and a college friend of the Pope. John refused to accept Stephen, who was consecrated at Viterbo in 1207. As John would not yield, Innocent placed his kingdom under an interdict—i. e. closed the churches in England and forbade the clergy to administer any sacraments save baptism and extreme unction. John in return forbade the clergy to obey the Pope, and punished disobedience to the royal commands by fining and plundering the clergy. The latter thus found what they believed to be their spiritual duty of obedience to the Holy See conflicting with what they regarded as the lesser duty of civil allegiance to their lay sovereign. John continued obdurate, and during the years of the interdict made expeditions against Scotland, Wales, and Ireland. In 1209 the Pope excommunicated John, and three years later he took the further step of declaring him deposed, and of absolving the English from their allegiance. Philip Augustus, himself a former antagonist of Innocent III., was the Papal nominee for the throne thus declared vacant (§ 145).

**§ 140. John's Submission to the Papacy, 1213.**—To ward off the danger of invasion John prepared a large army, and made alliance with his excommunicated nephew, the Emperor Otto IV. But John knew that he could not depend on the loyalty of his Barons; and on May 15, 1213, he made a full submission at Dover to Pandulf, the Pope's legate or ambassador. In his act of submission John promised to receive Stephen as Archbishop, to recompense the bishops and clergy for the losses which they had incurred through obedience to the Pope, and to acknowledge that he held his kingdom as a fief of the Papacy (§§ 95, 207). The annual tribute was fixed at 1000 marks (£666).

#### IV. THE STRUGGLE FOR THE CHARTER, 1213-1216.

**§ 141. Archbishop Stephen and the National Opposition, 1213:**—On John's submission the Pope ordered Philip to desist from his intended invasion of England: Philip refused, but his fleet was

destroyed at Damme in Flanders by the ships of the Cinque Ports (§ 177), under the command of John's half-brother, William Longsword, Earl of Salisbury. John wanted to follow up the victory by an invasion of France; but his Barons did not wish him to become too powerful, and thought that he had better settle the disorders of his own kingdom before embarking on foreign enterprises. They refused to follow him, at first on the ground that he was excommunicate, and then, after the Archbishop had formally absolved him at Winchester, on the grounds that they were not obliged to cross the sea to perform their annual military service. John had to give way, and made some attempts to conciliate the opposition which his pecuniary exactions and scandalous living had aroused in all classes of his subjects. In August he summoned an assembly at St. Albans to assess the damages due to the bishops: the assembly included four discreet men and the reeve from each township *on the royal demesne*, and is notable for the fact that the local juries were for the first time gathered together into one place. It was an unconscious step on the road to Parliament (§ 149). In August also, the Justiciar Geoffrey Fitz-Peter (1199-1213) promised on the King's behalf the restoration of the "laws of Henry I."; and in a gathering of the Barons at S. Paul's, the Archbishop produced the *Coronation Charter* of Henry I. as evidence as to what his "law" really was (§ 105). With a view to arranging the promised restoration an assembly was summoned at Oxford in November, to which the Sheriffs were required to send "four discreet men of the shire to discuss with us the affairs of our realm." Apparently the Oxford assembly—concerning which nothing is known—differed from the St. Albans assembly in the breadth of its membership, as well as in the breadth of its business: it was not confined to the King's immediate tenantry, and its business was not exclusively financial; it was a national, not a purely feudal gathering.

§ 142. **The Battle of Bouvines, July 1214.**—In 1214 John again attempted to divert attention from domestic reform by attacking Philip. He himself landed at La Rochelle, and succeeded in recovering his mother's possessions as far north as the Loire; but his success was more than balanced by the utter defeat of his allies at Bouvines near Lille. There a great host, composed of Germans under the Imperial claimant Otto (see Table, p. 42), of Flemings under the Count of Flanders, and of English under the Earl of Salisbury, were overthrown by Philip Augustus, who thus established himself securely in the possession of the lands which he had subjugated.

§ 143. **Magna Carta, June 15, 1215.**—Encouraged by John's defeat, the Clergy and Barons pressed their demands for substantial reforms. John tried to break up the novel coalition by reissuing the charter in which he had promised complete freedom of choice—subject to a permission, or *consé d'élire*, which he undertook to make purely formal—in the filling of vacant abbacies and bishoprics. But the Clergy were not to be deceived by the paper promises of a faithless king; and their archiepiscopal leader formulated the demands of the coalition in a document called the *Articles of the Barons*. When John refused his assent, the Barons prepared to use force; and their army, which called itself “the Host of God and of Holy Church,” was so powerful and popular that John was obliged to accept the *Articles* in an amended form. On June 15, at Runnymede, an island in the Thames, between Staines and Windsor, he gave his consent to the *Great Charter of Liberties*. Among the provisions included in the sixty-three clauses of this document—the full text of which would occupy twelve pages of this book—were the following :—

- (1) “The Church of England to be free”—especially in the election of her bishops (Art. i.).
- (2) Feudal Incidents—Reliefs, Wardships, etc.—to be fixed [§ 101].
- (3) No scutage or aid—except the three ordinary aids for the ransom of the lord from captivity, on the knighting of his eldest son, and on the first marriage of his eldest daughter—to be raised without the consent of his Barons assembled in Great Council (Art. xii.).
- (4) The Barons to have due notice of the holding of a Great Council: the greater Barons to be summoned by special writ, the lesser Barons to be summoned collectively through the sheriffs (Art. xiv.).
- (5) The Barons to observe the same moderation towards their tenants that the King pledged himself to observe towards his Barons.
- (6) “No man is to be imprisoned, outlawed, punished, or dispossessed save by the judgment of his equals or by the law of the land” (Art. xxxix.).
- (7) “To no man will we sell, deny, or delay right or justice” (Art. xl.).
- (8) No man, whether serf or free, to be deprived of his “contentement”—i. e. means of livelihood—under pretence of lawful punishment for misdeeds.
- (9) Merchants to be allowed to travel freely throughout the land.
- (10) The customary methods of assessing taxes by juries not to be infringed.
- (11) The towns not to be deprived of the liberties that they had purchased.
- (12) Justice to be done to the Welsh and to the King of Scots.

§ 144. **Importance of Magna Carta.**—The *Great Charter* has been called “the keystone of the English Constitution,” “the palladium of English Liberties,” and “the standard of British freedom.” If it is necessary to follow the fashion of using a metaphor to describe the document, let it rather be called the lodestar whereby future pilots of the Constitution steered the ship of State. It was a constitutional ideal which Stephen Langton formulated, which was based, English-fashion, not on abstract notions of politics but on actual precedents, and which the men who came after him tried to realize. The Charter was a treaty between the King and his subjects which could always be cited as evidence that such and such a thing was contrary to an authoritative statement of the law of the land. The most important clauses in the document were those which provided that the assent of the payer was necessary for the lawfulness of certain kinds of extraordinary feudal taxation (Art. xii., xiv.), and those which recognized the illegality of certain arbitrary methods of royal interference with the persons and property of the individual (Art. xxxix., xl.). The financial restrictions on the Crown were dropped for a season after John’s death (§§ 151, 175); but the safeguards provided for the Liberty of the Subject have never been wholly ignored (§§ 387, 468). The importance of *Magna Carta*, however, lay less in what it actually achieved for good government than in the facts that it was won by the efforts, and protected the interests, not of the magnates of the realm alone, but of all classes of the community. In the words of Bishop Stubbs, “the *Great Charter* is the act of a united nation, the Clergy, the Barons, and the Commons, for the first time thoroughly at one.”

§ 145. **French Invasion and Death of King John, 1216.**—John had no intention of observing the Charter, and at once prepared to overwhelm his rebellious subjects. He appealed to the Pope, who released his vassal from his oath, and threatened to excommunicate his gainsayers; and he collected a great army of mercenaries. The Barons had been authorized by the Charter to take up arms in its defence, but feeling themselves unable to make headway against the combined power of King and Pope, they invited Louis, the son of Philip Augustus, to come and reign over them. The growing sense of English nationality was shown by the fact that this invitation to a foreigner weakened the cause of the Barons; and John, by making fair promises, rallied many of the ministers of his father to his side. None the less, John was losing ground when he suddenly died at Newark in October 1216.



## BOOK IV.

### *THE RISE OF PARLIAMENT, 1216-1327.*

#### INTRODUCTION.

§ 146. **Retrospect, 979-1216.**—In the course of the two hundred and forty years dealt with in our third book, England had passed under the sway of three successive dynasties of foreign kings who, among their achievements, had brought the country into closer connection with the continent of Europe, asserted and extended their control over the northern and western portions of the British Isles, and given England its first effective system of central government. The accession of William the Norman had substituted for the connection between England and Scandinavia a far more fruitful connection with Central Europe, especially with Rome, and had checked those tendencies towards internal disunion in England, which had been the prime cause of Harold's defeat (§§ 93-95). The accession of Henry of Anjou had brought England into personal union with Aquitaine—a region which had not yet become what we now naturally think of it as being, an integral portion of "France"—and had amalgamated the Old English substructure of local government and the Norman superstructure of central government into a tolerably compact and uniform edifice (§§ 115, 127-129). John's loss of the greater portion of his father's Continental dominions had raised England from an insular appendage of a Continental Empire into the home and head-quarters of the family which it is convenient to call Plantagenet\* (§§ 136-138).

§ 147. **Forecast of the Period, 1216-1327.**—The long reign of John's son, Henry III., formed a transition period. The fact that Henry combined an incapacity for government with a strong affection for foreigners led the English magnates who were discontented with him to seek a remedy for his misrule in a govern-

\* Henry II.'s father, Geoffrey of Anjou, wore a sprig of broom (*planta genista*) as a badge: hence in the fifteenth century, when surnames had come into common use, his family became known as Plantagenets.



ment which should at once be effective and English (§§ 156-159). During the struggle between Crown and Baronage there arose the first beginnings of what we call *Parliament* (§ 148). During the half-century occupied by the reigns of Henry's son and grandson, England was comparatively free from Continental complications: the main interest of the period lies in Edward I.'s attempt to bring the whole of Britain beneath his sway, and to elaborate the constitutional mechanism which, within England itself, should secure the constant and amicable co-operation of the governor and the governed in maintaining and improving the common weal. Edward I.'s combination of "reason and righteousness" was recognized by his own contemporaries and has caused him to be generally accepted in our days as "the Greatest of the Plantagenets." But his policy, though wise and far-seeing in design, was not wholly successful in results. Wales was completely conquered but not absorbed (§§ 162, 163). Scotland, during the reign of Edward's degenerate son, not only regained its independence, but also, as a direct consequence of Edward's intervention, acquired a lasting hatred of its wealthier neighbour. It was in the purely domestic sphere that Edward's greatness was chiefly manifested: he supplemented the work of Henry II. by adding to the machinery by which the King's will was imposed on the kingdom machinery by which the nation's thoughts and feelings might be brought to influence the King's will. His guiding principle was expressed in his words, "*what touches all should be approved by all.*"

§ 148. **The Expansion of the Great Council into Parliament, 1213-1272.**—For the first century after the Norman Conquest the only classes of the community who had any *right* to assist the King in the work of government were those which stood in direct and honourable feudal relations with himself—i. e. the lay barons and the prelates, both bishops and abbots (§§ 127, 143). But from the first the King made use of other classes: he used men of ability, generally ecclesiastics, in that routine work of administration which requires special knowledge and experience (§ 101); and he also used the local knowledge of all classes for performing the financial, judicial, and other business of the shires (§§ 97, 108). From a constitutional point of view, the great achievement of Henry II.'s reign was the definite formation of a trained body of government officials, and the constant employment of the well-to-do members of all classes to supplement and check the work of the official class (§§ 127-129). The next step needed was to concentrate

the political experience thus compulsorily thrust on the middle classes in the same way as the political experience of the Baronage, spiritual and lay, was concentrated in the Great Council: that was the main achievement of the thirteenth century. When, about the middle of the thirteenth century, the annalists began to use the term "*Parliament*"—"the place where men talked" (French, *parler*)—to describe the Common Council of the Realm, they implied that the body which had hitherto gathered to listen to the King's intentions and orders had got into a regular, and not merely an occasional, habit of discussing the matters brought before them. But when lawyers and modern historians speak of "*Parliament*," they look rather to the structure than to the function of the assembly: to them the distinctive marks of Parliament are the elimination of tenancy-in-chief as the sole qualification for a seat in the *Commune Concilium*, and the inclusion within it of the middle classes.

§ 149. **Development of Parliament, 1265-1322.**—Room was found for the middle classes by applying to the central assembly that method of elective representation which had been used for judicial and financial work in the Hundred and the Shire so long ago as the reign of William the Conqueror (§ 97). In 1213, 1254, and 1264, representative knights were summoned from each shire to assist the central government in ways specified in the writs of summons; and in 1265 and 1295, representative burgesses and citizens from various important cities and boroughs were similarly summoned, in addition to the county representatives (§§ 141, 159, 173). All these assemblies were merely the adaptation of existing institutions and practices to the special requirements of the occasion: it still remained to select one of these experimental assemblies to become a normal part of the Constitution. In 1310 the Baronage took the government out of the hands of Edward II., as their ancestors had taken the government out of the hands of Henry III. sixty years before, and having won the power they tried to keep it to themselves. The "written constitution" embodied in the *Ordinances* of 1311, like that embodied in the *Provisions of Oxford*, 1258 (§§ 156, 182), was purely oligarchical in both origin and character. The result was that in the *Statute of York*, 1322, Edward II. annulled the work of the Lords Ordainers on the express ground that neither knights nor burgesses had had a share in it. Thenceforward—as the *Statute of York* did not happen either to be formally repealed or to become ignored in practice—these classes may be considered as essential parts of Parliament. The latter name was indeed often used

by writers of the fourteenth century to describe assemblies attended only by the Barons, spiritual and temporal ; but the modern historian, for clearness' sake, speaks of such assemblies by the old name of "Great Council" (§ 127).

§ 150. **The Structure of Parliament, 1327.**—During the thirteenth century the composition of the Common Council of the Realm varied almost as much as the place of meeting or the business done ; but by the time of Edward III.'s accession it had definitely come to consist of the Barons, spiritual and temporal, sitting virtually in their own right, and representatives of the local administrative areas of county and borough, sitting in virtue of elections conducted by the sheriff at the King's command. The entire Parliament thus represented not only those classes of society which had so far become organized and articulate (in technical language, *estates*), but also most of the local interests (cf. § 173). The inferior clergy, it is true, persistently eluded the attempts of Edward I. to embrace them in the parliamentary system, preferring to do their civil work in their provincial convocations ; but their absence may well have helped to bring about a feature distinguishing the English Parliament from all the other parliamentary bodies which were springing up in Western Europe at the time. The fact that both the knights and the burgesses came not in virtue of personal right, but as representatives of local communities (*communes*), ultimately brought them together as the single estate of "the Commons," and severed them from the Lords as a distinct "House" of Parliament. The *structure* and the arrangement of Parliament were practically completed by the time of Edward III.'s accession : it still remained to determine the *powers* of the body thus constituted (§§ 192, 193).

## CHAPTER XII.

### HENRY III., 1216-1272.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Born at Winchester, October 1, 1207; crowned King of England, October 28, 1216; married Eleanor, daughter of Raymond, Count of Provence (*d.* 1291), 1236; died at Bury St. Edmunds, November 16, 1272; buried at Westminster. For family connections, see Table, p. 42.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

EASTERN EMPIRE.	WESTERN EMPIRE.	PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SCOTLAND.
<i>Rival Emperors</i> (1204-1261)— (a) Greek at Nicaea, (b) Latin at Constantinople.	Frederick II. (1212)	Honorius III. (1216) Gregory IX. (1227)	Philip II. (1180) Louis VIII. (1223) Louis IX. (1226)	Alexander II. (1214)
Michael VIII. <i>Palaeologus</i> (1261-1282)	Conrad IV. (1250) <i>Interregnum</i> (1254-1273)	Celestine IV. (1241) <i>Vacancy</i> (1241) Innocent IV. (1243) Alexander IV. (1254) Urban IV. (1261) Clement IV. (1265) <i>Vacancy</i> (1268) Gregory X. (1271)	Philip III. (1270)	Alexander III. (1240-1286)

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

#### (i) International: relations with—

- (1) France: §§ 151, 151, 158.
- (2) Empire: § 155.
- (3) Papacy: §§ 151, 153, 155, 157.
- (4) Sicily: § 155.
- (5) Crusades: §§ 155, 158, 159.

#### (ii) Constitutional.

- (1) The Church: §§ 153, 155, 160.
- (2) The Charter: §§ 151, 152, 156, 159.
- (3) Foreign Influences: §§ 152-155.
- (4) Written Constitutions: §§ 156-159.
- (5) Representation: § 159.

### I. THE GOVERNMENT OF HUBERT DE BURGH, 1216-1232.

§ 151. **The Struggle between Henry and Louis, 1216-1217.**—John's death transformed the political situation. Those who had taken up arms against John had no quarrel with his son; and they had good reason to believe that, if Louis became master of the

country, he would govern it with little regard for the wishes of those who had helped him to the throne. About a week after John's death his adherents took the unprecedented step of placing a minor—Henry was just over nine years old—on the English throne. He was crowned at Gloucester, and a little later he was caused to issue a revised version of the Charter in a Great Council held at Bristol. In the second, as in the many later, revisions of the Charter, the clauses relating to the composition and taxative powers of the Great Council were omitted (§ 143): the Barons had felt it necessary to place some check upon John's extravagance, but now that they themselves controlled the government, they did not care to throw difficulties in their own way. They appointed William the Marshal, Earl of Pembroke, to be guardian of the King and kingdom; and with him was closely associated Gualo, the legate (1216–1218) of the new Pope, Honorius III. Gradually Louis was deserted, and the young King's party gained ground. In May 1217 Louis suffered a severe defeat known as the Fair of Lincoln; in August his communications with France were broken by the destruction of his fleet in a fight off Dover, by Hubert de Burgh; and in September, by the *Treaty of Lambeth*, he agreed to leave the kingdom.

§ 152. **The Minority of Henry III., 1216–1227.**—After Louis had resigned his claims on England, his adherents swore fealty to Henry, and a second re-issue of the Charter was made with fresh amendments. One of the new clauses provided for the destruction of the adulterine castles, which had sprung up in the late civil war, as in Stephen's reign (§§ 114, 116). Before this provision could be executed the wise and statesmanlike Guardian died, in 1219; and his powers were divided between Peter des Roches, who became the King's tutor, and Hubert de Burgh, who held the Justiciarship for nearly twenty years (1215–1232). Peter and Hubert were old ministers of John: the former developed into the advocate of foreign interests, the latter into the upholder of the principle of "England for the English" (cf. § 138). They did not seriously quarrel, however, until the danger of civil disorder had been removed by the subjection of William of Aumale, in 1221, and of Falkes de Breauté three years later. William represented the old hankering of the feudal barons for local independence (§ 126): Falkes had been a leader of the foreign mercenaries employed by John, and tried to turn against the Government the strength of the castles with which he had been entrusted for its support (§ 145). In 1227 Henry was declared to be of age: he again re-issued the Charter—this time

in the final form in which it appears on the statute-book—and dismissed from his service Peter des Roches.

§ 153. **Archbishop and Justiciar, 1227-1232.**—One of Hubert's chief supporters in maintaining a strictly English policy was Archbishop Stephen. After John's submission to the Papacy the Popes for some years kept a legate constantly at the court of their vassal, much in the same way as the British Government now keeps "residents" at the courts of the "feudatory princes" of India. The constant presence of a foreign supervisor proved irksome; and in 1221 Stephen obtained the recall of Pandulf, and arranged that he himself should act as the Papal legate. This precedent was usually followed for the next three hundred years; and thus the subordination of the English Church to the Papacy was maintained in a way that did not usually excite national prejudices (§§ 204, 219). The Archbishop died in 1228, and three years later, Peter des Roches returned to England. He persuaded the King that Hubert was robbing him and thwarting his attempts to recover his ancestral domains in Aquitaine; and in 1232 Henry suddenly ordered the arrest of Hubert de Burgh. The smith who was told to rivet chains on the fallen minister refused to obey: "Is not this," he said, "the faithful Hubert who has so often saved England from being the prey of aliens and given it back to the English?"

## II. THE MISRULE OF HENRY III., 1232-1258.

§ 154. **Influx of Foreign Favourites, 1232-1246.**—Peter des Roches did not long enjoy his triumph. In 1234 he became discredited by his complicity in the murder of Richard the Marshal son of the Regent, who had headed the English opposition to the new minister; and Edmund Rich, the saintly Archbishop of Canterbury, induced Henry to order Peter to retire from Court to his see of Winchester. Peter's rise to power was chiefly notable for the fact that, in filling offices at Court, he gave preference to his Poitevin fellow-countrymen. This was the first of a series of foreign invasions on a small scale. In 1236 Henry III. married Eleanor of Provence, who brought over to England many Provençals in quest of preferment. In 1239 Henry aroused a storm by giving the earldom of Leicester to Simon de Montfort, a Gascon adventurer who had secretly married Eleanor, sister of the King and widow of the Regent's eldest son William the Marshal. A few years later the archbishopric of Canterbury was given to the Queen's uncle, Boniface of Savoy, who brought over a number of penniless Savoyards

with mouths to fill. In 1242 Henry's attempt to regain Poitou was frustrated by his defeat at Taillebourg and Saintes; and when he returned he brought with him many Poitevin nobles, who claimed compensation in England for their losses in supporting his cause abroad. Finally, in 1247, the sons of Hugh of Lusignan—the old suitor whom Henry's mother had married on John's death (§ 137)—came over to England and demanded a livelihood from their royal half-brother. Henry, being an amiable weakling with no sense of the value of money, did his best to satisfy the claims of all these greedy relatives; and naturally enough this stirred up a strong anti-foreign feeling in the minds of his English magnates.

§ 155. **Henry's Papal Entanglements, 1246-1258.**—The wealth of England was being drained not only by Henry's foreign favourites and foreign expeditions, but also by the exactions of his foreign overlord, the Pope. During the thirteenth century, the Papacy was tending to turn the power which it had gained under Gregory VII. and Innocent III. (§§ 95, 139) to purposes which were far more political than religious; and the strictly religious work, which the Papacy and the new orders of monks had undertaken under the impulse of the Clugniac movement, was being taken up by a fresh set of religious enthusiasts known as *friars* (§ 160). About 1239 the Papacy embarked on a struggle against the Emperor Frederick II., and tried to obtain the necessary funds by a system of international taxation from its vassal states. It was during this period that the Pope began to make money and to pay his servants by the gift of benefices which were not his to give, and also to claim the first year's income (*annates* or *first-fruits*) from the recipient of an ecclesiastical benefice, especially a bishopric. In addition to these taxes, which tended to become regular, the Pope periodically sent out agents to collect funds for some special business, which was usually dignified by the name of a Crusade. At a General Council of the Western Church, held at Lyons in 1245-6, the English delegates complained that 60,000 marks (which was nearly as much as the King's income) were drawn away every year from the kingdom into the pockets either of the Pope or of the absentee incumbents whom he had appointed to English benefices. In 1250 Frederick II. died; four years later, his son died also; and then Pope Alexander IV. flattered the vanity of Henry III. by offering the vacant dominions and dignities to members of his family. Henry's brother Richard, Earl of Cornwall, accepted the Empire under the title "King of the Romans" (1257), but never obtained more than a

partial recognition in Germany ; and Henry accepted the crown of Sicily for his nine-months-old son Edmund. The Pope spent money freely to conquer Sicily for his vassal ; and in 1257 Henry asked his Great Council for 135,000 marks to repay his debt to the Papacy.

### III. THE ATTEMPT TO CONTROL THE CROWN, 1258-1272.

§ 156. **The Provisions of Oxford, 1258.**—Henry's request brought the long-standing opposition to a head. Already in 1233 the Barons had mentioned the possibility of a deposition : in 1244 and 1255 they had insisted on having some voice in the appointment of ministers. Henry promised his consent, but he gave no support to any minister ; he had the mania of the incompetent for doing everything himself. The Barons knew by experience that it was no good making Henry repeat his promise to observe the Charter : the only remedy that they could use for his misrule was to take power out of his hands. In May 1258, a Parliament—as the Great Council was beginning to be called—induced the King to promise to trust the management of affairs to a council of twenty-four men, nominated half by himself, half by the Barons. This council was chosen in an assembly which met at Oxford, and which came to be called the "Mad Parliament." The first business of the Council was to draw up the *Provisions of Oxford*, under which all the powers of government were placed in the hands of a kind of representative oligarchy. Each twelve of the aforementioned twenty-four elected two from the other twelve, and the four thus chosen selected fifteen as a continual Council of State. Another committee of twenty-four determined the aid required by the King for the wars in France and Sicily (§§ 154, 155), while a third body of twelve was elected by the Barons to meet the above council of fifteen thrice a year for the discussion of matters of state.

§ 157. **Breakdown of the "Paper Constitution," 1259-1263.**—In October 1258 Henry swore to observe the constitution drawn up at Oxford, and issued proclamations, not only in Latin and French, but also in English, expressing his readiness to accept the advice of his allotted ministers. But Henry did not keep his word ; and his endeavours to shake off dictation were furthered by divisions among the ranks of the Baronage. Though the Barons professed to act on behalf of the whole community, most of them showed little activity save for their own interests. When the Council of Fifteen delayed to issue the further reforms promised in the *Provisions of Oxford*, a group of the smaller landowners, or knights, calling themselves "the community of the bachelorhood of all England," induced Henry's son Edward to take up their cause. The result of this pressure was



the issue, in December 1259, of the further reforms, embodied in the *Provisions of Westminster*, which mostly concerned the county administration. The continuance of the breach between the baronial party under Richard of Clare, Earl of Gloucester, and the more popular party, under Simon, Earl of Leicester, encouraged Henry to attempt the recovery of his power. In 1261 he induced the Pope to absolve him from his oaths to observe the Provisions; and in 1263 both parties appealed to arms.

§ 158. **Simon de Montfort, 1263-1265.**—Owing to the death of Gloucester, the Barons were for a time tolerably united under the leadership of Earl Simon. After his marriage with the King's sister (§ 154), Earl Simon, already half an Englishman by descent, became a thorough Englishman by choice. He was highly esteemed by the best men of his day—such as Robert Grossteste, Bishop of Lincoln; and he had had a wide experience of the art of ruling men as a Crusader in the East (1240-1), and as the Governor of Gascony for Henry III. (1248-1253). In 1259 he had brought the long desultory warfare in Aquitaine to a close by arranging a treaty in which Louis IX. of France had recognized Henry's rights in Aquitaine, in return for Henry's surrender of his claims to the northern territories conquered by Philip Augustus in 1204-6 (§§ 137, 138). Louis's reputation for fairness and high-mindedness caused him to be chosen as the arbitrator of the quarrel between Henry III. and his Barons in 1263. But Louis, thinking that baronial rule would mean anarchy in England as in France, gave his award almost entirely in favour of the King; and Earl Simon refused to accept this *Mise of Amiens* (January 1264). War again broke out; and in May 1264 the Earl defeated and captured Henry and his brother Richard at Lewes.

§ 159. **End of the Barons' War, 1264-1267.**—On the day after the battle Henry's son Edward surrendered, and it was agreed in the *Mise of Lewes* to refer the quarrel again to arbitration. Meanwhile a provisional government was appointed under rather less cumbrous conditions than those specified in the Oxford Constitution. For more than a year the direction of affairs was practically in the hands of Earl Simon, who saw that his power was not likely to last unless it was "broad based upon the people's will." During the recent troubles the King or his ministers had twice gone beyond the baronial class for money and advice, by asking the sheriffs to send representative knights, elected in the full county-court, to attend the Great Council (in 1254 and 1261): in 1265, Earl Simon went a step further and invited certain cities and boroughs to send representatives to a parliamentary assembly which he summoned in the King's

name. A few months later Edward escaped from captivity, and raised an army in his father's name; and in a battle at Evesham, August 1265, the Earl was defeated and slain. Some of his followers still held out, but they were crushed in the two following years at Kenilworth and Ely; and in 1267 a Parliament held at Marlborough practically swept away all the recent attempts to place restraints on the King, but bound him to observe the comparatively old restrictions contained in the *Great Charter*. Edward had learnt the lesson of moderation from the course of the struggle, and so reformed his father's methods of government that in 1270 he felt it safe to leave England in order to take part in the Seventh Crusade. While he was absent, Henry III. died in 1272.

§ 160. **The Friars and the Universities.**—Henry's long reign—which in English History has been exceeded in length only by the reigns of Victoria and George III.—was marked not only by important constitutional experiments and by the further development of a sense of English nationality, but also by great social movements. At the beginning of his reign, Pope Honorius III. sanctioned the formation of two new religious orders, usually called after the names of the founders, the Dominicans and the Franciscans. These *friars*, unlike the older orders of *monks*, did not withdraw themselves as far as possible from the world in order to save their own souls, but threw themselves into the world for the set purpose of saving their fellow-men, soul and body. The Dominicans mainly devoted themselves to preaching, the Franciscans to charitable work among the poor: both orders, like the other orders of friars which sprang up in imitation of them, took the strictest vows of poverty, and obtained their food and clothing entirely by begging. Besides their strictly religious and philanthropic work, the friars took great part in the world of politics and learning. They sided with Simon de Montfort in what struck them as a struggle to "raise the poor and helpless"; and they tried to further the cause of "true religion and sound learning" by using their influence in those guilds of teachers and students that were taking the shape of *universities* (i.e. self-governing corporations) at Oxford and Cambridge. Oxford had become an educational centre as early as Stephen's reign, but the first charter recognizing the existence of a teaching gild, alongside the trading gild of the town (§ 135), was not obtained till 1209, and the first "college" within the university was not founded till 1264. The University of Cambridge seems to have taken formal shape about 1209, in consequence of one of the many secessions of scholars and teachers from Oxford.

## CHAPTER XIII.

### EDWARD I. AND WALES, 1272-1290.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Born at Winchester, June 22, 1239; succeeded his father as King of England, November 20, 1272; crowned August 19, 1274; married (a) Eleanor, daughter of Ferdinand III. of Castile (d. 1290), 1254, (b) Margaret, daughter of Philip III. of France, 1299; had issue by both wives; died at Burgh-on-Sands, July 7, 1307; buried at Westminster. For family connections, see Table, p. 42.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

EASTERN EMPIRE.	WESTERN EMPIRE.	PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SCOTLAND.
Michael VIII. (1261) <i>The first of 8 Emperors of the House of Palaeologus</i> Andronicus II. (1282-1283)	<i>Interregnum</i> (1254-1273) Rudolf I. <i>Hapsburg</i> (1273-1292)	Gregory X. (1271) Innocent V. (1276) Hadrian V. (1276) John XX. (1277) Nicolas III. (1277) Martin IV. (1281) Honorius IV. (1285) Nicolas IV. (1289)	Philip III., <i>the Bold</i> (1270)  Philip IV., <i>the Fair</i> (1285)	Alexander III. (1249)   Margaret (1286-1290)

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>(i) <b>International: relations with—</b></p> <p>(1) France: §§ 162, 168.<br/>         (2) Scotland: §§ 161, 168.<br/>         (3) Crusades: § 161.</p> | <p>(ii) <b>Constitutional.</b></p> <p>(1) Wales: §§ 162, 163.<br/>         (2) Legislation: §§ 164-167<br/>         (3) Jews: § 168.</p> |
|--|--|

### I. THE CONQUEST OF WALES, 1272-1285.

§ 161. **Edward's First Five Years, 1272-1276.**—Four days after the death of Henry III. fealty was sworn to his absent son in a Great Council attended by the magnates of the realm and by representatives from the shires. Edward I. dated his reign from this national acceptance, not, as most of his predecessors had done, from the coronation. This was a step towards the adoption of the constitutional principle, not definitely acknowledged till the accession of Edward VI. (§ 315), that "the King never dies." Pending Edward's return the government was carried on by the Chancellor, Walter of Merton, whose name is perpetuated in the oldest college buildings in Oxford University. Edward travelled slowly back from the Holy Land, and did not reach England till 1274, when the Scots

King attended his coronation and did homage, as Earl of Huntingdon (§ 169). In the following year Edward held his first Parliament, which passed the *First Statute of Westminster*, regulating the freedom of elections in the county-court, and authorizing the export dues which the King had been *accustomed* to levy, and which were therefore called *customs* (§ 175). This statute, like most of Edward I.'s legislation, was drawn up in French, not Latin.

§ 162. **Edward's First Welsh War, 1277.**—On his way back from Palestine Edward I. had reduced Gascony to order; and one of his first tasks on reaching England was to apply a similar discipline to the equally unruly region of Wales. Since the time when William Rufus had authorized private adventurers to undertake piecemeal the work of conquest which he was unable to effect in a single campaign (§ 100), the bulk of South and Central Wales had passed into the hands of a number of semi-independent Lords-Marchers: but Snowdonia and Powys, the most mountainous parts of Gwynedd, remained under the rule of native princes. These princes had taken an active part in the baronial opposition to John and Henry III. *Magna Carta* contained special provisions for the benefit of Llewelyn-ap-Iorwerth, who was for nearly fifty years Prince of Gwynedd (1194-1240). Llewelyn's grandson, Llewelyn-ap-Gruffydd (1246-1282), was an old antagonist of Edward: while still young, Edward had been placed in charge of the coast district lying between the Dee and the Conway, and in that capacity had naturally come into conflict with the Welsh prince; Llewelyn had been a supporter of Simon de Montfort; and, since Edward's accession, he had steadily refused him homage. In 1275 a marriage was arranged between Llewelyn and Simon's daughter, Eleanor; and Edward, fearing the marriage might lead to a renewal of the old troubles, seized the bride on her way from France to Wales. Llewelyn took up arms, but being defeated made his submission and received back his bride under the *Treaty of Conway*, 1277.

§ 163. **Annexation of the Principality, 1282-1285.**—Five years later, Llewelyn, incited by his half-brother David, revolted against his overlord, and Edward resolved to make his conquest complete. Towards the end of 1282 Llewelyn fell in a skirmish on the Wye; and in the following year David, who had played a double game in his attempt to supplant his brother, was captured and executed. The government of the conquered principality was regulated by the *Statute of Wales*, passed at Rhuddlan in 1284. North Wales was to be divided into six sheriffdoms, and English law

was to be administered by circuit judges under a Justice of Snowdon. Some years later—in 1301—Edward created his eldest son “Prince of Wales”; and since that time that title has usually been given to the heir to the English throne. It was not until the time of Henry VIII. that the whole of the region which we now call “Wales and Monmouthshire”—including both the Principality proper and also the dominions of the Lords-Marchers—was divided into shires and given representatives in the English Parliament (§ 306).

## II. EDWARD I.'s LEGISLATION, 1275-1290.

§ 164. **Edward's Judicial Reforms.**—The first half of Edward I.'s reign was occupied not only with the conquest of Wales, but also with much activity in legislative work, especially in adapting Henry II.'s administrative arrangements to new conditions (§§ 127-129). Edward I.'s legislation springs out of two features in his character which were shared by several contemporary monarchs: (a) he had a great love for order and symmetry and coherence; (b) he saw that a king's will was much more likely to be effective if it did not run counter to the tastes and opinions of his subjects. Some of his reforms were carried out by his own sole authority; some were enacted by the advice of persons summoned to give him counsel on matters within their knowledge; and some were developments which Edward consciously or unconsciously promoted for their practical advantages. Within this last category falls the division of the King's Court, in its judicial aspect (§ 127), into the three Courts of Common Law—the King's Bench (dealing especially with criminal cases), the Exchequer (dealing with financial business), and Common Pleas (dealing with lawsuits between private persons).

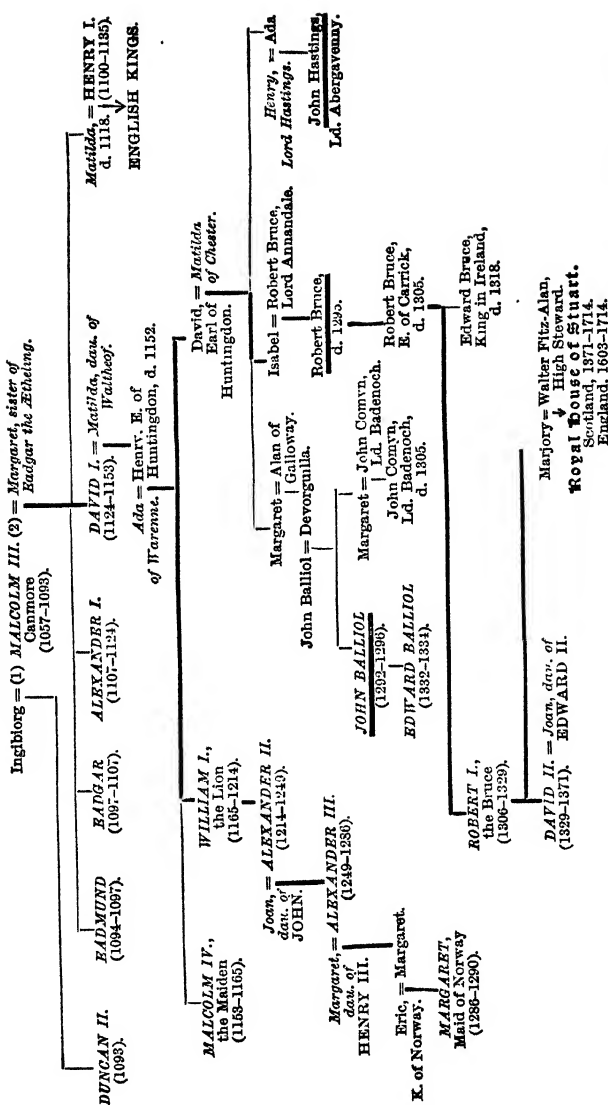
§ 165. **Edward's Legislative Methods.**—Most of Edward's important legislative reforms were promulgated with the assent of those classes which they concerned: sometimes only the barons, clerical and lay, were present; sometimes representative knights were also summoned; but it was not till the second half of the reign that Edward followed the precedent of his godfather, Earl Simon, in summoning representatives of the cities and boroughs (§§ 149, 159). On one occasion, in 1283, two provincial councils, including both clergy and laity, met simultaneously at Northampton and York, mainly for financial purposes: this was an adaptation to secular politics of the practice followed by the Convocations of the Clergy, who met not in one national assembly, but in two assemblies, representing respectively the archiepiscopal provinces of Canterbury and York.

§ 166. **Miscellaneous Examples of Legislation.**—The general feature of Edward I.'s statutes is not so much their novelty, as their simplification of a mass of old and conflicting customs and laws: they constituted a kind of departmental codification, affecting all classes of the community—the Clergy, the Baronage, and the Middle Classes. For instance, the *Statute of Winchester*, 1285, revised and regulated the *Assize of Arms*, 1181, in prescribing a graduated system of arms and training for various kinds of citizens with a view to national defence (§ 129). Similarly the *Statute of Merchants*, also known as the *Statute of Acton Burnell*, 1283, simplified the legal machinery for the recovery of debts. The writ or statute known as *Circumspecte Agatis*, 1285, was an attempt to define the limits of spiritual and temporal jurisdiction (§ 121).

§ 167. **Edward I.'s Land Legislation.**—Most of the conspicuous legislative measures of Edward's earlier period dealt with the burdens and privileges attached to the possession of land. The *Statute of Mortmain*, or *de Religiosis*, 1279, was designed to check the transfer of lands into the "dead hand" of religious corporations, which were wont to evade the military and financial duties of landholders. The *Second Statute of Westminster*, commonly called *De Donis Conditionalibus*, 1285, founded the system of entails. The *Statute Quia Emptores*, 1290, checked the practice of sub-infeudation, in order to bring all landholders as distinctly as possible into direct relation with the King (cf. § 97). The details of these statutes are highly technical: their general tendency was to complete the subordination of the *feudal* tie between "lord" and "man" to the *political* tie between "King" and "subject." It was rather because Edward I. was the most legal-minded of English monarchs, than because his work bears any resemblance in method or detail to the work of the greatest legislator among the Roman Emperors, that he has sometimes been called "the English Justinian."

§ 168. **Expulsion of the Jews, 1290.**—During the interval elapsing between the *Statute of Winchester* and *Quia Emptores*, Edward was absent for three years in Gascony, which he sought to make secure against the probable attacks of the new French King (§§ 158, 172). On his return in 1290 he ordered the expulsion of the long-suffering Jews from England and confiscated their real property; but the expulsion had not the intended result of stamping out the "unchristian" practice of lending money at interest. In the same year Edward lost his first wife and became immersed in the question of the Scottish Succession (§ 169).

# The Anglo-Scottish Kings.



**NOTE.**—Scots Kings in *ITALIC CAPITALS*: English Kings in *ROMAN CAPITALS*; Anglo-Scottish marriages in *small italics*. The names of the three principal claimants for the Scottish throne in 1290 are heavily underlined.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### EDWARD I. AND SCOTLAND, 1290-1307.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—See Chapter XIII.

#### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

EASTERN EMPIRE.	WESTERN EMPIRE.	PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SCOTLAND.
Andronicus II. (1282-12828)	Rudolf I. (1273) Adolf Nassau (1292) Albert I. Hapsburg (1298-1308)	Nicolas IV. (1289)  Vacancy (1292) Celestine V. (1294) Boniface VIII. (1294) Benedict XI. (1303) Clement V. (1305-1314)	Philip IV. <i>the Fair</i> (1285-1314)	<i>Interregnum</i> (1290-2) John Balliol (1292) <i>Interregnum</i> (1296-1306) Robert I. Bruce (1306)

#### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) France: §§ 171, 172, 175-177.
- (2) Scotland: §§ 169-171, 176-178, 180.
- (3) Papacy: §§ 174, 179.

(ii) **Constitutional**

- (1) Church: §§ 174, 175.
- (2) Parliament: §§ 173, 179.
- (3) Taxation: §§ 172-175.
- (4) Suzerainty: §§ 169, 173.

#### I. EDWARD'S FIRST CONQUEST OF SCOTLAND, 1290-1296.

§ 169. **Review of Anglo-Scottish Relations, 924-1189.**—Edward I. was a lover of system and order: that fact explains both his consolidatory legislation within England, and his endeavour to attach Wales and Scotland thoroughly and permanently to the English crown. His intervention in both Wales and Scotland was undertaken as part of his imperial policy which strove to carry forward Henry II.'s work in knitting together all England by the bond of a uniform and efficient system of law, and also aimed at making good the claims of earlier kings to be *basileus* or *imperator* of all Britain (§§ 63-65). But if the ultimate aim of both attempts was the same, the circumstances of the two countries dealt with, the conditions and manner of interference, and the results, were



wholly different. His dealings with Scotland turned on the ambiguity attaching to the position of "suzerainty." From the early days of the tenth century onward, many Scots kings had acknowledged some kind of dependence on English kings—sometimes "commending" their whole kingdoms (e.g. 924 and 1174), sometimes doing homage for such outlying parts of England as Strathclyde (946), Lothian (966), and Cumberland (1068), or for earldoms in the heart of England, such as Huntingdon (§§ 111, 161). But all English claims to feudal suzerainty over the kingdom of Scotland, as a whole, had been definitely abandoned for himself and for his successors by Richard I. in 1189 (§ 132). Perhaps that renunciation may be considered the most important effect, for England, of the vast movement known as the Crusades.

§ 170. **The Award of Norham, 1292.**—On the death of the Scots King Alexander III. in 1286, his sole surviving descendant was his grand-daughter, Margaret, the "Maid of Norway." Though she was only three years of age, Margaret was recognized as queen; and in 1289 Edward I. concluded with her guardians the *Treaty of Brigham*, whereby the infant queen was betrothed to his son Edward. But the attempt to secure the peaceable union of the two kingdoms in Britain was frustrated by Margaret's sudden death in September 1290 (cf. § 312). Under English and feudal influences the Scots kingdom had been tending towards hereditary succession, but had not yet settled the rules of priority in claims through descent. Margaret's death brought forward a swarm of candidates for the vacant crown, most of whom were descended from William the Lion's younger brother David, Earl of Huntingdon (Table, p. 108). The chief claimants—Balliol, Bruce, and Hastings—held lands in both Scotland and England; and they, therefore, naturally agreed to accept the arbitration of the English King. After obtaining from all the candidates, and from the Scottish magnates generally an acknowledgment of the vassalage of the Scots kingdom, Edward I., with the assent of a joint committee of English and Scottish barons, decided in favour of John Balliol, by the *Award of Norham*, 1292.

§ 171. **John Balliol's Kingship and Revolt, 1292-1296.**—Both before and after his coronation at Scone, near Perth, in November 1292, Balliol did homage for his whole kingdom to Edward I. as to his liege lord. Edward I. did not allow these acts of homage to remain an empty form: he encouraged Scots having grievances against their king to appeal to that king's overlord. In 1295 Balliol, finding the claims of his suzerain irksome, threw off his allegiance,

invaded the northern counties of England, and entered into alliance with France and Norway. Early in the following year Edward marched north, captured Berwick, defeated the Scots at Dunbar on April 27, and three months later received the submission of John at Montrose. After a brief imprisonment, John was allowed to retire to his family estates at Bailleul in Normandy, and his kingdom was declared forfeit. Edward occupied the castles in Southern Scotland, and placed the administration of the kingdom in the hands of John Warenne, Earl of Surrey, and Sir Hugh Cressingham. At the same time he took the stone of destiny on which the Scots kings had been wont to be crowned and brought it from Scone to Westminster: thereby signifying that the centre of the Scots kingdom, which had already been moved from the Highlands to Dunkeld and Edinburgh, was to be moved still further south—to London (§ 370).

## II. CONSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENTS, 1294-1297.

§ 172. **Troubles in Gascony, 1293-1294.**—In dealing with John Balliol Edward had been hampered by similar troubles with regard to France. The political connection between England and Guienne had promoted commerce between the two countries; and the commerce had excited maritime jealousies which had culminated in a great sea-fight off St. Mahé in Brittany in 1293. There a fleet of English, Gascon, and Irish ships had defeated a fleet of Norman, French, and Fleming ships. Philip IV. of France had called upon Edward to punish his subjects for this aggression; and Edward had handed over to his feudal lord his castles in Gascony as security that punishment should be exacted. Having obtained possession of the castles, Philip refused to carry out his promise to restore them. In 1295 open war broke out between France and England, in the course of which the Scots King initiated the lasting alliance of France and Scotland (§§ 171, 201, 229). The pressure of the combined wars had reduced Edward to great straits for money. In 1294 he not only seized all the wool in the kingdom, but also obtained large grants from the different classes of his subjects: the Clergy had given up half their income, the Barons and Knights one-tenth, and the Towns one-sixth.

§ 173. **The Model Parliament, 1295.**—Edward still required not only the financial aid, but also the moral support of his people in his combined efforts to assert his rights as a feudal lord on one side of the Channel, and as a feudal vassal on the other side. Hence in 1295 he summoned so completely representative an assembly of his

English subjects, that the gathering has become known as the "Great" or "Model Parliament." This Parliament has been described as "partly a concentration of local machinery and partly an assembly of estates." This formula of Bishop Stubbs is so exhaustive and so condensed as both to deserve and to need explanation. The Parliament of 1295 was a "concentration of local machinery," because it performed for the whole country certain duties of Taxation, Defence, and Justice, which had hitherto, for the most part, been done in the shiremoots. It was an "assembly of estates," because it included all the different classes of people in the realm which had acquired sufficient wealth and leisure to aspire to political power and had attained the cohesion implied in the term *estate* (§ 150). These "Estates of the Realm" are, properly speaking, *Clergy*, *Lords*, and *Commons*; but as the Inferior Clergy early ceased to attend Parliament as an estate (preferring to do their civil work in their own ecclesiastical Convocations), the three estates soon came to be accounted "Lords Spiritual, Lords Temporal, and Commons." The latter classification is sometimes distinguished from the originally correct one as "*estates of Parliament*." In 1295 all these were present, in person or by representation, summoned in much the same way as they have been ever since: they even voted moneys separately, though they were not yet parted into "houses." But though the ingredients of our Parliament were there, the powers of that Parliament were still limited. Their function, so far, was not to *grant money* so much as to say *how much they would grant* (§§ 192, 193).

§ 174. The Bull *Clericis Laicos*, 1296.—Edward I.'s exactions continued, and gave much dissatisfaction among all the classes of a nation which had not yet learned to regard its ruler's quarrels as its own. His repeated seizures of wool and irregular *tallages* (§ 133) exasperated the merchants and the towns. The clergy tried to protect themselves by taking shelter under the Bull *Clericis Laicos*, issued by Pope Boniface VIII. in 1296. In that Bull Boniface VIII., partly to assert the independence of the clergy, partly to make it difficult for the kings of England and France to find money for their wars, straitly forbade the clergy of his obedience to pay taxes to the civil power. Edward I. and his rival took up the same line of resistance to this excuse: if the Clergy would not give money to support the State, they should not receive the support of the State. When Robert of Winchelsey, Archbishop of Canterbury, cited the Papal Bull as a reason for not paying taxes, Edward

outlawed the Clergy: that is to say, he would not allow his courts to give any redress to clergymen who had been robbed or insulted or otherwise injured. The Clergy had to give way, veiling their disobedience to the Pope under the pretext that the money was not compulsory taxes but voluntary presents. Before the Clergy had yielded, Edward became involved in disputes with the Barons.

§ 175. *Confirmatio Cartarum*, October 10, 1297.—Having conquered Scotland in 1296 (§ 171), Edward resolved to face Philip on the mainland in the following year. Reversing John's procedure in the similar crisis of 1213-5 (§§ 141-143), Edward proposed to go in person to Flanders and to send an army to Gascony. Two of his leading magnates—Humfrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, the Constable, and Roger Bigod, Earl of Norfolk, the Marshal—declined to go to Gascony except under the leadership of the king. Their reasons were not the old plea that they were not bound to serve abroad (§§ 135, 141), but that they were only bound to "follow the King." Edward had to go to Flanders without having secured their co-operation; and during his absence the Earls, supported by the Clergy under Archbishop Winchelsea, stopped the levying of taxes, and forced the King's son, acting as Regent for his father, to accept a revised version of the *Great Charter* and of the *Forest Charter*. In October, Edward I., at Ghent, ratified his son's concessions. Of these concessions there are extant two versions. The version known as *De Tallagio non Concedendo* is in Latin, is an "unauthoritative abstract," and especially provides that the King is not to levy tallages on the demesne lands of the Crown, or to punish those who had taken up arms. The authorized version, *Confirmatio Cartarum*, is in French, and provides:—

(1) That the Charters are to be confirmed.

(2) That the King is not to raise *taxes of the kind recently levied* in an arbitrary manner without "the consent of the Earls, Barons, and all the commonalty of the land and for the common profit of the same"—except in the case of the "*ancient aids* [feudal] and *prises* [taxes on exports and imports], due and accustomed."

### III. EDWARD'S SECOND CONQUEST OF SCOTLAND, 1297-1305.

#### § 176. National Scottish Rising under Wallace, 1297-8.

—Edward's campaign against France in 1297 was as unsuccessful as his resistance to the struggle for domestic reforms. In 1298 he made a truce with Philip, and returned home to face the new troubles in Scotland. Edward's early measures in Scotland had been taken with the formal assent of the Scottish magnates (§ 170); but they were

half English, and did not represent the feelings of the lesser gentry and the masses of the people in the Lowlands. Moreover, Edward's deputies had been oppressive in their government. In 1297 an Ayrshire knight, Sir William Wallace of Elderslie, raised the Lowlands against the English King; and though the chief men of the country held aloof, he managed to defeat the Earl of Surrey and a large English army at Cambuskenneth, near Stirling. In 1298, Edward marched north, and used the long-bows of his Welsh troops with such effect that Wallace was completely routed at Falkirk (July 22). Wallace took refuge in France, and for some years the adherents of John Balliol regarded John Comyn, one of the original claimants of the throne in 1290 (Table, p. 108), as the ruler of the country on behalf of their absent King.

§ 177. **Relations between England and France, 1299–1303.**—Meanwhile Edward was engaged in hostilities with France. Edward's difficulties in Britain had given Philip the opportunity of overrunning the whole of Guienne (§ 172). But Philip's treatment of Edward as Duke of Gascony aroused the alarm of his other great vassals; and his government of Guienne itself was less conciliatory and less beneficial than that of Edward, who both before and after his father's death had exerted himself to increase the prosperity of his subjects there by establishing good internal government and by improving their commercial relations with their Spanish neighbours and with England. The wine-trade between England and Guienne rivalled in importance the wool-trade between England and Flanders (§ 198). Edward had also tried, and tried successfully, to make this maritime trade safe by strengthening his naval resources. In 1278 he had granted a charter to the Cinque Ports (Map, p. 92), whereby, in return for exemption from all taxes and for the privilege of holding their own law-courts and parliament, they were bound to equip and maintain a fleet for offensive and defensive purposes. And when, in 1295, he appointed three commanders, with the novel title of *Admiral*, to defend the western, southern, and eastern coasts respectively, he entrusted the southern coast to the care of the Warden of the Cinque Ports. On the overthrow of Wallace (§ 176), he was able to bring his French difficulties to a pacific settlement. In 1299, he and Philip entered into the *Treaty of Chartres*, whereby Edward took Philip's sister Margaret as his second wife; and four years later a further marriage was arranged between Edward's eldest son and Philip's daughter Isabella (§ 181). At the same time Philip restored Guienne to Edward. Both kings had more pressing

business on hand: Philip was engaged not only in fighting the townsmen of Flanders, but also in a struggle with the Pope; while Edward wished to complete his settlement of Scotland.

**§ 178. Settlement of Scotland, 1304-1307.**—In 1304, Scots affairs were arranged by a joint board of twenty Scots and English deputies on a system of joint control. Justice was to be administered by an equal number of Scots and English judges; the old customary law was superseded by "King David's laws"; the Scots Parliament was to send deputies to the English Parliament year by year (§§ 433, 450). In 1305, Wallace, who had returned to Scotland, was captured at Glasgow, and executed as a traitor in London. His character has been much disputed; but there is no doubt that he had great military abilities, and that his leadership did much to draw the different peoples in the Lowlands—for the Highlanders were hardly affected by these changes—into feeling a sense of Scottish nationality.

#### IV. EDWARD'S THIRD CONQUEST OF SCOTLAND, 1306-1307.

**§ 179. The Papacy and Scottish Affairs, 1299-1307.**—Edward's later dealings with Scotland brought him into conflict with Pope Boniface VIII. In 1299 the Pope claimed Scotland as a fief, and ordered Edward to leave the settlement of its affairs to him. Edward, as in 1296 (§ 174), made use of the civil power to withstand the encroachment of the ecclesiastical power. The Parliament of Lincoln in 1301 repudiated the claim of the Papacy to Scotland. Six years later Edward was able to make a counter-attack on the Papacy: his last Parliament, sitting at Carlisle, besought him to enact laws against the recent Papal practices of appropriating the patronage and the first year's income of church benefices (§ 204).

**§ 180. Scottish Rising under Robert Bruce, 1306-7.**—The kingdom of Scotland obtained no relief either from the lofty claims of the Pope or the daring efforts of a comparatively unknown man like Wallace: the ultimate emancipation of Scotland came from a man belonging to that circle of semi-English magnates who had been Edward's early allies. In 1306 Robert Bruce, grandson of the Robert Bruce who had been John Balliol's principal competitor in 1290 (Table, p. 108), murdered his rival Comyn in the Grey Friars Church at Dumfries, and had himself crowned at Scone. But Edward possessed all the castles in South Scotland, and had no difficulty in driving Bruce into the Western Islands. In 1307 Bruce appeared again in the Lowlands, and Edward was marching northward to crush him, when he died at Burgh-on-Sands, near Carlisle. .

## CHAPTER XV.

### EDWARD II., 1307-1327.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Born at Caernarvon, April 25, 1284; fourth, but eldest surviving, son of Edward I. by his first marriage; created Prince of Wales, 1301; succeeded his father as King of England, July 8, 1307; married Isabella (*d.* 1358), daughter of Philip IV. of France, January 28, 1308; crowned, February 25, 1308; deposed in Parliament, January 20, 1327; murdered at Berkeley Castle, Gloucestershire, September 21, 1327; buried at Gloucester. For family connections, see Table, p. 42.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

EASTERN EMPIRE.	WESTERN EMPIRE.	PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SCOTLAND.
Andronicus II. (1282-1328), assisted by his son Michael IX. (1295-1320)	Henry VII. <i>Luzemburg</i> (1308)  Lewis IV. <i>Wittelsbach</i> (1314-1347)	Clement V. (1305)  <i>Vacancy</i> (1314)  John XXI. (1316-1334)	Philip IV. (1285) Louis X. (1314) Philip V. (1316) Charles IV. (1322-1328) <i>Last Capetian</i>	Robert I. <i>Bruce</i> (1306-1329)

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

#### (i) International: relations with—

- (1) France: §§ 181, 186.
- (2) Scotland: §§ 181-184.

#### (ii) Constitutional.

- (1) Favourites: §§ 181, 182, 185.
- (2) Parliament: §§ 182, 185, 186.
- (3) Wales: §§ 184-186.
- (4) Ireland: §§ 181, 184.

### I. EDWARD II.'s LOSS OF SCOTLAND, 1307-1314.

§ 181. **Edward II. and Piers Gaveston, 1307-1309.**—Edward's eldest surviving son, Edward II., began his reign by setting at naught the dying injunctions of his father. He abandoned the war against Robert Bruce; and he recalled the favourite whose influence his father had, too late, discovered to be bad for the young Prince of Wales. Piers Gaveston, a Gascon knight possessing rather showy abilities but quite devoid of moral principle, was made Earl of Cornwall, and placed in charge of the kingdom during Edward II.'s absence in France to do homage to Philip the Fair and marry his daughter Isabella (§ 177). One of the consequences of that visit was, that Edward II. in 1312 followed the example of

his father-in-law in confiscating the possessions of the Knights Templars, one of the orders of fighting monks which had sprung up during the Crusades (§ 118), and which was said to be using its wealth in unseemly ways. Meanwhile Gaveston's elevation had caused much discontent among the older barons, headed by the King's cousin, Thomas, Earl of Lancaster (Table, p. 42); and in 1308 they secured his dismissal. Edward sent him into an honourable exile by making him governor of Ireland (cf. § 244); but in 1309 he obtained the consent of his Council to Gaveston's recall.

§ 182. **The Lords Ordainers, 1310-1312.**—Finding themselves unable to get rid of Gaveston, Lancaster and his following tried to deprive him of all control over the King's Government. In 1310 they secured the appointment in Parliament of twenty-one magnates—seven bishops, eight earls, six barons—whose business was to regulate the King's household. The Lords Ordainers, as they were called, drew up certain ordinances intended to provide for the due observance of the Charters, to prevent the alienation of the crown-lands, and to secure for Parliament, which was to meet at least once a year, a certain measure of control over both the selection and the conduct of the King's chief ministers. With the division of the *Curia Regis* into three divisions (§ 164), the Justiciarship had become unimportant; and the principal Officers of State were now the Chancellor and the Treasurer. Like the attempt of 1258 to control the King (§ 156), the *Ordinances* were oligarchical in tendency: they were drawn up by the baronial class for their own benefit; and they were ratified in 1311 by a Parliament of purely baronial complexion (§§ 149, 185). The Parliament which confirmed the *Ordinances* gain a banished Gaveston. When Edward recalled him in the following January, Lancaster took up arms and captured Gaveston at Scarborough, in May. Gaveston was being escorted southwards when he was seized by Guy, Earl of Warwick—whom he had nicknamed "the Black Dog of Arden"—and beheaded on Blacklow Hill, near Warwick. Edward was obliged to grant a formal pardon to those who had taken part in the murder of the friend, who, it was alleged, had "misled the King, turned away his heart from his people, and wrought all kinds of wrong-doing."

§ 183. **Battle of Bannockburn, June 24, 1314.**—Despite the formal reconciliation, Lancaster and his party refused to assist Edward in the great expedition with which, in 1314, he set out to re-conquer Scotland. During his seven years' respite, Robert Bruce had gradually acquired all the Scottish strongholds, except Stirling



Castle. Stirling commands the direct line of communication between Highlands and Lowlands ; and its importance is illustrated by the number of notable battles that have been fought in its neighbourhood. It was to relieve this last castle that Edward marched north in the summer of 1314 ; and it was almost under its walls that he fought a pitched battle with the Scottish King on June 24. Bruce drew up his troops along the Bannock burn in much the same way as Wallace had drawn up his troops at Falkirk—that is, in “schiltroms,” or dense masses of spearmen interspersed with cavalry. But the result was wholly different : at Falkirk, Edward I. had broken the schiltroms by the long-bow, and shattered them, before they could re-form, by charges of mailed horsemen ; at Bannockburn, Edward II.’s archers—for he himself was no warrior—never got near the Scots army. Bruce had protected his front with concealed pits and trenches ; when the English were entangled in these, they became panic-stricken at the sight of what appeared to be reinforcements, but were really camp-followers coming down on them from the height that has ever since been called Gillies’ Hill. As Edward made no attempt to re-organize his army, Scottish independence was practically won on the field of Bannockburn (§§ 169, 195).

§ 184. **Scottish Attacks on the English, 1314-1318.**—Safe at home, Robert the Bruce proceeded to attack his beaten foes. Besides raiding the northern shires of England, he stirred up rebellions in Wales, and sent his brother Edward to essay the conquest of Ireland. Since Henry II.’s time the Anglo-Norman adventurers had obtained a tolerably firm hold over Leinster, which had been mapped out into counties and placed under English law. Owing to their distance from the Home Government, they were more free to follow their own devices than were the Lords-Marchers of Wales. The families of Burgh (or Burke) and Courci had also obtained a footing in Connaught and Ulster respectively ; but they were engaged in constant struggles with the native Irish. Edward Bruce intervened in 1313 in the hope of erecting a Scottish supremacy on the feuds of native tribes and Anglo-Norman barons. He was ultimately defeated and slain at Faughard, or Fagher, near Dundalk, in 1318 ; but the long struggle permanently weakened the English element in Ireland (§§ 124, 207, 274).

## II. EDWARD II.’s LOSS OF ENGLAND, 1314-1327.

§ 185. **Lancaster and the Despensers, 1314-1322.**—For some years after Bannockburn, England was in almost as distracted

a condition as Ireland. Robert Bruce was raiding the northern counties, with the connivance of the Lancaster party. In September 1319, for example, Bruce inflicted a severe defeat on the Yorkshire levies in a battle where so many clergy fell that the fight was called the "Chapter of Myton." About the same time Edward II. took to himself new favourites in the persons of two men bearing the name of Hugh the Despenser, father and son. The Despensers were Lords-Marchers having hereditary feuds with their neighbours of the house of Mortimer. In 1321 the Despensers were exiled by Parliament; but in the following spring, Edward, roused by an insult to the Queen, took up arms, defeated the Mortimers, and recalled the banished Despensers. Then turning north he captured Lancaster in a fight at Boroughbridge on the river Ure, and promptly had him executed at Pontefract. Edward followed up his victory by holding a Parliament at York, in which not only the inferior clergy but also Wales was represented (§§ 163, 306). This Parliament repealed most of the *Ordinances* of 1311, on the ground that they had not received the sanction of the Commons (§ 150). This *Statute of York*, for purely party purposes, laid down the general principle—

"That all matters of State to be established for the estate of our lord the King and his heirs, and for the estate of the realm and of the people, shall be treated, granted, and established, in Parliament by our lord the King, and by the consent of the Clergy, Earls, and Barons, and the Commonalty of the Realm, according as hath been heretofore accustomed."

§ 186. *Deposition of Edward II., January, 1327.*—In 1325 Edward sent his son over-sea to do homage for Guienne to the new French King, Charles IV. Queen Isabella accompanied her son, and while at the French Court she became attached to Roger Mortimer, the exiled enemy of the dominant Despensers. In September 1326, they returned together, bringing with them the young Prince of Wales, his uncle Edmund, Earl of Kent, and a small force of mercenaries. Landing at Orwell, in Suffolk, they were received gladly at London and Oxford: in a few months the Despensers were caught and killed, and the King was captured in Wales and imprisoned at Kenilworth. In January 1327, a Parliament held at Westminster deposed Edward II. on the ground that he had acted foolishly and extravagantly, had lost Ireland, Gascony, and Scotland, had injured the Church, and broken his Coronation Oath. His son was established in his place, and in the following September he himself was murdered at Berkeley Castle.

**FRANCE**  
**DURING THE LATER MIDDLE AGES**

English Miles  
0 30 60  
French Leagues  
0 20 40

**NORTH SEA**

The map displays the following regions and cities:

- Brittan**: Brest, Vannes, Rennes.
- Maine**: Angers, Saumur.
- Anjou**: Tours.
- Poitou**: Niort.
- Touraine**: Tours.
- Berry**: Bourges.
- Nivernais**: Nevers.
- Bourbonnais**: Montluçon.
- Marche**: Bourges.
- Saintonge**: Saintes.
- Limousin**: Limoges.
- Auvergne**: Clermont-Ferrand.
- Lyonnais**: Lyon.
- Savoie**: Chambéry.
- Dauphiné**: Grenoble.
- Guienne**: Bordeaux.
- Gascony**: Toulouse.
- Navarre**: Bayonne.
- Catalonia**: Barcelona.

Other notable locations include Paris, Orléans, Rouen, Amiens, Reims, Metz, Nancy, Luxembourg, and various coastal towns along the Atlantic and Mediterranean shores.

## French Leagues

French Leagues

## BOOK V.

### THE HUNDRED YEARS' WAR, 1327-1485.

#### INTRODUCTION.

§ 187. **Retrospect, 1216-1327.**—The main results of the three reigns which form the subject of our fourth book were the initiation of the long-standing alliance between France and Scotland—due to Edward I.'s premature attempt to effect the political unification of Britain—and the definite formation of Parliament, so far as its structure was concerned. From the accession of Edward III. to the passing of the *First Reform Act* in 1332, Parliament underwent numerous changes in respect of numbers, powers, privileges, and regularity of meeting, in the relations of its two "Houses" to one another, to the country at large, and to the Kingship, but its division into the two Houses of Lords and Commons has been permanent, and it has never been intermitted for more than a dozen years.

§ 188. **Survey of the Period, 1327-1485.**—In the period of one hundred and sixty years upon which we are about to enter, the dominant feature in the history of Western Europe is the struggle between the monarchical and the aristocratical principles. From that struggle the monarchical principle emerged, on the whole, victorious. The Papacy, exhausted by its contest with the Emperors of the House of Hohenstaufen (1138-1254), became discredited by its servitude to France during its "Babylonish Captivity" at Avignon (1305-1378), and by the ensuing "Great Schism" between the Roman and the Avignonese claimants of the Papal tiara (1378-1417); but when the bishops and doctors of the Western Church tried to take advantage of the weakness of the Papacy and subordinate it to the control of General Councils, which were aristocratic in complexion (1402-1438), the Papacy contrived to sow dissensions among its would-be masters and to assert its own supremacy. Unfortunately for itself, it did not use its victory to set the Church in order; and this omission was the main cause of that renewal of the cry for ecclesiastical reform which dominates our sixth book (§§ 264-266). In France and Spain the monarchs struggled, and struggled successfully, against the attempts of the well-to-do classes to overpower them in their parliamentary assemblies; and in England the premature control of the government by the Parliament under the House of Lancaster (§§ 223, 226, 257) resulted in the establishment of a New Monarchy (§§ 261-263).

### § 189. The Hundred Years' War, 1338-1453 : (i) Causes.

—The disputes about the Scottish Succession in Edward I.'s reign became entangled in Edward III.'s reign with those long disputes about the French Succession which have been connected together under the convenient name of the Hundred Years' War. In both cases a contention which was in origin purely feudal and dynastic resulted in the growth or development of a strong sense of nationality. Philip VI., the first Valois King of France, wished to round off his dominions by taking into his own hands the duchy of Aquitaine, held by the King of England as his vassal, and also to strengthen his control over the earldom of Flanders. Similarly Edward III. desired to become the paramount power in Britain, by the vindication of his suzerainty over Scotland. Each King thwarted the other in his aims; their subjects rendered trade in the Narrow Seas difficult and dangerous by mutual acts of piracy; and in 1337 the strain became so great as to result in open war (§§ 197, 198).

§ 190. (ii) Stages.—The war begun by Edward III. lasted, with many a break and change of scene, down to the total expulsion of the English from French soil, Calais alone excepted, in 1453 (§ 246). Under Edward III. the war fell into three main divisions: the first, marked by the battles of Sluys in 1340 and Crécy in 1346, and by the capture of Calais in 1347, was brought to a close by the Black Death (§§ 197-202); the second, marked by the great fight at Poitiers in 1356, was formally closed by the *Treaty of Bretigny*, 1360 (§§ 205, 206); while the third was a mere series of raids and counter-raids, in which the Fabian tactics of Du Guesclin gave the French the advantage (§§ 208, 209). Richard II.'s French leanings and Henry IV.'s poverty made the war, if not the ill-feeling, to cease. Henry V. renewed the struggle, won the brilliant victory of Agincourt in 1415, and, thanks to the bitter strife of rival French factions, secured, in the *Treaty of Troyes*, 1420, the succession to the French throne (§§ 233-236). His death, two years later, left an infant son to face party struggles at home and the growth of a national spirit in France: working together, these causes ultimately swept the Lancastrians from not only the French throne they hoped for, but also the English throne they held (§§ 241-253).

§ 191. (iii) Results.—The net result of the whole series of wars, which have been called "barbarous national tournaments," was the formation of a united France, and the failure of essays towards the formation of a united Great Britain (§ 147). The Hundred Years' War brought moral deterioration, social distress, and political

disorder to all the countries concerned during the periods of active fighting; but in both France and England it ultimately led to the rise of strong centralized monarchies and developed the idea of nationality (§§ 261-263). As soon as France was freed from English threatenings and had put her house in order, she turned to a vigorous foreign policy on the Continent; while the loss of Continental possessions was one of the conditions without which England could never have become the colonial and maritime power which she began to be towards the close of the Tudor Period (§§ 265, 361).

§ 192. **Growth of Parliament, 1327-1450.**—The Hundred Years' War, in its later stages, tended to destroy the power of Parliament, which had advanced by leaps and bounds during its earlier stages (§§ 200, 204, 207, 211). As we have seen (§§ 148-150), Parliament had been called into existence mainly for the purpose of filling the King's coffers; but having come into existence for his convenience, it remained for its own. At first called together to give money, because it was simpler to bargain with one body than with all the governing bodies of the country separately, Parliament proceeded to claim that it could refuse to give money, or could give it only on its own terms, to deny that extraordinary taxation, direct or indirect, could be levied without its consent (1297, 1362, 1371), and to keep an eye on the royal expenditure. It thus obtained an indirect control over the public administration, which it further increased by bringing the King's Ministers to account for what it chose to regard as misbehaviour (e. g. 1376, 1386, 1398, 1450), or even by changing the succession to the crown itself (1327, 1399, 1460). And in return for money-grants it secured first the royal promise of the redress of grievances, later the King's enactment of laws drafted by itself.

§ 193. **Decline of Parliament during the Wars of the Roses, 1450-1485.**—Parliament probably reflected, as well as such bodies can, the mind of the thinking classes of the land; and the odds were that if a King satisfied his Parliament he was tolerably in accord with the national will. But its inability to establish any effective machinery for bringing its will to bear on the conduct of affairs, coupled with its constant and unwise intervention in foreign policy, was one of the causes of the loss of France. At the same time, it was discredited by its inability to check the disorders of the fifteenth century, and by the ease with which it could be manipulated by party leaders, during the Wars of the Roses (§§ 247-253). Hence it shared the ruin of the House of Lancaster. The Yorkist kings ignored and the Tudors controlled Parliament (§§ 257, 267, 280).

# French Kings of the House of Capet.

HUGH Capet (987-996).

ROBERT (996-1031).

HENRY I. (1031-1060).

PHILIP I. (1060-1108).

LOUIS VI., the Fat (1108-1137).

HENRY II. = (2) Eleanor (1) = LOUIS VII., the Young (3) = Alice of Blois.  
(1154-1189). (1137-1180). of Aquitaine.

Eleanor = Alfonso IX.  
of Castile.

Henry = Margaret  
d. 1183.

PHILIP II., Augustus (1180-1223).

Peter.

Peter (1217-19).

Baldwin II. (1237-1261).

Robert (1221-8).

Blanche = LOUIS VIII. (1223-1226).

NOTE.—The names of three principal claimants to the French crown on the extinction of the male line of Capet are underlined. The thick lines show the main line of descent of the French Kings (see p. 100). The double line shows where the Bourbon line of French Kings takes its start.

LOUIS IX., the Saint (1228-1270).

Robert.

Blanche = Edmund  
of Lancaster.

Robert of Bourbon.

Bourbon Kings of France.  
1589-1630.

2. Louis,  
1. of Evreux.

1. PHILIP IV.,  
the Fair  
(1285-1314).

2. Charles, C. of Valois.  
PHILIP VI. (1328-1350).

Margaret = (2) EDWARD I. (1) = Eleanor  
of Castile.  
(1272-1307).

Valois Kings of France, 1328-1589.

LOUIS X., the Brawler  
(1314-1316).

PHILIP V., the Tall  
(1316-1322).  
4 daughters.

Isabella = EDWARD II.  
(1307-1327).

Philip = Joan.  
(1327-1349).  
Charles the Bad (1348-1396), whose daughter  
was the second wife of HENRY IV.

CHARLES IV.,  
the Fair (1322-1328).  
2 daughters.  
Last Capetian.

EDWARD III.  
(1327-1377).

KEY TO VARIETIES OF TYPE.

FRENCH KINGS. ENGLISH KINGS. Kings of Navarre. Latin Emperors (at Constantinople).

## CHAPTER XVI.

### EDWARD III., 1327-1377.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Born at Windsor, November 13, 1312; proclaimed King of England in his father's stead, January 25, 1327; crowned, January 29, 1327; married Philippa of Hainault or Hennegau (*d.* 1369), January 24, 1328; died at Sheen, June 21, 1377; buried at Westminster. For his descent, see Table, p. 42: for his large and important family, see Table, p. 144.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

EASTERN EMPIRE.	WESTERN EMPIRE.	PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SCOTLAND.
Andronicus II. (1282)	Lewis IV. <i>Wittelsbach</i> (1314)	John XXII. (1316)	Charles IV. (1322)	Robert I. (1306)
Andronicus III. (1328)		Benedict XII. (1334)	Philip VI. of <i>Valois</i> (1328)	David II. (1329)
Joannes V. <i>Cantacuzene</i> (1342)	Charles IV. <i>Luxemburg</i> (1347-1378)	Clement VI. (1342)	John (1350)	
Joannes VI. <i>Palaeologus</i> (1355-1391)		Innocent VI. (1352)	Charles V. (1364-1380)	Robert II. <i>Stuart</i> (1371-1390)
		Urban V. (1362)		
		Gregory XI. (1370-1378)		

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

#### (i) International: relations with—

- (1) Scotland: §§ 195, 196, 198, 201, 205.
- (2) France: §§ 197-199, 201, 205-6, 208, 209.
- (3) Brittany: §§ 201, 208.
- (4) Flanders: § 198.
- (5) Castile: §§ 208, 209.
- (6) Empire: § 199.
- (7) Papacy: §§ 204, 207.

#### (ii) Constitutional.

- (1) Church: §§ 200, 204, 210, 211.
- (2) Taxation: §§ 200, 202, 207.
- (3) Baronage: §§ 194, 203, 212.
- (4) Royal Family: §§ 195, 207, 209-212.
- (5) Navy: §§ 198, 199, 209.
- (6) Ministerial Responsibility: §§ 200, 211.
- (7) Ireland: § 207.

### I. EDWARD III.'S FIRST TEN YEARS, 1327-1337.

§ 194. **Character of the Revolution of 1327.**—The events leading up to Edward II.'s deposition strike the keynote of English domestic history during the next century and a half. He was attacked and ultimately deposed by his cousins, Thomas and Henry of Lancaster;



the deposition was effected under constitutional forms in Parliament, which was controlled by the King in 1322, and by his enemies five years later; and the fortunes of the struggle turned largely on the private feuds of the great baronial families, like the Mortimers and the Despensers (§§ 185, 186, 193). The members of the royal house who led the rival parties owed their power not merely to their blood, but to their intermarriage with baronial heiresses: this method of providing for younger sons was begun by Henry III., and was continued, with fatal results to the peace of the country and to the safety of his dynasty, by Edward III. (§§ 213, 217).

**§ 195. Mortimer's Rule during the Minority, 1327-1330.**

—As Edward was only fifteen years of age at the time of his accession, the government was entrusted, by the Parliament that had placed him on the throne, to a Council headed by Henry of Lancaster, brother of the "martyred" Thomas (§ 185). The real power, however, was retained by Queen Isabella and her paramour, "the gentle Mortimer," who was created Earl of March. When the nature of their connection became suspected, they lost their popularity, and had chiefly to devote themselves to the task of keeping the power that they had won. In the autumn of 1327 Edward II. was brutally murdered by Mortimer's order, lest he should become a rallying point for the enemies of the Queen (cf. § 224). In March 1328 Isabella and Mortimer agreed at Northampton to acknowledge the independence of Scotland, and to marry Edward III.'s sister Joan to Robert Bruce's son, David (Table, p. 108): this arrangement was called the *Shameful Treaty*. Just two years later they brought Edmund, Earl of Kent, the King's uncle, to the block for alleged conspiracy against the Government. Meanwhile, Lancaster was urging Edward, who married Philippa of Hainault in 1328, and who felt himself a man, to take the management of affairs into his own hands. In October 1330, therefore, Edward suddenly arrested Mortimer at Nottingham. He was found guilty of the murder of Edward II. and of betraying the kingdom to the Scots: he was executed, and his royal accomplice was confined to Castle Rising in Norfolk for the term of her natural life.

**§ 196. Edward III.'s Dealings with Scotland, 1330-1338.**

—It is during the early years of Edward III.'s personal rule (1332-3) that we first hear of the knights sitting apart from the barons, clerical and lay, in Parliament, and joining the burgesses and citizens in their parliamentary business (§ 150). This grouping of the estates into two Houses proved to be of transcendent importance in English history (§§ 187, 261); but at the time this change, adopted

not on grounds of political principle, but for purposes of practical convenience, attracted less attention than the renewal of succession troubles in Scotland. When the old King, Robert Bruce, died in 1329, his only son David was in his sixth year; and the succession of a minor naturally invited attack. This attack was led by a group of Anglo-Scottish barons who had lost their Scottish estates during the late troubles, and who were known as "the Disinherited." In August 1332 they landed at Kinghorn in Fife, and, defeating David's troops at Dupplin Moor, had John Balliol's son Edward crowned at Scone at the end of September. Edward Balliol's recognition of the English suzerainty cost him his crown before the end of the year. In 1333 he was restored by an English force under Edward III. himself, who defeated David's army at Halidon Hill near Berwick. But when Balliol paid for his English succour by the cession of Lothian, he was again expelled; and after a few years' struggle he gave up the attempt as hopeless in 1339. Two years later David Bruce regained his throne. He had an English wife (§ 195); but his kind treatment in France during his exile made him side against England in the war which had broken out between England and France (§§ 201, 205).

## II. FIRST STAGE OF THE FRENCH WAR, 1337-1355.

§ 197. **The French Succession Question, 1328-1338.**—For three hundred and thirty years (987-1316) the French crown had descended regularly from father to son (Table, p. 124); and there had consequently been no necessity to fix what should be the rules of succession in case of the failure of the direct male line. But when Philip IV.'s eldest son, Louis X., died in 1316, without male heirs, it was possible to debate whether the crown should go to his daughter or to his brother; and on the death of Philip IV.'s third son, Charles IV., in 1328, it was similarly possible to debate whether the crown ought to go to his sister Isabella (wife of Edward II. of England), to his niece, or to the nearest male descendant, through males, of some earlier king. In each case it was the male, and the descendant through males, that carried the day; and this precedent has always been followed in France. This rule was practically the application by the magnates or peers of France to the French royal succession of a rule which had been followed centuries ago by the Salian Franks in settling the heirship of landed property: it was therefore called the *Salic Law*. In accordance with this law, when Charles IV. died in 1328, his cousin Philip of Valois was duly recognized as King of France under the title of Philip VI. To him Edward III. twice did

homage for his French possessions—with reservations during Mortimer's guardianship in 1329, and without reservations after he had taken charge of his own affairs in 1331. It was not till 1338 that Edward repudiated these acknowledgments by laying formal claim to the French crown.

**§ 198. Causes of the Anglo-French War, 1338.**—Edward's assumption of the title King of France—borne, with intermission, by his successors until the year 1802—was not so much the cause as a consequence of war between England and France. Philip VI. had taken up the policy of his predecessors in harassing Guienne, in making alliance with the Scots, in encouraging his sailor subjects in their private wars with the English sailors of the Cinque Ports and the coast towns, and in making war on the Flemish cities which formed the chief mart for English wool (§§ 171, 172, 177). During the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, largely owing to the enterprise of the Cistercian monks, wool-raising had become one of the chief agricultural occupations in England; and, in fact, throughout the Middle Ages, wool and woollens (sheepskins) were almost the only article of commerce that England produced for export. Philip's intervention on behalf of the Count of Flanders in his struggle with the unruly but prosperous towns of Ghent and Bruges caused serious inconvenience to English trade, and adversely affected Edward's income. It was natural, therefore, that when the cause of the English candidate for the Scottish throne proved hopeless, Edward should transfer his interest to Flanders. The burghesses of the Flemish manufacturing towns, in their struggles against their immediate lord, appealed to his overlord the French King; and as the Valois occupant of the French throne sided against them, they transferred their allegiance to Edward III., who, to satisfy the scruples of his allies, formally laid claim to the French crown in 1338. The outbreak of the Hundred Years' War thus illustrates the jostling together of the mediæval spirit of feudal legality and the modern spirit of commercial self-interest.

**§ 199. Battle of Sluys, June 24, 1340.**—Edward's first three campaigns in Flanders were expensive but not successful. He spent large sums in subsidizing James van Artevelde, the Ghent merchant who guided the councils of the Flemish burghesses, and the Emperor Lewis IV., who was engaged in a fierce struggle with the "French" Pope at Avignon (§ 188). But he profited very little by his allies; and the only great success of the early years of the war was due to the skill and courage of his own sailors, who, in June 1340, utterly

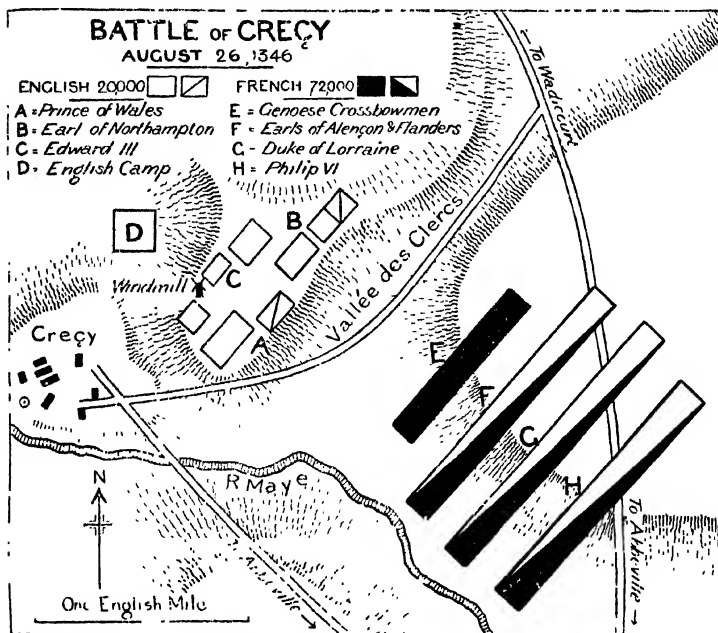
destroyed the French fleet lying off the harbour of Sluys. This victory, at which Edward III. himself was present, not only put a stop to such raids as the French had successfully made in 1338 on Portsmouth and Southampton, but also vindicated the claims which English kings had lately put forth to the sovereignty of the Narrow Seas (§ 430).

§ 200. **Constitutional Changes, 1340-1343.**—In September 1340, Edward concluded the *Truce of Esplechin*, which was continued till 1345, and hastened over to England to find out why he had been kept short of money. Suspecting peculation, he dismissed his Chancellor—John Stratford, Archbishop of Canterbury—and other officers. In refilling the vacant offices he gave preference to lay over clerical persons: Stratford's successor, Robert Bourchier, was the first layman to hold the originally ecclesiastical post of Chancellor (§ 119). Edward's dismissal of the Archbishop involved him in a quarrel, which resulted in the establishment of the constitutional principle that lords spiritual and temporal were entitled to demand trial by their fellow peers. This was settled in 1341, and at the same time Edward purchased grants of money from Parliament by making certain extensive promises, which he immediately repudiated, and which Parliament itself annulled in 1343. The conditions thus promised and cancelled were designed to secure the responsibility of the King's ministers not only to the King, but also to the King's extraordinary advisers in Parliament assembled (cf. §§ 192, 211, 245, 365):—

- (1) That the chief ministers be appointed with the assent of Parliament.
- (2) That on appointment they should be sworn to keep the law.
- (3) That, at each successive Parliament, they should formally resign their offices, submit their accounts to parliamentary audit, answer complaints as to their official conduct, and not till they had successfully passed these ordeals should they be eligible for re-election.

§ 201. **The Campaign and Battle of Crécy, 1346.**—During the continuance of the truces (1340-5), Edward III. took part in the War of the Breton Succession, helping John of Montfort against Charles of Blois, whom the French King desired to make Duke of Brittany. In 1345 the direct attack of Philip VI. on Guienne re-commenced. Despite a victory gained by Henry, Earl of Derby, at Auberoche, in June, his attacks were so successful that Edward resolved to go in person to relieve his subjects in the following year. On his way he was persuaded by Sir Godfrey of Harcourt to substitute an offensive operation for a defensive operation, and draw the

attention of the French from Gascony by making an attack on Northern France. Accordingly, he landed at La Hogue in July 1346 and marched through Normandy, apparently more intent on plunder than on any definite plan of campaign. He crossed the Seine at Poissy and the Somme near its mouth; and, being now arrived in Ponthieu—which he held to be his family property—he awaited the arrival of the much larger army with which Philip VI. had been unsuccessfully pursuing him. He took up a position near



the village of Crécy, and there he was attacked by Philip's troops on the afternoon of August 16. Thanks mainly to his archers, Edward won a decisive victory. He then laid siege to Calais, which yielded after nearly a year's resistance, in August 1347. Meanwhile, Edward's officers had defeated and captured the Scottish King David II., in a battle at Neville's Cross (October 17, 1346). Content with these victories, Edward made a truce in 1347; and this truce was prolonged for nearly eight years (§ 205).

§ 202. **The Black Death, 1348.**—This long break in the war was due not only to the exhaustion of the combatants, who had no resources for the continuous prosecution of war or any other enterprise on a large scale, but also to the frightful ravages of an unusually severe epidemic, which reached Western Europe from the East in the course of the year 1347-8. Such outbursts of disease were common enough in the Middle Ages, when there was no sanitation, and when whole populations were liable to be weakened by such famines as were frequent in England during the reign of Edward II. But this particular epidemic was so exceptionally severe that the men of the day called it "the Great Pestilence": in England alone it killed off between one-third and one-half of the then population of about 4,000,000. Its chief marks were the spitting of blood and the appearance of hard boils and dark blotches all over the body; and it seldom took more than two days, often no more than two hours, to kill its victim. The Black Death not only made war impossible for a few years, but also, like all such plagues, it had an immediate demoralizing effect upon society. It also had enduring economic effects: by decreasing the number of labourers, it sent up the rate of wages, and so forced landlords to make ineffective efforts to restore old rates by law and generally to deal hardly with their peasants (§§ 214-216). The repressive legislation was first embodied in *Ordinances*—that is, enactments put forth by authority of King and Council—and was later re-issued with parliamentary sanction as the *Statute of Labourers* (1351).

§ 203. **Statute of Treason, 1352.**—The *Statute of Labourers* was only one of several legislative attempts made, during the years of truce, by the classes possessing political authority in England, to protect themselves against what they held to be encroachments on their privileges or position. In 1352 the baronial class, which had suffered much from arbitrary judicial interpretation of the vague and elastic crime of treason—i.e. breach of the oath of allegiance to the King—sought to define its limits in the *Statute of Treason*: of the seven points specified in the Act the most important were, compassing the death of the King, Queen, or heir-apparent, violating the honour of the King's consort, levying war on the King, and murdering the King's judges while engaged in the performance of their official duties.

§ 204. **Statutes of Provisors and Praemunire, 1351-1353.**—Almost more characteristic of the time were two Acts which endeavoured to safeguard the King and the laity generally from the

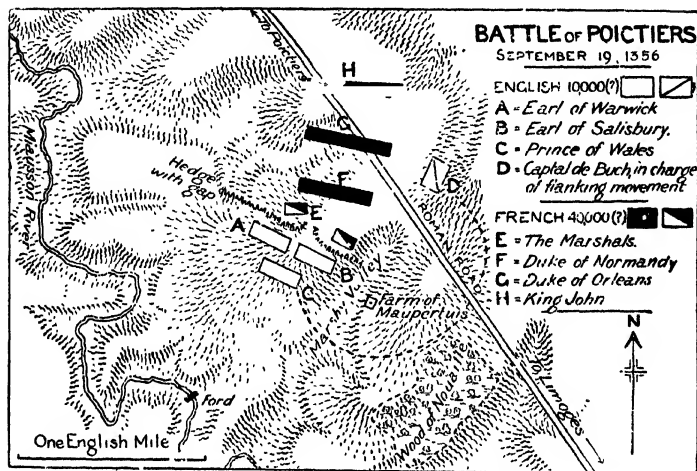
more recent forms of Papal exactions (cf. §§ 155, 179). The *Statute of Provisors*, first passed in 1351, and afterwards re-enacted in a revised form in 1391 (§ 219), was meant to check the Pope's interference with the rights of patrons, especially the practice of "providing" beforehand successors to ecclesiastical benefices when they should fall vacant, and "reserving" a varying number of benefices in each diocese for his own nominees. The *Statute of Praemunire*, first passed in 1353, and repeated in 1393, etc. (§§, 219, 292), was designed to restrain the growing practice of carrying appeals from the English ecclesiastical courts out of the country—*i. e.* to the Papal Curia. Both these Acts proceeded not so much from any objection on principle to the Papal patronage, or to the Papal jurisdiction, as from a sense that that jurisdiction and patronage were abused both by excessive use, and by the French partialities of the Avignonese Papacy (§ 188).

### III. SECOND STAGE OF THE FRENCH WAR, 1355-1360.

§ 205. **Battle of Poitiers, September 19, 1356.**—On the expiry of the long truce in 1355, the theatre of war was transferred to Southern France. In 1355 Edward "the Black Prince," who had borne the brunt of the fighting at Crécy, led a plundering expedition from Bordeaux through the fertile province of Languedoc. In the following year he conducted a similar inroad northwards from Bordeaux, but on his way back he was intercepted at Poitiers by the French King John with an army four times as numerous as his own. As at Crécy, the generalship was all on the side of the numerically weaker force: the English archers threw the attacking Frenchmen into disorder, and a well-timed charge of mounted knights converted the disorder into complete rout. King John and many of the principal nobles of France were made prisoners, and in 1357 the Black Prince made a truce for two years and returned with his royal captive to England. At the same time Edward III. endeavoured to conciliate Scotland by releasing David Bruce without exacting homage for his kingdom (§ 201).

§ 206. **Treaty of Bretigny, May 8, 1360.**—The truce brought no rest to France; its rulers were at variance; the disbanded soldiery were plundering the land; and the peasants rose against their oppressors in the savage riots called the *Jacquerie* (cf. § 215). In 1359 Edward resolved to take advantage of all this misery to bring the war to a close. He ravaged the country lying between the Seine and the Loire, until he was smitten with remorse at the

harm he was doing, and offered more moderate terms of peace than he would previously accept. The *Treaty of Bretigny* arranged that Edward was to abandon his claim to the crown of France and to the possessions of Henry II.'s father and mother (§ 115), in return for the cession, not as a fief but in full sovereignty, of all Aquitaine, Calais and Ponthieu. It was also stipulated that King John should be ransomed for 3,000,000 gold crowns; but being unable to raise so large a sum he returned to England, and died in captivity, 1364.



#### IV. THIRD STAGE OF THE FRENCH WAR, 1360-1377.

§ 207. Illustrations of English National Character, 1360-1366.—The six years of comparative peace which followed the *Treaty of Bretigny* were mainly occupied with domestic reforms. In 1362 it was definitely enacted in Parliament that duties on wool and other goods should be imposed, not by the consent of the merchant class alone, as had been done by Edward III. for his own convenience, but only by the consent of Parliament as a whole: this Act, which was confirmed in 1371, practically completed *Confirmatio Cartarum* (§ 175) by bringing all kinds of indirect taxation under parliamentary control. In the same year the English language was ordered to be used instead of French in the law-courts. This change, accompanied as it was by the substitution of English for



French as the literary language of Englishmen, was a striking indication of the way in which the long struggle with France was forming and fixing a sense of English nationality (§ 138). The same feeling of the self-sufficiency of England underlay the resistance to the French Papacy as expressed in the Acts of 1351 and 1353 (§ 204), and in the formal repudiation (1366), after thirty-three years' intermission of payment, of the tribute promised at John's submission to the Papacy (§ 140). So too the chief feature of the important if fruitless *Statute of Kilkenny* (1366)—which Edward's son Lionel, Duke of Clarence, passed through the Irish Parliament two years before his death—was the attempt to check the Englishry from adopting the "barbarous" dress, language, and customs of the native Irish (§ 184). All these things were signs of the times: they showed that the English, compelled to act together against "foreigners," were falling in love with their own ways and their own speech, and putting on that exclusiveness and insularity which are commonly regarded as typical of the national character.

§ 208. **The Black Prince's Spanish Expedition, 1367.**—The *Treaty of Bretigny* effected only a partial peace between England and France: it was never ratified in due form, and the French King was only biding his time to reassert his rights over Aquitaine. Two minor wars in the sixties led up to the renewal of the direct war in 1369 (§ 209). In 1364 the Breton War was brought to a close by the death of the French candidate at the battle of Auray and the consequent acquisition of the duchy by John of Montfort (§ 201). In 1367 Edward the Black Prince, who had been created Duke of Aquitaine by his father, intervened in the affairs of the kingdom of Castile. Peter the Cruel had been expelled from that kingdom, with the help of French troops, by his illegitimate half-brother, Henry of Trastamare. Moved partly by considerations of chivalry towards royalty in distress, partly by considerations of policy, Prince Edward undertook Peter's restoration. He crossed the Pyrenees, defeated Henry of Trastamare in a battle at Navarete or Najara, near Vittoria on the upper waters of the Ebro, April 3, 1367, and replaced Peter on the throne. Henry was restored with French help in the following year; and the principal effect of the Black Prince's expedition was the ruin of his health and the shattering of his finances. To pay the expenses of the war he had to raise heavy taxes in his duchy; and the consequence was the revolt of Aquitaine in 1369.

§ 209. **Renewal of the Anglo-French War, 1369-1375.**—The discontented men of Aquitaine appealed to the French King,

Charles V., as to their rightful overlord ; and Charles summoned the Black Prince to answer the accusations of his vassals. The Black Prince lost his temper, and still further estranged his subjects by such cruelties as the massacre of nearly three thousand non-combatants on the capture of Limoges in 1370. Next year he returned home, and his place was taken by his younger brother, John of Gaunt (i.e. Ghent), Duke of Lancaster. John had the disadvantage of attempting to hold a distant and discontented dependency of a country which had lost command of the sea. In 1350 the English had repeated their success at Sluys by winning a great naval battle off Winchelsea, which is known from the swarms of Spaniards among the conquered as *Lespagnols-sur-Mer* : in 1372 the fruits of this victory were lost through the Earl of Pembroke's signal defeat by a Franco-Spanish fleet off La Rochelle. When, therefore, Duke John wanted to take reinforcements to Aquitaine in 1372 he dared not undertake the long sea-voyage, but marched overland from Calais. The result was that he reached Bordeaux with an army which was so exhausted from lack of food, and weakened by straggling skirmishes, that it brought no strength to a losing cause. By the advice of Bertrand du Guesclin, Constable of France, the French refused to fight pitched battles in which they would probably lose, and contented themselves with capturing the towns and castles that held out for the English, and with cutting off the English food supplies. By these cautious proceedings they had reduced Edward III.'s possessions in France to the immediate neighbourhood of Bordeaux, Bayonne, and Calais, when the fighting was brought to a close in 1375 by the *Truce of Bruges*.

§ 210. **John of Gaunt and John Wyclif, 1369-1375.**—Edward III.'s last years were inglorious at home as well as abroad. After the death of Queen Philippa—whose good influence is illustrated by the well-worn story of her pleading for the lives of the citizens of Calais—he fell under the sway of Alice Perrers, a woman of whom no contemporary has a good word to say. She practically took the control of affairs from the hands of the prematurely aged king ; and it was with her help that John of Gaunt secured the dismissal in 1371 of William of Wykeham, Bishop of Winchester, and the other clerical ministers of Edward III. (cf. § 200). John had also the support of quite a different kind of ally in the person of John Wyclif, an Oxford theologian who had gradually come to believe that the ecclesiastical abuses of the day were not to be eradicated without a fundamental alteration in the principles of the

mediæval Church. There were many powerful thinkers and considerable freedom of thought in the Middle Ages; but, then as now, there were a number of principles generally taken for granted which it was regarded as wicked and revolutionary to call in question. When Wyclif began to criticize the theological first principles which had received the authoritative sanction of the Church, he was compared to the enemy who sowed tares in the wheat-field of Christ's truth (*S. Matthew* xiii., *vv.* 24-30), and he and his disciples were nicknamed Lollards (Latin, *lolia* = tares). Wyclif attacked the wealth and worldliness of the clergy, because he thought they were bad for the Church; John of Gaunt supported him because he coveted the wealth and envied the political power of the clergy. As a result of this alliance with the King's mistress and the religious reformer, John of Gaunt held the reins of state for the last five years of the French war.

§ 211. **The Good Parliament, 1376.**—When John returned from France, he had to face the opposition of various parties which disapproved of his doings and of his allies. Edward the Black Prince had reason to suspect that John was aiming at the throne, to the exclusion of himself or of his young son Richard; the official clergy were eager to strike a blow at Wyclif, whose advocacy of ecclesiastical reform laid him open to charges of heresy; and all kinds of tax-payers had grievances against a Government which was at once extravagant and unsuccessful. These various lines of resistance were taken up by the "Good Parliament" in 1376. Its positive legislation was short-lived (§ 212), but its mode of attack on the King's ministers became a precedent. The county juries had long been in the habit of presenting criminals to the King's judges (§ 129): following this example the Commons, who were a "concentration" of county juries (§ 173), presented Lord Latimer, Lord Neville, and others for trial before the Lords on the charge of peculation and fraud in the management of the public finances. This method of securing the responsibility of ministers to Parliament is called *impeachment* (§ 192).

§ 212. **Death of Edward III., 1377.**—The Good Parliament was still sitting when the Black Prince died in June 1376; and it at once procured the recognition of his son as the future king. John of Gaunt was able to secure control of the next Parliament, and to reverse most of the proceedings of the Good Parliament; but he did not venture to set aside the recognition of Richard as King when Edward III. followed his eldest son to the grave in June 1377.

## CHAPTER XVII.

### RICHARD II., 1377-1399.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Born at Bordeaux, April 13, 1366; son of Edward III.'s eldest son, Edward—who had been successively created Duke of Cornwall (1336), Prince of Wales (1343), and Duke of Aquitaine (1362); succeeded his grandfather as King of England, June 22, 1377; crowned July 16, 1377; married (a) Anne of Bohemia, daughter of the Emperor Charles IV. (*d.* 1394), January 1382; (*b*) Isabella, daughter of Charles VI., King of France (*d.* 1409), September 1396; no issue; compelled to abdicate, September 29, 1399; probably murdered in Pontefract Castle, early in 1400; body, said to be his, buried first at Langley and afterwards in Westminster Abbey. For his uncles and other family connections, see Tables, pp. 42, 144.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

EASTERN EMPIRE.	WESTERN EMPIRE.	PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SCOTLAND.
<i>House of Palaeologus</i> Joannes VI. (1355)	<i>House of Luxemburg</i> Charles IV. (1347)	<i>Great Schism, 1378-1417</i> Rome Urban VI. (1378)	<i>House of Valois</i> Charles V. (1364)	<i>House of Stuart</i> Robert II. (1371)
Manuel II. (1391-1425)	Wenzel (1378-1400)	Bonifacio IX. (1389-1404)	Charles VI. (1380-1422)	Robert III. (1390-1406)
		"Clement VII." (1378)		
		"Benedict XIII." (1394-1424)		

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

#### (i) International: relations with—

- (1) France: §§ 213, 219.
- (2) Flanders: § 213.
- (3) Brittany: § 213.
- (4) Castile: §§ 216, 219.
- (5) Papacy: §§ 219, 222.
- (6) Scotland: § 219.

#### (ii) Constitutional.

- (1) Church: §§ 214, 216, 219, 222.
- (2) Royal Family: §§ 213, 215, 217-222.
- (3) Villanage: §§ 214, 215.
- (4) Parliament: §§ 213, 215, 217-220, 222.
- (5) Ireland: §§ 219, 221
- (6) Wales: §§ 220, 221.

### I. RICHARD II.'s MINORITY, 1377-1389.

§ 213. **Difficulties of Richard's Government, 1377-1381.**—Richard II. was in his twelfth year when he succeeded his grandfather in June 1377. His youth and the known divisions among his counsellors encouraged attack; and throughout the summer the

south coast of England was harried by French sailors. The pressure of these dangers brought about a formal reconciliation of the party leaders: John of Gaunt was reconciled with William of Wykeham, and the trial of Wyclif for heresy was allowed to drop for the moment (§§ 211, 216). The young King was placed under the personal charge of his mother, Joan of Kent; and the administration of public affairs was entrusted by Parliament to a Council of nine magnates. From this Council the King's uncles—John, Duke of Lancaster, Edmund, Earl of Cambridge (created Duke of York in 1385), and Thomas, Earl of Buckingham (created Duke of Gloucester in 1385)—were excluded, lest they should quarrel among themselves for the leadership; but John of Gaunt, the oldest and most experienced of the three, had great influence over the Council. The chief difficulty of the Government was to find money for the various defensive and offensive operations necessitated by the renewal of the French war, at sea, in Brittany, and in Flanders. These difficulties led to the adoption of some notable experiments in finance. In 1377 the parliamentary money-grants were entrusted to the care of two members of the House of Commons, Walworth and Philipot, and were specially "appropriated" to the war. In 1379, and again in 1381, the ordinary sources of revenue were supplemented by the imposition of a graduated poll-tax, i.e. a tax of so much a head on all persons, the amount varying with the rank and supposed wealth of the payer. The second poll-tax was the immediate cause of the complicated insurrection known as the Peasants' Rising (§ 215).

§ 214. **The Development of Villanage.**—The peasants, *ceorl* and *theow*, free and unfree, of early English times had fallen, with the establishment of a feudal land-system in the eleventh century (§§ 42, 66), to one or other of the innumerable forms of villanage: that is to say, they had become serfs, tied to the land, and bound to do whatever was required of them by the lord of the *vīl* (manor or township). Despite the efforts of the lawyers to reduce them to the "rightlessness" of the Roman *servus* (slave), the villans had risen, by the middle of the fourteenth century, to a condition of practical freedom. For the sake of convenience of management, they had been successively allowed fixity of the services which they rendered for their holdings; and these labour-services had been, again for convenience' sake, commuted for a money-rent (cf. § 117). Partly through the influence of the Church, which discouraged slavery, partly under the working of the economic causes which always tend to substitute money-payments for the primitive system of barter, the

villans had thus emerged from serfdom into the condition of free labourers. So long as they paid a certain rent—fixed, not by competition but by custom, at about sixpence an acre—they could not legally be ejected from their holdings; they could supplement the livelihood they gained in cultivating their own land by wages earned from the lord of the manor or any of their wealthier neighbours; and they had some measure of liberty to migrate from their home in search of employment (cf. § 121). The Black Death, which broke out at intervals between 1348 and 1369 (§ 202), upset this quiet development of the peasantry. Labour became scarce, and the labourers consequently refused to work at the traditional wage. The landowner class endeavoured to meet this difficulty by passing *Statutes of Labourers* which fixed the scale of wages, and made it a criminal offence to be a vagabond wandering in search of employment; and they also sought to enforce all labour-services that had not been commuted. The misery of the peasantry under these circumstances has been depicted and brought into connection with the other social evils of the time, in the contemporary English poem (1362-1399) of William Langland—*Piers the Plowman*.

§ 215. **The Peasants' Rising, June 1381.**—It was not wholly the peasants' grievances that caused the Peasants' Rising. That sudden uprising was produced by various grievances, felt by different classes and in different localities. The men of Kent were set against the government of John of Gaunt; the villan classes were desirous of checking attempts made by the lords to thrust them back into a condition of serfdom; the artisans of the towns wished to lessen the trade-restrictions imposed by the guilds (§ 135). These and other causes found champions in the disbanded soldiers wandering about the country, organizers in the "poor priests" of Wyclif and his more radical disciples, and an occasion in the heavy poll-tax of 1381. The movement broke out simultaneously in several southern shires; and various hosts marched on London, the gates of which were opened by sympathizers within the walls. The murder of a few unpopular officials, including Archbishop Simon of Canterbury, caused dismay among the ruling class; but the young King kept his head. On June 14 he met the men of Essex, who had marched up to Hampstead under the leadership of Jack Straw, at Mile-End, and induced them to disperse by promising redress of their grievances, which were chiefly agrarian. On the following day he met the more violent men of Kent at Smithfield; and in the course of the interview the Kentish leader, Wat Tyler, was slain by the King's

attendants. Richard at once rode forward among the leaderless mob, before they had time to fulfil their threats of vengeance, assumed the leadership, and promising redress to them also, drew them out of the city and sent them home. "I have this day," he told his mother afterwards, "saved my heritage of England which I had lost." Richard II.'s character has been variously interpreted; but his conduct at Smithfield and his comment upon it show that he possessed courage, presence of mind, and political insight. These qualities, however, did not enable him to prevent Parliament from cancelling his pardon and other concessions to the insurgents. The landowners controlled both Houses of Parliament, and punished the "lower classes" who had frightened them; but in time they practically conceded, as individuals to individuals, the points which they collectively declined to concede to the workers in combination.

**§ 216. The Lollards and the Peasants' War, 1381-1384.**—Among the results of the Peasants' Rising were a renewed attack on Wyclif, and the temporary withdrawal of John of Gaunt from English politics. Some of the insurgent leaders, notably John Ball, had promulgated ideas of the kind which we now-a-days call "socialistic"; and these ideas were largely drawn from the English tracts which Wyclif produced during his later years. Wyclif himself had not countenanced all the deductions made by his followers (§ 210); but it was convenient to make him a scapegoat. He was found guilty of heresy by an ecclesiastical synod held at the Blackfriars in London in 1382; but he was suffered to retire to his rectory at Lutterworth in Leicestershire, where he died at mass in 1384. In the following year, Wyclif's former ally, John of Gaunt, who had learnt his unpopularity by the bitterness of the insurgents of 1381 against him, diverted his ambitions from England to Spain, where his second marriage with Peter's daughter Constance had given him claims on the throne of Castile (§ 208: Table, p. 190).

**§ 217. Struggle between Richard and his Relations, 1381-1387.**—Meanwhile Richard II. was gathering round him personal friends in order to protect himself from the domination of his uncles (cf. §§ 137, 181, 258): the chief of them were Michael de la Pole, a Hull merchant whom he made Lord Chancellor in 1383 and Earl of Suffolk two years later, and Robert de Vere, Earl of Oxford, whom in 1385 he made Marquess (a new title) of Dublin. In the absence of John of Gaunt, his younger brother, Thomas of Gloucester, put himself at the head of the baronial party which thought it had a better right to Richard's favour than these "favourites." In October

1386 Gloucester and his friends obtained control of Parliament, contrived the impeachment of Suffolk, and appointed a Council of Eleven to manage public affairs for a year. It was a repetition of the old devices of the Lords Ordainers against Gaveston (§ 182); but Richard and his friends were made of better stuff than Edward II. and his friend. Richard had to give way for the moment; but early in 1387 he again took Suffolk into his counsels, went on a royal progress through the country in quest of popularity, and obtained from his judges an opinion that the baronial commission was illegal (§§ 374, 393, 481). Gloucester and his party met the King's appeal to law by an appeal to arms: in December their victory over Robert de Vere, now Duke of Ireland, at Radcot Bridge on the Upper Thames, gave them the control of the political situation.

**§ 218. The Merciless Parliament, 1388.**—Gloucester had four chief allies:—Henry, Earl of Derby, son of Lancaster; Richard Fitz-Alan, Earl of Arundel; Thomas Mowbray, Earl of Nottingham; and Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick. In February 1388 these five men gathered in the King's name a parliament favourable to their side, and there "appealed" (or accused) of treason a number of Richard's partisans: hence they are known as the Lords Appellants. This "Merciless" or "Wonderful Parliament" condemned many of Richard's friends, some of whom were caught and executed, and endeavoured to secure the permanency of its acts by prescribing heavy penalties against all who should attempt to reverse its proceedings (§ 220). The main significance of these measures lies in their illustration of the extent and virulence of family feuds among the noble families of the realm, of the importance attached to the approval of Parliament, and of the ease with which Parliament could be manipulated for party purposes (cf. § 212).

## II. RICHARD II.'S PERSONAL RULE, 1389-1398.

**§ 219. Richard's Constitutional Rule, 1389-1397.**—In May 1389 Richard quietly told his council that, as he had come of age some time since, he considered himself old enough to manage his own affairs. He dismissed the ministers thrust upon him by the Lords Appellants; but having thus asserted his power he took some of them back again. This conciliatory attitude—partly due to the influence of his wife Anne of Bohemia and to that of John of Gaunt, who had just returned from Spain a sadder and a wiser man—lasted for the next eight years. This was a period of peace and efficient government. Abroad, Richard entered into the security obtained



under the Lords Appellants by Arundel's naval victories in 1387, and by the death of the Scots Border lord, James, Earl of Douglas, in the famous fight of Chevy Chase at Otterbourn in 1388. At home, he not only governed well, but also tried to enforce various laws which had been generally evaded: for instance, the statutes of *Provisors*, *Praemunire*, and *Mortmain* were re-enacted in the years 1391-1393 (§§ 167, 204). Richard showed his interest in Ireland not only by a long and sympathetic visit in 1394, but also by committing it to the care of Roger Mortimer, Earl of March, whom he had named his heir in 1385 (Table, p. 144). Most of Henry II.'s successors had neglected Ireland in order to be free to seek military glory on the Continent: Richard II., on the contrary, deliberately chose the opposite course by making a twenty-five years' truce, cemented by a marriage alliance, with France in September 1396.

§ 220. **Richard's Vengeance on the Appellants, 1397-8.**—Richard's marriage with Isabella of France formed a turning-point in his career. His visit to France increased his love of display and enhanced his already high conception of his Prerogative: his peace-policy gave umbrage to the war-party, which included most of the Lords Appellants. In January 1397 Thomas Haxey, a clerical member of the House of Commons (§ 150), made a complaint about the King's extravagance. Gloucester followed up Haxey's attack—of which he was probably the instigator—by telling his nephew that he was a sluggard for not prosecuting the French war. There were various rumours of conspiracy in the air; and Richard resolved this time to strike the first blow. Gloucester was seized and sent to Calais, where he suddenly died—probably by violence and at Richard's orders; Arundel was executed, and his brother Thomas Fitz-Alan, Archbishop of Canterbury, sent into exile; Warwick was banished to the Isle of Man. The remaining two Appellants—Derby and Nottingham—were not only spared but even taken into favour: they were created Dukes of Hereford and Norfolk respectively, and the pardon for their doings in 1387-8 was confirmed. Richard also took pains to secure the usual parliamentary sanction. One Parliament, sitting in an open shed at Westminster in the presence of royal archers with bows bent for action, annulled the proceedings of the Merciless Parliament (§ 218). Four months later, in January 1398, the same Parliament sitting at Shrewsbury—on the borders of Wales, where Richard was always popular—made Richard a life-grant of the customs-dues called Tunnage and Poundage (§ 383), and delegated its powers to a permanent committee of eighteen members

—all devoted adherents of the King. In September, Richard banished Hereford and Norfolk, for ten years and for life respectively: they had been telling tales about each other's treasonable designs, and the King seized the opportunity of getting rid of them both.

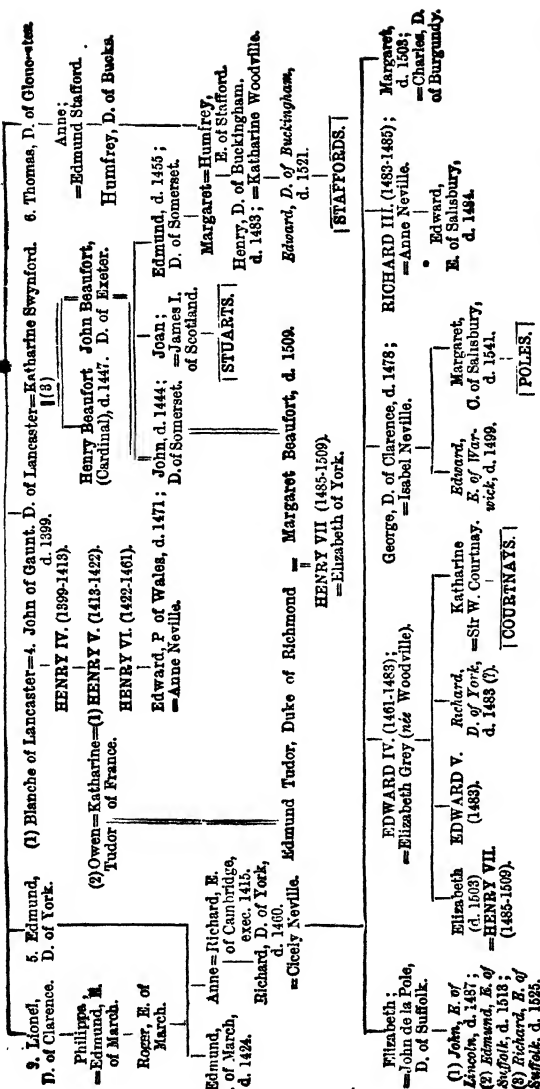
### III. THE LANCASTRIAN REVOLUTION, 1399.

**§ 221. The Return of Bolingbroke, July 1399.**—Henry of Bolingbroke, Duke of Hereford, met Archbishop Arundel in his exile; and together they plotted a counter-revolution. The pretext came when, on John of Gaunt's death in February 1399, Richard seized his estates instead of fulfilling his promise to allow them to pass to Henry. The opportunity came when Richard went over to Ireland in May to punish the Irish tribes that had been concerned in the murder of his heir and Lord-Deputy, the Earl of March (§ 219). In July, Bolingbroke landed at Ravenspur in Holderness, saying that he had come only to make good his claim to the Lancaster estates. His gallant exploits in his recent crusades against the Turks and Prussians, had made him popular; and his repeated assertions that he had come only on family business stilled the alarm of Richard's friends. The sole surviving son of Edward III., Edmund, Duke of York, who had been left in charge of England by his nephew, was among those who took Bolingbroke at his word. Meanwhile Richard had been detained in Ireland by contrary winds; when he returned he found the Welsh troops which his friend John Montacute, Earl of Salisbury, had collected for him, had dispersed; and towards the end of August he was induced by the misleading representations of Bolingbroke's chief supporter, Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland (§§ 227-229), to quit his shelter at Conway Castle. He was taken prisoner at Flint and conveyed to London.

**§ 222. Deposition of Richard II., September 30, 1399.**—At the end of September, Richard formally resigned the crown, and his resignation was accepted by Parliament. Among the thirty-three reasons for this acceptance were Richard's treatment of Archbishop Arundel, his packing of Parliament, his appeal to the Pope to confirm Acts of Parliament, his assertions that "the laws of England were in his mouth" and that he had the absolute right to dispose of the life and property of his subjects as he pleased. Bolingbroke then stepped forward and, in an English speech, put forth a claim, based on his descent from Henry III. (p. 42), to the vacant throne of England—"which realm was in point to be undone for default of governance and undoing of the good laws."

# The Descendants of Edward 333.

EDWARD III. (1272-1377).



NOTE.—The Lancastrians and family names in dark type; eminent rivals of the Tudors in *italics*: sovereigns in capitals (the figures within brackets denoting the period of their reigns). The descent of Henry VII. shown by a double line.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### LANCASTRIAN CONSTITUTIONALISM, 1399-1413.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—HENRY IV. was born at Bolingbroke, Lincolnshire, April 3, 1367; eldest son of John of Gaunt—fourth son of Edward III., created Duke of Lancaster (1362)—by his first wife Blanche, heiress of Lancaster; accepted as King of England by the Parliament which had deposed his first cousin, King Richard II., September 30, 1399; crowned, October 13, 1399; married (a) Mary Bohun, co-heiress of the Earl of Hereford, 1380, (b) Joan, daughter of Charles II., King of Navarre, and widow of John V. Duke of Brittany, February 1403; in right of his first wife, who bore him four sons and two daughters, he was raised from the earldom of Derby (1385) to the dukedom of Hereford (1397); died in the Jerusalem Chamber at Westminster, March 20, 1413; buried at Canterbury. For his family connections, see Tables, pp. 42, 144.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

EASTERN EMPIRE.	WESTERN EMPIRE.	PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SCOTLAND.
Manuel II. (1391-1425)	Rupert <i>Wittelsbach</i> (1400) Sigismund <i>Luxemburg</i> (1410-1437)	<i>Great Schism,</i> <i>1378-1417</i> Boniface IX. (1389) Innocent VII. (1401) Gregory XII. (1406) <i>Abdicates, 1415</i> Alexander V. (1409) John XXIII. (1410) <i>Deposed, 1415</i>	Charles VI. (1380-1422)	Robert III. (1390)  James I. (1406-1437)

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) France: §§ 223, 227, 229-231.
- (2) Burgundy: §§ 230, 231.
- (3) Scotland: §§ 223, 227-229.
- (4) Papacy: § 231.

(ii) **Constitutional:**

- (1) Church: §§ 223, 225, 229.
- (2) Royal Succession: § 223.
- (3) Insurrections: §§ 224, 227-229.
- (4) Parliament: §§ 223-226.
- (5) Ministers: §§ 226, 231.
- (6) Wales: §§ 227-229.

**§ 223. Henry IV.'s Constitutional Position.**—Henry's claim to the throne was recognized by Parliament "with one accord"; and he was straightway led to the throne by the two Archbishops. Both he and his supporters repeatedly insisted that the main feature of

the new reign was to be its complete contrast with that of Richard II. Henry IV. was expected to drop his cousin's despotic ideas and to rule with the counsel and consent of his Parliament, and especially of his magnates; he was to avoid countenancing the Lollards; and he was to resume the French war. That was the ideal, but in practice Henry found it impossible to fulfil these expectations. His accession, though it seemed to be popular, and to have the support of the whole nation, was in reality only the result of a party-triumph which was not necessarily more stable than the similar party-triumphs of 1376 or 1397 (§§ 212, 220). He had to devote his whole energies for the greater part of his reign to keeping the throne which he had won mainly through a combination of luck and lying. His attempts to reward his supporters impoverished him without satisfying them; he had to face repeated attacks by the partisans of Richard and of his heir—the young Earl of March, whose hereditary claims to the crown were better than those of Henry IV. (Table, p. 144); and the manifest weakness of his position naturally invited the renewal of foreign attacks (§§ 227, 229). Fortunately for Henry, these foreign attacks were weakened in number and force by the political disunion existing both in France and in Scotland (§ 230).

**§ 224. Rising of the Earls, 1400.**—One of the first acts of Henry's Parliament was to annul the acts of the Shrewsbury Parliament (§ 220), and to revive those of the Merciless Parliament (§ 218). At the same time, Richard's chief partisans were punished; and though Henry insisted on moderation, the punishments were heavy enough to provoke resentment. Early in 1400 some of the malcontents—Richard's half-brothers, the Earls of Kent and Huntingdon, his Lollard friend the Earl of Salisbury (§ 221), and York's son the Earl of Rutland—attempted to seize the person of Henry and effect the restoration of Richard II. This attempt failed completely; and the continued unpopularity of Richard was proved by the hostile reception given to the earls in their flight up the Thames Valley, from Windsor to Cirencester. The principal result of the rising of the earls was the death of Richard: he is said to have been starved to death early in 1400, at his prison in Pontefract Castle, Yorkshire (cf. § 186).

**§ 225. Statute de Heretico Comburendo, 1401.**—Henry owed his crown largely to the support of the conservative clergy, headed by Archbishop Arundel, and to his acceptance by Parliament. In the session of 1401 he endeavoured to discharge these two debts. He gratified Archbishop Arundel by ordering the execution of William

Sawtre as a heretic, and by giving his assent to an Act which made the repression of Lollardy easier in the future. The *Statute de Heretico Comburendo* enacted that any person whom the bishops found guilty of heresy, and who would not recant, should be handed over to the civil power to be burned without further trial. The decision was thus left in the hands of the ecclesiastical courts, which had expert knowledge in such matters, while the punishment was transferred to the State, which had more formidable means of punishment than the excommunication and other spiritual penalties of the Church-courts (§§ 120, 121).

§ 226. **The King and the Commons, 1401-1407.**—Henry had to discharge his debts to the Commons as well as to the Clergy. In 1401 he was compelled to accept the principle, pressed upon him by Sir Arnold Savage, Speaker of the House of Commons, that the King ought to attend to their grievances before he received grants of money: in technical language, "*Redress must precede Supply*" (§§ 384, 396). This was only one of the many concessions which Henry had to make to the House of Commons: for instance, he thrice submitted the names of his Council to the approval of the Commons, and after 1406 regularly submitted his accounts to parliamentary audit. In 1407 he assented to the *Indemnity of the Lords and Commons*, whereby the claim of the House of Commons to have the sole right of originating Money Bills was explicitly recognized, and the King pledged himself not to interfere with the debates over money-grants. This was practically the foundation of that control over the purse-strings which ultimately gave the "Lower House" predominance over the "Upper House." The Commons had assented to his royal pretensions, and in return he had to assent to their parliamentary pretensions.

§ 227. **Wales and Scotland, 1400-1402.**—Richard II.'s de-thronement and death involved disputes between England and France as to what was to be done with his child-widow and her dowry (§ 219). Charles VI. used the opportunity to endeavour to acquire the rest of Aquitaine, to renew the raids on the south coast of England, and to help Henry's enemies in Wales and Scotland. In 1400 a Welsh gentleman, known to the English as Owen Glendower, failing to obtain justice in a land-dispute with an English neighbour who was a friend of Henry IV., raised a general revolt in North Wales which did not die out until the end of Henry's reign (§§ 228, 229). In the same year, Henry made unsuccessful expeditions against both Owen and Scotland. Two years later the

Scots retaliated by an inroad into the northern shires, but were defeated at Homildon Hill by the Percies—Northumberland and his son, Henry, whose impetuosity won him the name of Hotspur. In this battle Hotspur avenged his capture at Otterbourn by taking prisoner Archibald, Earl of Douglas (§ 219).

§ 228. **Battle of Shrewsbury, 1403.**—This victory of the Percies, at Homildon Hill, seemed at first likely to bring Henry IV.'s troubles to an end; but it rather proved to be a beginning of fresh troubles. Henry, being short of money, not only delayed recouping the Percies for their expenses in frontier-defence, but also claimed the Scots prisoners for ransom. At the same time he offended the Percies by declining to ransom from Owen Glendower Edmund Mortimer, uncle of the young Earl of March and brother of Hotspur's wife. Mortimer married Glendower's daughter, and in 1403 the whole family group suddenly turned on Henry, and secured the assistance of the Douglasses in their attack. Henry rose to the occasion and defeated the Northerners near Shrewsbury in July 1403, before Glendower could cross the Severn to join them. In this battle the King's eldest son Henry, a youth of fifteen, played a prominent part, and Henry Hotspur was slain. Northumberland made his submission and was pardoned.

§ 229. **End of Henry IV.'s Domestic Troubles, 1405-1408.**—The battle of Shrewsbury was the turning-point in Henry's fortunes; but five years had still to elapse before all his dangers were overpast. After Richard II.'s disappearance, the Earl of March was generally used as a stalking-horse by Henry's opponents; but they were much more bent on securing their interests than on vindicating the rights of the legitimist claimant. This is best illustrated by an agreement—made in 1406 at Aberdaron in Caernarvonshire—for the partition of England between Mortimer, Glendower, and Northumberland (cf. § 96). This *Tripartite Convention* was concocted in the interval between two armed attempts to dethrone Henry IV.: in 1405 Northumberland's allies were scattered on Shipton Moor, and Richard Scrope, Archbishop of York, was executed as a traitor—an act which struck contemporaries as sacrilege (cf. § 122); in 1408 Northumberland himself was defeated and slain on Bramham Moor. Meanwhile Henry had been successful elsewhere. In 1406 James, son and heir of the second Stuart King of Scots (Table, p. 108), fell into Henry's hands while on his way to France to be educated; and on the death of his father in the same year, his uncle Robert, Earl of Albany, made an arrangement with Henry by which the latter, in

return for keeping the young king out of the way, secured to some extent peace on his northern frontier (§ 239). In 1405 also, Glendower obtained reinforcements from France; but French help was soon withdrawn owing to divisions at home.

**§ 230. The Valois Dukes of Burgundy, 1363-1477.**—The French King Charles VI. became subject to fits of insanity; and his intermittent illness set his relations quarrelling for the control of the kingdom (cf. §§ 247-250). In 1407 these quarrels reached a climax in the murder of the King's brother Louis, Duke of Orleans, by the order of his cousin, John, Duke of Burgundy. After the death of Orleans his party was headed by his father-in-law, Bernard, Count of Armagnac. The consequent wranglings between Burgundians and Armagnacs were closely related to English history during the next thirty years (§§ 235-241). These Dukes of Burgundy, whose political work has powerfully affected the whole course of later European history, belonged to a younger line of the royal house of France, the Valois (Table, p. 190); and they also gathered into their hands most of the duchies, counties, etc., collectively called the Netherlands, which they held as fiefs of the Empire. They therefore acted in various capacities: sometimes they appeared mainly as vassals of the French crown, desirous of taking a leading part in French affairs; sometimes they were bent rather on giving territorial and governmental consistency and independence to their scattered estates; but it was as rulers of the wealthy manufacturing towns of Flanders that they were brought into closest connection with wool-growing England (§§ 177, 198).

**§ 231. Henry IV.'s Last Years, 1409-1413.**—Henry did not take any decided line with regard to the French struggle. He had become worn out with worry and remorse; and during his latter years the direction of affairs passed largely out of his hands. In 1411—when his half-brother, Sir Thomas Beaufort (Table, p. 144), and the Prince of Wales were supreme in the Privy Council, as the working part of the large and unwieldy Ordinary Council now began to be called (cf. § 467)—Henry sided with the Burgundians: in the following year—when Archbishop Arundel (§ 225) had regained chief influence in the Council, and the Prince of Wales had been superseded by his younger brother, Thomas, Duke of Clarence—he sided with the Armagnacs. Henry IV. died in the spring of 1413. The great dream of his life had been to bring to a close the Great Schism in the Papacy (§ 188), and to renew his work as a Crusader at the head of a reunited Christendom.



## CHAPTER XIX.

### LANCASTRIAN FOREIGN POLICY, 1413-1450.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—See Table, p. 144, for family connections of—

(a) **HENRY V.**: born at Monmouth, August 9, 1388<sup>1</sup>; created Prince of Wales, 1400; succeeded his father as King of England, March 21, 1413; crowned, April 16, 1413; married Katharine, daughter of Charles VI., King of France, June 2, 1420 (she afterwards married Owen Tudor, and died in 1438); died at Vincennes, August 31, 1422; buried at Westminster.

(b) **HENRY VI.**: born at Windsor, December 6, 1421; succeeded his father as King of England, September 1, 1422; crowned at Westminster, November 16, 1429; at Paris, December 17, 1431; married Margaret of Anjou (*d.* 1482), April 22, 1445; superseded by Edward of York, March 4, 1461; killed in the Tower (on May 21? 1471) shortly after the death of his only son Edward at Tewkesbury, May 4, 1471; buried first at Chertsey, and afterwards at Windsor.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

Eastern Empire.	Western Empire.	Papacy.	France.	Scotland.
Mannuel II. (1391)	Albert II. (1438) Frederick III. (1440)	Martin V. (1417)	Charles VI. (1380)	James I. (1406)
Joannes VII. (1425)		Eugenius IV. (1431)	Charles VII. (1422-1461)	James II. (1437-1460)
Constantine XIII. (1448-1453)		Nicolas V. (1447-1455)		
<i>End of Eastern Empire as a Christian State.</i>				

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) France: §§ 233-237, 239-244.
- (2) Burgundy: §§ 235, 236, 238, 239, 241.
- (3) Brittany: § 239.
- (4) Empire: §§ 232, 235.
- (5) Papacy: §§ 235, 241.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) Church: § 232.
- (2) Royal Succession: §§ 234, 244.
- (3) Ministers: §§ 238-244.
- (4) Parliament: §§ 232, 238, 242.
- (5) Parties: §§ 238, 239, 242-4.

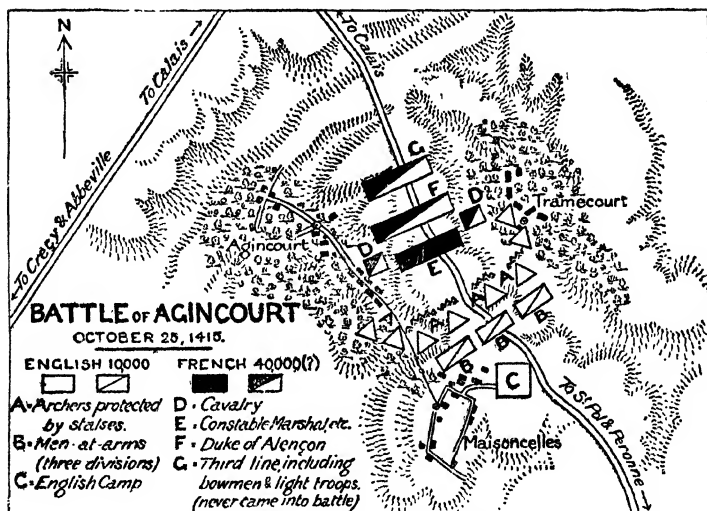
### I. HENRY V.. 1413-1422.

§ 232. **Henry V. and the Lollards, 1413-4.**—Henry V. was at his accession much what his father had been at the same age—vigorous, hard-working, devout, chivalrous, the vivid embodiment of the best qualities of his time. He had great ideas of restoring

the unity of Christendom and turning its combined force against the Turks and other Asiatics who were forcing their way westwards into Europe (§§ 221, 264). Probably his ideas were impracticable; but certainly he had gone a long way towards realizing them when he was cut off—before he had lived half the “threescore years and ten” of man’s life. Nor could he embark on this great enterprise until he had put his own house in order. He tried to conciliate the English parties and to repress the Lollards, whose ideals made not for unity, but for diversity (§ 225). He gave the Great Seal to his uncle, Henry Beaufort, Bishop of Winchester, but at the same time he consoled Archbishop Arundel, who represented a strong family group, for the loss of the Chancellorship by taking energetic measures against the Lollards. He suppressed a Lollard rising in the spring of 1414, and threw the leader, Sir John Oldcastle, sometimes known as Lord Cobham, in right of his wife, into prison. Oldcastle escaped, and was not caught and executed till three years later. In the previous reigns the Lollards had been powerful enough to promote large schemes in Parliament for disendowing the Church; but after 1414, Lollardy, as an organized force in English politics, came to an end. The main effects of the Lollard movements, both here and in Bohemia—whither it spread through the personal influence of Richard II.’s first wife—were to frighten the Clergy as a class, and to drive them to seek the protection of the State against threats of spoliation (§ 261). It is probable, however, that Wyclif’s teaching deeply affected the life and feelings of the middle and lower classes of society long after it had ceased to be prominent in high politics (§ 266).

**§ 233. Henry’s Claim to the French Crown, 1414.**—Henry V. had apparently brought peace and contentment to England; but he felt that beneath the calm surface of society there were elements which needed some sort of outlet for their restlessness. That outlet he found in the active renewal of the slumbering French war. The divided state of France afforded a good opportunity for attack (§ 230); but Henry seems to have quite honestly persuaded himself that Edward III.’s claim to the French crown was valid and had descended to him (Tables, pp. 42, 124). Accordingly, in 1414, he laid formal claim to the French crown, but at the same time he offered to waive his claims in return for the cession of the French dominions of Henry II. (§ 115). On the rejection of these terms, Henry V. continued the preparations for war which he had been making while he was Captain of Calais in his father’s days.

§ 234. **The Campaign of Agincourt, August-October, 1415.**—When Henry was about to embark at Southampton for France, there came to light a plot to place the Earl of March on the throne. The heads of the conspiracy were Lord Scrope, nephew of the Archbishop executed by Henry IV. (§ 229), and Richard, Earl of Cambridge, son of Edward III.'s fifth son, and brother-in-law of the Earl of March (Table, p. 144). These two conspirators were executed; but when March died without issue nine years later, his claims passed to the son of the Earl of Cambridge (§ 245). Having escaped this danger, Henry crossed to Normandy and laid siege to



Harfleur. Though the contending factions in France made no serious attempt to raise the siege, Harfleur held out for six weeks. On its fall in September, Henry resolved to emulate Edward III.'s feat in marching through a hostile country to Calais (§ 201), though his troops had been thinned by disease and by the necessity of leaving a garrison in Harfleur. He was intercepted by a French army three or four times as numerous as his own at Agincourt, near Crécy. There, on S. Crispin's Day (October 25), the English archers, protected by cavalry, mowed down the disorderly crowd of French knights and enabled Henry to gain a complete victory

**§ 235. England and Burgundy, 1416-7.**—The victory at Agincourt lifted Henry V. to the front rank among the princes of Western Christendom, and his friendship was sought with eagerness. In 1416 the Emperor Sigismund visited him in England to urge him to support the efforts being made in the General Council sitting at Constance (1414-1418) to bring to a close the Great Schism in the Papacy (§ 188). In 1417 the Council deposed the three rival claimants to the Papedom, and elected in their stead Martin V., a nominee of the Bishop of London. More important, in its immediate bearing on purely English history, was the alliance, made about the time of the Emperor's visit in 1416, between England and John the Fearless, Duke of Burgundy (§ 230). The renewal of the ties which Henry had formed with Burgundy before he became King (§ 231) was practically a return to the old policy of Edward I. and Edward III. in making alliance with Flanders (§§ 177, 198).

**§ 236. Henry V.'s Second Expedition against France, 1417-1420.**—The alliance with Burgundy stood Henry in good stead during his second expedition against France. During the years 1417-1419 he devoted himself to the thorough conquest of Normandy, and to the establishment of a firm yet sympathetic rule in that province. In January 1419 he completed the conquest by the capture of Rouen, the capital of Normandy. In the following August the murder of Duke John of Burgundy, with the connivance of the Armagnac chiefs, tightened the existing bonds between the Burgundian party and England. The Dauphin—as the heir to the French crown was habitually called—was concerned in the murder; and the Burgundians resolved that he should not succeed his father. They obtained possession of the mad King, and induced him to sign the *Treaty of Troyes*, May 1420 :—

- (1) Henry V. was to marry Charles VI.'s daughter, Katharine.
- (2) Henry V. was to abandon the title "King of France," but was to be Regent during Charles's lifetime, and to succeed him on his death.
- (3) The kingdoms of England and France, when united under one ruler, were to retain their several laws, institutions, and languages.

**§ 237. Henry V.'s Third Expedition against France, 1421-2.**—Henry kept his Christmas in Paris, and then returned with his bride to England. During his absence an Armagnac army, containing a large force of Scots under the Earl of Buchan, defeated and slew the Duke of Clarence at Beaugé in Anjou (March 1421). Henry at once returned to France to avenge his brother, and to secure his hold on the country north of the Loire. This last expedi-

tion was notable for the number of its sieges and for the extensive use of a new weapon of offence—cannon from which projectiles were hurled by the explosive force of gunpowder. After a long campaign Henry suddenly died in August 1422 at Vincennes, near Paris.

## II. HENRY VI.'S YEARS OF PROSPERITY, 1422-1435.

§ 238. **The Government during Henry VI.'s minority.**—Henry V.'s only son Henry, an infant of nine months, was accepted as King both in England and also, when Charles VI. died in October 1422, in the northern parts of France. On his deathbed Henry V. had made provision for the management of affairs during the minority: he had appointed his oldest surviving brother, John, Duke of Bedford, to be Regent in France, his younger brother, Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, to be Regent in England. The English Parliament modified this arrangement on the ground that the King had no legal authority to bind his successors in such a matter (cf. §§ 316, 323): the power assigned to the royal dukes was diminished by changing their title from Regent to Protector, and by requiring them to consult a Council nominated by Parliament; but, on the other hand, greater unity in action was attempted by subordinating Humphrey to his older and steadier brother. The practical result of these changes was that Bedford not only took up the government of France, as Henry V. had intended, but also had to supervise the administration of affairs in England. Bedford's main business was to work smoothly with Philip of Burgundy (Table, p. 190), and to keep the peace among the wrangling parties in the English Council, headed respectively by Gloucester and by Henry Beaufort, Bishop of Winchester (Table, p. 144).

§ 239. **Relations of Bedford and Burgundy, 1422-1428.**—In accordance with the *Treaty of Troyes*, Henry VI. succeeded his maternal grandfather as King of France in October 1422. Naturally enough, Charles VI.'s son did not accept his disinheritance: he took the title of "Charles VII." and was generally recognized south of the Loire. The rival claimants were known, after their respective capitals, as the "King of Paris" and the "King of Bourges." Bedford set himself to secure the universal recognition of his nephew. In 1423 he drew closer the ties between England, on the one hand, and the Dukes of Burgundy and Brittany on the other, by himself marrying Philip's sister Anne, and by arranging a marriage between Anne's sister Margaret and the brother of the Duke of Brittany. This triple alliance was quickly consolidated by two important military

successes: Salisbury's victory at Crevant on the Yonne, July 1423, secured the communication between Paris and the duchy of Burgundy; Bedford's victory at Verneuil in Maine, August 1424, secured the communication between Paris and the duchy of Brittany. In these battles the King of Bourges lost the greater part of his best fighting men—the Scots troops under the Earls of Buchan and Douglas (§ 237); and in 1424 Bedford tried to cut off the possibility of fresh reinforcements by releasing James I. King of Scots on condition that he should do his best to maintain peace between England and Scotland (§ 229). Meanwhile Gloucester had been straining Anglo-Burgundian relations by the same means as Bedford had adopted for union—the way of marriage. Early in 1423 he married Jacqueline of Hainault, and tried to obtain possession of his wife's territories, to which Philip had claims. Bedford, however, induced his brother to desist from pressing his claims, and persuaded the half-estranged Duke of Burgundy to join in a great effort to overcome the King of Bourges. The first step was to capture Charles's last great stronghold on the right bank of the Loire—Orleans.

§ 240. **The Siege of Orleans and Joan Darc, 1428-1431.**—The siege of Orleans proved to be a turning-point in the war. The town was successfully invested, by the last Montacute Earl of Salisbury, in October 1428; and in the following February, Sir John Fastolf defeated an attempt to cut off the food supplies of the besiegers in the "Battle of Herrings," fought at Rouvray. The pleasure-loving King of Bourges and his faction-torn Council made no strenuous effort to relieve the town from the pressure of starvation. Suddenly, help came in a way which cannot be "explained." Joan Darc, a peasant girl of Domremy, in the border duchy of Bar, was convinced that she had been commissioned by God to deliver France from the English. Her strong faith in her calling, her courage, her purity of life, her capacity to detect in others all kinds of deceit and meanness, of which she was herself quite incapable, enabled her to make her way to Charles VII.'s court, to gain his ear, to relieve Orleans in April 1429, to defeat the English in the battle of Patay, and to conduct Charles to be crowned at Rheims in July. The coronation of Charles completed the work for which she believed herself to have divine direction; but she yielded to the request that she should continue her leadership. She was captured at Compiègne, and burnt as a witch at Rouen in May 1431.

§ 241. **The Congress of Arras, and Death of Bedford, 1435.**—Joan Darc had inspired Charles's adherents with courage,

and Henry's adherents with dismay: she had also done much to make both Armagnacs and Burgundians realize that they were Frenchmen, and that the English were foreigners. In France, as in Scotland a century before (§ 176), the growth of the sense of nationality meant the ruin of English projects of dynastic aggrandisement. Bedford attempted to turn back the tide by having his nephew crowned at Westminster in November 1429, and at Paris in December 1431; but the presence of the boy-king had not the magic effect of Charles's coronation at Rheims. Before the end of 1431 Charles's party had overrun Champagne and north-eastern France, and was threatening Normandy itself. In 1432 Bedford lost his wife, and thus the personal tie between him and Burgundy was snapped: in the following year he followed his brother's example in making an impolitic marriage. His second wife, Jacquetta of Luxemburg, was the sister of the Constable of St. Pol, a border-lord who had a hereditary quarrel with the Dukes of Burgundy. In 1435 Pope Martin V. assembled at Arras a great European Congress with a view to a general pacification. Bedford refused the terms offered by Charles VII.—Henry's renunciation of the French crown in return for the cession of Normandy and Guienne—and recalled his envoys from the Congress. In September Bedford died, and Burgundy transferred his allegiance from Henry to Charles.

### III. THE LOSS OF FRANCE, 1435-1450.

§ 242. **Cardinal Beaufort and the Duke of Gloucester, 1435-1442.**—Bedford's death affected English home politics almost as injuriously as it affected the English position in France. He had kept some kind of order between Beaufort and Gloucester: for instance, he had reconciled them in 1426, when their partisans had come armed with bludgeons to the assembly at Coventry, which is therefore known as the "Parliament of Bats." After his death their personal quarrels widened out into a broad political struggle between a war-party and a peace-party. Anger at Burgundy's defection in 1435, and at the loss of Paris in the following year, gave Gloucester the advantage at first. During the years 1436-1439, Henry's successive Lieutenants in France, Richard Plantagenet, Duke of York, and Richard Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, beat off Charles's attacks on Normandy, and secured a truce with Duke Philip (1439). Then Gloucester became discredited by the intrigues of his second wife, Eleanor Cobham; and Beaufort obtained control of the Privy Council. In 1440 he released Charles,

Duke of Orleans, cousin to King Charles VII. (Table, p. 190), who had been a prisoner since Agincourt, in the hope that he would bring about a stable peace. In 1442 Henry came of age and earnestly supported his great-uncle's policy: unfortunately, though amiable and well-meaning, he had no force of character (§ 249).

**§ 243. Truce of Tours and Henry's Marriage, 1444-5.**

—In April 1444 a truce for two years was arranged at Tours by William de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk, a grandson of Richard II.'s favourite and a kinsman of Beaufort. One of the conditions of the truce was that Henry should marry Margaret, daughter of René, Duke of Anjou, and niece of Charles VII.: it was hoped that this marriage would lead to a definite peace. Suffolk became the chief adviser to the young couple, and continued his negotiations, though he foresaw that they would make him unpopular. Gloucester did not mind the marriage, but he disliked Suffolk; and when he was suddenly arrested, during a session of Parliament at Bury St. Edmunds, in February 1447, and died in prison, his death was commonly ascribed to Suffolk's machinations. Six weeks later Beaufort died also; and Suffolk became the chief leader of the peace-party.

**§ 244. Loss of Normandy, 1449-1450.**—A few months after Gloucester's death, Richard, Duke of York, who had again been Governor of Normandy (1440-1447), was superseded by the dead Cardinal's nephew, Edmund, Duke of Somerset, and was transferred to Ireland (§§ 181, 249). York's ability and success as a warrior and ruler made him almost as popular as charm of manner had made "the good Duke Humfrey"; and the unsatisfactory management of affairs after the events of 1447 increased York's and lessened Suffolk's popularity. In 1448 a secret condition of the *Truce of Tours* was fulfilled by the surrender of Anjou and Maine to Margaret's father. The troops set free from garrison duty in the ceded provinces broke loose from Somerset's lax discipline and seized the Breton town of Fougères in March 1449. The raid on Fougères was a breach of the truce; and, as Suffolk would give no reparation, the French resumed their attacks on Normandy. Somerset entirely failed to continue York's successful defence of the duchy: towns yielded with hardly a show of resistance; the English were defeated in a pitched battle at Formigny in May 1450; and in August the capture of Cherbourg completed the French conquest. The cession of Maine and Anjou and the loss of Normandy were imputed to treachery; and the summer of 1450 saw the outbreak of the insurrections which began the Wars of the Roses (ch. xx.).



# The Wars of the Roses.

1450-1499.

NOTE.—Yorkist defeats underlined.

- | EVENTS.  | RESULTS.   |
|--|--|
| 1450. Expulsion of the English from Normandy.  | Murder of Suffolk (May).<br>Cade's Rebellion (May-July).<br><i>Return of York from Ireland, and of Somerset from Normandy.</i> |
| 1451-3. Expulsion of the English from Guienne.   | 1452. York unsuccessfully demands the dismissal of Somerset.   |
| <i>Birth of Prince Edward during Henry VI.'s First Illness, October 1453.</i>                              |  |
| <i>York's First Protectorate: March 1454-January 1455.</i>   |  |
| 1455 <u>St. Albans</u> (First Battle).   | York defeats King Henry: Death of Somerset.  |
| <i>York's Second Protectorate: November 1455-February 1456.</i>  |  |
| 1458. <i>Grand Conciliation on Lady Day.</i>   |  |
| 1459 <u>Bloreheath</u> .   | Salisbury (Y.) defeats Lord Audley.  |
| <i>Followed by the "Revolt of Ludford" and Parliament of Coventry.</i>                                     |  |
| 1460 <u>Northampton</u> (July).  | Warwick captures King Henry.   |
| <i>Richard claims the crown: Parliamentary Compromise.</i>   |  |
| „ <u>Wakefield</u> (December).   | Margaret defeats and slays Richard of York.  |
| 1461. <u>Mortimer's Cross</u> .  | Edward of March defeats Tudors.  |
| „ <u>St. Albans</u> (Second).  | Margaret defeats Warwick and regains Henry.  |
| <i>Edward proclaimed King in London.</i>   |  |
| „ <u>Towton</u> (March 29).  | Edward secures his crown: 30,000 men killed.   |
| 1464. <u>Hedgeley Moor and Hexham</u> .  | Nevilles defeat Margaret and the Percies.  |
| 1464. <i>Edward IV.'s marriage</i> } <i>offend Warwick.</i>  |  |
| 1468. <i>Burgundian Alliance</i> }   |  |
| 1469. <u>Edgecote</u> .  | "Robin of Redesdale" defeats Yorkist troops.   |
| <i>Warwick's Exile and Return: The Lancastrian Restoration.</i>  |  |
| 1471. <u>Barnet</u> (April 14).  | Edward defeats and slays Warwick.  |
| „ <u>Tewkesbury</u> (May 4).   | Edward captures Queen Margaret.  |
| <i>Extinction of the First Family of John of Gaunt.</i>  |  |
| 1485 <u>Bosworth</u> (August 22).  | Henry of Richmond defeats and slays Richard III. Final triumph of the Red Rose.  |
| <i>Union of the Roses by the Marriage of Henry VII. and Elizabeth of York, 1486.</i>                       |  |
| 1487. <u>Stoke-on-Trent</u> .  | Defeat of Lambert Simnel.  |
| 1492-9. PERKIN WARBECK attacks Henry VII. successively from Ireland, France, Flanders, Scotland, Cornwall. |  |

## CHAPTER XX.

### THE STRUGGLE BETWEEN THE ROSES, 1450-1471.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—For Henry VI., see previous chapter: for descent of the Houses of Lancaster and York from Edward III., see Table, p. 144.

**EDWARD IV.**: born at Rouen, April 29, 1441; created Earl of March in consequence of his descent from the Mortimers; on the death of his father, Richard, Duke of York, at Wakefield, December 29, 1460, he advanced from Wales to London and assumed the title of King, March 4, 1461; crowned, June 28, 1461; married Elizabeth Woodville, widow of Sir John Grey (*d.* 1492), May 1, 1464; driven from England, October 1470; returned, March 1471; died at Westminster, April 9, 1483; buried at Windsor.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SCOTLAND.	TURKEY.
Nicolas V. (1447)	Frederick III (1440-1493)	Charles VII. (1422)	James II. (1437)	Muhammad II. (1451-1481)
Calixtus III. (1456)	<i>The remaining</i>			<i>Capture of</i>
Pius II. (1458)	<i>emperors,</i>			<i>Constantinople,</i>
Paul II. (1464-1471)	<i>except one,</i>	Louis XI. (1461-1483)	James III. (1460-1488)	<i>May 29, 1453</i>
	<i>belong to</i>			<i>End of Eastern</i>
	<i>the House of</i>			<i>Empire as a</i>
	<i>Hapsburg</i>			<i>Christian</i>
				<i>State.</i>

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

(i) **International**: *relations with—*

- (1) France: §§ 245, 246, 253-255.
- (2) Burgundy: §§ 254, 255.
- (3) Scotland: § 253.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) Royal Succession: §§ 245, 247, 249, 250, 255.
- (2) Feudalism: §§ 251, 252.
- (3) Parliament: §§ 245, 247, 248, 249, 250.

### I. MINISTERIAL STRUGGLE, 1450-1460.

**§ 245. Suffolk's Murder and Cade's Rising, 1450.**—Before Normandy had been completely lost (§ 244), Henry's ministers had been attacked by the impeachment of Suffolk in February, 1450.

The impeachment was conducted in an irregular way: Suffolk threw himself on the King's mercy; and the King, without going into the charges against him, ordered him to leave the kingdom for five years. While crossing the Channel in May, he was captured by some Kentish sailors and beheaded. Suffolk's murder was immediately followed by a rising in Kent. The grievances alleged by the insurgents were much the same as those alleged by the Commons against Suffolk—incompetence and illegality at home, and treachery abroad: the principal remedy proposed was the substitution of York for Somerset as chief minister. Jack Cade, the leader of the movement, took the name of Mortimer, called himself cousin to the Duke of York, and professed to be acting in his name. He marched to Blackheath, retreated before Henry, defeated the royal force at Sevenoaks, returned to London and obtained admission: when his followers took to plundering they were attacked by the citizens and dispersed. Cade was killed during his flight, and left behind him no proof that York was really implicated. On hearing of these disturbances, both York and Somerset returned to England from their governorships (§ 244). They quarrelled in Parliament, but the King's support gave Somerset the advantage. Henry's fondness for the Beauforts was encouraged by his wife, who was now twenty-one and had become a keen and persistent party-manager. Margaret already suspected York, as she had before suspected Gloucester, of having designs on the crown: it is not known whether there was any solid ground for these suspicions.

§ 246. **Loss of Guienne, 1451–1453.**—Just as England under Henry V. had taken advantage of the divisions in France (§§ 230–236), so now France under Charles VII. took advantage of the factions in England to proceed from the conquest of Normandy (§ 244) to that of Guienne. In 1451 the French occupied Bordeaux and Bayonne; and in the following year York made an abortive attempt to force Henry to dismiss Somerset from office. Towards the end of the year Bordeaux appealed to England for help in throwing off the misrule of the French King (cf. § 177); and help was forthwith sent under the command of John Talbot, Earl of Shrewsbury—one of the most experienced of the English generals. Shrewsbury's defeat and death in the battle of Chastillon, July 1453, resulted in the final expulsion of the English from the dominions of Eleanor of Aquitaine (§ 115). The only French possessions left to England were Calais and the Channel Islands: the former was retained for another hundred years (§ 330)

**§ 247. Henry's Illness and York's First Protectorate, 1453-1455.**—About the time of the fight at Chastillon, Henry VI. fell ill after the manner of his mother's father (§ 230) : that is to say, he lost his wits for about a year and a half (July 1453-January 1455). Three months after he became ill his wife bore him a son, who was named Edward. The birth of this child removed York from the position of first prince of the blood royal and heir presumptive to the crown ; but it did not lessen his immediate importance. In December he procured the arrest of Somerset ; and in the following March the Lords appointed him " Protector and Defender of the Realm and Church of England." York used his term of office to strengthen his own party in the Council : when the death of Cardinal Kemp left both the Primacy and the Chancellorship vacant, he secured the appointment of Thomas Bourchier as Archbishop, and Richard Neville, Earl of Salisbury, as Chancellor. York had married Salisbury's sister, and his chief supporters belonged, either by descent or by marriage, to the younger branch of the rich and prolific family of Neville. This family connection dominated English politics for the next fifteen years ; and the course of the military operations was largely determined by the lie of the estates possessed by the Nevilles and by their relations in blood or marriage.

**§ 248. First Battle of St. Albans, and York's Second Protectorate, 1455-1456.**—In January 1455 the King recovered : he at once released Somerset and dismissed York. Fearing that the Queen would take further measures against him, York summoned his friends—including Salisbury and his wealthier son, Richard, Earl of Warwick—to help him in removing Somerset from the King's side. On May 22, York's force burst into St. Albans, slew Somerset, and obtained possession of the King's person. A Parliament was summoned which threw all the blame of the late quarrels on the dead Somerset, and, when the King again became mad in November, appointed York Protector. On Henry's recovery in February 1456, York was dismissed and retired to his estates, while Warwick went to the post secured for him by his uncle—the Captaincy of Calais. There Warwick devoted himself to clearing the Narrow Seas of pirates, and did much to win for his party the useful reputation of efficiency in government.

**§ 249. The Yorkist Rout at Ludford, September 1459.**—The struggle had now become a mere squabble for office, embittered by bloodshed. Each party suspected the other of ulterior aims : the Queen certainly believed that York would not be content with less

than the crown; and York was probably beginning to think that only its possession could save him from the Queen's enmity. The King's attitude was aptly expressed in his saying that "he was in charity with all men, and he wished his Lords were so too." On Lady Day 1458 he effected a great reconciliation: the Queen and the Duke of York, followed by other pairs, equally incompatible, marched in procession to S. Paul's, and swore to be good and true to one another. Eighteen months later an attempt was made to arrest Salisbury; but he defeated the attempt at Bloreheath, on the high ground between the middle Severn and the Upper Trent (September 1459). Warwick and York came to his assistance; but their forces melted away before a promise of pardon at Ludford, hard by Ludlow. York took refuge in Ireland, where his excellence as governor had made him popular (§ 244): Salisbury and his son went to Calais, which, thanks to Warwick's ability and popularity as Captain (§ 248), they held successfully against all attempts to dislodge them. In their absence a Parliament held at Coventry attainted York and about a score of his adherents, and swore allegiance to the King and faithfulness to his heir, the young Prince of Wales.

## II. BEGINNINGS OF THE DYNASTIC STRUGGLE, 1460-1461

§ 250. **The Battle of Northampton, July 10, 1460.**—At the end of June the Nevilles—with their nephew Edward, Earl of March, York's eldest son—crossed from Calais to Kent, and occupied London. Leaving Salisbury in charge of the capital, Warwick pushed northwards and defeated Henry at Northampton on July 10. The Queen escaped, but Henry fell into the hands of the victors. He was forced to recognize the loyalty of his captors and to summon a Parliament. There York laid formal claim to the crown on the ground that he, and not Henry VI., was the true heir of Edward III. (Table, p. 144). Ultimately he accepted a compromise on the lines of that arranged at Troyes (§ 236): York was to be Regent for Henry VI. during his lifetime, and to succeed him on his death. Henry gave his consent to this compromise at the end of October: his wife refused to agree to her son's disinheritance and raised an army in the North.

§ 251. **Wakefield and Mortimer's Cross, December 1460-February 1461.**—On December 28, Margaret's army defeated the Duke of York at Wakefield; the Duke was slain in the battle, and his head, adorned with a paper crown, was set on one of the gates of

York; and Salisbury was captured and executed at Pontefract. The Queen marched southwards with her victorious army and defeated Warwick at St. Albans (February 17). Warwick withdrew his army in good order and effected a junction with Edward, Earl of March, at Chipping Norton. Edward had meanwhile defeated Owen Tudor, step-father to Henry VI. and grandfather of Henry VII. (Table, p. 144), at Mortimer's Cross in Hereford (February 3). Together Warwick and March advanced on London, which opened its gates to them rather than to Margaret's plundering Northerners. On February 28 Edward entered London, and was informally recognized as King on March 4.

### III. KING AND KING-MAKER, 1461-1471.

§ 252. General Character of the Wars of the Roses, 1450-1461.—Hitherto the battles of the civil war had been mostly fought by the great landowners and their retainers. These retainers did not hold quite the same relation to their lords as the vassals of the better days of Feudalism (§§ 73, 74): they were not only the tenants of a great landowner, but also the smaller landowners in the neighbourhood, who promised to "maintain" his quarrels if he would also "maintain" theirs, and who, as a sign of thankfulness for the great man's protection, wore his badge and "livery." Various statutes had been passed against the practices of Livery and Maintenance from the days of Richard II.; but for the most part these had remained a dead letter (§§ 259, 270). During the later years of Lancastrian rule the central government had lost its power of controlling the great landowners; and they used their retainers like little armies to coerce the King's officers and to make war on their neighbours. The weakness of the State and the consequent insecurity of life and property in the fifteenth century are frequently illustrated in the family correspondence known as the *Paston Letters*. These private wars were due partly to blood-feuds, partly to the desire to "add field to field"; and the civil war was in origin like a number of little private wars blended together into one great duel. The war takes its name from the adoption of the practice of livery and maintenance: those who followed York wore a white rose as a badge; those who followed Lancaster wore a red rose. Early in 1460 this war developed from a struggle for the control of the government into a struggle for the possession of the crown: early in 1461 the conduct of Margaret's troops roused the towns of the East and South to exert themselves to bring to a

close the marchings and countermarchings of the rival baronial hosts. Except on this occasion these civil wars seem to have passed over the heads of the great mass of the people; and it has even been contended that the fifteenth century was "the Golden Age of the English Labourer" (§§ 214-216).

§ 253. **The Battle of Towton, March 29, 1461.**—The result of the intervention of the towns was that Edward IV. and Warwick won a decisive victory at Towton, near Tadcaster, on Palm Sunday, 1461. It was the largest pitched battle of the war: more than 50,000 are said to have been engaged on each side; and 30,000 Lancastrians fell on the field or in their flight. Edward returned to London to be crowned, to hold a Parliament for the purpose of attainting the adherents of the House of Lancaster, and to enjoy himself after his hard work. Meanwhile the completion of the conquest of the North was left in the hands of Warwick's brother John, Lord Montague. Margaret sought help from Scotland and France, in return for the cession of Berwick and for the promise of Calais. But Warwick's guardianship of the Channel made help from France difficult; and the Scots were distracted by aristocratic factions. In April and May 1464 Margaret's forces were destroyed at Hedgeley Moor and Hexham. Margaret herself escaped to France, but in the following year her husband was captured in Ribblesdale and lodged in the Tower.

§ 254. **The Quarrel between Warwick and Edward IV., 1464-1470.**—In 1465 Edward made a truce with France and Scotland; and Warwick was anxious to convert this truce into a close alliance. But Edward wished to be independent of the masterful cousin who had set him on the throne; and he also believed that he would please the commercial classes more by a Burgundian than by a French alliance (§ 230). In 1464 Warwick was negotiating a marriage for Edward with a French princess, when Edward informed him that he already had a wife. Edward's choice had fallen on Elizabeth Woodville, widow of Sir John Grey of Groby, and daughter of Bedford's widow, Jacquetta of Luxemburg, by her second husband. Edward not only married a pretty Lancastrian in preference to the foreign princess selected by Warwick, but he also loaded his wife's relations with favours, and showed every desire to build up a great Woodville family connection strong enough to balance the Nevilles. In 1468 Edward again disregarded Warwick's advice by marrying his sister Margaret to Charles the Rash, the new Duke of Burgundy (Table, p. 190). Warwick retorted by forming

an alliance with Edward's younger brother, George, Duke of Clarence (Table, p. 169), and by stirring up fresh strife. The rising of Robin of Redesdale in July 1469 resulted in the battle of Edgecote, which placed Edward in Warwick's power for a few weeks. In the following March another rising broke out in Lincolnshire; but Edward defeated the insurgents at Empingham in the battle of "Losecoat Field," and then found evidence that Warwick and Clarence were conspiring against him. He tried to arrest them, but they escaped over-sea.

§ 255. **The Lancastrian Restoration, 1470-1.**—Warwick, like Queen Margaret, took refuge with Louis XI.; and that astute king took some pains to reconcile the two old enemies on the understanding that the House of Lancaster, when restored, should help him in his struggle with Burgundy. In accordance with this *Pact of Amboise*, Warwick landed at Dartmouth in September 1470, and with the help of Lord Montague and other Neville connections expelled Edward in less than a month. Henry VI. was restored for five months, and Warwick again proved himself a "King-Maker." The revolution, being based on a system of family compromises, was for the most part conciliatory; but some of the more ruthless of the Yorkist partisans were sacrificed to the Lancastrian party. Among these was John Tiptoft, Earl of Worcester, one of the promoters of the New Learning (§ 264), who was condemned and executed for various illegalities and cruelties in the discharge of his judicial duties as Lord High Constable. In March 1471 Edward, equipped with ships and a small force of men by his brother-in-law of Burgundy, landed at Ravenspur in Yorkshire, and marched southwards. He was joined by Clarence, who had followed Warwick in the hopes of supplanting his brother, and whose chances of the crown were diminished rather than increased by the Lancastrian Restoration. He was received into London, and marching thence, defeated and slew Warwick at Barnet on Easter Day (April 14). On the same day Margaret and her son landed at Weymouth, and pushed northwards to rally the Lancastrians of the North to her side. She was defeated, and her son was killed, at Tewkesbury on May 4. Less than three weeks later the male line of the first family of John, Duke of Lancaster, was extinguished by the murder of Henry VI. in the Tower. The deaths of both Henry VI. and his son were widely ascribed to Edward IV.'s brothers, Clarence and Gloucester; this belief was encouraged by the Tudors, and was adopted in the cycle of historical plays dealing with the fifteenth century which were edited by the Elizabethan dramatist, William Shakspeare (§ 331).



## CHAPTER XXI.

### THE HOUSE OF YORK IN POSSESSION, 1471-1485.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—For Edward IV., see previous chapter: for family connections of the House of York, see Table, p. 144.

(a) **EDWARD V.:** born in the Sanctuary of Westminster during the exile of his father, Edward IV., November 4, 1470; created Prince of Wales, 1479; proclaimed King on Edward IV.'s death, April 9, 1483; reign reckoned to last, April 9—June 25, 1483; probably murdered in the Tower along with his brother Richard, Duke of York; bodies supposed to be theirs discovered in 1674, and buried at Westminster.

(b) **RICHARD III., Crookback:** born at Fotheringay, Northants, October 2, 1452; created Duke of Gloucester and Lord High Admiral, 1461; shared the exile of his brother, Edward IV., 1470-1; appointed Protector of the Realm for Edward V., May 4, 1483; supplanted his nephew, June 26, 1483; married Anne Neville (*d.* 1485), younger daughter of the King-maker, 1474; crowned, July 6, 1483; killed in the battle of Bosworth, August 22, 1485; buried at Leicester.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	SCOTLAND.	TURKEY.
<b>Sixtus IV.</b> (1471)	<b>Frederick III.</b> (1440-1493)	<b>Louis XI.</b> (1461)	<i>Personal Union</i> (1479) of— (1) <i>Castile:</i> Isabella (1479-1504) (2) <i>Aragon:</i> Ferdinand (1474-1516)	<b>James III.</b> (1460-1488)	<b>Muhammad II.</b> (1451)
<b>Innocent VIII.</b> (1484-1492)		<b>Charles VIII.</b> (1483-1498)			<b>Bajazet II.</b> (1481-1512)

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) France: §§ 256, 257, 260.
- (2) Burgundy: § 256.
- (3) Scotland: § 257.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) Royal Succession: §§ 256, 258, 259.
- (2) Parliament: §§ 257, 259.
- (3) Taxation: § 257.

**§ 256. Treaty of Pecquigny, August 29, 1475.**—Edward IV. occupied a very different position after his restoration from that which he held before. His own position on the throne had been

secured by the removal of his dynastic rivals and over-powerful supporters: the succession seemed to have been secured by the birth of a son to Queen Elizabeth during her husband's exile. The last of the Beauforts in the male line had also perished during the summer of 1471 (Table, p. 144); and it did not seem very important that Edward was unable to obtain possession of the nearest representative of the Beauforts—Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond (§§ 259, 267). Thus secure on his throne, Edward naturally turned to projects of aggression. In 1474 he revived the claim of Edward III. to the French throne, and renewed the old Anglo-Burgundian project for a partition of France (§§ 230, 236). In the following year he landed at Calais and marched towards Paris. But Charles of Burgundy—being engaged elsewhere in those schemes against Switzerland which led to his death in 1477—did not fulfil his promise of co-operation; and after a brief campaign Edward came to terms with Louis XI. By the *Treaty of Pecquigny* Edward abandoned his claims for a lump sum down, an annual pension, and the betrothal of his daughter Elizabeth to the Dauphin. It is a strong testimony to the rigour of Edward's rule that this poor bargain caused no such national risings as had been provoked by the loss of Normandy twenty-five years before (§§ 244-5).

§ 257. **Edward IV.'s Home Policy, 1471-1483.**—The key-note of Edward's home policy was given in his orders at Barnet "to kill the Lords, but spare the Commons." He aimed at weakening the great lords in numbers and in power, while he favoured the humbler folk who wanted peace and quiet. He encouraged commerce and himself made money by sharing in mercantile enterprises; and he gave his patronage to William Caxton, who in 1477 introduced the new art of printing into England, setting up his press within the precincts of the sanctuary at Westminster (§ 264). But while Edward gave the middle-class the firm and orderly government which they wanted, he did not follow the Lancastrian example of taking them into partnership in the work of government (§ 226). During the fourteen years following his restoration he summoned but two Parliaments; and when he wanted money in addition to that which he derived from the parliamentary life-grants and the forfeiture of estates, he had recourse to arbitrary levies which were called by the pleasant name of *Benevolences*—compulsory free-will offerings to the King. The principal incident which stands out in the peaceful years that followed the expedition to France, was the arrest and disappearance of the Duke of Clarence

in 1478. Clarence had married one of the King-maker's daughters in 1469; his younger brother Richard, Duke of Gloucester, married the other daughter after the battles of 1471; a quarrel broke out between them concerning the division of the Warwick estates; Edward's decision in favour of Gloucester made Clarence disaffected; and so in 1478 Edward had Clarence declared guilty of treason and put to death in the Tower. Gloucester, on the other hand, had been faithful to him, in the troubles of 1470-1, and was rewarded with the guardianship of the Scottish Borders. Gloucester ruled well in the North, and was about to be employed in chastising Louis XI. for breaking off the betrothal arranged at Pecquigny when Edward IV. suddenly died in April 1483.

§ 258. **The Reign of Edward V., April-June, 1483.**—Edward's death was the signal for an outburst of rivalry between the Woodvilles and Gloucester for the guardianship of the late King's thirteen-year-old son. Gloucester obtained possession of Edward V. on his way up from Ludlow to London, and was appointed Protector by the Council about a month after Edward IV.'s death. The ease with which he defeated the Woodvilles, his evident popularity, and the obvious disadvantages of a minority seem to have led him to aspire to the crown itself (cf. § 211). In this project he secured the aid of Henry, Duke of Buckingham, a descendant of Edward III.'s son, Thomas of Gloucester (Table, p. 144). They got rid of Lord Hastings, the most able man in the Council who was known to be loyal to the young King, and they spread about stories that Edward IV.'s children were illegitimate owing to some informality in his marriage with Elizabeth. Buckingham persuaded a number of representative men—including the Corporation of London and many Lords resident in London—to offer Richard the crown; and Richard accepted the offer on June 25.

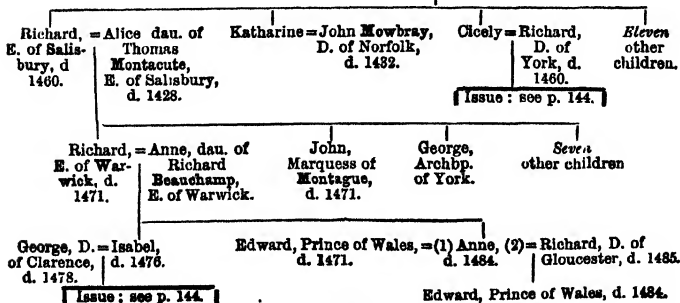
§ 259. **Richard III.'s Difficulties, 1483-1485.**—A few months after Richard's quiet accession rumours spread abroad that he had had his nephews murdered in the Tower (cf. §§ 186, 224). Whether this story was true or not, it ruined his early popularity and gave his many enemies an effective handle against him. Among these enemies, John Morton, Bishop of Ely, a Lancastrian who had conformed to Yorkist rule after Tewkesbury, took the lead; and his plans were those of Warwick in 1469—a coalition of the Lancastrian party with the Yorkist malcontents (§§ 254, 255). Henry VI.'s half-brother's son, Henry Tudor, was the chosen substitute for "Richard Crookback." Morton's first attempt failed.

In October 1483 Buckingham deserted Richard and made insurrection for Henry; but he was captured and executed at Salisbury. Richard tried to induce the Duke of Brittany to deliver Henry into his hands, and in 1484 he sought to regain his popularity by passing through Parliament much useful legislation—*e. g.* against Benevolences, Maintenance, and Livery. His efforts were untiring and ingenious, but fruitless; and his disappointment was increased by the successive deaths of his son Edward, Prince of Wales, and of the boy's mother, Anne Neville.

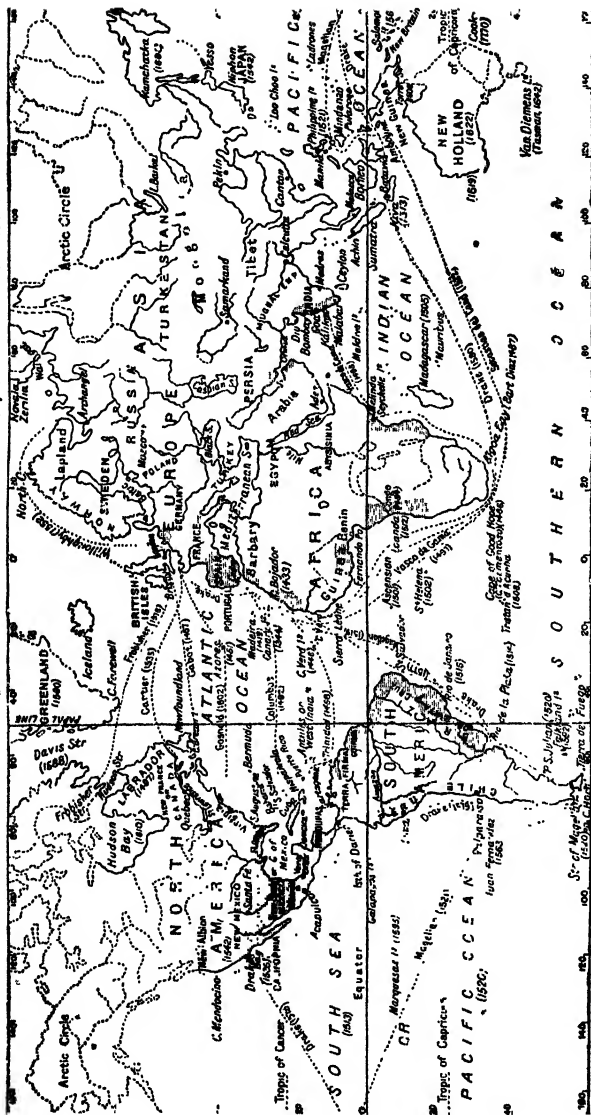
§ 260. **The Battle of Bosworth, August 22, 1485.**—Meanwhile Henry and his friends—whether living in exile or in pretended allegiance to Richard III.—had been making steady progress with their preparations. Their most zealous worker in England was Henry's mother, Margaret Beaufort, who was now married to her fourth husband, Thomas, Lord Stanley, afterwards Earl of Derby. The Lady Margaret won over the heads of the clergy and persuaded Queen Elizabeth, Edward's widow, to assent to the marriage of her eldest daughter, Elizabeth, to the Lancastrian claimant. Henry obtained troops and ships from the French King; he landed at Milford Haven early in August 1485; on his march through Wales he was joined by numbers of his Welsh fellow-countrymen (Table, p. 144); and when he met Richard at Bosworth near Leicester, he was joined on the battle-field by the Stanleys and other adherents of the King. There Richard fought and died bravely; and his crown, picked from a hawthorn bush, was placed on the head of the victor.

## The House of Reville.

Margaret Stafford = (1) Ralf Neville, (2) = Joan Beaufort,  
 | E. of Westmorland, | dau. of John of Gaunt.  
 Nine children, d. 1425.



# CHIEF VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES, 1400-1700 A.D.



**DIRECTIONS.**—The chief voyages are shown roughly by dotted lines. The names of navigators are printed in *letters sloping backwards*. The dates are of *first discoveries*, except where otherwise indicated. Coastlines and rivers shown dotted were unknown to Europeans at the end of the seventeenth century. Philip II.'s dominions (Spanish and Portuguese) are shaded.

## BOOK VI.

### *THE TUDOR PERIOD, 1485-1603.*

#### INTRODUCTION.

§ 261. **Retrospect, 1327-1485.**—The hundred and sixty years covered by our fifth book were marked by perpetual unrest. Not one of the seven kings descended from Edward III. had an undisputed title to the crown; the Baronage and great landholders took advantage of the weakness of their sovereign lords to fight out their family quarrels, or to seize the property of their smaller neighbours; the Clergy had been so frightened by projects of reform which threatened their interests that they had fallen out of touch with their flocks; and among the Commonalty the preference of the majority for peace and quiet was gradually making itself felt above the unruly spirits who enjoyed and profited by civil disturbance. The great mass of fairly well-to-do people in town and country, constituting the middle-class, had been unable to secure the sort of government that they desired by means of their representatives in the House of Commons; and they were ready to accept any rule which should give them adequate protection at home and abroad without exacting excessive taxation in return (cf. §§ 192, 193).

§ 262. **Forecast, 1485-1603.**—This need of the English people for a strong and sensible government was met by the Tudor dynasty. There were five monarchs of the line, covering a span of one hundred and eighteen years; and the three of these whose reigns occupied nine-tenths of their period were well suited to the wants of the times and to the prejudices of their subjects. They established a strong monarchy by forcing the Baronage and the Clergy to bow to their will, and by conciliating the great mass of the people; and they were thus able to present a tolerably united front to their foreign neighbours, and in the long run to vindicate the complete independence of England against all assailants. The enduring interest of the Tudor period lies in the objects, methods, and results—the last often

quite different from those aimed at—of Tudor policy ; and these will form the main topics, the chief things to keep in view, throughout the following six chapters. There we shall see how our national story was affected, not only by the keen personal tempers of these five monarchs, and by the native facts of English soil and blood, but also by some general facts which changed the face of Europe.

§ 263. **The New Monarchy in Europe.**—The first of these changes was the rise of strongly centralized governments in the countries with which England was most closely concerned. For some centuries the kings in Western Europe had differed chiefly in dignity and prestige from the great nobles who were their vassals: in actual power they had often been equalled if not excelled. But during the latter half of the fifteenth century Louis XI. built up a strong monarchy in France, by bringing the great fiefs under the direct rule of the crown, while Ferdinand of Aragon and Isabella of Castile not only united their kingdoms by marriage, but also extended and organized their dominions in such a way as to lay the foundations of the powerful kingdom of Spain. In each case the strength of the kingship lay largely in the acquisition of an effective control over the national church, and in dominating the nobility by the maintenance of a standing army backed by the new military weapon—artillery. If a “new monarchy,” similar in main outlines, had not arisen in England, that country must inevitably have fallen under the sway of one or other of these formidable neighbours, and become, as in the tenth and eleventh centuries, the dependency of a Continental Power (§§ 70, 115). For lack of such a strong monarchy Italy and the Netherlands became the prey of foreigners ; and during the sixteenth century there was continually recurring the strong probability of a like fate for England. The most critical moment was in the middle of the century, when the marriage of the first Queen Regnant of England made the country a dependency of the House of Hapsburg (§ 327). Mary’s speedy death without heirs made the Anglo-Spanish connection short-lived ; but the fact of its existence vitally affected the policy and position of England for the rest of the century. Philip II. was always hoping, some time and somehow, to regain control of the island kingdom (ch. xxvii.). But on the whole the Tudors were able to keep England free from foreign entanglements and foreign domination. In the early Roman Republic, during times of great external peril, “dictators” were instituted with exceptional powers ; and by analogy with the

position of these old Roman officials the Tudor monarchy has been called a dictatorship.

§ 264. **The Renaissance : (i) Intellectual.**—The second change was intimately connected with this political transformation of Western Europe, but it was concerned with a wider and deeper range of facts than those of mere politics. It is called "the Renaissance," or "new birth," because it changed the life, thought, ideas, not merely of the rulers but also of the ruled in Western Europe, so much so that its inhabitants seem not to have simply altered this or that habit, but to have been born again—to have become something entirely different from what they were before. Such vast changes take time and cannot be precisely dated ; but the particular one before us turned on events that took place during the fifteenth century. The increasing pressure of the Ottoman Turks on the Eastern Roman Empire, culminating in their storming of its capital, Constantinople, in 1453, brought about more frequent intercourse between the "Greeks" and the "Latins"; and, especially after 1453, many scholars to whom Greek was a living language were driven to take refuge in the West. The works and ways of thought of the old Greek writers were thus revealed to the learned men of the West, who for the most part had been ignorant of Greek during the last ten centuries. The new literature affected their minds much as a first day in the country affects a child accustomed to the endless streets and alleys of a great city: it was a "revelation," and they felt obliged to adapt their traditional view of things to make room for the new ideas. But this "renaissance" would have affected only a handful of leisured scholars, or would have spread beyond that circle so slowly as to be imperceptible, had it not been accompanied by inventions of a mechanical kind. In the fourteenth century the art of making paper had been discovered, and about the time of the fall of Constantinople the art of printing from movable types was brought to a practical stage. It was not till printing on paper was substituted for the costlier process of manual copying on parchment that the cheap and rapid dissemination of ideas became possible ; and both discoveries gave a great impulse to the national literatures that were growing up (§ 331). The Renaissance affected the arts of sculpture, painting, music, architecture—these were the days of Raphael and Michael Angelo ; but in England its most notable influence was in the fields of learning and literature.

§ 265. **The Renaissance : (ii) Geographical.**—Alongside of these artistic movements there was going on a series of geographical



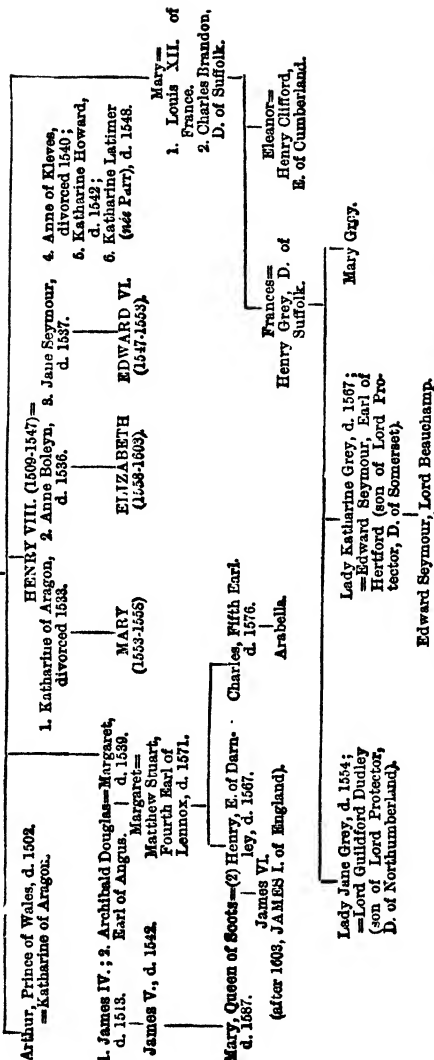
discoveries which completely upset the popular notions about the size and shape of the earth. At the beginning of the fifteenth century the only parts of the earth well known to Europeans were their own continent and the coasts of the Mediterranean ; the bulk of Asia was known only by the stories of rare travellers ; the size of Africa and the existence of America were unsuspected. The Crusaders had familiarized Western Europe with the fact that the East, vaguely called "India and Cathay," was full of things which made life more comfortable ; and the trading cities of Italy, Venice, Genoa, etc., had grown rich by buying the good things of the East from their Persian and Arab partners on the shores of the Levant and Black Sea, and distributing them throughout central Europe. Partly out of a desire to share this lucrative traffic, partly from a wish to evangelize the heathen, other nations tried to discover different routes to the East ; and in 1498 the Portuguese navigator, Vasco da Gama, reached the coast of India by way of the Cape of Good Hope. Meanwhile Christopher Columbus, a Genoese sailor in the service of Isabella of Castile, believing the earth to be spherical, had tried to reach the Indies by sailing westwards, and in so doing had in 1492 come upon the islands still known as the West Indies. Columbus had failed in the main object of his voyage—the discovery of a practical route to the East ; but his voyage soon led to the discovery of the American continents—the northern by John Cabot in 1497 (§§ 280, 331), the southern by Alvarez Cabral, a Portuguese, in 1500. One short decade of geographical discoveries thus doubled the size of the world as known to Europe, and gave the kingdoms of Castile and Portugal a leading position in the enlarged world.

**§ 266. The Reformation.**—The various movements outlined in the last three sections had their several developments which we shall touch upon in the course of the narrative ; and each influenced the movement which forms the chief fact in the history of the sixteenth century and which is called the Reformation. The principal professed object of the Reformation was the improvement of the Church. That is a common object of earnest men of all creeds and of all ages ; but in the sixteenth century there was made an unusually large number of vigorous attempts, which for various reasons caused a great stir. In order to understand this, it is necessary to realize that in Western Europe "the Church" was the collective name for the whole body of baptized inhabitants (i. e. practically the entire population, save Jews) ; and that this body was bound together by the profession of the same religious beliefs, by participation in similar

religious ceremonies, and by subjection to the authority of religious officials ranging from the parish-priest up to the Bishop of Rome. But the members of the Church belonged to various races and countries, differed in temperament and occupation, and were influenced by interests that often were, or seemed to be, incompatible with the religion which was professedly their first care; and during the fifteenth century these differences tended to become more prominent than the tie of fellowship in a single church. The attempts to reorganize the Church after the Great Schism (§ 188) by means of General Councils, and the attempts to rally the Christians of the West to make common cause against the advancing Turk, both alike failed because men were absorbed in their own personal, class, or political interests. The growth of compact states, the outburst of new ideas, and the discovery of new lands (§§ 263-265) brought in their train an increased desire to adapt the Church to the new conditions, and at the same time made the sixteenth-century attempts to reform the Church less conservative, less tender of traditions, more impatient of obstacles than those of the previous age. Single-minded attempts to make men better became intermingled with the jealousies of clergy and laity, of German and Latin peoples, of Pope and King; and the result was that the single loosely organized Church in the West broke up into a multitude of churches, each claiming to be a "true church," and each, for the most part, refusing to recognize its neighbour. Some of these churches remained in communion with Rome, and some separated from it and became known by the general name of *Protestant*: in either case, they each strove to obtain the mastery of the secular authorities in their several regions. The processes and the results of the ecclesiastical revolution varied infinitely in different lands; but its main tendency was to reveal, intensify, and increase the racial, intellectual, social, and political divisions of Western Europe that had heretofore been partly concealed by a common and mutually recognized Catholicism. The great religious reformers of the day—such as Martin Luther, the German of Saxony, John Calvin, the Frenchman of Geneva, and Ignatius Loyola, the Spanish Jesuit—each in his own way influenced England; but on the whole the English Reformation retained an insular distinction of its own. It produced several notable ecclesiastical statesmen but not a single great religious reformer; it was far more a political than a religious affair; it was controlled by, and made to promote the interests of, the Tudor Kingship.

# The House of Tudor.

HENRY VII. (1485-1509).



Note.—English sovereigns in capitals (the dates within brackets denoting the period of their reigns); Scots sovereigns in dark type.

## CHAPTER XXII.

### HENRY VII., 1485-1509.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Born at Pembroke, January 28, 1457; assumed the crown of England, August 22, 1485; crowned King, October 30, 1485; married to Elizabeth (*d.* 1503), daughter of Edward IV., January 18, 1486; died at Richmond, Surrey, April 21, 1509; buried in Westminster Abbey. For his parents and descendants, see Tables, pp. 144, 176.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	SCOTLAND.	TURKEY.
Innocent VIII. (1484)	Frederick III. (1440)	Charles VIII. (1483)	Ferdinand and Isabella (1479)	James III. (1460)	Bajazet II. (1481-1512)
Alexander VI. (1492)	Maximilian I. (1493)	Louis XII. (1498)	Philip I., <i>Castile</i> (1501-1506)	James IV. (1488)	
Pius III. (1503)					
Julius II. (1503)					

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

**(i) International: relations with—**

- (1) France: §§ 271, 272.
- (2) Spain: §§ 268, 271, 278.
- (3) Scotland: §§ 275-278.
- (4) Flanders: §§ 268, 269, 272, 273, 275, 279.
- (5) The Empire: § 271.

**(ii) Constitutional.**

- (1) Title and Daughters: §§ 267, 268.
- (2) Rivals: §§ 268, 269, 272, 273, 275, 277.
- (3) Home Policy: §§ 270, 280.
- (4) Taxation: §§ 272, 276, 280.
- (5) Ireland: §§ 269, 272, 274.

### I. THE PERIOD OF INSTABILITY, 1485-1497.

§ 267. **Henry's Title and Coronation, 1485-6.**—Henry VII. formally claimed the crown of England by virtue of descent, and by the "true judgment of God" in giving him the victory. As a matter of fact he always dated his reign from the day before the battle of Bosworth (*i. e.* from August 21); he was not crowned till the end of October; and it was not till November that Parliament, without entering into the grounds of its action, declared the crown to rest in

him and his heirs. Parliament also removed the attainders on his friends, attainted his enemies, and gave him a considerable revenue for life ; and during its Christmas recess Henry fulfilled his engagement to marry Elizabeth of York (§ 260). His conduct was designed to show clearly that he owed his crown neither to Parliament nor to his wife, while at the same time he secured himself in possession by their support.

**§ 268. Henry's Position, and its Perils, 1485-1497.**—Henry's father had been the step-brother and intimate friend of Henry VI.: his mother, Margaret Beaufort, represented a younger branch of the House of Lancaster (Table, p. 144). Though technical doubts hung round the statutory legitimization of the Beauforts in Richard II.'s reign, no partisan of Lancaster was likely to raise against Henry the formally better claims of the descendants of John of Gaunt's second marriage—who were Spaniards and foreigners (Table, p. 190). Henry was the nearest available representative of the House of Lancaster: whatever the flaws in his title, he was safe enough so far as that party was concerned. But by insisting on his Lancastrian title, Henry exposed himself to Yorkist attack until he could prove that he had the strength to hold his own, and the common-sense to rule impartially. The very ease with which he had won the crown encouraged dynastic adventurers to emulate him ; and the first twelve years of his reign were occupied by almost continuous movements in favour of Yorkist rivals. Assuming the two sons of Edward IV. to be dead (§ 259), the next representative of the House of York was Edward, Earl of Warwick, only son to the Duke of Clarence (Table, p. 144). Henry VII. took the precaution of keeping Warwick in the Tower, while another possible Yorkist claimant—John, Earl of Lincoln, whom Richard III. had named heir (§ 259)—was allowed to remain at liberty. Neither was very formidable without the support of his aunt, Margaret, Duchess Dowager of Burgundy (§§ 254, 269, 273, 279).

**§ 269. The Earl of Lincoln and Lambert Simnel, 1487.**—During Henry's progress through the kingdom there was, about Easter 1486, an abortive rising under Richard's friend, Lord Lovell ; but the first serious attempt to oust Henry VII. was made by John, Earl of Lincoln. Lincoln, however, did not appear as a principal, but contented himself with aiding an effort made in behalf of the Earl of Warwick. Early in 1487 there appeared in Dublin a young man whose real name was Lambert Simnel, the son of an Oxford organ-builder, but who claimed to be the Earl of Warwick. The

pretender or his advisers chose Ireland for the starting-place because Ireland had long been connected with the House of York: Lionel, Duke of Clarence, had married an Irish heiress and had had a distinguished career as Lord-Lieutenant, and in more recent times Richard, Duke of York, had proved a capable and popular administrator in Ireland (§§ 207, 244). Simnel was accepted and crowned as King "Edward VI.," by the Fitz-Geralds and other Anglo-Irish notables of the Pale\* (§ 184). He then crossed over to Lancashire with a body of Irish troops, and a small force of professional soldiers brought over from Flanders by the Earl of Lincoln, and led by Martin Swartz. The invaders marched into the Midlands, but did not attract many English adherents; and on June 16 they were overthrown at Stoke on the Trent—sometimes called East Stoke to distinguish it from Stoke-upon-Trent in Staffordshire. Lincoln fell on the field, Lovell disappeared, and Simnel was given a post in the kitchen of the King. Henry VII. deliberately sought to end the rancorous bloodshed of recent years by a policy of clemency.

**§ 270. The Court of Star Chamber, 1487.**—After the battle of Stoke, Henry VII. felt strong enough to show, more distinctly than he had hitherto ventured to do, that he had no intention of sinking to be the mere tool of the noble factions who had momentarily agreed in setting him on the throne, and who might reasonably be expected to unite in displacing him if he gave signs of being independent. Now that he could be gracious without the imputation of fear, he had his wife crowned in state, and thus sought to bind the loyalty of the Yorkists to his and her son Arthur (§ 278). In the Parliament sitting at the time of this coronation, Henry passed an Act constituting a special court to prevent and punish those kinds of offences against public order which were most practised by large landowners, especially "maintenance" and "livery" (§ 252). Such offenders were, as a rule, so powerful in their own neighbourhood that they could overawe local courts and local juries: the new court therefore was central, was composed of seven prominent officials including the Chancellor and the Treasurer, and required no jury. Practically the court thus constituted had the kind of jurisdiction long exercised by the Privy Council; and it soon came to bear the same name as the Privy Council had borne in its judicial capacity (derived probably from the decorations of the room in Westminster Palace where it sat)—"Court of Star Chamber." In setting up

\* This was the name given in the fifteenth century to the region round Dublin to which English rule had gradually become restricted.

the court by statute rather than by prerogative, Henry was only doing what the Tudors were so often to do—viz. using Parliament in order to give his wishes the appearance of general approval by all classes (§§ 291, 347).

§ 271. **The Affairs of Brittany, 1488-1492.**—In the five years that followed the battle of Stoke foreign affairs engaged a large measure of Henry's attention. During his exile he had had close relations both with the King of France and with the King's vassal, the Duke of Brittany: each had helped Henry as a person who might be of use some day. The Duke was growing old, and, having no sons, was anxious about the future of his territory; the King was hoping to incorporate the duchy with the kingdom of France, as so many fiefs had been incorporated during the century (§ 263); and both appealed to England. The further consolidation of France was contrary to the interests of Henry and of his chief contemporaries—Ferdinand and Isabella, who jointly ruled Aragon and Castile, and Maximilian, Archduke of Austria, who claimed the regency of the Netherlands as being the father of the heir of the Valois dukes of Burgundy (Table, p. 190). There was much talk among these rulers, and many treaties for common action against France; but it was not till long after Charles VIII. of France had settled the question by marrying Anne, the orphaned heiress of Brittany, that Henry made war outright against France. A month's campaign between Calais and Boulogne was closed by the *Treaty of Estaples* (November 3, 1492). Like Edward IV. in 1474 (§ 256), Henry VII. had revived his claims to the kingdom of France, and now agreed to drop their active prosecution in return for a money payment.

§ 272. **Appearance of Perkin Warbeck, 1491-2.**—One of the conditions of the Anglo-French treaty was that each party should cease harbouring or aiding rebels against the other; and in accordance therewith Charles turned adrift a new Yorkist pretender who had made his appearance about a twelvemonth previously. This was Peter—commonly known as Peterkin or Perkin—Warbeck, the son of a Flemish boatman of Tournay. The frequency since Stokefield (§ 269) of Yorkist plots and risings against war-taxes—especially a heavy *benevolence* levied in 1491—betokened the existence of considerable discontent in England; and this discontent encouraged the hopes of dynastic adventurers. Accordingly Warbeck was easily persuaded by the men of Cork to personate Richard, the younger son of Edward IV. (§ 259). Not being very well received in Ireland, he gladly accepted an invitation to the Court of France; and after the

*Treaty of Estaples*, he made his way north to Flanders, where his "aunt" Margaret had a certain amount of influence.

§ 273. **Perkin Warbeck in Flanders, 1493-1495.**—Flanders and England were still as dependent as ever on each other for commercial prosperity (§§ 177, 198, 230); but commercial considerations were liable to be sacrificed to the dynastic interests of their rulers. Flanders, like the rest of the Netherlandish possessions of the ducal house of Burgundy, owned the sway of the representative of that house, Philip, Archduke of Austria (Table, p. 190). At the time of Warbeck's advent, Philip was still a minor; and, in the absence of his father, Maximilian, his dominions were largely controlled by his mother's step-mother, Margaret of York (§ 254). She now welcomed Warbeck as her real nephew, and called him "the White Rose of England." In 1493 Henry retorted by forbidding his subjects to hold commercial intercourse with the Flemings; and though he thereby caused some inconvenience to his own people, he caused more to the Flemings (§ 279). At the end of the following year he suppressed an extensive Yorkist plot, and brought to the block its chief participator, Sir William Stanley, who had placed the crown on his head at Bosworth. The *Statute of the de Facto King*, passed in 1495, was an endeavour to give legal security to persons wavering in their allegiance: it provided that obedience to the actual, or *de facto*, King for the time being should not afterwards be considered treason against a successful rival, claiming to be the rightful, or *de jure*, King. Henry VII. also exposed Warbeck's pretensions by publishing, for the first time, the confessions of the murderers of the two sons of Edward IV., and conferred the title assumed by Warbeck—Duke of York—upon his own son Henry, afterwards Henry VIII.

§ 274. **Ireland and Poynings' Law, 1495.**—In the autumn of 1494 young Henry was created Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland; and Henry VII. appointed one of his most active officials, Sir Edward Poynings, to act as his son's first Lord-Deputy. Poynings made the King's power felt over a large part of the island—not only within the limits of the Pale, but also among the Hiberniander and Irish chiefs of Leinster and Munster. He arrested and sent over to England the Earl of Kildare, the late Deputy, who had supported Simnel and had intrigued with Warbeck. He made military demonstrations which gave an appearance of strength to the royal power. Above all, at the turn of the year 1494-5, he assembled a Parliament which passed the notable *Statute of Drogheda*. Part of this consisted of a re-enactment of the *Statute of Kilkenny* of 1366 (§ 207)



and other Acts restraining the tendency of the Hibernianders to adopt the language, dress, and customs of the native Irish. The more important part—usually known as "*Poyning's Law*"—aimed at the legal subordination of the Irish to the English home government: English Law as it stood was adopted in bulk for Ireland; and no Irish Parliament was to be held, or to entertain any business, without the previous sanction of the English Privy Council. Having thus overawed those parts of Ireland which professed allegiance to the King of England, and definitely formulated the relations which were to subsist between England and her dependency for nearly three hundred years (until 1782), Poyning's was recalled and replaced by the now loyal Kildare. Henry VII. had no time or inclination to attempt to govern Ireland well: he was content to have her kept quiet, and Kildare could achieve that end as well as an English official.

§ 275. **Warbeck's Wanderings, 1495-6.**—In June 1495 Warbeck set forth from Flanders (§ 273) with 14 ships and 1000 men supplied by Margaret. He lost nearly one-fifth of her forces in a descent on the English coast near Deal; and Poyning's beat back his attack on Waterford with a loss of three ships. In November 1495 he proceeded to Scotland, where James IV., who had throughout held correspondence with him, gave him a kinswoman of his own, Katharine Gordon, in marriage, and in return for the promise of Berwick and a money-payment, engaged to invade England on his behalf (cf. § 253). The invasion was made in September 1496, and proved a complete failure.

§ 276. **The Cornish Insurrection, June 1497.**—The Scots King made preparations for a second incursion; and Henry VII.'s sixth Parliament voted him liberal supplies to make preparations for the defence of the northern counties. These taxes roused the ire of the Cornishmen, who failed to see why they should pay to resist an invasion which could not hurt them; and in May 1497 they took up arms and resolved to seek the aid of the men of Kent, whose share in the risings of Tyler and Cade had won them the reputation of being "the freest people in England" (§§ 215, 245, 326). They marched up to London; and on June 17 they were routed on Blackheath by the royal forces. In accordance with Henry's usual moderation none but the leaders were executed.

§ 277. **The End of Warbeck and Warwick, 1497-1499.**—The news of the Cornish rising, and the continuance of the discontent in those parts, suggested to Warbeck and his patron a change of plan:

Warbeck was to sail to Cornwall and renew the insurrection there, while the Scots were simultaneously to invade the North. Warbeck, however, loitered at Cork so long that the Scots invasion had been beaten back by Thomas Howard, Earl of Surrey, before Warbeck landed at Whitsand Bay near Land's End (September 1497). Men gathered round the standard of "Richard IV.," but after a fortnight's advance he fled from near Taunton to take sanctuary at the abbey of Beaulieu, near Southampton. He surrendered and was imprisoned; his wife received a place at Court; and his Cornish followers were heavily fined. Two years later Warbeck entered into arrangements with his fellow-prisoner, Warwick (§ 268), to escape from the Tower. The attempt was counted to them for treason, and they were executed in November 1499.

## II. DOMESTIC SECURITY AND FOREIGN ENTERPRISE, 1497-1509.

**§ 278. The Spanish and Scottish Marriages, 1501-1503.**—The capture of Warbeck ended the chances of Henry VII.'s displacement, and so brought to an effective close the wars of the Roses (§§ 245-255). Henry had always directed his policy towards broader ends than mere self-preservation; but until he could prove his staying power he could not expect to be taken quite seriously by his neighbours. After the removal of Warbeck and Warwick, and the repeated proof that Henry was stronger than his enemies, two marriage alliances which he had long been seeking were quickly brought to a head. In November 1501 his elder son Arthur was married to Katharine, youngest daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella; and in January 1503 his elder daughter Margaret was married to James IV., King of Scots. The former marriage—first arranged in the *Treaty of Medina del Campo*, 1489—lasted only five months, being dissolved by the death of Arthur in April 1502, but it led to important complications in the following reign (§§ 288-298): the latter led, just one hundred years later, to the union of the two kingdoms in Britain (§ 369). The immediate importance of both marriages lay in the recognition of the Tudor dynasty among the reigning houses of Europe.

**§ 279. Relations with Flanders, 1496-1506.**—The year of the Scots marriage was also marked by the deaths of Henry VII.'s wife Elizabeth, and of his inveterate foe, Margaret of Burgundy. Margaret had been unable to do much harm after her equipment of Warbeck (§ 275): the Archduke Philip, who had now taken power into his own hands, found it expedient to arrange for the restoration of

commercial intercourse between his subjects and those of Henry VII. The Anglo-Flemish treaty of 1496 was modified in a treaty pressed upon Philip ten years later in favour of the English: the two treaties are commonly known by the names given them by Bacon—*Magnus Intercursus* and *Malus Intercursus*, the “Great Intercourse” and the “Bad Intercourse.” The treaty of 1506 was the most important of the vast number of treaties and negotiations which filled the second and peaceful half of Henry VII.’s reign. Some of these treaties were designed to enlarge the commercial opportunities of Englishmen: some were designed to prevent the rise to a supreme position of any one among the powerful princes of Western Europe. Henceforth Commerce and Balance of Power tended more and more to become the leading objects of English foreign policy (§ 362). Many of Henry VII.’s later negotiations were concerned with projects for his second marriage; but he died a widower in April 1509.

§ 280. *Henry’s Character and Work.*—The personality and the achievements of Henry VII. were neither romantic nor picturesque; yet both left their mark on the story of England, and well deserve the memorial they have in the Chapel in Westminster Abbey where his body rests. He had the gift to see what wanted doing, and the will to do it; and as he had a just estimate of his own powers, he usually succeeded in his purposes. His combination of tact, gentleness, and firmness won for England domestic peace and a creditable position among the kingdoms of Europe. While Cardinal Morton—whom he made Archbishop of Canterbury and Lord Chancellor—was alive, he summoned no fewer than six Parliaments; after Morton’s death in 1500 he summoned only one; but whether he made use of Parliament or ignored it, he aimed steadily at reducing the facilities of the landowners for petty local tyranny and at enlarging the opportunities of the yeoman and trader for pursuing the arts of peace (§§ 261, 270). It was after the death of Morton and Queen Elizabeth that the financial exactions of the King’s ingenious legal agents, Sir Richard Empson and Sir Edmund Dudley, won for Henry VII. a reputation for avarice which is almost as difficult to substantiate as Richard III.’s unmitigated wickedness. Besides what Henry did for his own generation there are at least three notable things which he did for the future: his marriage alliance with Scotland; his constitutional arrangements in Ireland; and his encouragement of John Cabot’s expedition which, sailing from Bristol in 1497, discovered Newfoundland and gave Europeans—so far as we know for certain—their first glimpse of the mainland of North America (§ 265).

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### HENRY VIII. AND CARDINAL WOLSEY, 1509-1529.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Born at Greenwich, June 28, 1491; held the title, Duke of York, from 1494 till 1502, when he was created Prince of Wales; betrothed in June 1503 to his elder brother Arthur's widow, Katharine of Aragon, whom he married in June 1509; for his five later marriages, each of which had political importance, see §§ 295, 309, 314; succeeded his father as King of England, April 22, 1509; crowned, June 24, 1509; died at Whitehall, January 28, 1547; buried at Windsor. For family connections, see Table, p. 176.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	SCOTLAND.	TURKEY.
Julius II. (1508) Leo X. (1513)	Maximilian (1498) Charles V. (1519-1558)	Louis XII. (1498)	Ferdinand (1479) (King in Aragon, Regent in Castile, after 1504) Charles I. (1516-1556)	James IV. (1488) James V. (1513)	Bajazet II. (1481) Selim I. (1512) Suleiman I. (1520-1566)
Hadrian VI. (1522) Clement VII. (1523)		Francis I. (1515-1547)			

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>(i) <b>International:</b> <i>relations with—</i></p> <p>(1) Papacy: §§ 283, 284, 288.<br/> (2) Empire: §§ 283, 286, 287, 288.<br/> (3) Spain: §§ 282, 283, 286-288.<br/> (4) France: §§ 283, 286, 287, 288.<br/> (5) German Protestants: §§ 286, 287.<br/> (6) Scotland: §§ 283, 287.</p> | <p>(ii) <b>Constitutional.</b></p> <p>(1) Royal Prerogative: § 285.<br/> (2) Royal Succession: §§ 281, 288, 289.<br/> (3) Ministers: §§ 282, 284, 289.<br/> (4) Parliament: §§ 285, 287.<br/> (5) Church: §§ 284-286.<br/> (6) Insurrections: § 287.</p> |
|--|--|

### I. LEAGUES AGAINST FRANCE, 1509-1525.

§ 281. **Henry's Character and Position, 1509.**—Henry VIII. succeeded his father at the age of eighteen. He was a handsome and accomplished young man, well-trained in both mind and body. His easy manners and sprightliness won him a general popularity

which he never wholly lost: his combination of manliness and culture encouraged the best in the land to expect great things from his rule, and to hope that he might actually bring to pass some of the nobler dreams of the leaders of the Renaissance (§§ 264, 290). Henry had many things in his favour, besides his character. He entered into the fruits of his father's labours—the possession of a full treasury, a recognized position among the princes of Europe, and a sure title. He was the first English king since Edward III. whose claim to the throne was neither disputable nor disputed; and one of the main features of his policy all through was to secure for his successor a title as unquestioned as his own (§§ 288, 302).

§ 282. **Henry's First Acts, 1509-1510.**—Henry began his royal career by two acts which enhanced his popularity and illustrate leading features in his general policy: in June 1509 he married Katharine of Aragon (§§ 278, 288); and in August 1510 he sent Empson and Dudley (§ 280) to the block. The marriage expressed Henry's continued adhesion to the Anglo-Spanish alliance, but was to prove a fruitful source of trouble in after years: the treatment of his father's servants was typical of his own constant attitude to his ministers—he worked them hard as long as he found them useful, and then posed as a national benefactor by sacrificing them to the enemies whom their very efficiency had procured for them.

§ 283. **The Holy League, 1511-1514.**—Henry was ambitious of military glory and of taking a more prominent part in the affairs of Europe than his cautious and thrifty father had cared to take. He found his opportunity in the turmoil into which Italy had been plunged by Charles VIII.'s epoch-making invasion of 1494. France and Spain were competing for the kingdom of Naples and the duchy of Milan; the Emperor Maximilian was hoping to reincorporate northern Italy with the Empire; and Pope Julius II., having humbled the republic of Venice by means of the *League of Cambray* (1508-9), was now eager to "expel the Barbarians" from Italy. For this purpose he induced Venice, Ferdinand, Maximilian, and Henry VIII. to join him in a *Holy League* against France. England's share in the war was an expedition to Gascony in 1512, which helped Ferdinand to make himself master of the southern part of the kingdom of Navarre; a naval victory off Brest in the same year; and an invasion of northern France in 1513, in which Henry himself took part. While besieging Terouenne his forces routed a body of French cavalry in a fight at Guinegate, known as the "Battle of Spurs." A fortnight later (September 9) the Earl of Surrey thrust back a Scottish invasion by a victory at

Flodden, in which James IV. lost his life. In August 1514, the warlike Pope being dead, and Henry growing weary of being made a cat paw by his allies, peace was concluded between England and France: Louis XII. promised to pay a million crowns in twenty annual instalments, and married Henry's youngest sister, Mary. On the last day of the year Louis died. His widow married Charles Brandon, Duke of Suffolk (Table, p. 176).

§ 284. **Rise of Thomas Wolsey, 1513-5.**—Such successes as Henry VIII. had won in this war were mainly due to the administrative abilities of Thomas Wolsey. He was the son of an Ipswich grazier, had just passed his fortieth year, and was in holy orders. During the war his promotions followed one another quickly; in 1515 Henry bestowed upon him the Great Seal, and prevailed on the Pope to send him a Cardinal's hat; and two years later he was created Papal Legate over the head of his senior church-officer, the Archbishop of Canterbury (cf. § 153). He thus gathered into his hands the highest powers in England, both ecclesiastical and civil; and his immense capacity for work enabled him not only to attend properly to every department of politics, but also to find time to join heartily in the brilliant social life of the Court.

§ 285. **Wolsey's Domestic Policy, 1515-1529.**—During the fourteen years of his predominance, Wolsey strove amain to put down abuses, to repress indolence and dishonesty in public officers, to make the administration at once efficient and economical, and above all, to retain the favour of the King, without whom he could do nothing. He used his legatine powers to diminish in England those ecclesiastical abuses which were causing revolutionary movements in Germany (§§ 266, 286): with this end in view, he suppressed ill-conducted monasteries, and diverted their revenues to the endowment of Cardinal College, Oxford—which, under its diminished form as Christ Church, still bears as its badge a Cardinal's hat—and other places of education (§§ 300, 305). In his civil activity he was emphatically an administrator, not a legislator: he developed the Privy Council—especially on its judicial side, the Court of Star Chamber (§ 270)—and, as far as lay in his power, filled it, not with dignified personages, but with men of practical capacity. On the other hand, like Henry VII. in his later years (§ 280), he dispensed with Parliament as consisting of mere talkers and unpractical busybodies. In the first six years of the reign, a Parliament assembled each year: during Wolsey's ministry the only Parliament was that which was brought together in 1523 for the express purpose of granting supplies.

§ 286. **Wolsey's Contemporaries, 1515-1519.**—Wolsey's rise to power synchronized with the appearance of several vigorous personalities on the public stage in Western Europe. In 1515 Louis XII. was succeeded on the throne of France by his cousin Francis I.; in 1516 Ferdinand of Aragon was succeeded by his grandson, Charles I. of Spain, who, three years later, was elected Emperor, as Charles V.; and in 1517 Martin Luther, an Austin friar of Wittenberg in Saxony, issued against the Papal system of indulgences a manifesto which is conventionally regarded as the beginning of the Reformation (but see §§ 188, 266). The political connection between these various persons may be briefly summarized thus: Francis I. and Charles V. carried on their ancestral rivalries; their chief field of action was Italy; the Pope needed money to maintain his princely prestige against them, and so resorted to the financial expedients which Luther denounced; Luther's growing influence helped to increase the divisions in Germany, which made that kingdom a source of weakness rather than of strength to Charles V.; and both Wolsey and his master had to reckon with all these facts in framing their foreign policy.

§ 287. **Wolsey's Foreign Policy, 1520-1525.**—Henry aspired to make himself the arbiter between his two powerful contemporaries on the Continent: Wolsey, in furthering this aspiration, also hoped, by the aid of one or other of them, to attain the Papacy. Both Englishmen were courted by the rival monarchs; and in 1520-1, various interviews took place, the most famous of which was that between Henry and Francis, near Calais, in June 1520, known as the "Field of the Cloth of Gold." At first Henry leaned more to the side of Charles V.: they were closely connected by marriage (Table, p. 190); their forbears had been politically allied against France (§§ 230, 271); and the traditional policy of England had long been hostility to France (§§ 189-191). Moreover, Charles V.'s relations with the Pope commended him to both Henry and Wolsey: the King, who had had special training in theology, proved his orthodoxy by attacking Luther in that *Defence of the Seven Sacraments* which won for him from the Pope the title *Defensor Fidei* ("Defender of the Faith"), still attached to the English crown; the Cardinal preferred Charles V., not only because he was a monarch of unimpeachable orthodoxy, but also because his strength in Italy made his influence greater than that of Francis in a Papal conclave. The alliance between Henry and the Emperor lasted for some five or six years; but the English share in the fighting was confined to raiding across the Channel and over the Scottish Borders. The chief result of the

war for England was increased Government demands for money, which were successfully resisted by Parliament in 1523, and by popular insurrection in Suffolk two years later.

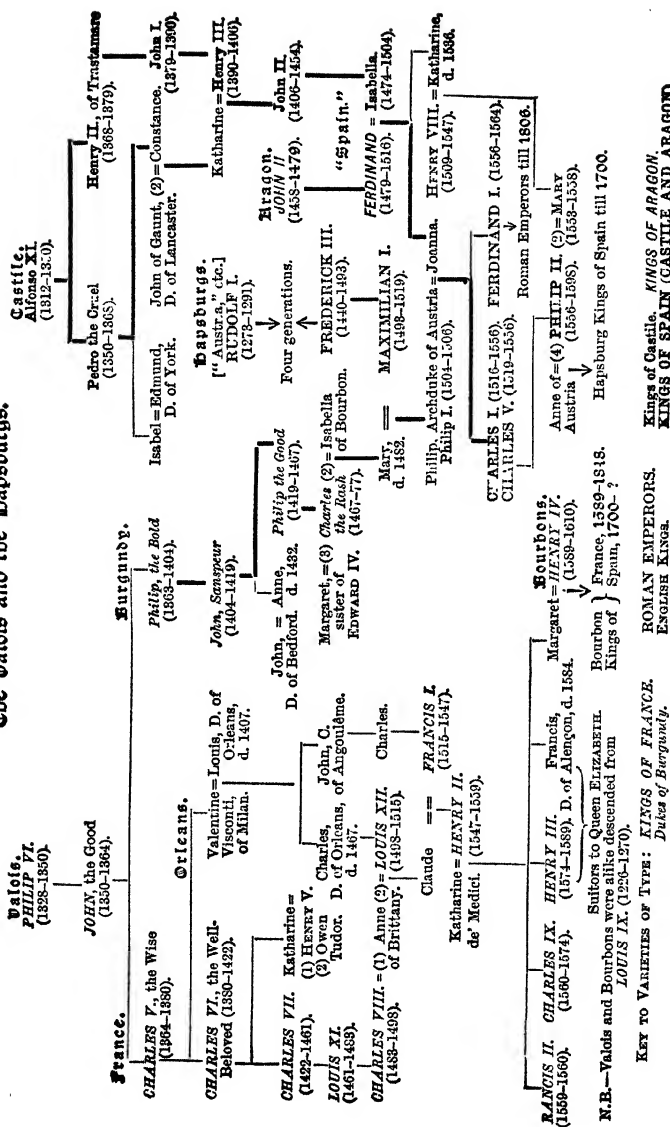
## II. ALLIANCE WITH FRANCE, 1525-1529.

§ 288. **Opening of the Divorce Question, 1527-1529.**—The capture of Francis at the battle of Pavia, 1525, made his rival all-powerful; and in 1527, Henry and Francis made the sack of Rome by Imperial troops an excuse for forming an alliance against Charles. To cement the alliance, a French marriage was arranged for Henry's eleven-year-old daughter Mary. It was during these negotiations that her legitimacy was first *publicly* called in question. Henry's children by Katharine of Aragon had all died, save Mary; and he had consequently become anxious about the succession (§ 281). The paramount necessity that there should be a visible male heir to the crown was the most obvious lesson to be drawn from English history during the fifteenth century (§ 261); Henry had already shown his observance of the fact by putting to death two possible collateral claimants—Edmund de la Pole in 1513, and the Duke of Buckingham in 1521 (Table, p. 144); and it is therefore not surprising that the death of all Katharine's children, except Mary, should have caused Henry qualms of conscience about the validity of his marriage with his deceased brother's wife. He had obtained a dispensation for the marriage from the Pope, and he now applied to the same authority to annul the dispensation. Clement VII. answered the application by appointing a Legatine Commission, consisting of Cardinals Wolsey and Campeggio, to examine the case: it sat in London during June and July 1529, and ended by announcing that the Pope had avocated the case to Rome. The Pope found it inconvenient to offend so powerful a neighbour as Katharine's nephew, Charles V.

§ 289. **Fall and Death of Wolsey, 1529-30.**—Since beginning the negotiations for putting away Katharine, Henry had fallen in love with Anne Boleyn, a vivacious lady of the Court; and he was furious at the obstacles thrown in the way of his imperious will. Not being able to reach the Pope, he wreaked his wrath on Wolsey, who was dismissed from the Chancellorship in October 1529, and ordered to retire to his archbishopric of York. In November 1530 he was summoned to London on a charge of high treason, and died at Leicester Abbey, bewailing, "If I had but served my God as well as I have served my prince!"



## The Valois and the Hapsburgs.



## CHAPTER XXIV.

### HENRY VIII.'S ECCLESIASTICAL REVOLUTION, 1529-1547.

A. PERSONAL HISTORY.—See previous chapter.

#### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	SCOTLAND.	TURKEY.
Clement VII. (1523) Paul III. (1534)	Charles V. (1519- 1556)	Francis I. (1515- 1547)	Charles I. (Emperor Charles V.) (1516-1556)	James V. (1513) Mary (1542)	Suleiman I. <i>the Magnificent</i> (1520-1566)

#### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

##### (i) International: *relations with—*

- (1) Papacy: §§ 292, 294-8, 304, 311.
- (2) Charles V.: §§ 294, 302, 311-312.
- (3) German Protestants: §§ 296, 308, 309.
- (4) France: § 312.
- (5) Scotland: § 312.

##### (ii) Constitutional.

- (1) Royal Prerogative: §§ 295, 298, 303, 309-312.
- (2) Royal Supremacy: §§ 291-3, 297-330, 302, 305, 307, 308.
- (3) Royal Succession: §§ 295, 302, 309, 313.
- (4) Ministers: §§ 290, 294, 296, 303, 309, 310, 314.
- (5) Parliament: §§ 290, 291, 294-8, 301, 305, 306. [307.
- (6) Convocation: §§ 292, 293, 297,
- (7) Insurrections: §§ 303, 304.
- (8) Wales: §§ 306, 310.
- (9) Ireland: §§ 310, 311.

#### I. THE DIVORCE QUESTION, 1529-1533.

§ 290. **Wolsey's Successors, 1529.**—The fall of Wolsey marked a complete change in men and measures. None of his successors ever had so free a hand as he had been allowed; they were usually laymen and not ecclesiastics; and they had to deal not only

with a King who was constantly over-ruling them, but also with frequent parliaments (§ 285). Henry's most prominent advisers, during the ten years which followed Wolsey's fall, were all laymen: among them were Thomas Howard, whose father had been rewarded for his victory at Flodden by the dukedom of Norfolk (§ 283); Sir Thomas More, who had embodied his social ideals in the *Utopia*, had been Speaker in Wolsey's only Parliament, and who now was elevated to the Chancellorship; Thomas Cromwell, who had studied Machiavelli's treatise on state-craft in Italy, and who, under Wolsey, had had practical experience in applying the science. Cromwell, however, did not become a person of first-rate importance until the temporizing policy of Norfolk and More had been proved futile (§§ 296-310).

**§ 291. First Session of the Reformation Parliament, 1529.**

—The substitution of lay for clerical influence bore its first fruits in the Parliament which met in November 1529, and which is celebrated for its unprecedented length as the "Seven Years' Parliament," and for its achievements as the "Reformation Parliament." This assembly was characterized by what would now-a-days be called "an overwhelming Government majority:" the Government—i. e. the King—could make it do *almost* anything he pleased; he chose to manage it in such a way that the Parliament had the appearance of suggesting what in reality had been prompted by the King; and the only thing in which it can safely be said to have been truly representative of the nation was its dislike of clerical influence. That dislike was illustrated in the first session by the passing of a number of bills restricting various methods by which the clergy were in the habit of increasing their incomes—such as the exactions of heavy burial fees (*mortuaries*), holding more offices than they could adequately discharge (*pluralities*), and engaging in trades. The bills were not intrinsically important: they merely shadowed forth Henry VIII's determination to complete the work of Henry II.—to subject the Clergy, as his father had subjected the other privileged estate, the Nobles, to the authority of the Crown (§§ 263, 270).

**§ 292. Recognition of the Headship, 1531.**—The second session of the Parliament, in 1531, was unimportant, but the contemporary sessions of Convocation marked a fresh stage in the ecclesiastical revolution. The whole nation was ingeniously charged with incurring the guilt of *Praemunire* (§ 204), for recognizing the authority which Wolsey exercised as Papal Legate (§ 284), it is well to note, under the express licence of the King. Parliament secured a gratuitous pardon for the laity; but the clergy, in their Convoca-

tions assembled, could obtain a similar pardon, only by paying a fine of some £118,000, and by addressing the King as "Head of the Church and Clergy." Henry allowed them to soften the new phrase by the qualification, "as far as the law of Christ will allow"; but the qualification was itself ambiguous, and Henry soon showed that he could interpret it in his own favour.

**§ 293. Submission of the Clergy, 1532.**—Some inkling of the King's interpretation of his "Supremacy" was given to the Clergy in 1532. Convocation, under pressure from the King and Commons, then agreed to the following articles:—(1) that Convocation could be summoned only by the King's order; (2) that it could not make binding canons without the King's licence and assent; (3) that existing canons should be submitted for approval to a committee appointed and headed by the King. Henry thus obtained a recognition that he was as essential a factor in ecclesiastical as in civil legislation. Previous kings had for the most part contented themselves with trying to control the application of church-law (§§ 121, 166): Henry VIII. returned to the Conqueror's policy of asserting his right to control the making of church-law. In each case there was room for considerable variations, in both theory and practice, as to the limits of the Royal Supremacy.

**§ 294. Third Session of the Reformation Parliament, 1532.**—Meanwhile Henry was steadily prosecuting his divorce-suit by negotiations with the Emperor and with the Pope. In 1530, for instance, he tried to smooth the way for Clement VII. by obtaining "counsel's opinion" from the Universities of Europe, that his marriage was invalid; but this device of Cranmer's was rendered useless by the lack of unanimity among the lawyers. As the method of negotiation grew more and more hopeless, Henry gradually forsook the pacific counsels of Norfolk, and fell under the influence of Cromwell (§ 290). The brutal common-sense tone of Cromwell's argument can be exactly reproduced to the modern ear: "Why worry about getting a divorce made in Italy, when a cheaper home-made article will do?" If Henry could not obtain his divorce from Rome, he might get it in England; and his dealings with the Clergy in 1530-1532 were directed towards establishing not only his own regal authority, but also the sufficiency of the English ecclesiastical authorities to determine English ecclesiastical questions. When the Pope in 1530 bade Henry take back Katharine till sentence was pronounced, the King retaliated by a Proclamation forbidding the introduction of Papal Letters (cf. § 95); and in 1532 he obtained from

Parliament authority to stop the customary payment to the Pope of *annates* or *first-fruits* (§ 155). The Act, known as the *First Statute in Restraint of Annates*, was equivalent to a threat to stop the Pope's pocket-money if he refused to do what he was told to do.

§ 295. **Fourth Session, 1533.**—In the following session Parliament passed the *First Statute of Appeals*, declaring that, as "this Realm of England is an Empire," there could be no appeal in suits concerning wills, marriages, and divorces from the spiritual courts of that realm. In May 1533, Thomas Cranmer, the new Archbishop of Canterbury, acting under the terms of the Statute, declared Henry's marriage with Katharine null and void from the beginning; he followed this decision up by declaring Henry's marriage with Anne Boleyn (celebrated secretly in January 1533) to be legal; and in September the new Queen gave birth to a daughter, afterwards Queen Elizabeth (§ 331).

## II. THE BREACH WITH ROME, 1533-1536.

§ 296. **Cranmer and Cromwell, 1532-3.**—These proceedings were certainly disapproved by the ministers to whom Henry had at first given his confidence after Wolsey's fall (§ 290), and were probably disliked by the nation at large. Whatever might be the technical merits of the case, Henry's conduct towards Katharine and Anne could not commend itself to any person capable of ordinary decency and chivalry; less sentimental people pointed out the danger to English commerce of offending the ruler of the Netherlands; and the conservative-minded could not regard an attack on the Pope's authority as opportune at a time when the German Protestants were threatening the cherished unity of the Church (§ 266). The prevalence of such views is shown by the resignation of Lord Chancellor More and of the Primate Warham in 1532, and by the difficulty experienced in forcing the Acts of 1532-3 through Parliament. More's successor was of no particular importance, as Cromwell was gathering all the civil power into his hands: Warham's successor, Thomas Cranmer (§§ 294, 295), was a man of pliable yet persistent character, who seems to have regarded the King with somewhat the same kind of reverence as was conventionally paid to the Pope.

§ 297. **Fifth Session, 1534.**—One of the last public acts of Pope Clement VII. was to annul Cranmer's decisions of 1533, and declare Henry's first marriage valid. This was in March 1534. In the same month the Convocation of Canterbury declared the Pope "hath no greater jurisdiction conferred upon him by God in this

kingdom of England, than hath any other foreign bishop," and Parliament embodied the clerical *Submission* of 1532 (§ 293) in the *Second Statute of Appeals*. Other Acts of the session withdrew from the Pope annates, Peter-pence, and other customary dues, and also regulated the royal succession by declaring Mary illegitimate, and entailing the crown on the King's children by Anne. One of these Acts—the *Second Statute of Annates*—laid down the procedure still followed in the appointment of an Anglican bishop: the Crown nominates; the Chapter has leave to elect (*congé d'élire*) the Crown nominee; the bishop designate swears fealty; four bishops consecrate the person thus elected, and confer upon him episcopal authority; he is then invested with the temporalities of the see (cf. §§ 107, 121, 139, 143).

§ 298. *Sixth Session, 1534-5*.—The breach with Rome was thus complete: the highest constitutional authorities of the realm—the King initiating, the assemblies that professed to represent the Church and the State assenting—had definitely repudiated the judicial and financial powers claimed and long exercised by "the Bishop of Rome, otherwise called the Pope." But these powers were only repudiated, not abolished. The Parliament in its sixth session transferred most of them to the King in the *First Statute of Supremacy*, and in a supplementary Act subjected to the penalties of high treason all who called the King "a heretic, schismatic, infidel, and usurper of the Crown." The Royal Supremacy as defined by Henry was based on the precedents set by William I., Henry I., Henry II., and Edward III. (§§ 95, 107, 121, 204), but it went much further: it claimed something more than a negative voice in English ecclesiastical affairs; and it no longer regulated, but explicitly forbade, English ecclesiastical dealings with any foreign potentate.

§ 299. *Fisher and More, 1535*.—Such a revolution could not be accomplished without opposition; and many who had enough force of intellect to perceive that there was a distinction—as asserted by Parliament—between repudiating certain political powers of the Pope, and deserting the Catholic Faith, were also acute enough to see that such a line of distinction might easily be transgressed in practice. Among the most distinguished of such men were John Fisher, Bishop of Rochester—an old friend of Henry's grandmother, the Lady Margaret—and Henry's own old friend, More. They were imprisoned in 1534 for refusing to accept the preamble to the *Succession Act* of that year (§ 297), and executed in the summer of 1535 under the *Supremacy-Treasons Act* (§ 298).

**§ 300. Cromwell's Visitation of the Monasteries, 1536.**—Early in 1535 Henry appointed Cromwell his Vicar-General, or, in other words, entrusted him with the actual exercise of the powers included under the Royal Supremacy. Cromwell's position thus came to bear a general resemblance to that of Wolsey as Papal Legate (§ 284), but he drew his authority from what contemporaries, with true insight and humour, described as "the new Papacy": he was a layman, and he was less tender of received ecclesiastical prejudices. Throughout the year he and his agents were busy collecting or manufacturing evidence as to the uselessness or viciousness of the religious houses of England. Both the theory and the existing practice of monasticism were widely disapproved by the best men of the day; but what set Henry and his minister against them was the desire to divert their wealth from the championship of the Pope to the maintenance of his substitute, the King.

**§ 301. End of the Reformation Parliament, March 1536.**—The results of Cromwell's visitation of the Monasteries were embodied in a report—no longer extant—presented to the Reformation Parliament in its seventh and last session. The consequence was an Act which dissolved all religious houses having an income of less than £200 per annum—some 280 in number—and vested in the Crown all their property—save a small sum reserved for pensioning the inmates. The smaller houses were selected for destruction on the ground that they were more corrupt than the larger houses. It was soon found convenient to ignore this distinction (§ 305).

### III. THE TRIALS OF A LAY POPE, 1536-1547.

**§ 302. Events of the Year, 1536.**—Henry's ecclesiastical revolution was formally completed during the existence of the "Long Parliament of the Reformation" (§§ 290-301): the rest of the reign was mainly occupied with defining and defending the Royal Supremacy in its new shape, and with consolidating the royal power in other respects. The year 1536 was marked by much besides the ending of a notable Parliament. In January, Katharine died, thus opening up a way for reconciliation between Henry and Charles (§§ 288, 312); in May her supplanter, Anne Boleyn, was executed on a charge of adultery, and her daughter was excluded as a bastard from the throne by a *Second Succession Act*, which authorized Henry to regulate the royal succession by will or by letters patent (§§ 332, 342); and in the autumn Henry had to face the beginnings of armed resistance to his rapid changes.

§ 303. **The Pilgrimage of Grace, 1536-7.**—A Lincolnshire rising under "Captain Cowler" was quickly suppressed in October 1536; but it was followed by a more formidable insurrection in the less accessible region north of the Humber. The insurgents demanded the restoration of the Lady Mary to her rightful position of princess, the rehabilitation of the religious houses, and the expulsion from the King's Council of Thomas Cromwell, and other "low-born heretics." Their proceedings were orderly, and their program religious; they wore as a badge the "Five Wounds of Christ"; and they called their march the "Pilgrimage of Grace." The Duke of Norfolk, whom Henry sent against them, was compelled to promise that a Parliament should meet at York to redress their grievances, and that a general pardon should be given to all who went home quietly. A further rising in the spring of 1537 sufficed as a pretext to break these promises, to execute Robert Aske and other leaders, and to harry the disaffected districts. To preserve order in the five northern counties there was instituted a committee of the Privy Council, known as the Council of the North (§§ 392, 400).

§ 304. **Cardinal Pole and Paul's Bull of Deposition, 1538.**—A threatened rising in the West of England, similar to the Pilgrimage of Grace, was nipped in the bud by Cromwell's arrest of the probable leaders—the heads of the semi-royal families of Courtnay and Pole (Table, p. 144). Some were executed in 1539; the aged Countess of Salisbury was beheaded in 1541; but her son, Reginald Pole, the most energetic member of either family, escaped Henry's clutches, and lived to undo some of Henry's work (§ 328). In the years 1537-1539 Reginald Pole was hovering round the Channel in order to promote insurrections, and in 1538 Pope Paul III. launched a Bull of Deposition against Henry; but all these efforts were belated and unprofitable (cf. §§ 341, 342).

§ 305. **Suppression of the Larger Monasteries, 1539.**—The chief effect of these acts of opposition was to make Henry VIII. establish securely both his royal power and his royal orthodoxy. His opponents, actual or possible, must be crushed; but on the other hand, he could take the strength of the religious conservatism behind them as a welcome proof that his doctrinal position commended itself to the majority of his subjects. The popular movements of 1536-1539 thus directly led to two of the important Acts of 1539: the suppression of the larger monasteries removed a manifest danger to his Supremacy; the *Statute of the Six Articles* bore striking witness to his orthodoxy. Since 1536 (§ 301) many religious



houses had "voluntarily" surrendered to the Crown; and the Act of 1539 merely ratified these surrenders, and transferred all other monastic property to the King. It has been estimated that the income of the seven hundred houses dissolved between 1536 and 1540 amounted to over £1,500,000 of our money. What became of it all? Some was squandered by the King; some went to the endowment of six new bishoprics (e.g. Chester, Oxford, and Peterborough); some was devoted to the improvement of the Navy,—an object always close to Henry's heart; but the greater part was given away to Henry's ministers and friends—practically as a bribe to secure their support in his ecclesiastical policy (cf. § 311). No attempt was made to find substitutes for the religious houses as places of education, as centres for poor-relief, or as refuges for the friendless: and this omission led to social troubles, of which the most striking, if not the most important, was the increased obviousness and the increased violence of a permanent pauper class (§§ 319, 320, 360).

**§ 306. Changes in the Constitution of Parliament, 1539-1543.**—Among the results of the suppression of the religious houses was the disappearance of the twenty-seven mitred abbots from the House of Lords, and their partial replacement by new lay peers. For the first time the Lords Temporal outnumbered the Lords Spiritual in the Upper House; and the preponderance of the former has been steadily increasing ever since. A few years later the House of Commons received an equally notable accession of fresh blood: in 1543 thirty-two members were added to the House, giving representation, practically for the first time, to Wales, Cheshire, and Calais (§ 185). Thus was completed the process begun by Edward I. of incorporating Wales with England in law and organization (§ 163): the dominion still remained, however, under the special care of the Council of Wales instituted in 1478 (§ 400).

**§ 307. Statute of the Six Articles, 1539.**—The legislation of the Seven Years' Parliament regarding the Church had been confined to the sphere of ecclesiastical *government*, and had not touched anything which could strictly be called a matter of religious *doctrine*. Convocation had in 1536 drawn up *Ten Articles* by way of showing that the doctrines of the Church of England were substantially the same as they had been before the breach with Rome; but it was not till 1539 that Henry made use of Parliament for the purpose not of defining but of enforcing theological propositions (cf. §§ 322, 344, 420). The *Six Articles*, embodied in statute-form that year, affirmed the doctrine of the Corporeal Presence in the Sacrament of

the Eucharist, denied the necessity of Communion in Both Kinds, and maintained the celibacy of the clergy, the observance of vows of chastity, the expediency of private masses, and auricular confession: denial of the doctrine of Transubstantiation was made a capital offence, and refusal to accept any of the last five articles was constituted felony. All this was quite conservative: what was new was the intrusion of the laity into a sphere which for centuries the clergy had regarded as entirely their own (cf. § 325).

§ 308. *Doctrinal Controversies, 1526-1539.*—The *Six Articles* were aimed not at people who believed in the governing powers of the Pope, but at the growing number of people who wished to upset the entire religious system of the day. The general position of these radical reformers (§ 266) was that God had revealed himself to mankind collectively, not through Pope or clergy, but only through the writings included in the Bible; they therefore desired that book to be translated into the spoken languages of the time, so that all might “drink of the Water of Life”; and they regarded all such beliefs and practices as those inculcated in the *Six Articles* as “human inventions” contrary to “the plain Word of God.” Such persons may be called by the general name of Evangelicals: those in England drew their inspiration mainly from Germany. Their chief representatives were the group of University men known as the “Cambridge Gospellers,” William Tyndale, whose translation of the New Testament appeared in 1526, and Hugh Latimer, who was deprived of his bishopric of Worcester for refusing to accept the *Six Articles*. Henry regarded it as one of his duties as Supreme Head to repress variations from the traditional Catholic standards of orthodox belief.

§ 309. *Fall of Cromwell, 1540.*—The *Six Articles* marked the triumph of the Moderates in the Council—especially the Duke of Norfolk, and Stephen Gardiner, Bishop of Winchester. In opposition to them Cromwell and Cranmer strove to bring the King into closer touch with the German Protestants, by means of a new marriage. For the King had lost his third wife, Jane Seymour, in October 1537, when she gave birth to the long-desired male heir, afterwards Edward VI. (§ 316). Cromwell persuaded Henry to take as her successor, Anne, daughter of the Protestant Duke of Kleves. The marriage took place in January 1540, and Cromwell was rewarded for his services with the earldom of Essex. Henry, however, soon tired of a wife who was doubly offensive to him as being heretical and far from good-looking: he divorced and pensioned her and

married Katharine Howard, niece to Norfolk, at the end of July. The same day Cromwell perished on the scaffold as a traitor and a heretic.

§ 310. **Cromwell's Minor Work, 1529-1540.**—Cromwell's work was as multifarious as Wolsey's, but more striking to the eye. Besides his share in the ecclesiastical revolution, crowned by his work as Vicar-General (§§ 300, 301), he achieved much in the way of the consolidation and extension of the royal power. The Anglo-Welsh Union of 1536 has been already mentioned (§ 306). To him also is due the *Lex Regia* of 1539, whereby Parliament formally enacted that, within certain definite limits, Royal Proclamations had the force of statute-law. The Act was repealed in less than ten years; but Cromwell's work in Ireland had more enduring results.

§ 311. **Irish Affairs, 1535-1542.**—During the forty years that followed *Poyning's Law* (§ 274), Ireland had been alternately governed by Hiberniander magnates and by English officials in the usual way. During Cromwell's ministry there came a series of changes. In 1535-1537 the heads of the Kildare FitzGeraldts were exterminated for intriguing with Charles V.; and at the same time an attempt was made to assimilate the Irish Church to the new English model. In 1537 an *Irish Act of Supremacy* was forced through the Irish Parliament (cf. § 298). Five years afterwards the monasteries in the English part of Ireland were suppressed, and the confiscated lands were distributed among the magnates to secure their adhesion to the new state of things. In 1542, also, Henry VIII. asserted his independence of the Pope by changing the Pope-given title, "Lord of Ireland," for that of "King" (§ 125). These measures aroused a greater and more successful opposition than their analogues in England, and their chief result was, to drive the Keltic part of the Irish Church into closer union with Rome (§§ 351, 358).

§ 312. **War with France and Scotland, 1542-1546.**—The concluding years of Henry's reign, after Cromwell's fall, were occupied by the wars that arose out of his active re-entry into international lay politics, and by attempts to secure a permanent balance among the bitter factions that threatened to mar the impending reign of a minor (§ 314). From 1542 to 1546 England was at war with France and Scotland, at first in alliance with Charles V. The chief incidents in the Scottish war were the death of James V. after his defeat at Solway Moss in 1542, and the consequent invasion of Scotland in 1544 in order to compel the marriage of the infant Queen Mary with the Prince of Wales (§ 317). The scheme fell through,

and the only return which the King obtained at the general peace of 1546 for his costly campaigns was the town of Boulogne (§ 322).

§ 313. **Henry VIII.'s Financial Methods.**—As in the former wars (§§ 283, 287), the military expenses were met by heavy exactions; and even these did not suffice to save the State from bankruptcy. In 1544 Parliament repeated its action of 1529 in allowing the King to repudiate his debts; and in the following year a benevolence of from ten pence to twenty pence per pound was raised. Moreover, Henry continued the process, begun by Edward III., of debasing the coinage: that is to say, he issued from the Royal Mint coins smaller in size, and containing a larger proportion of alloy than those previously in use having the same nominal value. At first the King made a profit by this dishonesty, for he could manufacture more coins out of a given weight of precious metal; but naturally prices soon rose to an extent which more than counter-balanced this profit. The result in the long run of such tampering with "sound money" is to cause social difficulties (§ 319).

§ 314. **Henry's Balancing Policy and Death, 1542-1547.**—Henry had secured a general acceptance in England for his ecclesiastical settlement, but he was well aware that that security was dependent upon his own life. Some of those who accepted it desired to modify it in order to return to the communion of the Pope: others wished to diverge still further from the Papal system. Among the former may be ranked Bishop Gardiner, Norfolk, and his poet son, the Earl of Surrey; among the latter were Archbishop Cranmer, Jane Seymour's brother Edward, Earl of Hertford, and John, Lord Lisle, son of the Dudley executed in 1510 (§ 282)—both successful commanders in the war of 1542-1546. Henry VIII. desired to keep these two parties as evenly balanced as possible even after his death; and with this end in view he passed through Parliament in 1544 the *Third Succession Act*, empowering him for a second time to name his successor and to regulate the government during his successor's reign (§§ 238, 302, 316). On the whole, however, the conservative party were in the ascendant so long as Katharine Howard was queen; but some time after her execution, in 1542—on the usual ground of infidelity (cf. § 203)—Henry married his last wife, Katharine Parr, a widow and an adherent of the innovating party. Believing that the Howards were preparing to retrieve their position by a desperate stroke, Henry arrested them both in the fall of 1546: Surrey was executed, but Norfolk was saved by the death of the King on the day appointed for his execution (January 28, 1547).

## CHAPTER XXV.

### ENGLAND UNDER FOREIGN INFLUENCES, 1547-1558.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—See Table, p.176, for the family relations of—

(a) **EDWARD VI.**: born at Hampton Court, October 12, 1537; succeeded his father as King of England, January 28, 1547; crowned, February 28, 1547; died unmarried, at Greenwich, July 6, 1553; buried at Westminster.

(b) **MARY I.**: born at Greenwich, February 18, 1516; succeeded her half-brother on the throne of England, July 6, 1553; crowned, October 1, 1553; married Philip, King of Naples, afterwards Philip II. of Spain, July 25, 1554; died, without children, in St. James's Palace, November 17, 1558; buried at Westminster.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	SCOTLAND.	TURKEY.
Paul III. (1534)	Charles V. (1519)	Francis I. (1515)	Charles I. (1516)	Mary (1542) (Scotland under a Regency during her minority and absence in France)	Suleiman I. (1520- 1566)
Julius III. (1550)		Henry II. (1547)	(the Emperor Charles V.)		
Marcellus II. (1555)					
Paul IV. (1555)	Ferdinand I. (1556)		Philip II. (1556)		

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) The Papacy: §§ 326, 328, 330.
- (2) The Empire: §§ 317, 323, 326, 327.
- (3) Spain: §§ 326, 327, 330.
- (4) France: §§ 317, 322, 327, 330.
- (5) Scotland: §§ 317, 330.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) Foreign Influences: §§ 315, 320, 322, 327-330.
- (2) Domestic Factions: §§ 315, 316, 321, 323, 324.
- (3) Ecclesiastical Affairs: §§ 318, 319, 322, 325, 328, 329.
- (4) Succession Questions: §§ 316, 323, 324.
- (5) Insurrections: §§ 320, 326.

### I. THE PROTECTORATE OF SOMERSET, 1547-1549.

§ 315. **Characteristics of the Period.**—The two short reigns which followed the death of Henry VIII. were marked by the temporary interruption of the strong personal government of the Tudors (§ 262). It is true that both Edward and Mary had wills of their own; but the one was a minor, the other a woman. England had never yet been governed successfully by a minor (ch. xvi., xvii.,

xix.); and the rule of a woman was a novel and discouraging experiment (cf. §§ 111, 112). These two reigns were marked, therefore, by the recommencement of unchecked party struggles among the aristocracy, by the sudden reduction of England to the position of a third-rate Power, by the rapid growth of foreign influences in Church and in State, and by violent changes in religion. England became a dependent and disordered realm; and the contrast between her condition under the strong rule of Henry VIII. and Elizabeth, on the one hand, and her condition during the intervening period, on the other hand, has been compendiously characterized by describing the two brief reigns as "un-English."

**§ 316. Edward VI.'s Advisers, 1547.**—Henry VIII. had twice sought and received from Parliament power to arrange for the government of England after his decease (§§ 302, 314). He was found to have appointed in his will a body of sixteen "Executors" to act as a council of regency. He had sought to secure a continuance of his moderate church-policy by selecting these "Executors" equally from the two parties which had long been struggling for the mastery (§ 314). The innovating section of the Council, however, contrived to upset the balance, and procured from the young King the official position of Lord Protector for their own leader, Edward Seymour, Lord Hertford. Hertford's sister had been Edward VI.'s mother (§ 309), and he now obtained from his nephew the dukedom of Somerset for himself, and various peerages and estates for the colleagues who had acquiesced in raising him to the head of the State.

**§ 317. Somerset's Foreign Policy.**—Somerset was rather less selfish than the bulk of his partisans, and, though personally ambitious, he had genuine enthusiasm for religious reform and for the social welfare of the poorer classes. But his zeal outran his discretion, and his methods were not well adapted to his ends. He was consequently unsuccessful both abroad and at home. He sympathized with the German Protestants: yet he made no effort to save them from the temporary ruin which was brought upon them by Charles V.'s victory at Mühlberg, Saxony, in April 1547. So too, nearer home, he sympathized with the party of ecclesiastical reform in Scotland (§ 337): nevertheless, he allowed that party to lose their stronghold, St. Andrews, before he marched north to their aid. On September 10 he defeated the Scots at Pinkie Cleugh, a few miles east of Edinburgh. But the victory and the ravaging with which it was accompanied merely strengthened the anti-English party in Scotland. The five-year-old queen Mary (§ 312), instead of being

won as the wife of England's boy-king (cf. § 170), was sent to France and betrothed to the Dauphin Francis in 1548; and the regency was, after an interval, acquired by the Queen-Mother, Mary of Guise. The old Franco-Scottish alliance was renewed, as usual, under pressure of the English aggression; and Somerset found himself too much occupied with domestic affairs to check this movement.

**§ 318. Somerset's Ecclesiastical Measures, 1547-1549.**—The elevation of Somerset to the head of the State was followed by the suspension or imprisonment on various pretexts of the more conservative bishops—e. g. Gardiner and Bonner—and by a series of rapid changes in the Church. In 1547 a Royal Commission conducted an ecclesiastical visitation for the purpose of removing images and seeing that English was substituted for Latin in public worship; and in the same year Parliament placed in the hands of the Crown the direct appointment of bishops (§ 297) and all the remaining property of ecclesiastical corporations (§§ 305, 319). A *Book of Homilies* edited by Cranmer was also issued: these were to be read instead of original sermons by the parochial clergy, and were designed to teach the people the excellence of the changes that had been made or were about to be made. Early in 1549 Parliament passed the *First Act of Uniformity*, enforcing the use, in public worship throughout the land, of Prayer-Books based on the service-books hitherto in use, but remodelled and composed in English.

**§ 319. Social and Economic Discontent, 1549.**—The suddenness of these changes in the public conduct of religion, and the rapacity shown by many of those who were engaged in carrying them out, both startled and disgusted the nation. The poorer classes especially were affected in pocket as well as in sentiment. The ecclesiastical corporations whose property had been confiscated in 1547 included the gilds whose funds had been applied to educate the children, to maintain the aged, and to pay for masses for the repose of the souls of the dead belonging to the members of the gilds: their religious endowments had been swept away on the ground that this last use was "superstitious." Some of the wealth thus acquired by the State was devoted to the reconstitution of the schools still known as "King Edward VI.'s Grammar Schools"; but the bulk fell into the hands of the needy courtiers and their dependants. The disendowment of these gilds took place just at a time when such benefit-societies were peculiarly needed: the turning of arable land into pasture was throwing out of employment many who, in default of such means of relief as the dissolved monasteries and

dissolved gilds dispensed, were compelled to become "sturdy vagabonds" wandering about in search of food, and taking it by force if they could not stave off hunger by the gifts of the charitable. The savage *Vagrancy Act* of 1547—authorizing the captors of such vagabonds to keep them as slaves—was found quite useless, and was repealed two years later. Somerset issued a Commission to investigate the grievances of the unemployed: he thus raised hopes of relief which he could do nothing to realize.

§ 320. **Insurrections in West and East, 1549.**—Religious and social discontent broke out into open insurrection in the year 1549. The first use of the new Prayer-Book on Whitsunday led to a popular rising in the West of England (cf. §§ 303, 304), which was crushed by Lord Russell in June. Next month a more formidable rising to ameliorate the social condition of the people burst forth in Norfolk, under the leadership of Robert Kett, a wealthy tanner: it was nearly six weeks before this movement was put down by John Dudley, Earl of Warwick, at Duffindale, near Norwich. These were only the two principal risings amongst a large number of disturbances, which were so widespread and serious that the Government was obliged to employ German and Italian mercenaries for their suppression.

## II. ASCENDANCY OF NORTHUMBERLAND, 1549-1553.

§ 321. **Fall of Somerset, October 1549.**—Somerset had not been successful; and his openly expressed sympathy with the poorer classes had brought him no popularity, while it caused him to be regarded with suspicion by his wealthy colleagues. Early in 1549 he had been able to send to the block his brother Thomas—Lord Seymour of Sudeley, and husband of Henry VIII.'s widow, Katharine Parr (§ 314)—for a "treasonable" attempt to supplant him; but in October Warwick, the victor of Duffindale, made a more successful attempt. Somerset was imprisoned for a few months, and his rival took his place, not however as "Lord Protector" but simply as "Lord President of the Council." Two years later Warwick was raised to the dukedom of Northumberland, and Somerset was executed on the charge of making a felonious attempt to unseat him.

§ 322. **Further Ecclesiastical Reforms, 1549-1552.**—Just before Somerset's fall England had drifted into war with France, which was brought to a close in March 1550 by the retrocession of Henry VIII.'s conquest, Boulogne (§ 312). The rest of Northumberland's rule was mostly occupied with attempts to carry the Reform-



ation still further, and to secure its continuance in England. The ecclesiastical measures were, as before, under the guidance of Cranmer, but they were now largely influenced by the German Protestants who took refuge in England from the troubles in Saxony, Zurich, and the Rhine-lands (§§ 317, 335). In 1552 a *Second Act of Uniformity* imposed a shilling fine for absence from Church, and prescribed the use of Edward VI.'s Second Prayer-Book. Its general tendency was shown by its attitude to the typical controversy of the day: the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper was no longer described as "commonly called the Mass," and it was treated rather as a memorial service than as, in any sense, sacrificial (§ 307). So, too, the *Forty-Two Articles of Religion* promulgated in the following year were distinctly based, not, like the Prayer-Book, on the mediaeval formularies of the Anglican Church, but on recent Lutheran "confessions."

§ 323. **The Attempt to Change the Succession, 1553.**—The knowledge that Edward was rapidly dying of consumption made his advisers anxious as to the future position both of the English Church and of themselves under his lawful successor. The Princess Mary had steadily refused to conform to the altered services of the reign, and had been allowed to keep on her own way for fear of offending her powerful cousin, Charles V. There was no doubt that she would undo her brother's, if not her father's, work; and Northumberland, by insisting on this point, persuaded the King that it was his duty to preserve the present religion of the country by changing the succession. Barely a month before the precocious youth died, he issued letters-patent cancelling the succession authorized by Parliament in 1544 (§ 314), and appointing as his heir, Lady Jane Grey, grand-daughter of Henry VIII.'s younger sister Mary (Table, p. 176). Though a minor, he thus attempted to effect on his own authority far more sweeping succession changes than his father had ever attempted with the authority of Parliament (§§ 297, 302, 314).

### III. MARY AS SOLE QUEEN, 1553-1554.

§ 324. **The Nine Days' Queen, 1553.**—The choice of Lady Jane Grey as successor to Edward VI. was due to Northumberland, who had married the girl to his son, Lord Guildford Dudley, and who hoped thus to secure the continuance and even the increase of his power. His ambition overreached itself. A section of the Council opposed to him warned Mary to keep away from London, and, when Northumberland went into the Eastern Counties in search of her, proclaimed Mary as Queen. Jane, who had been persuaded

that her succession was not only legal but also popular, readily yielded to Mary; her father-in-law was executed as a traitor; and Mary became the first Queen Regnant in England (§ 315).

**§ 325. The Queen's Ecclesiastical Proceedings, 1553.**—The daughter of Katharine of Aragon naturally regarded the ecclesiastical changes of the past twenty years with disapproval: she was resolved to undo both the ecclesiastico-political work of her father and the more properly religious work of her brother. In the latter of these objects she had the bulk of the whole nation, in the former she had the bulk of the clergy, on her side. She at once let it be known that foreign Protestants could no longer regard England as a safe asylum; she imprisoned Cranmer for taking part in the late attempt to exclude her from the throne; she restored Gardiner and Bonner to the sees of Winchester and London respectively; she dispossessed all the bishops and clergy who had taken advantage of the Edwardian Act of Parliament legalizing the marriage of the clergy (§ 95); and she authorized the use of the old service-books. Her first Parliament, which met in October, showed its approval of her action so far by formally repealing the ecclesiastical statutes of the last reign, and thus restoring the state of things which had existed under Henry VIII. Parliament also declared Mary legitimate and Head on earth of the Church of England; but it would not listen to suggestions of restoring the church-lands (§ 328).

**§ 326. Marriage Projects and Insurrections, 1554.**—The religious conservatives had thus got by peaceable means from Mary and her advisers what they had failed to extort by force from the advisers of Edward VI. (§ 320)—viz. the restoration of the church-services to which they were accustomed. They were content, but Mary wanted more: she desired to restore the Papal Supremacy in England, and the better to effect this she wished to marry Philip, the son and heir of her cousin Charles V. Amongst other persons named as possible husbands were Reginald, Cardinal Pole, and Edward Courtnay, Earl of Devon, both descended from the royal house of York (Table, p. 144), and more generally acceptable to the nation as being not aliens but Englishmen. Gardiner, now Lord Chancellor and Mary's chief adviser, strongly urged the claims of Courtnay: finding that impracticable, he endeavoured to frame a marriage-treaty with Philip which should guarantee the continued independence of England. The marriage was formally announced in January 1554, and immediately there broke out risings in the Southern and Midland districts of England to frustrate the project.

The most formidable was that of the Kentishmen under Sir Thomas Wyatt, the poet's son (cf. § 276). Mary's courage rallied the men of London to her side; Wyatt was taken prisoner at Temple Bar; and the leaders of the various risings, together with Lady Jane and her husband, suffered death in consequence of the attempt. The Princess Elizabeth narrowly escaped the same fate, and was virtually a prisoner for the rest of her sister's reign.

§ 327. **The Spanish Marriage, 1554.**—Mary's second Parliament gave its approval to the marriage, and in July Philip came over to England for the ceremony. He had been made King of Naples for the occasion; and within the next two years Charles resigned to him all his Spanish, Italian, and Burgundian dominions (Table, p. 190). Though it failed to realize the expectations based upon it, this marriage is one of the most important facts in the sixteenth century. It reduced England from the position of a separate factor in European politics to that of a Hapsburg dependency (§§ 263, 332). The German Protestants, with the aid of Henry II. of France, had recently recovered from their overthrow at Mühlberg (§ 317), and were in process of winning legal toleration from the Emperor. This they formally obtained by the *Religious Peace of Augsburg*, 1555; and for the next sixty years Germany lay in broken rest under the descendants of Charles's brother Ferdinand (§ 378). Charles V.'s failure in Germany, and the approaching partition of his dignities between his brother and his son, made him welcome Philip's marriage with Mary as restoring the Balance of Power.

#### IV. PHILIP AND MARY, 1554-1558.

§ 328. **The Reconciliation with Rome, November 1554.**—These broader political results of the Spanish marriage were remote and problematical: its effects on the strictly ecclesiastical situation in England were immediate. Mary's third Parliament reversed the attainder of Cardinal Pole, and repealed all anti-Papal legislation since the twentieth year of Henry VIII. (§§ 290-298). Pole returned to England as Papal Legate, and on November 30 formally received the submission of the nation, as represented by the kneeling Queen and Parliament, to the Holy See. This recognition, like the previous repudiation, of the Papal supremacy was achieved by the civil and ecclesiastical assemblies of the land under the guidance of the reigning monarch. It is worth noting that the laity, as represented in Parliament, agreed to the renewal of the ties between the Church of England and Rome only on the express stipulation that the ecclesi-

astical property which had changed hands should not be restored to its former owners (§§ 301, 305). Both Mary and the Pope had to accept this condition; and when Mary obtained the assent of Parliament to divest herself of the first-fruits, she was not allowed to pay them over, as before, to the Papacy (§ 298). These facts illustrate both the power of Parliament and the religious attitude of the nation.

**§ 329. The Marian Persecution, 1555-1558.**—Early in 1555 Parliament revived the anti-Lollard statutes passed during the reigns of Henry IV. and Henry V. (§§ 225, 232); and, armed with these powers, the Government began that persecution of heretics which has earned for the Queen and for Bonner the epithet of "Bloody." Altogether about three hundred persons of all ranks and ages were burnt at the stake, mainly in the South-east of England, the part most exposed to Continental influences. Amongst the more distinguished victims were John Hooper, Nicolas Ridley, Hugh Latimer, and Thomas Cranmer, who had respectively occupied the sees of Gloucester, London, Worcester, and Canterbury. The persecution, which was much more severe than any other recorded in English History, has been ascribed to the initiative of various persons—Mary herself, Bonner, Gardiner, and Pole, who succeeded Cranmer as Primate of All England. The authorship of the persecution, however, is less important than its results. It began after, and was generally considered a consequence of, the Spanish marriage: it inspired the bulk of the English nation with a great horror of "Popery" and Spain (§§ 346, 367). Latimer's last words to Ridley at the stake were prophetic—"We shall this day light such a candle by God's grace in England, as I trust shall never be put out."

**§ 330. Loss of Calais and Mary's death, 1558.**—While the persecution on behalf of Roman Catholicism was going on, England was dragged at the heels of Spain into a war against Henry II., in which Pope Paul IV. was the political ally of France. Early in 1558 the French took Calais, the last possession of England on the Continent (§§ 201, 246). Mary, already disheartened by her involuntary quarrel with the Papacy, by her husband's coldness, and by her childlessness, was driven distracted by the loss of Calais. She died of dropsy in November 1558, and her death was followed a few hours later by that of Cardinal Pole. Few rulers of England have so unswervingly done what they conceived to be their duty: yet all her earnest efforts were crowned by failure, and she had the bitterness of knowing that the daughter of the woman who had supplanted her mother would overthrow all her work.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

### ELIZABETH'S CHURCH-SETTLEMENT, 1558-1570.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Daughter of Henry VIII. and his second wife Anne Boleyn; born at Greenwich, September 7, 1533; succeeded her half-sister as Queen of England, November 17, 1558; died at Richmond, March 24, 1603; buried at Westminster. *Principal* suitors: Philip II. of Spain; James Hamilton, Earl of Arran; Robert Dudley, Earl of Leicester; Emanuel Filibert, Duke of Savoy; the Archduke Charles of Austria; Prince Eric of Sweden; Ivan the Terrible, first Tzar of Russia (1533-1584); Charles IX. of France; Henry, Duke of Anjou (later, Henry III. of France); Francis, Duke of Alençon, later of Anjou.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	SCOTLAND.	TURKEY.
Paul IV. (1555) Pius IV. (1559) Pius V. (1566)	Ferdinand I. (1558) Maximilian II. (1564)	Henry II. (1547) Francis II. (1559) Charles IX. (1560)	Philip II. (1556)	Mary (1542) (Returns home from France, 1561; deposed, 1567) James VI. (1567)	Suleiman I. (1520) Selim II. (1566)

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

#### (i) *International; dealings with—*

- (1) Papacy: §§ 334-336.
- (2) France: §§ 332, 337, 338.
- (3) Spain: §§ 332, 336.
- (4) Scotland: §§ 332, 336-341.

#### (ii) *Constitutional.*

- (1) Succession Questions: §§ 332, 338, 339.
- (2) Elizabeth's Courtships: §§ 334, 339.
- (3) Church-settlement: §§ 333-5.
- (4) Penal Statutes: § 338.
- (5) Parliament: §§ 333, 338, 339.
- (6) Maritime Enterprise: § 331.
- (7) Plots: § 341.

### I. THE ELIZABETHAN CHURCH-SETTLEMENT, 1558-1559.

§ 331. *Survey of Elizabeth's Reign, 1558-1603.*—"The spacious times of Great Elizabeth" have become proverbial. Her reign is marked by the settlement of the Church of England on a broad basis which still endures, by the elevation of the State of England to a front place in European politics which it has never

wholly lost, by an outburst of literary activity in which Marlowe and Shakspeare, Spenser and Sidney, Hooker and Bacon were the prime movers, by the spreading of English maritime effort into every sea under men like Gilbert, Drake, Hawkins, Frobisher, and Davys, by the close of the long warfare between England and Scotland, and by the completion of the first English conquest of Ireland. The manifold achievements thus baldly summarized justify the pride with which Englishmen look back upon this forty years' reign; they also serve to throw into relief Elizabeth's share in the work. At the beginning of her reign the outlook, so far from being "spacious," was narrow and depressing in the extreme; and though she did not indeed make Shakspeare or Drake, nor did she defeat the Armada, yet it was her personal influence on the conduct of the government that gave to her subjects the opportunities of which, even against her will, they availed themselves. Under the preceding Tudors, More and Tyndale, Surrey and Wyatt had done notable things in English literature, John Cabot and Richard Chancellor had done notable things in seamanship for England; but it was under Elizabeth that England attained the full fruition of the intellectual and geographical Renaissance (§§ 264-266).

§ 332. **Elizabeth's Title and its Gainsayers, 1558.**—When Elizabeth came to the English throne her realm was poor and distracted, and her own title was disputed. Her first business, therefore, was to obtain peace abroad: her second, was to secure peace at home by bringing about an ecclesiastical settlement which, if it did not satisfy, would at least pacify, all religious parties. The Anglo-Spanish war with France was still going on (§ 330), and it had been made more dangerous for England by the marriage, early in 1558, of the Dauphin Francis to Mary Queen of Scots (§§ 317, 337). If Elizabeth was illegitimate, if Parliament had no power to make good the defect of birth, and if the right to the English throne properly depended on hereditary descent alone, the Scottish Queen had indisputably a better claim to the crown of England than Elizabeth could show (Table, p. 176). Now all these positions were reasonable enough to be accepted by many Englishmen; and for many years Elizabeth's chief concern was to avoid giving sufficient offence to these legitimists to drive them to arms in support of their principles, and to prevent any foreign Power giving aid to English malcontents. She gained a breathing space, as she had already escaped execution as a traitor (§ 326), through the friendship of Philip of Spain, who, believed her to be a bastard, and suspected that she was a heretic,

yet could not, as a politician, allow England to fall into the hands of the Stuart claimant, and pass from the Hapsburg to the Valois group of states (§ 327). Philip therefore insisted that England should be included in the general *Peace of Câteau-Cambrésis*, April 1559.

**§ 333. The Church-Settlement, 1559.**—Elizabeth quickly gave proofs that, though there was to be a change of policy, the change would be moderate. While she stopped burnings and imprisonment for heresy, she also stopped unlicensed preaching by the Edwardian ministers who had taken refuge abroad during Mary's reign (§ 325). So also she retained Mary's Council, adding thereto William Cecil and Francis Walsingham, two men who were to be her chief advisers for well-nigh forty years (§ 359). In January she was crowned and met her first Parliament, whose first two Acts embodied the framework of the Elizabethan church-settlement:—

- (i) *The [Second] Act of Supremacy* revives all Henry VIII.'s ecclesiastical legislation, save the Statutes of the *Supreme Head* and of the *Six Articles*; repudiates all foreign spiritual authority, assigning penalties for maintaining the jurisdiction of any foreign prince or prelate; restores to the Crown its "ancient jurisdiction over the estate ecclesiastical and spiritual," and empowers the Crown to appoint Commissioners for the exercise of its jurisdiction [cf. §§ 300, 344]; and imposes an Oath of Supremacy and Allegiance on all office-holders in Church or State.
- (ii) *The [Third] Act of Uniformity* orders, under penalties of fine or imprisonment, the attendance of the laity at church on Sundays and Holy-days, and the use of a slightly revised edition of the Second Prayer-Book of Edward VI. [cf. §§ 322, 325].

**§ 334. Elizabeth's Attitude to the Papacy.**—To the Church of England, as thus remodelled, Elizabeth required outward conformity from all, and from persons in authority a formal profession of obedience under oath. She herself as a subject had always conformed to the law of the land in these matters, and as a Queen she expected her subjects to follow her example of conformity. She did not exact belief in any cut-and-dried dogmatic system: it was not belief in the truth that she required, but conformity to the law. And she tried to make the law as palatable as she could to the varied tastes which the changes of the last thirty years had developed (§ 266). For instance, she dropped the title of "Supreme Head of the Church" in favour of the less aggressive title, "Supreme Governor of the realm in all causes ecclesiastical as well as civil"; she adopted both the formulæ used in administering the Sacrament of the Lord's

Supper in the two Prayer-Books of Edward VI.; and she cut out of the Litany the prayer to be delivered "from the Bishop of Rome and all his detestable enormities." It is said that Pope Pius IV. in 1561 offered to authorize the use of this English Prayer-Book and Communion in Both Kinds if England would return to the Roman obedience; but it was practically impossible for the daughter of Anne Boleyn to recognize an authority which had declared, and must continue to hold, her mother's marriage invalid and herself illegitimate (§ 297). These same facts lay at the root of Elizabeth's refusal of Philip II.'s hand in marriage (§ 332).

§ 335. **The Via Media of the Anglican Church.**—Despite Elizabeth's concessions, some one hundred and eighty-nine clergymen—including the entire bench of bishops (15), save Kitchen of Llandaff—declined to accept the Elizabethan church-settlement; and many who accepted it regarded it as merely a stop-gap reform. The former looked to Rome, apparently *semper eadem*: the latter looked rather to Geneva, the independent city-state in which the Frenchman John Calvin had been building up a new dogmatic theology, and in which many Englishmen had taken refuge from the Marian persecution. It was the gradual drawing asunder of these rival schools that frustrated Elizabeth's attempt to find a *via media*—a "middle way" which all religious parties might conscientiously tread. Those who wanted to go back to the mediæval ideal of a visible universal Church, outwardly united, owning obedience to the Bishop of Rome (*Roman Catholics*), and those who wished to move still farther away from the forms in which that ideal had clothed itself (*Puritans*), slowly withdrew from the Church of England (§§ 342-4, 348). The circumstances of the time gave these attempts at withdrawal a political significance; and they were treated as seditious or treasonable by Elizabeth's Government.

§ 336. **International Conditions of the Reign.**—The Anglican church-settlement, Elizabeth's position on the English throne, and the independence of England—three things quite separable in thought—were so closely connected in fact that all Elizabeth's irreconcilable enemies are found to be adherents of Rome, all her stoutest defenders (not necessarily all her allies) are found to be opponents of Rome. Political and national necessities, far more than religious convictions or preferences, caused Elizabeth to drift into a position of practical headship over the Protestant Powers of Europe, and the bulk of Englishmen to glory in the name of Protestant. The permanent forces ranged in opposition to Elizabeth



may always be labelled Roman Catholic; but these forces were embodied in different leaders from time to time. The front rank of the opposition was successively held by Mary Queen of Scots (§§ 337-341), the Papacy itself (§§ 342-352), and Philip of Spain (§§ 353-358). All these attempted to turn the internal elements of dissatisfaction existing in England against Elizabeth.

## II. THE STRUGGLE WITH MARY QUEEN OF SCOTS, 1559-1569.

§ 337. **The Scottish Reformation, 1557-1560.**—By the death of Henry II. in July 1559, his son Francis and his daughter-in-law, Mary Queen of Scots, were suddenly elevated to the throne of France; and despite the terms of the *Peace of Câteau-Cambrésis* (§ 332) they resolved to strain every resource for making good their claims to the throne of England also. They had to begin by obtaining a firm grip of Scotland. There the Regent, Mary of Guise, had been attempting, with the aid of French troops, to suppress movements in favour of church-reform, and she had thus aroused a national outburst of anti-foreign and anti-Papal feeling even stronger than Mary Tudor had aroused in England. The Scottish Reformation was organized theologically by John Knox, an ardent disciple of Calvin, and politically by the Nobles, acting as "Lords of the Congregation," under the leadership of Mary's illegitimate half-brother, James Stuart, Earl of Moray. The Reformers deposed the Regent in October 1559, and summoned Elizabeth to their aid. Elizabeth had theoretical objections to rebellion (§ 353), but still stronger practical objections to the establishment of French influence in North Britain. While declining, therefore, to marry the Earl of Arran, heir presumptive to the Scots crown, and become Queen of Scotland, she promised help in the *Treaty of Berwick*, February 1560; and, aided by her troops, the Scottish Lords were able to compel the French garrison to evacuate Leith in July. At the end of the year Francis II. died, and his widow resolved to go back to Scotland.

§ 338. **Mary's Widowhood in Scotland, 1561-1565.**—Mary landed in Scotland in August 1561. She refused to be bound by that part of the *Treaty of Edinburgh* which arranged for her renunciation of her English claims, but she accepted that part which left the settlement of the Scottish Kirk to the Estates. On that basis she aimed at building up a national party in Scotland which should be devoted to her person, and give her a strength greater than that which she had lost through the death of her French husband. Backed by her Scots subjects she hoped to be able to unseat

Elizabeth, and then, throwing off the mask, to restore Roman Catholicism throughout the island of Britain. The two queens were evenly matched in personal capacity : Mary was younger and more winsome, but less cautious than Elizabeth ; they were equally persistent in their respective aims, and equally unscrupulous in their choice of means. During the four years which Mary patiently devoted to strengthening her position in Scotland, Elizabeth sent some help to the Protestant insurgents, called *Huguenots*, in France—in the course of which she held Havre for nine months (1562-3)—and passed her first penal statute against the English adherents of the See of Rome (§ 343).

§ 339. **The Succession Question in England, 1565-1567.**—Mary's first overt act of hostility to Elizabeth was her marriage, in July 1565, to her cousin Henry, Lord Darnley (Table, p. 176). She thus strengthened her English claims by uniting them with those of the next-of-kin ; and when, in June 1566, she gave birth to an heir—James, the future King of England (§ 369)—the English demand that Elizabeth should make provision for the future by either marrying a husband, or naming a successor, became loud and firm. The demand was formulated in Elizabeth's second Parliament (1566), and pressed so keenly that she was constrained to forbid the discussion. The Commons protested against her intervention as an infringement of their privilege of Freedom of Debate ; and after a struggle, Elizabeth gave way on the point of Privilege, while Parliament, in return, dropped its demands. Elizabeth saw the difficulties in the way of making a decision much more clearly than either her professional advisers in Council or her amateur advisers in Parliament. She could neither marry nor name a successor without offending one or other of the religious parties whom, by temporizing and feeding with hopes, she hoped to reconcile equally with her rule. Among the many suitors for her hand during this period the chief had been two Roman Catholics, Philip of Spain and his cousin the Archduke Charles (Table, p. 190), and two Protestants, Eric, son of Gustav Wasa of Sweden, and Robert Dudley, Earl of Leicester, fifth son of the Duke of Northumberland (§§ 321, 324). Philip was the most powerful personage in Europe ; Leicester was the man she loved most dearly : she refused their offers, as she refused all other offers, mainly because she believed that to commit herself to a husband and a clear line of policy would plunge England into civil war. The possibility of her marriage was a diplomatic weapon, the handling of which delighted both her

queenly instincts and her woman's vanity: to marry would have disarmed her and possibly given her a master. For these reasons she remained a "Virgin Queen"; and for similar reasons she declined to adjudge the succession either in favour of the claims of the House of Suffolk, which rested on Henry VIII.'s *Succession Acts* (§ 314), or in favour of the hereditary claims of the House of Stuart (Table p. 176).

**§ 340. Mary's Fall and Flight to England, 1567-1569.**—The results of Mary's adventures in matrimony seemed to justify Elizabeth's preference for spinsterhood. Darnley, a jealous and vicious weakling, was murdered after less than two years of married life; and when Mary proceeded to marry his murderer, James Hepburn, Earl of Bothwell, she became suspected of conniving at the murder, and was attacked by the Scottish nobility. Her defeat at Carberry Hill, in June 1567, was followed by her deposition and imprisonment; and when she escaped from prison in May 1568 she was defeated by Moray at Langside, near Glasgow. Her subsequent flight to England placed Elizabeth in an embarrassing position: was she to restore her rival, or let her go free to make friends elsewhere, or try to keep her out of harm's way by detaining her in captivity? After a Royal Commission, sitting at York, had held a brief enquiry into Mary's conduct—leaving her character in the position it still occupies, that of an unsolved problem—it was decided to adopt the method of disguised imprisonment (§§ 352, 355).

**§ 341. The Rising of the Northern Earls, 1569.**—For the next nineteen years Mary Queen of Scots remained in England and became the centre of a long series of intrigues against Elizabeth. When the plots were thickest, she was made a close prisoner: at other times she was treated as a kind of compulsory guest. She had not been in England much more than a year when, in October 1569, the murmurings of the Catholic North broke out into open rebellion (cf. § 303). The object was to rescue Mary, place her on the English throne, marry her either to the Duke of Norfolk or to Don John of Austria, and restore England to the Roman obedience. The Earl of Sussex, President of the North, suppressed the rising with difficulty: its leaders, Thomas Percy and Charles Neville, Earls of Northumberland and Westmorland respectively, took refuge in Scotland. There the "Queen's Party" raised its head in consequence of the English insurrection and the assassination of the Regent Moray in January 1570; and it was only by the intervention of Elizabeth in 1573 that the Castle of Edinburgh was recovered for the young King.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

### THE STRUGGLE FOR NATIONAL INDEPENDENCE, 1570-1603.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—See previous chapter.

#### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	SCOTLAND.	TURKEY.
Pius V. (1566)	Maximilian II. (1564)	Charles IX (1560)	Philip II. (1556)	James VI. (1567)	Selim II. (1566)
Gregory XIII. (1572)		Henry III (1574)		(His mother Mary de- posed, 1567; executed, 1587)	Murad III. (1574)
Sixtus V. (1585)	Rudolf II. (1576-1612)				
Urban VII. (1590)		Henry IV. (1589- 1610)			
Gregory XIV (1590)		( <i>First Bour- bon King of France</i> )			
Innocent IX. (1591)			Philip III. (1598-1621)		Muhammad III. (1596-1603)
Clement VIII. (1592-1605)					

#### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

**(i) International : relations with—**

- (1) Papacy: §§ 342, 343, 345, 346, 349-351.
- (2) France: §§ 345, 346, 348, 353, 354, 357.
- (3) Spain: §§ 345-9, 351-358.
- (4) United Provinces: §§ 352, 353.
- (5) Portugal: §§ 352, 357.
- (6) The East Indies: § 357.
- (7) Scotland: §§ 353, 355.

**(ii) Constitutional.**

- (1) Royal Succession: §§ 343, 355.
- (2) Elizabeth's Courtships: §§ 345, 349, 353.
- (3) Church: §§ 343, 344, 348, 351, 359. [359.]
- (4) Penal Statutes: §§ 343, 350.
- (5) Parliament: §§ 343, 344, 347, 348, 350, 359, 360.
- (6) Plots: §§ 341, 347, 352, 355.
- (7) Maritime Enterprise: §§ 346, 349, 354, 356, 357.
- (8) Ireland: §§ 347, 351, 358.

#### I. THE PAPAL ATTACK, 1573-1584.

**§ 342. Papal Bull of Deposition, 1570.**—When Mary passed behind the scenes as a captive, the leadership in the attacks on Elizabeth was assumed by the three energetic Popes who successively held office from 1566 to 1590—Pius V., Gregory XIII., and Sixtus V. These Popes put themselves at the head of the movement, known as the Counter-Reformation and formulated at the Council of

Trent (1545-1563), which was making firm the hold of Rome on South Europe, and was winning ground from Protestantism even in Germany itself. Their plan of action against England was to keep up the spirits of the waning majority that still clung to Rome in their hearts (§ 335), and, when a suitable opportunity should present itself, to set Mary on all the three British thrones by means of a rising of English Romanists backed by foreign help. But Pius V., like Paul III. thirty years before (§ 304), missed the great opportunity offered by the Northern Insurrection, and did not declare open war on England until the following year. In May 1570 he published in England his *Bull of Excommunication and Deposition* against Elizabeth. This Bull, known from its opening words as *Regnans in Excelsis*, strictly charged all good Catholics to avoid the sin of keeping any oaths of allegiance to Elizabeth, who, being a bastard, a heretic, and a usurper, was unfit to rule over Christians. The Bull called upon all Englishmen to choose once and for all between the Pope and the Queen: it is one of the great landmarks of English History.

§ 343. **English Anti-Papal Legislation, 1571.**—English dislike of foreign interference enabled Elizabeth to make a quick and defiant retort to the Bull. Her third Parliament declared it to be high treason to claim Elizabeth's crown, to affirm, without parliamentary authority, that any other person ought to be reigning instead of Elizabeth, or to call her "a heretic, schismatic, tyrant, infidel, usurper of the crown." By another Act, Parliament made it high treason to import Papal Bulls or reconcile persons to the See of Rome, and subjected to the penalties of *praemunire* all who imported or used religious symbols and pictures blessed by the Bishop of Rome or his deputies. No religious belief or conscientious scruple was allowed to excuse attempts to upset the existing political status of England, as a sovereign power whose rulers were responsible to God alone (cf. § 95).

§ 344. **The Rise of Puritanism, 1566-1571.**—The political attack of the Papacy was met by political measures of defence; but when certain members of the House of Commons sought to use the attack as a reason for further reformation of the Church, Elizabeth barred the way. She held that her supremacy over the Church included the sole right of initiative in ecclesiastical legislation. When, therefore, Strickland introduced a Bill for the amendment of the Prayer-Book in the session of 1571, she ordered him to absent himself from the House; and though she recalled the order, when

the Commons insisted that it was an infringement of their privilege of Freedom of Debate, the objectionable Bill was dropped (cf. § 339). Quite apart from the point of method, Elizabeth did not wish the Prayer-Book or any part of her church-settlement to be tampered with: she thought the nation had had enough of changes, and wished them to grow accustomed to her compromise. But the innovating party, no less than the reactionary party, was becoming aggressive: in 1565 they had protested loudly against Archbishop Parker's enforcement of the use of vestments; and about that time their demands for a "purer" form of worship won them the nickname of "Puritans." As yet, these Puritans conformed to the Church, but strove to mould it to their liking (§§ 364, 372). The Court of High Commission—a mixed body, to which the disciplinary powers of the Royal Supremacy were delegated from time to time (§§ 333, 400)—had much ado to keep them in order; and the Star Chamber sought to prevent the publication of their opinions by keeping a strict watch over the number and products of the Printing Press (§ 264). The rule of the Church, as by law established, was much clearer in ritual than in doctrine. In 1571, therefore, Parliament passed a law requiring all Anglican clergymen to assent to the *Thirty-nine Articles of Faith and Religion*—which Queen and Convocation had constructed in 1563 out of the *Forty-two Articles* of Edward VI.'s reign (§ 322).

#### § 345. Attitude of France and Spain to Elizabeth, 1570.

—The Pope had declared war against Elizabeth, but he found it difficult to marshal his forces for the attack: the English Romanists dared not move without foreign help; and the two chief princes who were pledged to the Papacy were much more influenced by their political jealousies than by their religious duty of joining in a crusade against the heretic queen. Besides, both Philip II. and Charles IX. had special difficulties about 1570. Philip's chief difficulty lay in the Netherlands, which had fallen to his share in the partition of the Hapsburg inheritance (§ 327), and where his attempts to establish a centralised despotism, ecclesiastical and civil, on the ruins of local liberties had raised serious disturbances. From 1567 to 1573 the Duke of Alva was engaged there in restoring peace by high-handed measures which roused a deeper resentment than they stilled. France, under the weak descendants of Francis I. (1547-1589), was a prey to party-struggles and religious wars: its foreign policy was uncertain in the extreme. At the beginning of Elizabeth's reign it was ranged on the side of Mary against

Elizabeth; but the dissolution of the Valois-Stuart connection had changed the situation (§§ 337, 338). On the whole England and France had so much to fear from the might of Philip, should he once surmount his domestic difficulties, that they constantly tended towards amity. When Pope Pius launched his Bull against Elizabeth in 1570 active negotiations were proceeding for her marriage to Henry, Duke of Anjou, younger brother and afterwards successor of Charles IX.; and during the greater part of the reign alliance with France was the corner-stone of Elizabeth's foreign policy.

§ 346. **English Trespassing on Spanish Preserves, 1562-1568.**—England and France were alike interested in keeping Philip's hands too full with his own concerns to leave him leisure to meddle in other people's. They were especially anxious to prevent him from getting a firm footing in the Netherlands, lest thereby he should acquire a good vantage ground for aggressive action against either State. Both Governments, therefore, connived at the action of their own troublesome religious malcontents in giving aid to the growing Protestant element in the ranks of the Netherlandish insurgents. Elizabeth and her subjects were also able, without going to open war, to cripple Philip by cutting off his money-supplies. In 1568 Elizabeth hampered Alva seriously by the temporary detention of some treasure-ships which were conveying money for the pay of the Spanish troops in the Netherlands. In the same year Francis Drake had his first serious brush with the Spaniards in the New World. Spain and Portugal considered—and the Pope Alexander VI. had formally sanctioned the view in a Bull of 1495—that they had the sole right of visiting and trading with those parts of the world which they had revealed to the knowledge of Europe. But after long acquiescence in this assumption, the hardy seamen of Devon had begun to visit the Spanish dominions in America—combining, like the Norse vikings of old, the functions of trader and pirate, as opportunity offered (§§ 34, 53). In 1562 John Hawkins began the lucrative business of supplying the Spanish colonies in America with negro slaves. This example was widely followed; the visits were regarded by the Spanish authorities as unlawful, and English traders were punished, when caught, either as trespassers or as heretics; stories of Spanish cruelty spread abroad; and the first ten years of Elizabeth witnessed the beginning of a chronic state of war between Englishmen and Spaniards in the dark corners of the West Indies and the Spanish Main. "There was no peace beyond the [Papal] Line." (See Map, p. 170.)

§ 347. **The Ridolfi Plot, 1571.**—Though Philip suffered much from the action of Elizabeth's subjects in America and the Low Countries, he did not wish as yet to cumber himself with a war against England. He would not even help the Northern Rising of 1569, or the contemporary insurrections in the South of Ireland (§§ 341, 351). But his objections to Mary as a rival of Elizabeth had disappeared with the former's French connections; and he therefore gave his secret patronage to the more promising schemes for Elizabeth's removal. One of the most notable of such schemes was arranged in 1571 by Robert Ridolfi, a Florentine banker resident in England. Elizabeth was to be murdered; Alva was then to land 10,000 troops to aid Mary to obtain the throne; Mary was to marry the only English Duke, Norfolk, who was to return to the Roman obedience. About half the peerage, it is said, agreed to support the scheme. Cecil, now Lord Burghley, discovered the plot towards the end of 1571; and in the following year Norfolk was attainted by Parliament and beheaded. Parliament also urged the execution of "the pretended Scottish Queen," but Elizabeth would not yet listen to the united prayers of the Commons and of her ministers. But, like her father (§ 291), she used the parliamentary demonstration as a proof that she had the nation on her side.

§ 348. **Murmurings against Episcopacy, 1572.**—The discovery of Spanish complicity in the Ridolfi plot caused a brief rupture between England and Spain; the slaughter of Huguenots, known as the Massacre of St. Bartholomew's, August 24, 1572, caused a momentary breach with France (§ 345); and both circumstances alike quickened the rising Protestantism of England. The failure of Elizabeth's fourth Parliament in its first session, 1572, to pass any bills either for the reform of the Church, or for the further repression of "Papists," called forth a strong protest entitled, *An Admonition to Parliament*. The author was Dr. Thomas Cartwright, sometime Professor of Divinity at Cambridge—then, as usual, the home of "advanced" opinions (§ 308), in opposition to the normal conservatism of Oxford. In this "Admonition" Cartwright maintained the principle of the independence of the national church from the control of the civil government, and, for the better attainment of this independence, urged the substitution of a *presbyterian* for an *episcopalian* polity in the Church of England. The fundamental idea of Presbyterianism is that all the ministers of the Gospel (*i. e.* presbyters or elders) are by divine appointment equal in rank; it denies the right of any higher "order," such as bishops, "to lord it



over God's heritage"; and it lays great stress on the corporate action of the Church in assemblies. Cartwright's advocacy of Presbyterianism began a long controversy in England, but it had little effect at the time (§§ 402, 420). Elizabeth, a woman of action, was not fond of assemblies or debating-societies: she used Parliament and Convocation as little as possible; and in 1577 she suspended Grindal, Parker's successor as Archbishop of Canterbury, for refusing to suppress a particular kind of diocesan theological debates called *Prophesyings* (§ 372).

§ 349. **Matrimonial and Maritime Speculations, 1572-1579.**—There was a comparative lull during the rest of the seventies. At times, when intervention by England or France, jointly or separately, in the Netherlands, appeared imminent, the negotiations for a marriage between Elizabeth and Henry II.'s youngest son, Francis, Duke of Alençon-Anjou (Table, p. 190) became active. This period was also full of those maritime exploits which have been glowingly depicted in Kingsley's *Westward Ho!* In 1576-7 Martin Frobisher made two voyages in search of a north-west passage to the Indies: he failed, but he has left his name in Frobisher's Strait. In 1575 an Englishman, John Oxenham, first sailed on the Pacific. Drake had caught sight of that Ocean two years before and vowed to sail an English ship in those seas. In 1577 he started on his three years' voyage round the world, in which, sailing round Cape Horn, he plundered the unprotected Spanish towns on the western coast of America and returned by the Cape of Good Hope. Elizabeth apologized to Philip II., took her share of the booty, and gave Drake a knighthood.

§ 350. **Jesuit Invasion of the British Isles, 1579-1581.**—During Drake's absence the onslaught which Pius V. had threatened was made by his successor, Gregory XIII. It is known as the Jesuit Invasion, because its chief instruments were members of that "Society of Jesus" which a group of zealous Spaniards had founded in 1534 for the preservation of the unity of the Latin Church, and which had done more than any other agency to arrest the flowing tide of Protestantism in Europe. Gregory XIII. grew tired of waiting till secular princes were at liberty to devote their resources to the cause of the religion which they professed to make their dearest aim in life; and in 1579-1581 he despatched a small number of Jesuits to stir up disaffection throughout the British Isles. In Scotland the attempt, after a momentary promise of success, roused the nation to express its sense of peril in forming

the *First National Covenant*, 1581 (§ 395). In England the landing of the Jesuits, Campion and Parsons, in the spring of 1580, was the signal for the final abandonment of attempts at conciliation, and for an outburst of penal legislation against converts to Rome and their converters. At the end of the year Campion was caught and executed; and before the end of the reign more than two hundred persons died on the scaffold for their work in a cause which they considered religious, and which their captors with equal justice considered to be political (§ 329). The difference between the Marian and the Elizabethan persecution is simply that the former was carried out in the cause of religious tenets, the latter in the cause of national safety.

§ 351. *Ireland under Elizabeth, 1558-1584.*—The Jesuit Invasion assumed its most dangerous aspect in Ireland. There, as we have seen (§ 311), Henry VIII. had set himself seriously to the task of anglicising and anglicanising the natives. Whatever chances of success his schemes may have had were ruined by his death; the rapid and contradictory changes of the two short reigns which followed were even more unsettling to Ireland than to England; and Elizabeth practically had to begin her father's work over again. Ireland was regarded by Elizabethan politicians partly as a place which no other Power must be allowed to get, partly as a handy rubbish-heap on which to "plant" the offscourings of English society. Philip and Mary had started the method of plantation—i. e. of settling colonies of Englishmen on the lands of dispossessed Irish tribes—in King's County and Queen's County. Various attempts were made under Elizabeth to repeat the experiment—especially in the parts where the rule of England was still merely nominal, viz. in Ulster and Munster. Shane O'Neil, a chieftain of Tyrone, kept Elizabeth's forces at bay during the first six years of her reign. The fear of a plantation in Munster caused risings by the Desmond Geraldines in 1569 (§ 347), and again in 1579. It was the second Desmond Rising which Gregory XIII. hoped to turn to his own purposes (§ 350): the agrarian discontent against England was to be fanned into a religious uprising on behalf of the Papacy. The rebellion broke out; a Papal Legate and a few Spanish soldiers landed to support it in 1580; Lord Grey de Wilton—who figures as *Arthegal* in the "*Faërie Queen*" of his friend, the poet Spenser— butchered the Spanish at Smerwick, and crushed the rebels by sword, by fire, and by famine. The last sparks of the rebellion were stamped out by 1584, and the threatened plantation took place. Edmund Spenser and Sir Walter Raleigh were among the persons

to whom the confiscated lands were allotted for purposes of plantation or colonization.

**§ 352. The Revolt of the United Netherlands, 1581-1584.**

—The slenderness of Philip's support of the Desmond Rising was due to his other engagements: in 1580 he was making good his hereditary claims to Portugal; and in 1581 the seven northern provinces in the Netherlands formed a federal union and, abandoning the attempt to wring constitutional safeguards from him (§ 345), declared themselves independent. It was, however, becoming more obvious that his war against England could not long be postponed; and Mary's adherents again began to be active. In 1583 Throgmorton's plot to assassinate Elizabeth was discovered: in the following year a successful attempt was made to assassinate the founder of the Dutch Republic, William the Silent, Prince of Orange (§ 361).

**II. THE STRUGGLE WITH SPAIN, 1585-1603.**

**§ 353. Elizabeth's Intervention in the Netherlands, 1585-6.**

—The death of William the Silent and of Elizabeth's most enduring suitor, the Duke of Alençon-Anjou, in the summer of 1584, had much influence in forcing matters to a crisis. William's death made the speedy subjugation of the revolted Netherlands highly probable: the certainty that their conquest would be followed by an invasion of England compelled Elizabeth in self-defence to swallow her dislike of "rebels" (§ 337) and make close alliances both with James VI. of Scots and with the United Provinces. In 1585 she sent her old friend Leicester with a powerful army to the Netherlands: the enterprise is notable less for its achievements than for the death of Sir Philip Sidney, one of the best types of Elizabethan chivalry, in a skirmish near Zutphen, in September 1586. Again, the fear lest Elizabeth should meet the same fate as William the Liberator caused a great outburst of patriotic feeling in England: one effect of this was the formation of a strong private Association pledged to prevent Mary from profiting by the murder of her rival (cf. § 523).

**§ 354. Philip's Alliance with the Guises, 1585-6.**—The death of Alençon-Anjou made it quite certain that the male line of the House of Valois would expire with Henry III. (Table, p. 190). The next heir was Henry of Bourbon, King of Navarre; the fact that he was a Huguenot rendered him objectionable to the Roman Catholic majority in France headed by the House of Guise; and in 1585 their leaders entered into a compact with Philip to prevent the Bourbon heretic from coming to the throne. With France friendly and the Netherlands all but conquered, Philip would at length be

free to carry into effect the Papal deposition of Elizabeth (§ 342). The continued plundering by English seamen in his domains was also rendering him desperate: in 1586 Drake, with the connivance of the Queen, plundered Santiago in the Cape Verde Islands, San Domingo in Hispaniola (Hayti), and Cartagena on the Spanish Main.

§ 355. **Execution of Mary Queen of Scots, 1587.**—Philip, despite these provocations, was not eager to undertake an expensive expedition, the main benefit of which would go to another person. But in February 1587 Mary was at length brought to the block on the ground that her promotion, or at least encouragement, of Babington's plot to assassinate Elizabeth had exposed her to the death-penalties of the *Succession Act* of 1571 (§ 343). The justice and the wisdom of her execution have alike been disputed: what is quite certain is that her death and her bequest of her English claims to Philip were the one thing necessary to induce Philip to attempt the invasion of England. He had long been preparing his fleet, or armada; and the expedition would probably have started in the very year of Mary's death, had not Drake destroyed a portion of it in Cadiz harbour. This exploit Drake pleasantly styled "singeing the King of Spain's beard."

§ 356. **The Coming and Going of the Spanish Armada, 1588.**—Elizabeth had so successfully staved off Philip's invasion for thirty years that she could no longer believe in its taking place. She therefore refused to follow her naval experts' advice to take the aggressive and destroy the different portions of the fleet piecemeal in the harbours of the Peninsula. The Armada, thus allowed to concentrate undisturbed, made its appearance off the Lizard on July 13, 1588. It sailed slowly up Channel, and a fortnight later it cast anchor in Calais roads: its object was to cover the embarkation of 20,000 veterans under the Prince of Parma, Philip's commander in the Netherlands. Meanwhile the English fleet—including only 34 royal vessels and five times that number of private ships—had been steadily following the Armada, inflicting what damage it could; and before Parma's embarkation could take place, the English commanders threw the Armada into confusion by sending fire-ships adrift in their midst, and then, attacking before the Spanish ships could re-form, drove the invading fleet northwards. The south-west wind which had hitherto favoured the Armada now stiffened into a gale; it was impossible to return through the Straits of Dover; and in attempting to sail round the weather-beaten coasts of Scotland and Ireland most of the ships were wrecked. Only 53 out

of 132 vessels reached Spain in safety. Elizabeth and Philip agreed in ascribing the failure of the enterprise to wind and wave; but in point of fact the Armada was foiled in fair fight before it was ruined by foul weather. The superiority of the English in both the building and the handling of ships gave them the advantage in the running fight up Channel and in the final victory off Gravelines. In that victory Drake and Hawkins took a leading part under the supreme command of Lord Howard of Effingham.

§ 357. **Results of the Defeat of the Armada.**—The defeat of the Armada forms the climax of the Tudor Period (§§ 261-263, 361-363). It finally secured the civil and ecclesiastical independence of England; it made the Tudor despotism cease to be a necessary condition of English safety, and so left the way open for the parliamentary struggle of the following century; it gave the English the command of the sea and a fuller confidence in themselves. It was now only a question of time when the English would effectively claim a share in the New World and in the commerce of the East. Sir Walter Raleigh's futile attempts to colonize Virginia in the decade preceding the Armada were not, indeed, destined to be successfully followed up during the reign of Elizabeth; but in 1600 an East India Company was founded in London and began to trade with the East Indies. During the rest of the war with Spain the initiative fell to England: the chief exploits were the Portugal Voyage, or Counter-Armada, of 1589, in aid of the native claimant of the Portuguese throne against Philip II. (§ 352); Grenville's heroic fight on the *Revenge* "at Flores in the Azores" in 1591; the capture of Cadiz by the young Earl of Essex in 1596; and the Island Voyage of Essex and Raleigh to the Azores in 1597. Elizabeth also played her part in securing the throne of France to Henry IV. in the nine years' war which ended in 1598 with the *Edict of Nantes*, granting toleration to the Huguenots, and with the Franco-Spanish *Peace of Vervins* (cf. § 371). It was largely due to the efforts of England that nearly all Philip II.'s enterprises had ended in failure before his death in 1598.

§ 358. **The Rebellion of Hugh O'Neil, 1596-1603.**—Philip II.'s death had a fatal effect on the most promising effort which the Irish have ever made to regain their independence. In 1596 Hugh O'Neil, who bore the title Earl of Tyrone, foreseeing the impending overthrow of his semi-independence in Ulster, resolved to make an attempt to thrust the English altogether out of Ireland. His victory at the battle of the Yellow Ford in 1598

encouraged most of the Irish tribes and many of the Anglo-Irish families—the old foes being reconciled by their common allegiance to Rome and their common danger of being despoiled by new hordes of Englishmen (§ 351)—to throw in their lot with the O'Neil. Essex, the favourite of Elizabeth's declining years, utterly failed to do anything effective against the rebellion in 1599; and it took his successor, Charles Blount, Lord Mountjoy, three years to bring O'Neil to submission a few days before Elizabeth's death. The most important event in the later history of the rebellion was the occupation of Kinsale by a large Spanish force in the last three months of the year 1601.

§ 359. **Recusants and Separatists, 1588-1598.**—Though the defeat of the Armada had removed the danger of foreign conquest, the coercive legislation against religious malcontents continued to be enforced (§§ 343, 350). Further laws were passed in 1593 both against those who, in obedience to the Pope's orders, refused to go to church (*Recusants*) and against those who stayed away from church because they considered the Elizabethan ritual "Popish" (*Separatists*). Three of the latter class, Greenwood, Barrow, and Penry, were executed in 1593. Five years later, the deaths of Burghley and Philip II. deprived Elizabeth of her best friend and her worst enemy; she had done her work and outlived her generation; she grew weary of the wrangling among the young men around her—Sir Robert Cecil, Burghley's younger son, Sir Walter Raleigh, and Robert Devereux, Earl of Essex. Essex was her favourite, and he returned her favours, after his failure in Ireland, by making insurrection against the ministers of her choice.

§ 360. **Elizabeth's Last Years and Death, 1601-1603.**—In the year of Essex's execution, 1601, Elizabeth met her tenth and last Parliament. This Parliament selected the most successful experiments of the Tudor period in providing food and shelter for the helpless poor and punishment for the wilfully idle, and embodied these in the Act known as the *First General Poor Law* (§§ 305, 319). It was this Parliament also which protested so loudly against Elizabeth's practice of granting monopolies—the exclusive right of making and selling articles of commerce (§§ 379, 381)—that Elizabeth felt constrained to promise the withdrawal of such monopolies as should prove harmful to the consumer. There were signs that Parliament was growing less submissive and accepted Elizabeth's masterfulness towards it only out of respect for her age. Worn out by work and worry, she died in March 1603.



John Bartholomew &amp; Co. Ltd.

## BOOK VII.

### THE PURITAN REVOLUTION, 1603-1650,

#### BEING

### THE STUART PERIOD: PART I.

#### I. GENERAL INTRODUCTION.

§ 361. **Retrospect, 1485-1603.**—In the preceding book we have watched the many-sided development of the great movements known as the Reformation and the Renascence, with particular attention to England. In *international* politics we have seen the House of Hapsburg—long united under the Emperor Charles V., and then divided into two branches, of which the Spanish branch under Philip II. was the more prominent—take a leading position in Western Europe (Table, p. 190); and we have seen the might of Spain successfully resisted by France, under the new reigning House of Bourbon, by the United Netherlands, under the House of Orange, and by England, under the House of Tudor (§§ 352-357). In *constitutional* politics we have seen England, in the hands of a strong monarchy trusted by the people, asserting its independence, both as a Church and as a State, of all foreign control, and successfully vindicating that independence by the defeat of the Spanish Armada in 1588. The Tudor Period also witnessed the incorporation of Wales in the kingdom of England (§ 306); the completion of the first English conquest of Ireland (§ 353); the gradual tendency of the kingdoms of England and Scotland towards personal union (§§ 278, 337); the loss of the last foothold of England on the mainland of Europe (§ 330); and the small beginnings of English commercial and colonial enterprise outside Europe (§ 357).

§ 362. **International Politics, 1603-1688.**—In the seventeenth century France gradually assumed the leading position held by Spain in the sixteenth century; Henry IV., Cardinals Richelieu and Mazarin, and Louis XIV. successively guided her fortunes; and one and all made it their first object to gain strength and territory at the expense of the House of Hapsburg. During the first half of the century the Austrian branch of the Hapsburgs was the principal object of attack: the attempt of the Hapsburg Emperor to crush Protestantism and unite Germany under his rule was thwarted in the Thirty Years' War (1618-1648), as in the Schmallaldic War (§ 317),



by the efforts of France. After the German part of the war was ended by the great *Peace of Westphalia*, 1648, France continued fighting with Spain until the *Peace of the Pyrenees*, 1659, and a few years later began the two wars which were concluded respectively by the *Peace of Aachen* or *Aix-la-Chapelle*, 1668, and the *Peace of Nymwegen*, 1678. England was too much occupied at home (ch. xxix., xxx.) to play any great part in the Thirty Years' War, but she intervened in its Franco-Spanish continuation during Cromwell's time, and in the two wars which followed it in the reign of Charles II. Neither her non-intervention nor her method of intervention (except, perhaps, under Oliver Cromwell) was greatly liked by Englishmen: in foreign politics, as in domestic politics, the Stuarts commonly failed to carry the approval of their subjects. But the times were difficult; and it was only by slow degrees that a national policy was evolved. At first both England and the United Provinces tended to retain their Elizabethan attitude of alliance with France and hostility towards Spain; in the middle of the century the English and the Dutch came to blows over the division of the colonial spoil which they had wrested from the Hispano-Portuguese monarchy (§ 352); and it was not till after the Protestant Revolution of 1688 that the Protestant Sea-Powers agreed to shelve their commercial differences and make common cause with the Protestant principalities of Germany against Louis XIV., the champion of Roman Catholicism (ch. xxxv.).

§ 363. **The Hundred Years' Constitutional Conflict, 1588-1688.**—The defeat of the Spanish Armada definitely decided that no *external* power was to control England, and so made the path safe for disputes as to what *internal* power should control her. The Tudor monarchs had had things pretty much their own way; and the Stuart monarchs thought that they had a right to the same authority as their predecessors had possessed. But both circumstances and persons had changed. With the removal of the possibility of foreign conquest, professedly due to either religious or dynastic motives (§ 336), vanished also the need of the Tudor dictatorship (§ 263). Nor were the Stuarts made of the same stuff as the Tudors: they had less administrative ability; they were less keen to distinguish between the possible and the impossible; and they had a positive genius for getting out of touch with their subjects. The manner in which the Stuarts exercised the powers of the Kingship led to a series of varied attacks on the powers themselves: hence the Stuart Period was a time of almost chronic constitutional conflict, in the spheres both of Church and of State.

**§ 364. (i) In the Church.**—It was the religious question which throughout gave its distinctive colour to the period. Elizabeth's settlement had been purposely broad, so that, if possible, every one might find room for his opinions, as heretofore, within the pale of the English Church (§§ 333-335). But men were too deeply interested in religious matters to be content to conform: they wanted the Church remodelled to suit their ideas (cf. §§ 342, 344, 348). Now the Stuarts and their bishops, from the beginning, were out of sympathy with the majority of Englishmen. They began by trying to soften down the *Thirty-Nine Articles* of 1563-1571 in accordance with the teachings of the Dutch theologian Arminius: later, under Laud's influence, they endeavoured to restore the pre-Reformation ceremonial of the English Church (§ 394). But the mass of Englishmen were Calvinistic in *doctrine*, and Puritan in *worship*; and so it came to pass that, offended in both these respects by the action of their ecclesiastical rulers, they grew dissatisfied with the existing system of *church-government* (§§ 402, 420). In the great struggle which took place in the middle of the century (1640-1660), Presbyterianism, an oligarchic form of church-government, and Congregationalism, a democratic form of self-government by voluntary associations, were successively tried and found wanting; and with the restoration of a modified Kingship in 1660 a modified Episcopacy was also restored (§§ 442, 443). At the end of the period the Church thus constituted succeeded in thwarting James II.'s attempt to lead or drive her back into the obedience of Rome (1689), but only on condition of permitting those Protestant Trinitarians who could not accept her ritual and government to worship as they pleased (§§ 499, 507). *Religious toleration*, still in its infancy, was the most novel and substantial result of the period: men were to be allowed, within certain limits and under certain disabilities, to live in habitual revolt against the law of the State in so momentous a thing as religion.

**§ 365. (ii) In the State.**—Questions of civil politics were as varied in form as the ecclesiastical questions with which they were throughout intermingled. The Stuarts found the Kingship the dominant factor in English politics, and strove to make it the only one. In their attempt to set up a new theory of kingship—whereby it alone had a "divine right" to exist, and all other institutions and laws of the land rested on its sufferance—and in their efforts to turn the Tudor innovations in government into constitutional rules, they were slowly beaten all along the line. Parliament, looking back beyond that sixteenth century from which the Stuarts drew their

precedents, asserted as early as 1604 that it had as much right to live as the King had (§§ 374, 379, 400); by the Puritan Revolution which ended in 1660 it may be said to have made this assertion good (§§ 442, 443); by the Protestant Revolution of 1688-9 it laid the foundations, and did something towards erecting the super-structure, of that sovereignty of Parliament which was the very antithesis of *Jure Divino* Monarchy (§§ 500-502). So too with the pretensions based partly on this theory, partly on a late prescription: the King's claims to have powers of taxation by Prerogative—whether in the form of extra-customs dues (1606-1628), or grants of Monopolies (1624), or Forced Loans and Benevolences (1614-1628), or Tonnage and Poundage (1625-1641), or by the revival of obsolete ante-parliamentary taxes like Ship-Money (1634-1641)—to have summary powers of imprisonment like those which all other states but England allowed and still allow to be necessary for good government (1629, 1679), to have the complete control of the administration (1621, 1678), and to have some power of making (1610), and wholesale power of unmaking, laws (1673, 1689)—all these claims were successfully repudiated at the times indicated.

**§ 366. General Results of the Period.**—Such were a few of the constitutional questions raised, and to some extent answered, during the Stuart Period. It is to be remembered that there were also constitutional questions being disputed in the sister-kingdoms of Scotland and Ireland; and that the settlement of each question in each kingdom was constantly liable to be affected by events in the other kingdoms and by international considerations. On the whole, England and Scotland obtained what they respectively wanted, while Ireland had to put up with what the two kingdoms in Britain chose to give her. For England itself, the main constitutional results were the complete break-up of her ecclesiastical unity, the definite acquisition by Parliament of an effective control over the raising and spending of public money, and the beginnings of the system by which Parliament obtained an equally effective, though less direct, control over the general conduct of affairs. *Beginnings* only: it is essential to realize that party-government and the ultimate sovereignty of the electorate, which are such familiar facts to us now, were but vague ideas in the seventeenth century (§§ 497-503).

## II. THE FIRST STUART STRUGGLE, 1603-1660.

**§ 367. The Two Main Phases of the Stuart Period.**—The above survey of the Stuart Period as a whole brings out the general

features which give it a distinctive character and unity of its own. But it is important to recognize that there was much diversity within this unity: both the prominent problems and the conditions under which they were taken in hand changed from time to time. There is especially a marked difference between the two principal phases of the period: the first Stuart struggle lasted nearly sixty years—from 1603 to 1660; the second Stuart struggle lasted only about half as long—from 1660 to 1688. The first struggle, or its crisis, is commonly known as the *Puritan* Revolution: the second struggle, or its crisis, is commonly known as the *Protestant* Revolution. These labels at once call attention to one of the striking differences between the two phases of the Stuart Period. The first struggle, on its ecclesiastical side, turned on the question whether the Church of England should regard, as the Puritans wished, the Bible as its sole authority, or should also take into account, as Laud's school wished, the general tendencies of the tradition of the Universal (or Catholic) Christian Church: in other words, was the Protestant Church of England to be *Evangelical* or *Catholic*? In the second struggle the two sons of Charles I.'s Roman Catholic queen, Henrietta Maria, endeavoured to make the Church of England cease to be Protestant and rejoin the Roman communion. The majority of Englishmen had quite made up their minds that they would have nothing to do with the Pope: hence the second Stuart struggle was much shorter, simpler, and more decisive than the first. In the first struggle, Parliament was fighting for *existence*: in the second it was fighting for *power*. Another leading point of difference between the two phases is that in the second struggle foreign policy took a permanent place throughout, whereas in the first struggle international politics became prominent only in the third and sixth decades of the century.

§ 368. **Chief Stages in the First Stuart Struggle.**—The first struggle falls into various sub-periods which mark more or less clearly defined stages of the constitutional contest. For the sake of clearness they may be thus set forth in numbered order:—

#### I. THE REIGN OF JAMES I., 1603–1625 (ch. xxviii.).

- (i) For nearly nine years, 1603–1612, during Salisbury's ministry, James I. had a number of petty quarrels with his First Parliament (§§ 369–375): hence—
- (ii) For another nine years, 1612–1621, he endeavoured to rule—except for a moment in 1614—without a Parliament (§§ 376–378)

- (iii) During the last four years of his reign, 1621–1625, foreign affairs rose to the surface and formed the principal source of contention in James I.'s last two parliaments (§§ 379–381).

## II. THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., 1625–1649 (ch. xxix., xxx.).

- (i) During the first four years, 1625–1629, Charles made a series of attempts to reduce his first three parliaments to what he conceived to be their proper function—saying “yea” or “nay” according to his bidding (§§ 382–389).
- (ii) In the next eleven years, 1629–1640, he ruled England without a Parliament, and managed fairly well until his church policy roused a resistance in Scotland, which he could not put down without the money aid of the English Parliament (§§ 390–397).
- (iii) For two years, 1640–1642, he made concession after concession to his Fifth Parliament—only to find that there was apparently no limit to its demands, and that there seemed to be no other way of settling whether King or Parliament was to have the real mastery of public affairs than by an appeal to arms (§§ 398–405).
- (iv) In August 1642 civil war broke out in England, as it had already broken out in Scotland (1638) and in Ireland (1641); and this war lasted, so far as England was concerned, until Charles took refuge with the Scots in 1646 (§§ 406–419).
- (v) For nearly three years, 1646–1649, the captive king formed the active centre of intrigues which culminated in the second civil war of 1648, and the King's “execution” as a “traitor” on January 30, 1649 (§§ 420–424).

## III. THE COMMONWEALTH, 1649–1660 (ch. xxxi.).

The King's attempts to do without Parliament were answered by the equally abortive attempts of Parliament to do without the King:—

- (i) *The Parliamentary Republic*, 1649–1653, proved triumphant over its Irish, Scottish, and Dutch assailants, but was overthrown by its own army (§§ 425–432).
- (ii) *The Presidential Republic*, 1653–1659, gave rise to many notable parliamentary, ecclesiastical, and diplomatic experiments, but fell to pieces after the premature death of its head, the Lord Protector, Oliver Cromwell (§§ 433–439).
- (iii) *The Year of Anarchy*, 1659–1660, was marked by renewed quarrels between parliamentary and military leaders, and was ended by Monk's restoration of the Stuarts (§§ 440–441).

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

*JAMES I., 1603-1625.*

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Son of Mary Queen of Scots, by her second husband and cousin, Henry, Lord Darnley; born in Edinburgh Castle, June 19, 1566; succeeded his deposed mother as James VI. of Scots, July 24, 1567; crowned at Stirling five days later; succeeded Elizabeth on the throne of England, March 24, 1603; crowned at Westminster, July 25, 1603; married Anne of Denmark (*d.* 1619), 1589; died at Theobalds, Herts, March 27, 1625; buried at Westminster. For his descent, see Table, p. 176: for his descendants, see Table, p. 280.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	TURKEY.	ELSEWHERE
Clement VIII. (1592) Leo XI. (1605) Paul V. (1605)	Rudolf II. (1576)  Matthias (1612)	Henry IV. (1589) ( <i>First Bourbon King of France</i> ) Louis XIII. (1610)	Philip III. (1598)  Philip IV. (1621)	Ahmad I. (1603-1617) <i>Anarchy</i> Murad IV. (1623)	Sigismund III., <i>Poland</i> (1506-1632) Gustav Adolf, <i>Sweden</i> (1611-1632) Michael, <i>Russia</i> (1613 1645) ( <i>the first Tsar of the House of Romanov</i> )
Gregory XV. (1621)  Urban VIII. (1623)	Ferdinand II (1619)				

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

(i) **International: relations with —**

- (1) Spain: §§ 371, 373, 376, 377, 378, 380, 381.
- (2) The United Provinces: §§ 371, 380.
- (3) The Empire: §§ 375, 378, 380, 381.
- (4) France: §§ 371, 381.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) Succession Questions: § 369.
- (2) Church Questions: §§ 372-4.
- (3) Relations of England and Scotland: §§ 370, 374.
- (4) King and Parliament: §§ 369, 371, 374, 376, 379, 381.
- (5) Colonization: §§ 370, 377.

### I. JAMES I. AND SALISBURY, 1603-1612.

§ 369. **James I.'s Accession and Title.**—On the death of Elizabeth, James VI. King of Scots was at once proclaimed King of England. He was the great-grandson of Henry VIII.'s elder sister Margaret (§ 278); and now that the male line of the Tudors was extinct he was the nearest heir to the English throne. He was accepted as such by Elizabeth and her people: the first Act of his first Parliament declared that, on Elizabeth's decease, he had

straightway become King "by inherent birthright and lawful and undoubted succession." No one paid any attention to the claims of the House of Suffolk, which had been given preference over the House of Stuart in Henry VIII.'s will (§ 314). There were technical difficulties about the legal validity of that will: besides, there were many practical advantages in the union of the two British kingdoms under one monarch. Towards the end of 1603 there was a plot to overthrow Cecil and some talk of setting up the Lady Arabella Stuart in the room of her second cousin, and there was also a plot which aimed at forcing James to grant a measure of toleration to Roman Catholics. The former scheme was called "the Main Plot," the latter, "the Bye Plot"; one or two persons were executed, and Raleigh was imprisoned, for treasonable complicity in them; but no proceedings were taken against the Lady Arabella until 1610, when her secret marriage with Sir William Seymour, the representative of the Suffolk claims, was thought dangerous enough to be punished by imprisonment (Table, p. 176).

§ 370. **James I.'s British and Colonial Position.**—The accession of the Scots King to the throne of England and of its newly-conquered dependency, Ireland (§ 358), brought the whole of the British Isles for the first time under the effective rule of a single monarch. Constitutionally speaking, the three kingdoms retained their several legal, ecclesiastical, and parliamentary systems; but from an international point of view the three kingdoms were regarded, and indeed acted, as one. James himself desired to turn this *personal union* of England and Scotland into an even more complete amalgamation than that achieved a century later, in 1707; but the still-existing national jealousies were so strong as to thwart his project. He and his successors formally styled themselves in diplomatic documents, and on their coins, "King of Great Britain, France, and Ireland"; but "Great Britain" as a constitutional fact did not come into existence till Anne's reign. On the other hand, the real beginnings of what now we have come to call "Greater Britain" were made during the reign of the first English King who called himself "King of Great Britain." It was under James I. that Englishmen permanently established themselves in North America (1607), in the Bermudas (1609), and in the West Indies (Barbados, 1624): it was in his time, too, that the East India Company of London founded factories, or trading-depôts, in the Spice Islands, and began trading with India—the small nucleus of the great British Empire in India of our own day (§§ 357, 391, 532).

§ 371. **James I.'s Character and Advisers.**—James I.'s reign forms a great landmark in British history; but this is not due to his own force of character. He was learned, especially in theology, and he had a keen political insight; but he had little tact or practical skill in dealing with men. His incapacity, coupled with his immense belief in himself and his Prerogative, caused England to cut but a poor figure in the international politics of his time; and this, together with his extravagance, brought him into constant conflicts with his Parliaments, which were no longer willing to play so subordinate a part as in Elizabeth's days. These quarrels were sufficiently marked during the first half of his reign, when he was guided by Burghley's younger son, Robert Cecil, Earl of Salisbury; and after Salisbury's death in 1612, James endeavoured to avoid quarrels by calling Parliaments as seldom as possible. James's choice of Cecil as his chief adviser, and the contemporaneous imprisonment of Raleigh for complicity in the "Main Plot," involved the triumph of the peace-party over the war-party (§ 359). In March 1604 the *Treaty of London* ended the Anglo-Spanish war (cf. § 357); and five years later the *Truce of Antwerp*, negotiated under the mediation of England and France, brought to a formal close the hostilities between Spain and the United Netherlands (§§ 352, 353, 357).

§ 372. **The Hampton Court Conference, 1604.**—James affected the style and rôle of *Pacificus* or Peace-maker: he aspired to be a mediator not only in foreign politics, but also in ecclesiastical affairs at home. Much was hoped from him by the various religious parties in England which did not regard the Elizabethan church-settlement with approval (§§ 335, 341-343): the Roman Catholics remembered that his mother had suffered martyrdom in their cause (§ 355); the Puritans dwelt on his education by the staunch Calvinists of Scotland. But after some hesitation James put the penal statutes against Popish Recusants (§ 359) and Jesuits into force again; and when some Puritan ministers, during his journey southward to London, pressed their claims upon him in the *Millenary Petition*, they were snubbed for their pains. In January 1604 he was asked to preside at a conference held at Hampton Court between the two wings of the Church of England—the court clergy and some ministers of the reforming opinions. They discussed plans for making the Church of England more broad in *non-essentials*—to allow the liberty of alternatives. The points raised were *ceremonies, prophesyings, confirmation* (in connection with the authority of a bishop), *doctrine*, and the best means to create a *preaching* ministry.



The close alliance between King and Bishops caused the rejection of nearly all the Puritan demands except that of a new translation of the Bible—the present *Authorised Version*, which appeared in 1611. James's own utterance at the Conference—"No Bishop, no King"—explains his partial restoration of Episcopacy in the Scots Kirk.

§ 373. **The Gunpowder Plot, 1605.**—Disappointed in their expectations both of lenient treatment from James and of receiving armed aid from Spain, a handful of English Romanists formed a plot to blow up the Houses of Parliament, at the time when the King and the Prince of Wales were present at the opening of the session. The King's Council got wind of the scheme, through an anonymous letter, some ten days before the day appointed for the assembling of Parliament; Cecil allowed it to come almost to a head; on the eve of November 5, one of the principal instruments, Guy Fawkes, was arrested in the cellars beneath the Houses of Parliament; and most of the leaders were put to death either during their flight or on the scaffold. The plot had not obtained either the support of the better classes of English Romanists or the official sanction of the Roman Church; none the less its discovery tended to increase the suspicions and dread of "Popery" already existing in the mind of the average Englishman (§ 329).

§ 374. **James I.'s First Parliament, 1604-1611.**—Except in laying new disabilities on Roman Catholics—both laity and priests, especially Jesuits—Parliament was seldom in harmony with James I. His first Parliament, which had five sessions during the seven years of its existence, had frequent occasion to protest against his capricious treatment, and his methods of raising money. In its first session, 1604, it made him the usual life-grant, customary since Richard II.'s time (§ 220), of Tunnage and Poundage; but it also asserted with vehemence and success that its privileges, especially in deciding disputed elections, and in the freedom of its members from arrest (cf. §§ 339, 344), were not dependent on the King's good-will. In its second session, early in 1606, it passed some additional penal statutes; in its third session, 1606-7, it successfully opposed James's scheme for the closer union of England and Scotland; and in its last two sessions, in 1610 and 1611 respectively, it took up such a firm stand against James's financial methods that he dissolved the assembly in disgust. The most profitable of James's extra-parliamentary sources of revenue were the additional customs-dues levied by Prerogative. In 1606 the judges decided, in *Bate's Case*, that these *Impositions* were legal; and in 1608 a general

tariff was laid down in Lord Treasurer Salisbury's *Book of Rates*. Parliament could not abolish the Impositions, but it was able to wreck Salisbury's *Great Contract*—a plan for exchanging the King's uncertain feudal dues for a fixed parliamentary grant (§ 447).

§ 375. **Death of Salisbury, 1612.**—In May 1612 Salisbury died "of over much business"; and in the same year James's eldest son Henry, the popular Prince of Wales, also died. The dissolution of the First Parliament marks the end of the Tudor relationships between King and Parliament: the death of Salisbury marks the end of the Elizabethan tradition in foreign policy. His last act was to arrange the marriage, which took place in 1613, between James I.'s daughter Elizabeth and Frederick, the Elector Palatine. The Palatinate was one of the principal Protestant States of Germany; and the connection was welcomed now, as its results were a century afterwards (§ 529), by the Protestant majority in England. The later marriage alliances of the Stuarts were mostly with Roman Catholics.

## II. JAMES UNDER SPANISH INFLUENCE, 1613-1625.

§ 376. **Favourites and Undertakers, 1613-1616.**—When told by the Spanish ambassador, Gondomar, that all his ministers had been in the pay of Spain, James resolved henceforth to be his own chief minister, and to trust only his personal friends. Some of these—notably Francis Bacon, Lord Verulam, who became Lord Chancellor in 1617—were men of practical ability; but the most prominent did not rise above the level of court favourites. Such were Robert Carr, Duke of Somerset, who was disgraced in 1616 for his complicity in the murder of his friend Overbury, and George Villiers, who was quickly elevated to the rank of Duke of Buckingham, 1618, and Lord High Admiral, 1619, and for ten years was the leading personage in England (1618-1628). Buckingham was energetic, but neither of the new favourites was successful in action. Some of James's friends "undertook" to manage the second Parliament, which met in 1614, in such a way that it should be liberal in its supplies and generally amenable to the King's wishes (cf. § 465). The "undertakers" failed completely: the assembly sat for two months without hatching a single measure, and was therefore nicknamed the "Addled Parliament." James was in such straits for money that he had to levy benevolences, to sell peerages and the new title of *baronet*, to release at a discount of 66 per cent. the towns which the Dutch had pledged to Elizabeth as security for

her loans (§ 353), and to do his utmost to marry his son Charles to a Spanish princess for the sake of the dowry. For nearly ten years Gondomar was able to control the court and government of England by holding out hopes of a Spanish marriage.

§ 377. **Raleigh and the New World.**—The most striking illustrations of Spanish influence were given in James's attitude to Raleigh and to his own son-in-law. In 1617 Raleigh, weary of writing his *History of the World* in the Tower (§ 371), obtained leave to go to Guiana to exploit a gold-mine. James disclosed his plans to Gondomar, and so enabled the Spanish to take measures to thwart the expedition. Raleigh returned empty-handed, and was executed in October 1618, nominally under his old sentence for treason, really to gratify the Spanish desire for vengeance on the last survivor of the old Elizabethan adventurers. Raleigh was a failure in most things that he undertook, but his political foresight was keen above the average. Speaking of the attempt to colonize Virginia—unsuccessful in the hands of his own agents (§ 357)—he said, "I shall live to see it an English nation." And so it was. The vast region then called Virginia was divided in 1606 between two associations of adventurers. The London Company took the southern portion, and in 1607 planted a colony which, after many struggles, became the nucleus of the modern State of Virginia. The Plymouth Company did nothing to develop their less attractive allotment; but in 1620 a band of religious exiles, known as "the Pilgrim Fathers," sailing from England in the *Mayflower*, settled on the Company's territory, and thereafter named their settlement "Plymouth." These "Pilgrim Fathers" were Puritans who, despairing of any further reformation of the Church of England, "separated" from it (§ 359). Finding themselves persecuted by the English Government for their seditious breach of the uniformity laws, they migrated from their home at Scrooby in Nottinghamshire, first to Leyden, with their pastor John Robinson, and then to America. Like the Israelites of old, they went forth in the wilderness to worship the Lord their God more freely. James himself took more interest in his plantation of Ulster (§§ 351, 392) than in these distant colonies in Virginia and "New England."

§ 378. **The Bohemian War, 1618-1621.**—Spanish jealousy of English enterprise in America was strong enough to bring Raleigh the pioneer to the block, but not to stop the rise of English colonies. More effective was the action of Spain with respect to the attitude of James to his German son-in-law. Frederick's acceptance of the

semi-elective crown of Bohemia in 1618 roused the opposition of its previous holders, the Hapsburgs, and was the signal for the long-threatened renewal of hostilities between the Protestants and the Roman Catholics of Germany (§ 327). There were many motives at work besides religion, but the bulk of Englishmen regarded the conflict as a purely religious war, in which it was the bounden duty of England to help the champion of Protestantism. James, however, who was better informed, regarded Frederick's action as aggressive and as violating the principle of the hereditary right of kings (§ 365). He therefore declined to help him to retain Bohemia, whence Frederick was expelled in 1620; but he sent some help—not enough—to enable him to keep his hereditary domains. Meanwhile he renewed negotiations for a marriage with the Spanish Hapsburgs, hoping, by a joint mediation, to put a stop to the war in Germany. Finally, early in 1621, he summoned Parliament, after a seven years' interval (§ 376), to equip him with means to take stronger measures if necessary.

§ 379. **James I.'s Third Parliament, 1621.**—This third Parliament was at once ready to help the King in Germany and to effect reforms at home. In its first session the House of Commons revived the practice of impeachment, unused for 150 years (§ 245), and by that means punished Sir Giles Mompesson for abusing a monopoly (§ 360), and Lord Chancellor Bacon for accepting gifts from suitors in his court. In its second session the House proved more liberal with its advice than with its money. James thought the Commons had no business to meddle in foreign policy, which he told them was "beyond their reach or capacity"; and he was answered in December 1621 by a firm *Protestation*, which James himself tore out of the Commons' *Journals* (cf. §§ 339, 374):—

- (i) "That the liberties, franchises, privileges, and jurisdictions of Parliament are the ancient and undoubted birthright and inheritance of the subjects of England;
- (ii) "And that the arduous and urgent affairs concerning the King, State, and Defence of the Realm, and of the Church of England, and the maintenance and making of laws, and redress of mischiefs and grievances, which daily happen within this realm, are proper subjects and matter of counsel and debate in Parliament;
- (iii) "And that in the handling and proceeding of those businesses, every member of the Houses of Parliament hath, and of right ought to have, freedom of speech to propound, treat, reason, and bring to conclusion, the same," etc.

**§ 380. Prince Charles's Journey to Madrid, 1623.**—James dissolved Parliament in anger, and returned to his policy of negotiation. In 1622 his son-in-law Frederick was driven from all his dominions—largely by means of Spanish troops in the service of the Hapsburg Emperor: none the less, James hoped to secure his restoration by the aid of Spain. In 1623 Prince Charles, in company with Buckingham, went to Madrid to press his suit for the Infanta in person. The terms demanded included the complete toleration of Roman Catholics in England; and in return Spain would offer nothing—not even to use her good offices with the Emperor on behalf of the ejected Elector Palatine. The Prince and the Duke returned in hot anger; and by March 1624 England had drifted into war with Spain. The only active measure of the war attempted in James I.'s reign was Count Mansfeld's abortive expedition up the Rhine to recover the Palatinate early in 1625.

**§ 381. James I.'s Fourth Parliament and Death, 1624-5.**—The war with Spain was so popular that James had no difficulty in extracting a grant of £300,000—the largest grant of the reign—from his fourth Parliament, which met in February 1624. Parliament took precautions that its money should be spent wholly on the war (cf. § 213); and part of it went to equip Mansfeld's expedition. It also successfully impeached Cranfield, Earl of Middlesex, for malpractices as Lord Treasurer; but when Prince Charles and Buckingham encouraged this attack James warned them that they "would soon have their bellyful of impeachments" (§§ 384, 399). The many complaints against the abuses of Monopolies (§§ 360, 379) came to a head in an Act declaring illegal all grants of monopoly to *individuals*, except tavern-licences, and "the true and first inventors of new manufactures." It is from the letters-patent ("open-letters") granting monopolies in such cases that we derive our modern use of the noun *patent*. Parliament came to a close, after a three months' session, without quarrelling with the King. In August 1624 James concluded a marriage-treaty with France, granting concessions to English Romanists which would certainly have raised a storm in Parliament, had it been still sitting (§ 390). Before Charles could carry out the marriage-contract by marrying Louis XIII.'s sister, Henrietta Maria, James I. died. His over-confidence in his kingcraft had, says a contemporary, "made *Great Britain* of less account than *little England* had been under Elizabeth." It had also raised many constitutional questions which gave a life's trouble to his less pliant son.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

### CHARLES I.'S CONSTITUTIONAL EXPERIMENTS, 1625-1642.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Second son of James I.; born at Dunfermline, November 19, 1600; succeeded to the thrones of England, Scotland, and Ireland, March 27, 1625; married Henrietta Maria, sister of Louis XIII. of France, May 1, 1625; crowned at Westminster, February 6, 1626; and at Edinburgh, June 18, 1633; executed at Whitehall, January 30, 1649; buried at Windsor. For his descendants and kinsmen, see Table, p. 280.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	TURKEY.	ELSEWHERE.
Urban VIII. (1623)	Ferdinand II. (1619)	Louis XIII. (1610)	Philip IV. (1621-1665)	Murad IV. (1623) Ibrahim (1640)	Christian IV., <i>Denmark and Norway</i> (1588-1648)
Innocent X. (1644)	Ferdinand III. (1637-1658)	Louis XIV. (1643-1715)		Muham- mad IV. (1648)	Gustav Adolf, <i>Sweden</i> (1611-1632)

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

- (i) **International: relations with—**  
 (1) France: §§ 382, 383, 385, 388-391.  
 (2) Spain: §§ 382, 383, 385, 390.  
 (3) The Empire: §§ 382, 385, 390.  
 (4) Denmark: § 385.  
 (5) United Provinces: §§ 391, 393.
- (ii) **Constitutional:**  
 (b) *Non-English—*  
 (1) Scotland: §§ 392, 394-398, 401.  
 (2) Ireland: §§ 392, 401.  
 (3) Colonies: §§ 391, 392.

- (ii) **Constitutional: (a) English—**  
 (1) Church: §§ 388, 391-397, 402.  
 (2) Taxation: §§ 383-389, 393, 400.  
 (3) Personal Freedom: §§ 386, 387, 394, 400.  
 (4) Ministers: §§ 383, 384, 388, 392, 393, 398, 399, 403.  
 (5) Powers of Parliament: §§ 383, 384, 387, 388, 398, 403, 405.  
 (6) Privileges of Parliament: §§ 384, 389, 404.  
 (7) Parties: §§ 383, 389, 402, 403  
 (8) Convocation: § 396.

### I. BUCKINGHAM AND THE FIRST THREE PARLIAMENTS, 1625-1629.

§ 382. **Survey of Charles I.'s Reign.**—Charles I. came to the throne at an unfortunate time and under unfortunate circum-

stances. There was still alive a strong feeling that England had not done all that she should have done for the Protestant cause in Germany, and that she had truckled to Spain; there was also a widespread dislike of the policy of relaxing the enforcement of the recusancy laws (§ 380). The popularity which Charles and his friend Buckingham had gained in 1624 by abandoning their Spanish projects had been lost by the French marriage project and by the ill-success of the English operations up the Rhine and against Spain (§§ 378-381). Charles was therefore out of touch with a large number of his English subjects when he began his reign; and during the greater part of his life he was getting still further out of touch both with them and with his subjects in Scotland and Ireland. It was not till the very close of his reign that pity for his misfortunes tended to overcome dislike of his faults; and the violence of his opponents in the end has caused many to regard him as a martyr. From the point of view of international policy his reign falls into two divisions—a short period of active and warlike intervention on the Continent (1625-1630), and a long period of non-intervention (§§ 362, 390). While the 'Thirty Years' War was convulsing and transforming Western Europe the British Isles were absorbed in the solution of their own insular problems. The main divisions of the reign from a constitutional point of view have been already indicated (§ 368).

**§ 383. Charles's First Parliament.**—In June 1625 Charles welcomed his wife Henrietta Maria of France—a marriage fraught with disaster to himself and to his House (ch. xxxiii., xxxiv.)—and met his first Parliament. Among its more prominent members were Sir Edward Coke—formerly Chief Justice—Sir John Eliot of Cornwall, Sir Thomas Wentworth of Yorkshire, and John Pym of Somerset. These all belonged to old-established county families. In James I.'s parliaments the leaders had mostly been lawyers; but henceforth the country gentlemen, educated in politics and constitutional questions by contact with these lawyers, came more and more to the front. They had acquired knowledge of affairs; they had a "stake in the country"; they were for the most part respected by those whom they represented; and they had the support of the only other wealthy class in the land—the merchants of the towns. They had learnt that the best means of inducing the King to do what they wanted, and to refrain from doing what they did not want, was to keep him dependent upon themselves for money (§§ 365, 366). In 1625 they wanted to get rid of Buckingham and toleration.

Accordingly, in the first Parliament, the Commons, instead of making the usual life-grant of Tunnage and Poundage (§ 220), proposed to grant it for one year only. The Lords resisted this innovation; and in August Charles dissolved Parliament without obtaining even this modified grant. In order to raise money for the war against Spain he levied all the old customs-dues in the same way as his father had levied the extra-dues called impositions—by Prerogative (§ 374). At Buckingham's suggestion, Charles spent part of the money thus obtained in equipping an expedition which Sir Edward Cecil, Viscount Wimbledon, led against Cadiz in October. But the long peace had thrown the English Navy into a confusion, out of which even Buckingham's energy could not raise it in a moment; and Cecil's enterprise was an utter failure.

**§ 384. Charles's Second Parliament, February-June, 1626.**—Charles was compelled to summon a second Parliament which he tried to make amenable to his wishes by keeping possible opponents out of the way (cf. § 376). He sent no summons to John Digby Earl of Bristol, lest he should make disclosures concerning foreign negotiations in which he had been employed. He rendered Coke, Wentworth, and others ineligible as members of the House of Commons by appointing them to be sheriffs in their several counties. But the Commons found other leaders, and the Lords declined to transact business until Bristol received his writ of summons. When Parliament got to work it insisted on discussing grievances before furnishing money: in technical language, it took "Redress" before "Supply" (§ 226). The Commons impeached Buckingham (§ 381); and when the King found that even the imprisonment of their leader, Eliot, failed to stop the prosecution of his friend, he dissolved the Parliament. "The House of Commons," he said, "was for *counsel*, not for *control*."

**§ 385. Charles I.'s Foreign Policy, 1625-1627.**—The twenty-one months' interval between the second and the third parliaments was occupied with increased foreign activity, and with the increased demand for money which that activity involved. Charles, both as a keen family man and as a Protestant by conviction, was eager for the restoration of his dispossessed brother-in-law (§§ 378-380); and he hoped to reach his object by family means. He promised subsidies to his uncle, Christian IV. of Denmark, to invade Germany on behalf of the Elector Palatine; but he could not find the money to pay the subsidies. His marriage was designed to secure the active aid of France against the rival family alliance of the Hapsburgs;



but circumstances frustrated this design. To conciliate the Protestant feelings of Parliament, Charles did not fulfil his marriage-obligation to relax the enforcement of the recusancy laws (§§ 381, 383); and when the Huguenots broke into a purely political rebellion, Charles sent them help. As a result of this state of things France, now under the strong guidance of Cardinal Richelieu, made peace with Spain and drifted into war with England. In the summer of 1627 Buckingham, as Lord High Admiral, made an expensive and unsuccessful attempt to relieve the Huguenot stronghold of La Rochelle by occupying the Island of Ré.

**§ 386. Arbitrary Taxation and Imprisonment, 1627.**—The combined war with Spain and France proved a severe strain on the resources of the Government. There was no danger of invasion as in Elizabeth's days: it was a war of aggression which could win the pecuniary support of Englishmen only if justified by success. To raise money, Charles in 1627 gathered "loans" the amount of which was fixed on the same basis of assessment as parliamentary subsidies; and to raise forces the maritime towns were ordered to furnish ships for the relief of La Rochelle (§ 393). Those who declined to "lend" the Government the sums at which they were assessed were punished in various ways: some were pressed into service as soldiers or sailors; some were compelled to board the troops "billeted" upon them; and those who resisted these indirect modes of taxation were subjected to the summary jurisdiction known as martial law, or were cast into prison during the King's pleasure. A group of knights thus imprisoned sued out writs of *habeas corpus*, *i. e.* each obtained from the Court of King's Bench an order that his jailer should "produce his body" before the Court in order that the legality of his detention should be examined. The judges decided in these test cases—known as *The Five Knights' Case*, or as *Darnel's Case*—that "the King's special command" was sufficient to justify both the original arrest and the continued detention of the five knights. It was the King's duty to preserve public order; and the judges in 1627, as in 1606 (§ 374), declined to risk dismissal by declaring that the reigning king's unusual method of performing his duty was illegal.

**§ 387. First Session of Charles's Third Parliament, 1628.**—The conduct of the Government and the attitude of the judges deepened the growing conviction that something must be done to limit the power of the Crown to interfere with the liberty of the subject in respect of person and property. This feeling was voiced in the third Parliament by Eliot, Coke, Wentworth, and Pym, and

found formal expression in the notable constitutional document known as the *Petition of Right*. This document, in somewhat vague and general terms, branded various recent practices of the Government as illegal:—

- (i) The levying of “any gift, loan, benevolence, tax, or such-like charge without common consent by Act of Parliament.”
- (ii) The imprisonment of any freeman “without cause showed.”
- (iii) The billeting of soldiers or mariners in private houses.
- (iv) The execution of martial law “within the land” in times of peace.

§ 388. **Death of Buckingham, 1628.**—Charles, after some hesitation, agreed to the *Petition of Right* in the belief that it made no alteration in the existing law, and was rewarded by a grant of £350,000. He then prorogued Parliament, and spent his money on a third expedition—a second had sailed during the session—to relieve La Rochelle. Buckingham was assassinated at Portsmouth in August while superintending the preparations; and the expedition was unable to prevent the surrender of the beleaguered Huguenots in October. Buckingham had been called by Eliot “the grievance of grievances”; and his death might well have lessened the friction between King and Parliament. But the failure of the war-policy, Charles's insistence on his right to Tunnage and Poundage (which the Commons, somewhat disingenuously, held to fall within the terms of the *Petition of Right*), and his ecclesiastical policy, still kept the sore open. During the recess, Charles promoted William Laud, the chief of the “Arminian” clergy, to the bishopric of London (§ 394), and laid down unpopular theories of church-government in the Declaration which is still prefixed to the *Thirty-Nine Articles* in the Anglican *Book of Common Prayer*.

§ 389. **Second Session of Charles's Third Parliament.**—When Parliament reassembled in January 1629 it took up its financial and ecclesiastical grievances with great warmth. When, on March 2, Eliot was about to propose resolutions branding as “enemies to the kingdom and commonwealth” all who should introduce innovations in religion, or pay customs-duties unauthorized by Parliament, the Speaker intervened on the ground that the King had ordered an immediate adjournment. The resolutions were, however, informally put by Holles, while he and Valentine held the Speaker in the chair, and they were carried by tumultuous acclamation. The House then broke up; a few days later Charles dissolved Parliament and imprisoned the leaders in the recent riot. The Court of King's Bench held that the violent action of these members

was not covered by privilege. Eliot died in the Tower in 1632; Valentine and Strode remained in durance until the assembling of Charles's fourth Parliament eleven years later.

## II. ELEVEN YEARS' PERSONAL RULE, 1629-1640.

§ 390. **Peace with France and Spain, 1629-30.**—Charles I. had pursued political objects and used political methods which seemed to him Elizabethan, and had naturally expected to receive parliamentary support, such as Elizabeth had received. He had been grievously disappointed, and resolved to do without parliaments altogether. In order to avoid the necessity of calling Parliament he must needs economise, and the most obvious way of economising was to drop his war-policy. Accordingly, in April 1629, he made peace with France by the *Treaty of Susa*; and in November 1630 the *Treaty of Madrid* ended the war between England and Spain. The latter treaty merely brought an ineffective war to a formal close: the former helped Charles out of one of his constitutional embarrassments at home. Each party gave up his protection of the other's religious nonconformists: Charles, in return for abandoning the cause of the French Huguenots, was released from his marriage-pledge to grant toleration to the English Roman Catholics.

§ 391. **The Growth of New England, 1629-1640.**—Three months after the Anglo-French treaty was signed, the brothers Kirke, acting on behalf of "the London Company of Merchant Adventurers," captured the French colony-town of Quebec. But by the *Treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye*, March 1632, Charles both restored Canada, and also abandoned his claim to that region at the mouth of the river St. Lawrence which bears the traces of rival attempts by both French and Scotsmen to settle it in its names of "Acadie" and "Nova Scotia." This British withdrawal—temporary as it afterwards proved—from the St. Lawrence Valley was contemporaneous with colonial extension further south and elsewhere. In 1629 was started the colony of Massachusetts, which afterwards absorbed the Plymouth colony (§ 377); and during the period of Personal Government many Puritans emigrated to New England. Their main object was to escape Laud's ecclesiastical discipline and to establish a theocracy more to their liking. The rigidity of their church-government—admirably depicted in Hawthorne's classic romance, *The Scarlet Letter*—caused many of their number to seek greater liberty in the settlement founded by Roger Williams at Providence, and now known as Rhode Island. Further south, beyond

the Dutch colonies on the Hudson (§ 455), Lord Baltimore founded in 1633 the colony of Maryland, whose capital bears his name, and which was intended as a refuge for English Roman Catholics. The rapid growth in the prosperity of all these English colonies in America is illustrated by the fact that, during the Personal Government, a printer's press and the school which has grown into Harvard University were established at Cambridge in Massachusetts. Elsewhere, too, beyond the seas the foundations of the Empire were being extended: in 1631 the first permanent English settlement was made on the Gambia River in West Africa; in 1639 the East India Company acquired its first territorial possession, as distinguished from a mere factory or fortified warehouse, in India—at Fort St. George, Madras. But in the East Indies the English were still out-distanced by the Dutch (§§ 362, 429).

§ 392. Ireland, 1603-1640.—The importance of the colonies and other outlying dominions of Charles was recognized during the Personal Government by the creation of special committees of the Privy Council to superintend the affairs of Ireland (1634), of New England (1635), and of Scotland (1635). Ireland, in particular, received an unusually long spell of careful administration. From 1633 to 1640 it was governed by Thomas Wentworth, at first as Lord-Deputy, and in 1639 as Lord-Lieutenant. Wentworth had parted company with the aggressive parliamentary opposition to Charles in the interval between the first and second sessions of the Third Parliament (§§ 387-389). His opposition had been directed rather against Buckingham than against Charles; and, like several of his colleagues, he thought that the House of Commons was exceeding both its constitutional functions and its political capacity in essaying the task of government. He therefore accepted office and a peerage from the King, and, after a few years' trial as President of the Council of the North (§ 303), was transferred to Ireland. Since the completion of its first conquest in 1603 (§ 358), that country had been disturbed by various projects of confiscation and plantation. James I. had in 1611 successfully planted Ulster with Protestant settlers from England and Scotland (§§ 351, 377). But the rumours of fresh schemes of plantation naturally caused a sense of insecurity in the minds of the existing inhabitants—both native Irish and Anglo-Irish. Wentworth put an end to their insecurity by settling the outstanding question of land-titles in Connaught and elsewhere. He also endeavoured to increase the prosperity of the island by suppressing piracy and encouraging the linen-trade. In accordance with

his friend Laud's ideas of ecclesiastical uniformity, he caused the established Church of Ireland to adopt the Anglican *Prayer-Book* and *Articles of Religion*. Finally, with a view to possible contingencies in the larger island, he equipped a small standing army and for the first time raised the revenue of the kingdom to a higher level than its expenditure. Wentworth adopted Laud's expressive name of "Thorough" to describe his system of autocratic government; and he hoped to see his system extended to the two kingdoms in Britain—"to vindicate monarchy for ever from the conditions and restraints of subjects."

§ 393. **Financial Expedients in England, 1629-1638.** In England, where Charles had no minister of Wentworth's ability, the main activity of the Personal Government was devoted to the raising of funds and to the organization of the Church. Richard Weston, who became Earl of Portland in 1633, was in charge of the finances of the kingdom from 1628 to 1635 as Lord Treasurer: William Laud, who had long been Charles's chief adviser in Church affairs, obtained greater power for the execution of his designs when he became Archbishop of Canterbury in 1633. The increasing prosperity of the country—which helped to swell the King's revenue from the customs-dues—coupled with his abstention from war, would have made Weston's task comparatively easy but for the extravagance of the Court. Hence new sources of income had to be found. Gentlemen having the requisite property qualifications were fined if they neglected to take up knighthood (§ 118); the landed proprietors who had encroached on the royal forests were fined; so, too, was the City of London for non-fulfilment of the conditions on which it held its estates in Ulster. These fines were usually, though not always, enforced by the Star Chamber. In 1634, towards the close of Weston's life, Noy, Attorney-General, suggested the more famous expedient of Ship-Money. For the suppression of pirates and to guard against the growing power of the French and of the Dutch, the maritime towns and counties were called upon to provide ships. This was in accordance with old precedents (cf. § 386); but after Noy's death, fresh writs were issued, not only to the maritime, but also to the inland districts—demanding not ships but a money equivalent. The judges gave an opinion in 1637 that the issue of these Ship-Money writs was a legal exercise of the King's power to provide for the safety of the country in time of danger (cf. §§ 374, 386); and when John Hampden, a Buckingham esquire, declined to pay the sum at which he was assessed, the entire bench

of judges, by a majority of seven to five, re-affirmed the legality of the action of the Crown. The taxative burden was not serious in itself; but the taxative powers declared by the judges to be at the disposal of the Crown were capable of almost infinite expansion.

**§ 394. Laud's Ecclesiastical Policy.**—Laud, like his friend Wentworth, had little respect for the interests or opinions of individuals, and great belief in the necessity of obedience to lawful authority. In particular, he believed in the authority of the Church as governed by the bishops under the Supremacy of the King; and he held that all the King's subjects were bound to show at least outward obedience to the Church, whatever their personal feelings or opinions might be. So far he was in accordance with nearly all the religious thought of his day; but in his interpretation of the ambiguous formularies of the Anglican Church he differed from the Puritan majority in emphasizing its mediaeval aspects and survivals (§ 334). They insisted on the preservation of a Scriptural (meaning Calvinistic) theology and on a preaching ministry: Laud dwelt rather on the necessity of a uniform and stately ritual as the best safeguard of ecclesiastical unity. Laud's emphasis of the priestly power of the clergy, coupled with his friendly attitude towards Rome and discouragement of Continental Protestants, struck the bulk of his generation as mere "Popery," and caused a strong feeling to arise against the episcopalian form of church-government (§§ 402, 420). But in England at least he was able, by means of the High Commission Court, to keep the clergy in awe, and, by means of the Star Chamber, to punish his lay opponents (§§ 270, 344). In 1637, for instance, William Prynne, a barrister, Henry Burton, a clergyman, and John Bastwick, a physician, were fined, mutilated, and sent to prison for libelling the bishops. The mob applauded them as they stood in the pillory, but could do nothing to help them.

**§ 395. The Scots Resistance and the First Bishops' War, 1637-1639.**—In Scotland, Laud's ecclesiastical policy was not only unpopular but successfully resisted. There, in 1636, Charles completed his father's gradual restoration of full authority to the titular bishops (§ 372), and in 1637 he ordered the use of a liturgy drawn up by Laud on the Anglican model. The first attempt, in July 1637, to read the new service in S. Giles's, Edinburgh, roused a storm of indignation against bishops and English interference. In February 1638 a second *National Covenant* against "Popery" was drawn up, which Scotsmen of all classes signed with such zeal and in such numbers that Charles prudently withdrew the service-book (cf. § 350).

In November the General Assembly of the Scots Kirk, to guard against danger in future, abolished the episcopate and set up a purely presbyterian government (§§ 348, 420); and when Charles declined to confirm these changes both sides prepared for war. The Scots army, under Alexander Leslie—fresh from his experience in the Thirty Years' War—was far superior in discipline to the force which Charles could gather; and in June 1639 he agreed to the *Pacification of Berwick*, whereby all ecclesiastical and civil questions were referred to the Scottish Assembly and Estates respectively.

§ 396. **The Short Parliament, April-May 1640.**—The demands made by the Scots assemblies were so great that Charles yielded to the advice of Laud and Wentworth (now Earl of Strafford) to appeal to the generosity and Scottish antipathies of his English subjects. In April 1640 he met his fourth Parliament, and found it no more prepared than its predecessors to give money unless it had previously received something in return. After a session of three weeks it was dismissed, and, by contrast with the parliament which speedily followed it (§ 399), it soon won the name of "the Short Parliament." The clergy proved more compliant than the laity. Contrary to the usual custom, the Canterbury Convocation continued to sit after the concurrent Parliament was dissolved; and during the extra session the clergy made a liberal grant of money. This grant, which was denounced as illegal by the parliamentary Opposition of the day, illustrated the growth of a breach in sentiment between the clergy and the well-to-do middle classes.

§ 397. **The Second Bishops' War, 1640.**—Meanwhile the Scots Parliament had been placing the northern kingdom in a posture of defence; and in August its army crossed the Tweed to fight against "the Canterburian faction of Papists, Atheists, Arminians, and Prelates." By a skirmish at Newburn it forced its way across the Tyne, and occupied the four northern counties. Charles invited a Great Council of Peers to meet him at York; and the peers joined with the Londoners and the Scots in urging him to summon another Parliament. Lacking both efficient troops and money to pay them, Charles was compelled to take this advice, and also to open the negotiations known as the *Treaty of Ripon* with the victorious Scots.

### III. BEGINNINGS OF THE LONG PARLIAMENT, 1640-1642.

§ 398. **Remedial Work of the Long Parliament, 1640.**—Charles had embarked upon large enterprises without properly estimating the cost; and the success of the Scots resistance had

forced him once more to face parliamentary opposition. His fifth Parliament, which met at Westminster on November 3, 1640, was very different in feeling from its predecessor. The events of the summer had proved the King's helplessness; the interest displayed in the General Election had shown that Parliament had the nation solid at its back; and it had the moral support of the Scots army. The Parliament could, and the King could not, venture to be bold and resolute. Hence during its first and unanimous session (November 3, 1640–September 9, 1641), it was able to make a series of sweeping changes which may be generally classified under the heads of remedial and preventive. The remedial measures undid many of the recent acts of the Government, or punished their doers, or attempted reparation to the injured: the preventive measures sought to make similar acts impossible in the future. For instance, Parliament released Prynne and other victims of the Star Chamber from their prisons and gave them compensation for their ill-treatment (§ 394); it reversed the sentence against Hampden in the *Ship-Money Case* (§ 393); and it dismissed the judges who had decided against him. Before the end of the year the Commons committed Strafford and Laud to prison, and subsidized the Scots army to remain in England until the work of reform should be accomplished.

§ 399. **Impeachment, Attainder, and Execution of Strafford, 1641.**—Strafford was formally impeached by the Commons on the charge of high treason; and the trial before the Lords began at the end of March 1641. The principal evidence of his treason offered was his alleged advice to Charles to use the Irish army against "this kingdom." But treason, as defined by law (cf. § 203), meant disloyalty to the *person* of the King (of which Strafford had obviously not been guilty); and it could not be decently stretched so far as to cover a mere difference of opinion with the Commons on the proper *office* of the King. Seeing no chance of securing a conviction from the Lords, the Commons, under Pym's guidance, dropped the impeachment and brought in a Bill of Attainder. In other words, having failed to prove Strafford guilty of the breach of any existing law, they condemned him to death for doing and saying things of which they happened to disapprove. The Commons passed the attainder by four to one, the Lords by three to two, and finally Charles—who had sworn that "not a hair of his head should be injured"—yielded to his wife's entreaties and to the London mob by giving his consent to the Bill. Strafford's execution (May 12) removed Charles's ablest statesman, and encouraged the Opposition.



**§ 400. Preventive Work of the Long Parliament, 1641.**—Before Strafford's death Parliament had begun its preventive or constructive work, which consisted partly in increasing the stability of Parliament, partly in lessening the powers of the King. In February it passed the *First Triennial Act* (§§ 452, 519), which provided that neither the duration of any parliament, nor the interval between two parliaments, should exceed three years. Two days before Strafford's death Charles gave his assent to a Bill whereby the parliament then in session could not be legally dissolved without its own consent (§ 440). The Long Parliament had in these two Acts legal security for the regular and continued existence of parliament as an institution, as it already had military security for its own existence in the subsidy-arrangement with the Scots. Thus safe both from domination and from dissolution, it passed in July a series of Acts which fundamentally changed the Tudor constitution of the country (§§ 263, 363). One set of Acts abolished both the Courts of Star Chamber and High Commission, and the Councils of the North and of Wales, and definitely declared illegal the powers of arbitrary imprisonment and summary jurisdiction hitherto exercised by the Privy Council. Another set of Acts declared illegal the various financial expedients of the Personal Government—Distrainment of Knighthood, Ship-Money, etc. (§ 393)—and also the older expedient of levying customs-dues by Prerogative (§§ 374, 383). The session was ended by the grant of liberal supplies to the King for a brief period, by the payment of the promised subsidy to the Scottish army, and by the disbanding of the English army.

**§ 401. The Incident and the Ulster Insurrection, September-October 1641.**—During the English parliamentary recess Charles paid a visit to Scotland, hoping to win back his popularity there by giving his assent to the ecclesiastical reforms of the Scots Assembly and by scattering peerages among his late opponents. But a mysterious attempt—known as “the Incident”—to kidnap Archibald Campbell, Marquess of Argyll, the head of the Covenanters, kept alive the Scottish suspicion of Charles; and he returned to England no stronger than before. Meanwhile the removal of the iron hand of Strafford and the confusion prevalent in Britain had encouraged the Irish malcontents to strike a blow against the English domination which had destroyed their independence, proscribed their religion, and confiscated their property (§ 392). On October 23, 1641—three days after the re-assembling of the Long Parliament—a rising broke out among the native Irish of Ulster which de-

veloped into an extensive massacre of the Protestant settlers (§ 412). As Strafford's army had been disbanded, it became necessary to raise troops for the suppression of this disorder; and a question arose whether Charles—who was quaintly suspected of being a "Papist" (§ 394)—was to be trusted with an army for service against the Irish Romanists. The Irish rising and the royal journey to Scotland were widely regarded in England as subtle devices on the part of Charles to gather forces to be used against the aggressive English Parliament.

**§ 402. Parliamentary Split about Ecclesiastical Reform, 1641.**—The civil reforms effected in the first session of the Long Parliament had been achieved by the consent of all parties, and proved to be permanent (§ 443). The chief questions facing Parliament on its reassembling in October were these:—(1) had enough been done to secure the permanence of the reforms already gained? (2) ought not the Church to be regulated, as the State had already been regulated, by parliamentary law? Something had been done to secure the liberty of the individual as regards his *person* and his *pocket*: ought not something also to be done for his freedom of *conscience*? Or rather—for the religious freedom of the individual was a notion which had hardly yet won its way to the front in England, as it had in New England (§ 391)—ought not the opinion of the majority to be allowed to influence the government of the Church as it already had influenced the government of the State? It was on this question of ecclesiastical reform, coupled with the question whether Charles was to be trusted to recognize in practice the limitations on his Prerogative to which he had given his formal consent, that the Parliament split into two parties and ceased to present a united front to the King. In the first session the Commons had authorized the defacement of "superstitious" altars and images in the churches, and had entertained proposals for the partial or entire abolition of the bishops. In the second session the "Root and Branch" party—i. e. the party which wished to do away with episcopacy "root and branch"—was strongest; and its threats forced the conservative church-party to rally round Charles.

**§ 403. The Grand Remonstrance, November 1641.**—The visible disintegration of Parliament alarmed Pym, Hampden, and other leaders of the active Opposition. In the hopes of discrediting Charles by a hostile review of his public acts, of drawing the separating parties together again, and of winning the support of the general public outside, they drew up a *Grand Remonstrance*

which received the approval of the Commons on November 22. This Remonstrance contained a long historical review of the events of the reign—intended to show that the King's conduct had been as foolish and unconstitutional as that of his Parliament had been the reverse—and a demand for remedies, especially the appointment of "ministers in whom the Parliament could confide." The Remonstrance was carried by a majority of only eleven votes in a large house; and the further proposal to print and publish the document, as an appeal to the nation at large, was carried by a still smaller majority. Outside the Houses, opinions were almost as evenly divided. Towards the end of December the partisans of the King began to mock the close-cropped Puritans who supported the Parliament by the name of *Roundheads*, and received in return the nickname of *Cavaliers*. The House of Lords generally, its episcopal members invariably, supported the King: hence the catchword of Londoners at the moment was—"No Bishops! No Popish Lords!"

§ 404. **The Arrest of the Five Members, January 1642.**—Encouraged by many signs of his own popularity, Charles resolved to strike a blow at the leaders of the Opposition. On January 3 his Attorney-General laid charges of treason before the House of Lords against Lord Kimbolton (Edward Montague, afterwards Earl of Manchester) and five members of the Commons—Pym, Hampden, Hazlerigg, Holles, and Strode. Their dealings with the Scots rebels were held to be treason; but the procedure was unusual, and the Lords declined to order the arrest of the accused. Next day, Charles—impelled by the taunts of his wife—went down to the House to effect their arrest in person: he found that "the birds were flown," and that the Commons would not help him to capture them. Charles's premature attack had lost him all the ground that he had won in the general good-will. On January 10 he left London—not to return until brought back as a prisoner seven years later (§ 424); and in the following month the Queen went over to the Continent to gather arms and treasure for the war which now began to seem probable.

§ 405. **The Militia Bill and the Nineteen Propositions, February–June 1642.**—In February, Charles gave his assent to the *Clerical Disabilities Bill*, depriving the bishops of their seats in the House of Lords and of all their civil offices; but he declined to assent to the *Militia Bill*, depriving himself of the control of the army that was being raised for service in Ireland. The two Houses—now diminished by the secession of many members who clung to the King—took matters into their own hands, and ascribed the force

of law to their Bills under the name of *Ordinances* (cf. § 202). They assumed the task of appointing the lords-lieutenants of counties, and thus acquired the control of the militia: they also secured the fleet. In April, Sir John Hotham, by command of Parliament, declined to admit the King into his arsenal at Kingston-on-Hull. In June, Charles refused to consent to the parliamentary ultimatum known as the *Nineteen Propositions*, designed to obtain for Parliament an effective control over all branches of the administration—military and naval, civil and ecclesiastical, judicial and international. In July, Parliament named the Earl of Essex, son of Elizabeth's favourite (§§ 357-9), to be Captain-General over all its forces; and on August 22, the King, having moved from York, gave the signal for civil war by setting up his royal standard at Nottingham.



# Conspectus of the First Civil War.

NOTE.—R. = Royalist; P. = Parliamentarian; C. = Covenanter; M. = Montrose; when these initials are in dark type, it signifies that the side thereby denoted was victorious in the operation to which it is appended.

An asterisk (\*) denotes a drawn or doubtful battle.

Dark type is used to distinguish the most important battles.

**1642.—Features:** Indecisive Opening; Occupation of Oxford; Direct Attack on London.

Aug. 22.—Raising of the Royal Standard at Nottingham.

Oct. 23.—**Edgehill** \*: Essex P. v. Forth and Rupert R.

Nov. 12.—Skirmish at Brentford: Holles P. v. Rupert R.  
Negotiations at Oxford.

**1643.—Charles's Plan of Campaign:** Newcastle's Army of the North to press down along E. coast into Essex, and Hopton's Army of the West to press along S. coast into Kent, as far as Thames mouth; then King to strike at London.

<i>North and East.</i>	<i>Midlands.</i>	<i>South and West.</i>
June 30.—Adwalton Moor: Fairfaxes P. v. Newcastle, R.	June 18.—Chalgrove Field: Hampden d.	May 16.—Stratton: Stamford P. v. Hopton and Grenville, R.
July 28.—Gainsborough: Cromwell P. v. Newcastle, R.		July 5.—Lansdown: Waller P. v. Hopton, R.
		" 18.—Roundway Down: Waller P. v. Hopton, R.
Sept. 2—Oct. 12.—R. Siege of Hull.	Aug. 10—Sept. 5.—R. Siege of Gloucester.	" 26.—Bristol taken by Rupert, R.
Oct. 11.—Winceby, Cromwell P. v. R.	Sept. 20.—1st Newbury *: Essex v. King.	Aug.—Oct.—R. Siege of Flymouth.
		Dec. 9—Jan. 6.—Arun- del held by Hopton, R.

July 1.—WESTMINSTER ASSEMBLY meets.

Sept. 15.—THE CESSATION. Sept. 25.—SOLEMN LEAGUE AND COVENANT. Dec. 8.—Death of Pym.

## The First Civil War (continued).

**1644.** Jan. 19.—Scottish Army crosses Tweed. Feb. 16.—Committee of Both Kingdoms replaces Committee of Safety.

Jan. 22—Apr. 16.—The Oxford Parliament.

*R. Plan of Campaign*: Diversions in Scotland and Ireland; Support N. and S. Armies from Oxford as needed.

Jan. 25.—Nantwich:

Fairfax P. v. Byron R.

March—July 16.—P. Siege of York.

July 2.—Marston Moor: Fairfax, Manchester, P. and Leven (C) v. Rupert and Newcastle, R.

May—June.—P. Siege of Oxford.

June 29.—Cropredy Bridge: Waller P. v. Charles, R.

March 29—Cheriton:

Waller P. v. Forth and Hopton, R.

Sept 2.—Surrender of Essex's Army at Lostwithiel, R.

Sept. 1.—Montrose's first victory, over Elcho, at Tippermuir; over Balfour, Aberdeen, Sept. 13.

Oct. 19.—Town of Newcastle surrenders to Scots.

Oct. 27.—2nd Newbury\*: Manchester P. v. Charles.

**1645.**—P. SELF-DENYING ORDINANCES and the NEW MODEL TREATY OF UXBRIDGE, Jan.—Feb.

*R. Plan of Campaign*: Keep up connexion with Scotland.

Scotland.	Midlands.	South West.
Feb. 2.—Inverlochy: M. v. Argyll, C.		
May 9.—Auldearn: M. v. Hurry, C.	June 14.—Naseby: Fairfax and Cromwell, P. v. Rupert and King, R.	P. Relief of Taunton.
July 2.—Alford: M. v. Baillie, C.		July 10.—Langport: Fairfax P. v. Goring, R.
Aug. 14.—Kilsyth: M. v. Baillie, C.		

Aug. 25.—GLAMORGAN'S TREATY WITH THE CONFEDERATE CATHOLICS.

Sept. 13.—Philiphaugh: M. v. David Leslie, C.

Sept. 24.—Rowton Heath: P.

Oct. 13.—Basing House: Cromwell, P.

Sept. 10.—P. Capture of Bristol: Fairfax and Cromwell v. Rupert.

**1646.**—March 14, R. Army of West surrenders to Fairfax, P.; and March 21, Astley, R. defeated at Stow-on-the-Wold.

Charles I. driven to Oxford Nov. 5, 1645; takes refuge amongst the Scots near Newark May 5, 1646.

Raglan Castle surrenders Aug. 19, 1646; Harlech Castle, March 13, 1647.

## CHAPTER XXX.

### THE GREAT CIVIL WAR, 1642-1649

- A. PERSONAL HISTORY. }  
 B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS. } See previous chapter.

#### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(i) <b>International : relations with—</b><br/>             (1) France: § 411.<br/>             (2) Palatinate: § 407.</p> <p>(ii) <b>Constitutional :</b><br/>             (b) <i>Non-English—</i><br/>             (1) Scotland: §§ 411, 413, 414,<br/>             416, 418, 419-422.<br/>             (2) Ireland: §§ 411, 412, 414, 418.</p> | <p>(ii) <b>Constitutional : (a) English—</b><br/>             (1) Church: §§ 406, 413, 417, 418,<br/>             420, 421.<br/>             (2) Army: §§ 407, 410, 414, 417,<br/>             421.<br/>             (3) Parties: §§ 406, 407, 417, 420,<br/>             421, 423, 424. [423.<br/>             (4) Negotiations: §§ 409, 417, 421,<br/>             (5) Parliament v. King: §§ 408-419.<br/>             (6) Parliament v. Army: §§ 421-424.</p> |
|--|---|

#### I. THE FIRST CIVIL WAR, 1642-1646.

§ 406. **The Divisions of Classes and Localities.**—The real cause of the civil war was not the constitutional and legal questions which took so prominent a place in the copious pamphlet literature of the time, but the mutual distrust of King and Parliament. Charles had good grounds for doubting whether there was likely to be any limit to the demands made upon him: Parliament had equally good grounds for suspecting that Charles would take the first opportunity to repudiate his recent concessions (§§ 398-400). For the most part, classes, districts, and interests which were conservative in feeling supported the King, while those who desired further changes threw in their lot with Parliament. Those who believed in Episcopacy—whether Anglicans or Roman Catholics—were Royalists: the strength of the Parliamentarians lay in Puritanism. There was no hard and fast geographical or social line dividing the rival parties. But on the whole the backward portion of the land—the North and the West—supported the King, while the wealthier and more progressive regions of the East and Midlands supported Parliament (Plan, p. 257). The peers were mainly Royalist; the towns and the yeomen were mainly Parliamentary; the gentry were pretty evenly divided.

§ 407. **Military Conditions of the Civil War.**—At the beginning of the war the balance of military advantage lay with the King ; and it is possible that a bold march on London might have ended the war before it was well begun. The bulk of Charles's followers were country-folk accustomed to riding and to roughing it in out-of-door work ; while the bulk of the Parliamentarians belonged to the urban classes of more or less sedentary occupation. Owing to the long peace which had prevailed in England the partisans of both sides were badly in need of training ; but the Royalists had the more promising raw material. Nearly all the officers who made their mark on either side—save the Royalist Montrose and the Puritan Cromwell—had seen service abroad as volunteers in the Thirty Years' War. On the King's side, these included his nephews Rupert and Maurice, the Earls of Lindsey and Forth, and Sir Jacob Astley : on the side of the Parliament, there were Essex, Sir Thomas Fairfax, Sir William Waller, and George Monk. But these experienced officers were unable to impart much training to their regiments, so long as the men took service for only a few months at a time and then returned to their ordinary business. The belief that the war would soon be over helped to prolong it, by postponing the serious attempts of either side to raise a regular army of trained troops. Ultimately Parliament won, because—while the Royalists remained mere *fighters*—the yeomen and apprentices were allowed time to be trained into *soldiers* (§§ 410, 417).

§ 408. **General Survey of the War, 1642-1646.**—The war thus caused and conditioned lasted through three full-year and two half-year campaigns. The first campaign, in 1642, was marked by great indecision, each side being inexperienced and being influenced by its peace advocates ; the second campaign, in 1643, was rendered indecisive by the inability of each side to concentrate its forces ; the third campaign, in 1644, saw the entrance of the Scots into the quarrel turn the balance in favour of the Parliament ; the fourth campaign, in 1645, was marked by the decisive victory of the re-organized army of the Parliament at Naseby ; and the fifth campaign, in 1646, consisted in the capture of the isolated strongholds and armies which still stood out for the King. Throughout, these campaigns in England were vitally affected by events in the sister kingdoms ; and the defeat of Charles's forces failed to bring the constitutional problems perceptibly nearer to solution.

§ 409. **First Campaign, 1642: Edgehill and Brentford.**—At the outset Charles was hampered by lack of arms and money,



Parliament by the rawness of its troops and by a disinclination to risk unpopularity by imposing heavy taxation on its wealthy supporters. Parliament remained on the defensive, garrisoning a line of towns from Worcester to Northampton to bar the road to London. It was not till October that Charles began his advance. On October 23 he inflicted a repulse on Essex at Edgehill, in the south-east of Warwickshire, but Essex was none the less able to reach London first. Charles got as far as Brentford in the middle of November, and then deemed it prudent to retire for the winter to Oxford, which henceforth became his head-quarters. Essex took up his winter-quarters at Thame, some twelve miles east of Oxford. During the winter there took place the abortive negotiations known as the *Treaty of Oxford* (February 1643).

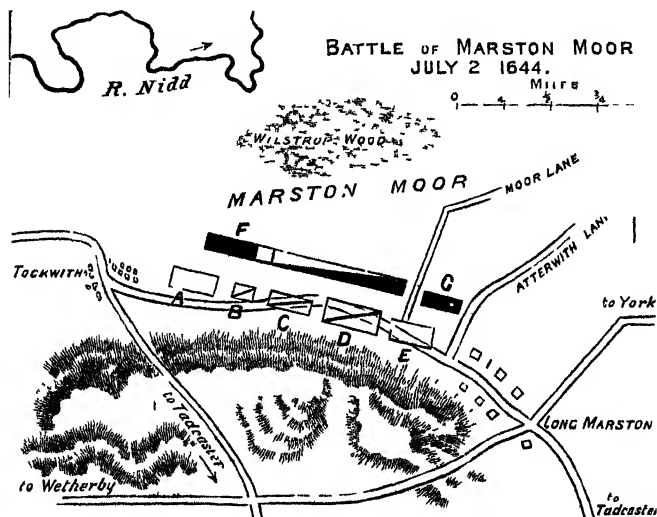
§ 410. **Second Campaign, 1643.**—The prospects of the Parliamentarians were gloomy, and the Londoners were so discouraged by the cost of the war that the poet Waller formed a plot in April 1643 to seize the City and admit the King. But meanwhile their loosely organized *county* levies were being replaced by better organized *provincial* armies, of which the chief was that of the Eastern Association under Manchester and Oliver Cromwell. In the early part of 1643 the forces of the Eastern Association not only stamped out Royalism in its own district, but obtained a firm hold on Lincolnshire. Elsewhere the Parliamentarians at first fared badly: on June 18, Hampden was mortally wounded in a skirmish with Rupert's troopers at Chalgrove Field, near Oxford; on June 30 the Earl of Newcastle secured nearly the whole of Yorkshire for the Royalists by defeating the Fairfaxes at Adwalton Moor, near Bradford; and a series of Royalist successes—beginning with Hopton's victory at Stratton in Cornwall on May 16, and crowned by Rupert's capture of Bristol on July 26—deprived the Parliament of its hold on the South-West. The way seemed open for a combined march of the three principal Royalist armies on London. But, to conciliate local feeling, the advance was deferred until the fortified towns of Hull, Gloucester, and Plymouth should fall. The delay spoilt the scheme. Plymouth was relieved from the sea; Hull was relieved by Cromwell; Gloucester was relieved at the last moment by Essex on September 5. Essex secured his retreat to London after a fight with the King at Newbury in Berkshire on September 20.

§ 411. **The Solemn League and Covenant, 1643.**—Each of the English parties had managed to hold its own; but, to bring the war to an end, allies were required. France and the other Continental

Powers were still too busy with the Thirty Years' War to intervene : but the issue of the English civil war closely concerned the sister kingdoms. There could be little doubt that, if the King won, his hand would be heavy on the Scottish Covenanters, whose resistance had been the practical beginning of his troubles (§§ 395-398). There could be as little doubt that the Parliament, if victorious, would show very little mercy to the Roman Catholic insurgents in Ireland (§ 427). In September 1643 the recognition of these facts led the Irish insurgents to come to terms with Charles, and the Scottish Covenanters to make an alliance with the Parliament. The former agreement, known as the *Cessation*, was made on September 15: the latter agreement, known as the *Solemn League and Covenant*, was completed ten days later. These treaties cannot be understood without knowing the circumstances of the consenting parties.

§ 412. *State of Ireland, 1641-1643.*—The Ulster Rising of 1641 both helped and was helped by the quarrel between King and Parliament in England: it spread over all Ireland, and was not finally suppressed until the contest in England was settled (§§ 401, 427). The rising was begun by the native Irish in the hope of recovering their tribal lands and tribal customs; but in October 1642 they made common cause with the Hibernian lords who, like the native Irish, had reason to fear the triumph of the Puritan party. The allies called themselves the "Confederate Catholics"; but the tie of their common religion was not always as strong as their old race antipathies. In the desultory war which followed, the Confederates had to face—sometimes separately, sometimes conjointly—three several sets of opponents, often at war with one another—(1) the King's forces under the Marquess of Ormonde, (2) the forces of the Parliament under various leaders, and (3) a Scots army under Monroe in the North. In this five-fold tangle it was natural that the parties which had, for the time being, common interests should form temporary accommodations with one another. Hence, the King strove to make terms with the Confederate Catholics: in September 1643, the *Cessation*, a truce for one year, set free part of Ormonde's troops for service in England; in August 1645, the *Treaty of Kilkenny*—commonly known by the name of Charles's agent as the *Glamorgan Treaty*—attempted to bring the war to a close by extensive civil and ecclesiastical concessions to the Irish. Neither treaty did Charles any military good: both did him great political harm—for they seemed to confirm the popular delusion that he was himself at heart a "Papist" (§§ 394, 401).

§ 413. **The State of Scotland, 1640-1643.**—The success of the Scots, especially the Lowland Scots, in resisting the attempt to impose Episcopacy upon them, encouraged them to hope that they might in turn impose Presbyterianism on the sister kingdoms. They had proved their ability to win their cause unaided in the Bishops' Wars; and when the English Parliament, unable to win its cause alone, asked their help, they were able to dictate their own terms. The *Solemn League and Covenant*—which, as the name



Parliamentarians, 24,000. A, Cromwell and Leslie; B, Crawford; C, Baillie; D, Lord Fairfax; E, Sir Thomas Fairfax.

Royalists, 22,000. Newcastle in centre; F, Rupert; G, Goring.

implies, was partly a civil alliance, partly a religious contract—provided that, whereas the Scots Kirk was to be “preserved,” the English Church was to be “reformed.” The treaty was negotiated by Sir Harry Vane, the younger, under the direction of Pym—who died shortly afterwards; and it entrusted the management of the war to a “Committee of Both Kingdoms.”

§ 414. **Third Campaign, 1644: (i) Marston Moor.**—In January 1644, Ormonde's spare troops from Ireland, and a Scots army under Alexander Leslie, now Earl of Leven, entered England

as allies of the King and of the Parliament respectively. The Irish contingent was immediately crushed by the Fairfaxes at Nantwich (on January 25): the Scottish succours permanently turned the balance in favour of the Parliament. The Scots were joined by the army of the Eastern Association, under Manchester and Cromwell, and by Fairfax's army; and the three armies closed round the hitherto victorious Marquess of Newcastle, and shut him up in York. Prince Rupert raised the siege, but late in the evening of July 2 he insisted on fighting a battle against slightly superior numbers on Marston Moor, a few miles west of the city. Cromwell's cavalry put Rupert's to flight, and saved Fairfax from defeat. Henceforth Cromwell's troopers were known as Ironsides.

§ 415. (ii) **South England.**—The battle of Marston Moor, which gave the whole of the North into the hands of the Anglo-Scottish host, was far more decisive and important than all the other battles of the year put together. After defeating Hopton at Cheriton in Hants (March 29), Waller joined Essex in laying siege to Oxford. But the two commanders parted in anger, and were beaten separately by Charles in person: Waller, at Cropredy Bridge on the river Cherwell (June 29); Essex, at Lostwithiel, in Cornwall—where his entire force of infantry was compelled to surrender (September 2), though he himself escaped by sea. Having thus driven from the field the two Parliamentary armies of the South, Charles made a dash for London; but he was effectively stopped by the army of the Eastern Association at Newbury (October 27).

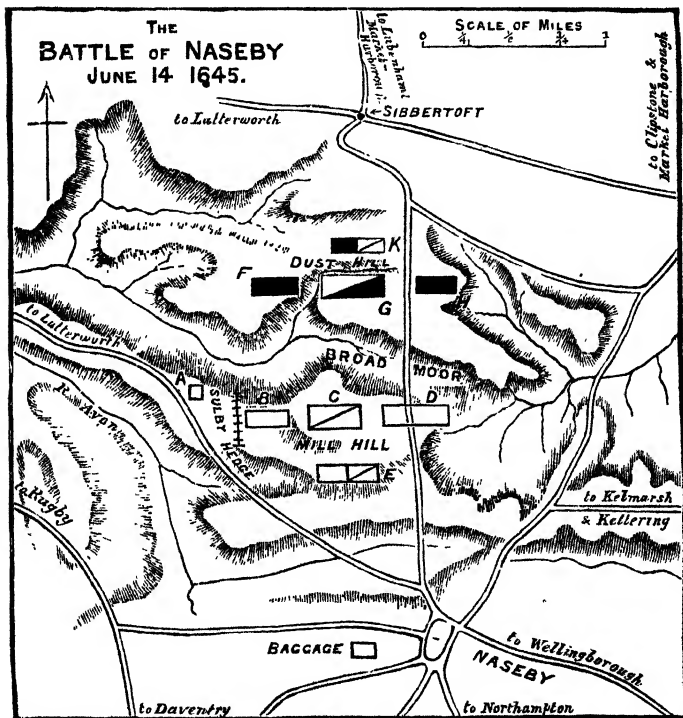
§ 416. **Montrose in Scotland, 1644-5.**—The head of the Presbyterian Scots of the Lowlands was the Marquess of Argyll, chief of the powerful clan of Campbell. His alliance with the Parliament threw the many Highland clans which hated the Campbells into the arms of the King; and these clans found an able leader in James Graham, Marquess of Montrose. In the course of a twelvemonth, Montrose, with forces small in numbers, ill-equipped, and serving for very short periods, won a series of victories which seemed for a moment likely to turn the scale in favour of Charles. The series began with the battle of Tippermuir near Perth (September 1, 1644); it reached its climax in the battle at Kilsyth, near Glasgow (August 14, 1645); and it was effectually stopped by his overthrow at Philiphaugh in Selkirk, September 13, 1645.

§ 417. **Negotiation and Organization, 1645.**—The military successes of Montrose encouraged Charles to refuse the hard terms proposed by Parliament in the *Treaty of Uxbridge*, January 1645:

he was required to take the Covenant, to agree to the abolition of Episcopacy, and to entrust the military and diplomatic business of the country to the Joint Committee for twenty years. Charles's adherence to Episcopacy was strengthened by the execution of his friend Laud in January—like Strafford, condemned for treason by Bill of Attainder—and by observing that his opponents were no longer agreed as to what form of church-government should be instituted (§ 420). There was a small but strenuous and growing party rising up among the Parliamentarians which thought Presbyterianism as objectionable as Episcopacy, and which was resolved to obtain peace by the energetic prosecution of the war, and to secure the continuance of peace by granting a large measure of religious toleration. Cromwell, the chief leader of these "Independents," roundly accused the principal generals, Essex, Manchester, and Waller—who belonged to the Presbyterian party—of trifling with the war in the interest of the King, and demanded a complete reorganization of the forces of Parliament. Early in 1645 this demand was met by two Ordinances: one replaced the fluctuating local levies by a regular standing army of 21,000 strong; and the other, called the *Self-Denying Ordinance*, deprived members of either House of military commands. Sir Thomas, now Lord, Fairfax became Lord-General, and Cromwell was placed over the cavalry in this freshly organized or "New Model" army: he was one of the few deprived officers who were reappointed.

§ 418. **Fourth Campaign, 1645.**—The success of Montrose decided the course of the campaign of 1645: the New Model decided its result. Leven's Scots army, instead of co-operating with the English armies, turned north to be ready to face Montrose, if necessary; Charles delayed leaving Oxford to join Montrose until the slow organization of the New Model had been completed, and was in consequence completely defeated by Fairfax and Cromwell at Naseby, near Market Harborough, on June 14; and Montrose, marching south to join his master, was overthrown at Philiphaugh by a detachment of Leven's troops under David Leslie. The battles of Naseby and Philiphaugh practically destroyed the King's military power. At the same time the capture of Charles's papers—which proved his intrigues with the Irish "rebels" and with the Roman Catholic Powers of the Continent, and which were at once published under the title of *The King's Cabinet Opened*—did him as much harm by discrediting him politically. Henceforth his only hope of success lay in taking advantage of the dissensions among his

victors. Philiphaugh had been won by the Scots for Presbyterianism : Naseby had been won by Cromwell for Independency. The religious toleration advocated by Cromwell's party seemed to the Presbyterian "a grand design of the Devil" (§ 420).



Parliament, 14,500. A, Okey ; B, Ireton ; C, Skippon ; D, Cromwell ; E, Fairfax.  
King, 7,500. F, Rupert ; G, Astley ; H, Langdale ; K, King.

§ 419. Fifth Campaign, 1646. There still remained a few bodies of troops and a few isolated fortresses holding out for Charles. But after Hopton's surrender to Fairfax at Truro, and Sir Jacob Astley's defeat at Stow-on-the-Wold in March 1646, Charles had no army in the field. On May 5 he took refuge in the Scots camp at Newark ; and early in the following month he issued orders that all

places flying his flag should surrender. Though Harlech Castle held out till March 1647, the First Civil War may be regarded as practically ended by Charles I.'s flight from Oxford to Newark.

## II. KING, PARLIAMENT, AND ARMY, 1646-1649.

§ 420. **The Westminster Assembly of Divines, 1643-1647.**—The question of ecclesiastical reform—or, as it was then called, “the public profession of religion”—had caused the split among the Parliamentarians which encouraged Charles to appeal to arms; and it still continued as a dividing influence, of which Charles, worsted in his appeal to arms, confidently expected to be able to take advantage. But the question had changed in form during the civil war: as an alternative to one or other of the rigid and uniform church-systems proposed in 1641—Episcopacy or Presbyterianism—there had risen an effective demand for the flexible and diverse church-system known as Congregationalism or Independency. The Long Parliament had formally abolished the bishops in September 1642, and entrusted “the further and more perfect reformation of the Church” to a body of experts in the following summer. This Westminster Assembly sat from July 1643 to August 1647: it consisted of both divines and laymen, drawn from all the leading religious parties except Roman Catholics—who were at that time hardly regarded as Christians by the average Englishman of the day. The small number of Episcopalians withdrew at an early stage; and though there were present “Erasians,” whose main idea was to secure the supremacy of Parliament over the Church, and Independents, whose main idea was to secure a tolerant church, the preponderating party was throughout—especially after the Anglo-Scottish alliance of 1643 (§ 413)—pledged to some kind of Presbyterianism. It drew up a *Directory of Public Worship* to supersede the *Book of Common Prayer*; and it also framed the *Westminster Confession of Faith*, the *Larger Catechism* and the *Shorter Catechism*—theological documents which still form the basis of British Presbyterianism. It also planned a system of Presbyterian church-government for England; but political power passed from the hands of the Presbyterian party before its reconstitution of the Church of England could be accomplished.

§ 421. **Quarrel between Parliament and Army, 1647.**—In January 1647 the Scots received the pay due to them under the *Solemn League and Covenant*, and returned to their own country, leaving the King in the hands of the English Parliament. The

dominant party in Parliament was proposing to restore Charles to his full authority in return for his assent to the establishment of Presbyterianism. To make the negotiations easier and safer, Parliament in March passed certain ordinances reducing the Army, and striking off five-sixths of its arrears of pay. The Army objected, and, under the guidance of Fairfax and Ireton, who were ultimately joined by Cromwell, organized itself as a kind of trade-union under a Council of Officers and a Council of Agitators—the latter consisting of two agents or agitators elected by each regiment. Thus organized, the Army seized the King at Holmby House near Naseby in June, marched on London, and ejected eleven of the Presbyterian leaders from the House of Commons. In August the Army put forth a document called *Heads of Proposals*, containing the conditions upon which they were willing to restore the King: among the more notable conditions were parliamentary and judicial reforms, and toleration to all religious parties except Roman Catholics. The terms offered by the Army were much more liberal and easy than those offered by the Parliament; but Charles, persuaded that he could ultimately win back his power without conditions, declined to accept. On November 11, he escaped from Hampton Court to the Isle of Wight, and there continued his intrigues with the English Presbyterians, the Scots, and the Royalists of all three kingdoms. At Carisbrooke Castle, on December 26, he made a secret *Engagement* with the Scots whereby, in return for a three years' trial of Presbyterianism and repression of the Independents, they promised to restore him to the monarchical power as defined in 1641.

§ 422. **Second Civil War, March-August, 1648.**—The failure of the authorities to make any settlement, coupled with Charles's intrigues, kindled a fresh civil war, in which many who had previously taken part against the King, now acted on his side. London was kept down only by main force; and the fleet in the Downs, hitherto Parliamentarian, hoisted the royal standard and passed under the command of Prince Rupert. In the spring of 1648 Royalist risings broke out all over South Britain; in July a Scottish army under the Duke of Hamilton crossed the Border to their assistance. Fairfax crushed the southern risings by storming Maidstone (June 1), and by forcing Colchester to surrender (August 28). Cromwell, having taken Pembroke on July 11, pushed northwards, and defeated Hamilton in a three days' battle, extending from Preston to Warrington (August 17-19). Marching into Scotland, he helped Argyll's party, the *Protesters*, to recover its power.



§ 423. **Pride's Purge, December 6, 1648.**—Charles's duplicity—springing out of his conscientious belief that Kingship and Episcopacy were sacred charges which must be defended from wicked men at all costs—was the direct cause of the second civil war. The Army had therefore vowed vengeance against "Charles Stuart, that man of blood"; and Cromwell, who had come to respect the *man*, persuaded himself that the *King* must be called to account. When Parliament, therefore, re-opened negotiations with Charles—known as the *Treaty of Newport*—the Council of Officers presented the *Grand Army Remonstrance* demanding the dissolution of Parliament, and the punishment of the "capital and grand author" of all the troubles of the country. Finding the Remonstrance unheeded, the Army again seized the King, and "secluded" one hundred and fifty-three Presbyterian members of Parliament. The latter operation, known as *Pride's Purge*, took place on December 6: it left only about fifty members, which, as being the sitting part of Parliament, was nicknamed "the Rump."

§ 424. **Trial and Execution of Charles I., January 1649.**—On December 23 the Rump voted that Charles should be brought to trial, and when the Lords declined to assent, declared that, as the people alone were the source of lawful power, the assent of the Lords was unnecessary. The Rump, which really represented only a small but armed minority, thus claimed to be not merely the House of Commons, but the whole Parliament. The trial lasted seven days; on January 20 Charles was arraigned by the specially created High Court of Justice, sitting under the presidency of John Bradshaw, as a "tyrant, murderer, public and implacable enemy to the Commonwealth of England"; on January 27 he was sentenced to death (sixty-seven out of the one hundred and thirty-five judges being present); and on January 30 he was executed outside his palace of Whitehall. He believed sincerely in the justice and righteousness of his cause: many of his judges had an equally sincere belief in the righteousness of their action. His brave and dignified bearing during his last troubles attracted almost universal admiration: it was a political opponent, Andrew Marvell, M.P. for Hull, who wrote the well-known lines about his execution:—

He nothing common did nor mean  
Upon that memorable scene,  
But with his keener eye  
The axe's edge did try;

Nor call'd the Gods, with vulgar  
spite,  
To vindicate his helpless right;  
But bow'd his comely head  
Down, as upon a bed.

## CHAPTER XXXI.

### THE COMMONWEALTH, 1649-1660.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—This period is included by *legal* reckoning in the reign of Charles II. (see next chapter), but he did not become *de facto* King till 1660. From 1653 to 1658, much of the kingly power was vested in a "Lord Protector." Oliver Cromwell (whose great-grandfather had changed his name *Williams* for that of *Cromwell* in honour of his uncle, Henry VIII.'s Vicar-General), was appointed Lord Protector on December 16, 1653; in 1657 he received parliamentary authority to name his successor; on his death, September 3, 1658, his son and nominee, Richard, succeeded him, but resigned on May 25, 1659.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	TURKEY.	ELSEWHERE.
Innocent X. (1644)	Ferdinand III. (1637)	Louis XIV. (1643-1715)	Philip IV. (1621-1665)	Muham- mad IV. (1648-1687)	Christina, <i>Sweden</i> (1632-1654)
Alexander VII. (1655)	Leopold I. (1658-1705)				Charles X., <i>Sweden</i> (1654-1660)

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) France: § 436.
- (2) Spain: § 436.
- (3) United Provinces: §§ 429, 430, 436.
- (4) Sweden: § 436.
- (5) Savoy: § 436.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) Scotland: §§ 428, 433, 434, 440.
- (2) Ireland: §§ 426, 427, 433, 434.
- (3) Parliament: §§ 425, 430-434, 437-441.
- (4) Written Constitutions: §§ 433, 437.
- (5) Church: §§ 435, 441.

### I. PARLIAMENTARY REPUBLIC, 1649-1653.

§ 425. **Establishment of the Republic, 1649.**—The death of the King left the Rump as the sole body with any show of legal authority; and such legal authority as it possessed was effective only because and so far as it had the support of the Army, which itself owed what claims to legal existence it possessed to the Ordinance of the Long Parliament (§ 417). The Rump proceeded

to assert that it really was various things that it really was not, and to take measures that no one should deny its assertions. On the day after Charles's execution it formally expelled from the House the members "secluded" by Pride's Purge; on February 13 it entrusted the executive to a Council of State almost as numerous as itself, and consisting mainly of its own members; on March 17 it abolished the office of King as "unnecessary, burdensome, and dangerous to the liberty, safety, and public interest of the people" of England and Ireland; on March 19 it abolished the House of Lords as "useless and dangerous"; and on May 19 it passed an Act constituting "the people of England, and of all the dominions and territories thereunto belonging" as a "Commonwealth and Free State . . . without any King or House of Lords."

§ 426. **Internal Resistance to the Republic: (i) England and the Colonies.**—The recent results of the Second Civil War prevented any fresh rising in England on the part of the Presbyterians or Royalists (§ 422); during the spring Fairfax and Cromwell had to repress several armed efforts to obtain more revolutionary changes, made by various groups of men whom we should now-a-days call by such names as "radical reformers," "socialists," or "anarchists." Of these, the most important were the Levellers, whose chief spokesman was John Lilburne: they wished to bring Parliament under the control, not of the Army, but of the nation, and ultimately to level all distinctions of rank in society. Most of the dominions and territories belonging to England had to be subjected by force to the Commonwealth. After Robert Blake had chased Prince Rupert's fleet (§ 422) from the British seas to the Mediterranean and defeated it there in 1651, the Channel Islands, and the British plantations in America and in the West Indies were soon reduced to submission.

§ 427. **(ii) Ireland: The Second Conquest, 1649.**—Before the outlying colonies had acknowledged the change of government, Ireland had undergone her second conquest (cf. § 358). There no interruption had taken place in the fighting since the abortive *Glamorgan Treaty* of 1645 (§ 412); but the course of events in England had affected the balance of parties. On June 5, 1646, Owen Roe O'Neil, the gallant leader of the native Irish in Ulster, overthrew Monroe's Scots at Benburb, near Armagh, and thus greatly strengthened that section of the Confederate Catholics which, under the guidance of the Papal Nuncio Rinuccini, was aiming at national independence. About the same time, Charles had authorized his partisans to stop fighting (§ 419). When Ormonde, therefore,

in July 1647 found himself reduced to such straits that he could no longer hold Dublin, he decided to hand it over to the Parliamentary Commander, Michael Jones, rather than to the Confederates. The execution of Charles I. changed the situation (§ 424). Ormonde returned to Ireland, and made alliance not only with the Anglo-Irish section of the Confederates, but also with the Ulster Scots. But before the O'Neil could join the coalition, Jones had broken its power by a victory at Rathmines, outside Dublin, on August 2, 1649. A fortnight later Cromwell landed with his English veterans and with orders from the Rump to bring the Irish war to a speedy close. The orders chimed well with his inclinations. As a general, he believed in the maxim, "When you hit, hit hard": as a Puritan, he rejoiced to hit "Papists" hard. He avenged the "innocent blood" of 1641 (§ 401) by sacking Drogheda (September 11) and Wexford (October 12). In accordance with the custom of the time the garrisons were put to the sword. Having thus broken the neck of the "horrid rebellion," he left the completion of the conquest to his son-in-law, Ireton, who finished his task before his death in 1651. The Rump punished the long rebellion, and attempted to simplify Irish problems by transporting large numbers of Roman Catholics to Connaught. Their confiscated estates were assigned to the unpaid soldiers and other creditors of the Commonwealth. As these measures were carried out by members of the Cromwell family, who for the next decade bore rule in Ireland, they are usually known as "the Cromwellian Settlement" of Ireland (§ 451).

**§ 428. External Resistance to the Republic: (i) Scotland.**—Scotland, unlike Ireland, was not a dependency of England: it was therefore constitutionally free to choose its own path. But it was not practically safe for the English Commonwealth to allow Scotland to uphold the Stuarts. On the execution of Charles I., his eldest son, Charles, was acknowledged as King by the Scots on condition that he accepted Presbyterianism. During the ensuing negotiations the Irish Royalists were conquered, and Montrose, making an attempt to rally the Royalist party in the Highlands, was defeated at Corbiesdale in Ross, and hanged in Edinburgh (May 20, 1650). "Charles II.," thus driven to accept either the Covenant or permanent exile, submitted to Argyll's terms, and came to Scotland in June. In July, Cromwell, now commander-in-chief—*vice* Fairfax, resigned (§ 417)—crossed the Tweed and marched on Edinburgh; he was forced to retire by his former colleague, David Leslie (§ 414), but took advantage of a false move on Leslie's part to

defeat him at Dunbar on September 3. He took Edinburgh, but was still kept out of Stirling by Leslie. On January 1, 1651, Charles II. was crowned at Scone, and in August he pushed into England: he was overtaken by Cromwell and utterly defeated at Worcester on the anniversary of Dunbar. Charles, after six weeks' perilous wanderings in disguise, escaped to France: Scotland was conquered by Monk and Fleetwood before the end of 1655.

§ 429. (ii) **The United Netherlands.**—The battle of Worcester, called by Cromwell "a crowning mercy," freed the Republic from all war dangers within the British Isles; and the rest of the English dominions were already being brought beneath its sway (§ 426). But the Republic had yet to face one more armed attack—an attack not dynastic or religious in motive, but purely commercial. During the first half of the seventeenth century the Anglo-Dutch alliance of Elizabeth's days had melted away. There had been a state of war between the trading companies of the two nations in the Far East: the Dutch "massacre" of the English settlers at Amboyna in the Moluccas (1623) had been the most notorious incident in the expulsion of the English from the Spice Islands. Nearer home the Dutch had trespassed on English fishing-grounds, and fought Spaniards who had taken refuge in English waters; and after their independence had been formally acknowledged by Spain in the great *Peace of Westfalia*, 1648, they set themselves to make profit by supporting the English Royalists in the outlying territories of England. Blake, during his long pursuit of Prince Rupert, frequently came into collision with the Dutch; and in 1652 the constant friction kindled open war. Commercial jealousies weighed more than a common Protestantism and a common Republicanism.

§ 430. **The Navigation Act and the First Dutch War, 1651-1654.**—On October 9, 1651, the Rump passed a *Navigation Act* which was primarily intended to weaken the Dutch in their chief source of wealth, the carrying trade, but which eventually proved to be the foundation of British mercantile policy for nearly two centuries (cf. §§ 456, 514). The Act provided:—

- (i) That *Colonial* produce (i. e. merchandise from America, Asia, and Africa) may not be imported into England except in ships built, commanded, and manned by Englishmen (whether of the mother-country or of the colonies).
- (ii) That *European* produce may not be imported into England except in English bottoms, or in ships belonging to the country producing the goods imported.

The Dutch protest being unheeded, open war broke out in 1652. Though the English navy had been reorganized by Sir Harry Vane the Younger, its efforts were at first unsuccessful. It is said that the Dutch admiral van Tromp, after defeating Blake in the estuary of the Thames, in November 1652, cruised about with a broom at his masthead in token that he had swept the English from the seas. In the following year a series of battles took place—off Portland in February, off Yarmouth in June, and off the Texel on July 31—with the result that Blake, Monk, Deane, and Penn utterly defeated the Dutch admirals van Tromp, and de Witt, and de Ruyter. On April 4, 1654, the United Provinces agreed to the *Treaty of Westminster*, whereby they abandoned the cause of the Stuarts, promised compensation to English traders whom they had harmed in the Baltic and in the Far East, and acknowledged the supremacy of England in the Narrow Seas (cf. §§ 189, 199, 248).

**§ 431. Quarrel between the Rump and the Army, 1653.**—In February 1652 an *Act of Oblivion* was passed pardoning political offences prior to the battle of Worcester. "The three nations" had been subjected to the Republic, "and thereby the Parliament had opportunity to give the people the harvest of all their labour, blood, and treasure." But instead of "settling the Commonwealth upon a foundation of justice and righteousness," the Rump, headed by Vane, devoted its energy to prolonging its own existence. The attempt led to a quarrel between Parliament and Army similar to that which had followed the First Civil War, and ending in much the same way (§§ 421, 423). On April 20, 1653, Cromwell, with the assent of the Council of Officers, interposed in a debate on the *Perpetuation Bill*, and telling the members that they were no Parliament, ordered his musketeers to turn them out of doors. At the same time he and his officers set up a new Council of State, in which military men had the preponderance over the civilians, numbering nine against four.

**§ 432. The Assembly of Nominees, July-December, 1653.**—Cromwell invited "divers persons fearing God, and of approved honesty and fidelity" to come together on July 4, to help him to "provide for the peace, safety, and good government of the Commonwealth." The persons thus summoned, one hundred and thirty-nine in number, were selected by himself from those submitted by Congregationalist ministers throughout the country. They were "godly" but impracticable: they wished to abolish Chancery, tithes, and Church-patronage without putting anything in their places. On

December 11 they abandoned the task to Cromwell. The assembly has been nicknamed "Barebones Parliament," from a prominent member named Prayse Barbon; the Scots called it the "Daft Little Parliament"; it was really a somewhat visionary party caucus.

## II. THE PROTECTORATE, 1653-1659.

§ 433. **The Instrument of Government, December 16, 1653.**—Five days after the breakdown of this Assembly of Nominees, Cromwell, by the advice of his officers, assumed the style of "His Highness the Lord Protector of the Commonwealth of England, Scotland, and Ireland." He was to exercise the authority of Protector under the conditions of a written constitution called the *Instrument of Government*. He was to hold office for life; to direct the administration of public affairs in conjunction with a Council of State named in the *Instrument*; to have a fixed income for the maintenance of a civil service and of a standing army, and to be dependent on Parliament for extraordinary supplies. Parliament was to meet at least once every three years, and to sit not less than five months; the franchise was altered; and representatives were to be summoned from Scotland and Ireland. There was to be considerable liberty of religious worship, "provided that this liberty be not extended to Popery or Prelacy." The main object of the *Instrument of Government* was to secure the mutual independence of the Executive and the Legislature: neither could legally assert any control over the other, and neither could legally infringe the *Instrument*.

§ 434. **First Protectorate Parliament, September 1654-January 1655.**—In September 1654, Oliver met his first Parliament, which, in virtue of his *Ordinance of Union* issued in April, contained representatives from Scotland and Ireland. Oliver found his Parliament obstinately resolved not to regard the *Instrument* as binding: its Republican members protested against any form of monarchy—or, as they put it, "government by a Single Person"—and tried to restore the sovereignty of Parliament; its Presbyterian members tried to obtain a stricter church-settlement. In order to get business done, Oliver forcibly excluded one hundred members—a measure unparalleled in Charles I.'s relations with his parliaments—and took the earliest opportunity to dissolve the Parliament, as soon as it had sat five *lunar* months.

§ 435. **Arbitrary Government, 1655-6.**—The quarrel between the monarchy and the Parliament was followed, as in Charles I.'s time, by a fresh outburst of arbitrary methods of government. After

the suppression of various Republican and Royalist risings—the most notable attempt being Penruddock's seizure of Salisbury for "Charles II." in March 1655—England was placed under martial law for more than a year. The country was divided into thirteen districts, each patrolled by a major-general; and their expenses were defrayed by the *Decimation*, an arbitrary tax of ten per cent. on the property of Royalists. The arbitrary conduct of the Government applied not only to the persons and property of its subjects, but also to their religion (cf. §§ 393, 394). The *Instrument* had provided for the settlement of the Church by the Protector and the Parliament conjointly. But Oliver, like Charles, exercised a kind of ecclesiastical supremacy: during 1654 he instituted a board of "Triers" to examine the persons nominated by patrons to ecclesiastical benefices, and also boards of "Ejectors" to get rid of unsuitable ministers. But these Boards, unlike the old Court of High Commission, used character rather than creed as the test of fitness; and, generally speaking, Oliver's arbitrary rule, though as liable as Charles's to the epithet "illegal," had at least the merit of efficiency.

§ 436. **Foreign Policy of the Protectorate, 1654-1658.**—The efficiency of Oliver's government weighed less in the minds of his own subjects than his irregular and novel position. But to foreign nations the constitutional fact that he was an "upstart" and a "usurper" was of less moment than the international fact that he was an ally worth having. "There is not a nation in Europe," he said with proud truth to his first Parliament, "but is very willing to ask a good understanding with you." He used his power, as he imagined Elizabeth to have done, in the cause of Protestantism and toleration. He made alliance with Sweden, brought the Dutch war to a close within four months of his formal accession to civil office (§ 430); and in 1656 he forced the Duke of Savoy to desist from persecuting his Protestant subjects, the Vaudois. Moreover, he intervened in the long war between France and Spain on the side of the more tolerant Power, with the result that Spain was forced to accept the *Peace of the Pyrenees* in 1659 (§ 362). The chief incidents of the war were the occupation of Jamaica by Penn and Venables in May 1655; Stayner's capture of the Spanish silver fleet (worth £2,000,000) in September 1656; Blake's capture of another treasure fleet in Teneriffe—just before his death—in April 1657; and Lockhart's successful siege of Dunkirk in June 1658. The immediate success, if not the ultimate wisdom, of Oliver's foreign policy was unquestionable. For a moment England became the leading Power



—military as well as naval—in Europe: in Dryden's words, "He made us freemen of the Continent."

**§ 437. Second Protectorate Parliament, September 1656-February 1658.**—Oliver's success abroad mitigated, but did not abolish, the constitutional tension at home. He met his second Parliament in September 1656, and in the following June accepted from it a new constitution—embodied in two documents known as the *Humble Petition and Advice*, and the *Additional Petition and Advice*. This constitution increased the power of Parliament, and at the same time gave the Protector authority to nominate his successor and the life-members of a second chamber. It also proposed to change his title from "Protector" to "King"; but at the request of the Army he declined this proposal. In a second session, held early in 1658, the Commons fell out with Oliver's "Other House," and made further demands for more power: he therefore dissolved the Assembly after a fortnight's sitting. Oliver, like Charles and Strafford, believed that government, to be effective, must be in the hands of a single man of action, not in those of a motley crowd of talkers (§§ 384, 392). He described himself as "a constable set to keep order in the parish."

**§ 438. Death of Oliver Cromwell, September 3, 1658.**—The summer following the dissolution of the Second Parliament was brightened by the successful campaign on the Continent (§ 436). But for the most part things were going against the Protector. He was worn out by his long struggles in the field and at the council board; he was beset by the plots of those who were eager to earn the £500 reward offered by Charles for his murder; he had been deserted by many friends who, not having the responsibilities of office, thought he had deserted them and their principles; and, after the death of his favourite daughter Elizabeth, Lady Claypole, in August, he took to his bed, and died of fever on his "lucky day," September 3 (§ 428).

**§ 439. Protectorate of Richard Cromwell, September 1658-May 1659.**—Oliver was at once succeeded as Protector by his eldest surviving son Richard. But Richard, being neither a genius, nor a soldier, nor a Puritan, was unable to retain that personal ascendancy over the Army which was his father's mainstay. When the Third Protectorate Parliament (January-April 1659) proposed to appoint him, though a civilian, to his father's post of Lord-General, the Army compelled him to dissolve it, and to reassemble the remnants of the Rump. Reduced to forty-two members, the Rump met under its

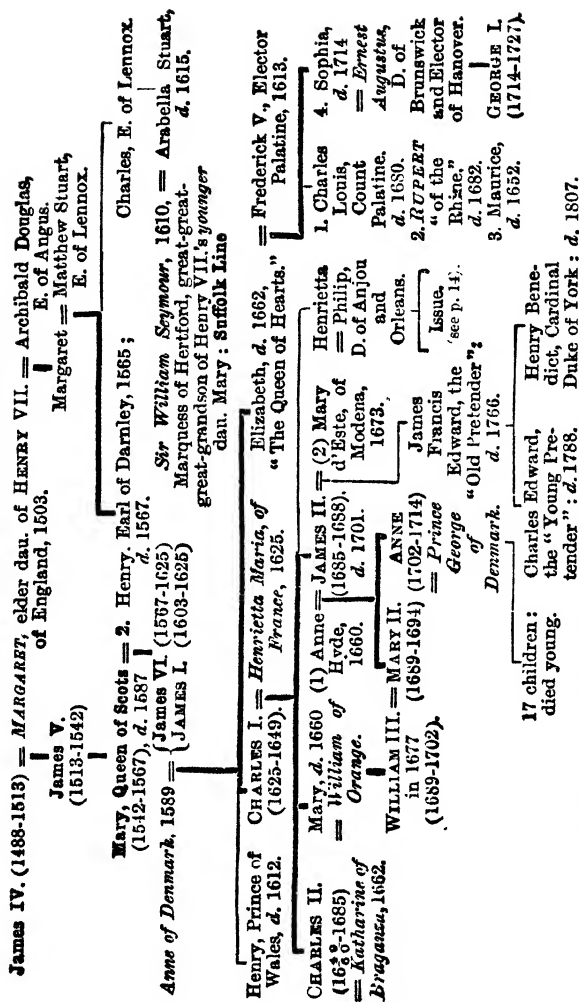
old Speaker Lenthall on May 7 ; and when it renewed its old opposition to government by "a Single Person," Richard gladly retired into private life a fortnight later. He survived for more than fifty years.

### III. THE YEAR OF ANARCHY, 1659-1660.

§ 440. **Rivalry among the Generals.**—Between the peaceful retirement of "Tumble-Down Dick" on May 25, 1659, and the peaceful return of Charles I.'s son on May 25, 1660, there was interposed exactly one year of anarchy, mainly occupied with attempts by various generals to attain the position which Oliver Cromwell had held, and with attempts by the Rump to regain the position from which Oliver Cromwell had dislodged it. In August 1659 Lambert suppressed a Royalist rising under Sir George Booth at Winnington Bridge in Cheshire; he then marched on London and dissolved the Rump. But George Monk, with the army in Scotland, declined to recognize this dissolution. Early in February he came to London and compelled the Rump, which had again reassembled, to recall the "secluded" members of 1648 (§ 423). The revived Long Parliament took measures for the restoration of Presbyterianism, and finally exercised its statutory power of dissolving itself on March 16 (§ 400). This was Monk's doing: he had resolved to use his power not for his immediate personal advantage, but for the establishment of a government which should rest on the broad and safe basis of public approval—as expressed in a "free Parliament."

§ 441. **The Convention and the Declaration from Breda, 1660.**—On April 25 the new Parliament met at Westminster: it differed from recent parliaments in being purely English, and in being freely elected by the old constituencies. The majority, therefore, was representative of the political Presbyterians and Royalists who had risen together for Charles I. in the Second Civil War. The restoration of the old kind of parliament involved the restoration of the old kind of monarchy. On April 14 Charles signed a *Declaration from Breda*, addressed "to all his loving subjects," in which he promised—*subject to the assent of Parliament* (§§ 445-449)—a full amnesty, "liberty for tender consciences," security of property, and satisfaction for Monk's army. On May 1 Monk made known the Declaration to the Convention, which at once sent a deputation to the prince inviting him to return. On May 25 he landed at Dover, and four days later—on his thirtieth birthday—made a triumphal entry into London. The new order had changed, giving place to old—or rather to what *seemed* old (§ 443).

## The Royal House of Stuart.



**DIRECTIONS**—Scottish Kings in dark type; English kings in CAPITALS; men and women connected with the Royal House of Stuart by marriage only in *italics*; dates in brackets denote regnal years, the thick line denotes the lines of descent leading to English crowned heads.

**NOTE**.—James IV. was in the *eleventh* generation from that Walter Fitz-Alan of Oswestry who became Hereditary Steward of Scotland in the 12th century, and in the *sixth* from that Walter whose marriage with Marjory Bruce brought his son to the Scots throne in 1371 as Robert II.

## BOOK VIII.

### *THE PROTESTANT REVOLUTION, 1660-1688,*

BEING

### *THE STUART PERIOD: PART II.*

#### INTRODUCTION.

§ 442. **Retrospect, 1603-1680.**—In the general survey of the seventeenth century (§§ 361-368), some account was given of the political characteristics of the Stuart Period as a whole, and a broad contrast was drawn between its two principal divisions. In the brief but eventful quarter-century before us, our main business is to see how it was that the Stuarts, whose reappearance in 1660 was received with a national ecstasy of enthusiasm, were hissed from the public stage less than thirty years later. In order to understand this sudden change it is above all things necessary to bear in mind in what ways the events of 1640-1660 had, and in what ways they had not, changed the political conditions of the British Isles. The middle of the seventeenth century was a time fertile in political ideas and in political experiments. Many of the ideas have been put into working order during the Victorian Era: they remained for the most part unfruitful in practice at the time when they were mooted—partly because of the rooted conservatism of the English people, partly because their authors never obtained the confidence of the nation. Among the more notable of the political experiments of the time were Charles I.'s endeavour to govern without a Parliament (§§ 390-397), the Long Parliament's endeavour to govern in conjunction with Charles (§§ 398-405), and the endeavour of the party which had brought Charles to the block to govern without King or House of Lords (§§ 425-441). The first two of these experiments broke down mainly through the personality of Charles: the violent methods adopted to get rid of that personality did more than anything else to spoil the third experiment. Many of Charles's subjects had wished and hoped that he would change his conduct in this or that respect, and even joined in attempting to force him to change his conduct; but Charles never received the hatred and contempt generally felt throughout all three kingdoms for the military minority which had done him to death. Political Puritanism failed mainly because it did not retain its power long enough to conciliate

the majority: also, it was unattractive in its profession of austerity, and unfortunate in the early death of its "chief of men"—Oliver Cromwell. But though its positive work was swept away, it had achieved much on the negative side. Charles II. formally dated his reign in all three kingdoms from the day of his father's execution; but in point of fact nothing could be more misleading than to ignore what had happened since then, to pretend that the period of the Commonwealth was a blank in British annals. The First Stuart Struggle had wrought vital changes both in the institutions and in the public opinion of the country; and these changes combined with the altered position of international politics to give distinctive colour to the Second Stuart Struggle.

§ 443. **General Characteristics of the Period, 1660-1688.**—The Restoration of 1660 is often considered merely as the restoration of the hereditary Kingship; but it was also the restoration of the old-fashioned English Parliament—in the place of a new-fangled British Parliament, for which men's minds were not yet prepared (§ 433)—and of the Elizabethan Church, episcopalian in government, ambiguous in formularies, distinctly not Roman, still more distinctly not Puritan (§§ 344, 420). All the machinery of government, ecclesiastical as well as civil, was supposed to be "restored" as before. But the work of the first session of the Long Parliament remained valid: the restored Kingship made no pretence of being able to raise money without consent of Parliament; it had lost its Prerogative Courts—the Star Chamber and the High Commission (§ 400); and for some twenty years it made no attempt to imitate Charles I.'s plan of doing without Parliament altogether (§ 473). The forces of love and fear, of suspicion and confidence, which worked the machinery of government, had undergone greater changes than the machinery itself. Both King and Nation had altered in these respects. The last two Stuart Kings of England retained, indeed, their ancestors' belief in the greatness of the Prerogative, but differed from them in adopting Roman Catholicism (§§ 367, 463). Their subjects in England and Scotland added to their old horror of "Popery" a newly acquired horror of extreme Puritanism and a standing army—which had combined to make life highly uncomfortable for the average man during the last decade—a lively dread of civil war, and a general tendency to endure much from the King and any other lawful authority rather than hazard a fresh outburst of the "late troubles." The latter part of our Hundred Years' Constitutional Contest is determined by the prevalence of one or

other of these popular fears in England : Scotland follows, Ireland is dragged, in the train of "the predominant partner."

§ 444. **Chief Stages in the Second Stuart Struggle.**—The twenty-eight years before us are divided into two unequal reigns which are marked off clearly from one another by the distinct characters of the monarchs ; and each reign falls naturally into equally clear sub-periods :—

I. THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., 1660–1685 (ch. xxxii., xxxiii.).

(i) *The Restoration Settlement* in the three kingdoms (§§ 445–451).

(ii) *The Anti-Puritan Movement*, 1661–1670, during which the parties which had united to restore the old state of things join in devising measures for the punishment and repression of the lately dominant party (§§ 452–460).

(iii) *The Anti-Romanist Movement*, 1670–1681. About 1670 Charles II.'s domestic policy of toleration and his foreign policy of friendship with Louis XIV. cause him to be suspected of designs against the Protestantism of Britain ; the answering popular and parliamentary attack on "Popery" reaches its climax in the "Popish Plot" panic of 1678, and the attempt to exclude James, the King's brother, from the succession (§§ 461–471).

(iv) *The Royalist Reaction*, 1681–1685. The violence of Shaftesbury and other leaders of the Protestant party—now called *Whigs*—seems likely to lead to civil war, and so causes a reaction in favour of the peace-promising Kingship (§§ 472–474).

II. THE REIGN OF JAMES II., 1685–1688 (ch. xxxiv.).

James II. succeeds his brother while this Royalist reaction is in full swing, and resolves to take advantage of it to strengthen his Prerogative—by creating a powerful standing army and by regaining the power of arbitrary imprisonment—and to restore his realms to the Roman Communion. Blinded by his zeal to do what he believes to be right, he overrates his strength, and suffers a more sudden and lasting defeat than his father. His reign falls into three periods distinguished by his relations with the ecclesiastical parties in England :—

(i) *His Appeal to the Anglicans*, 1685–1686 (§§ 475–482).

(ii) *His Appeal to the Protestant Nonconformists*, 1687–1688 (§§ 483–489).

(iii) *The Combination of Anglicans and Dissenters against the Crown in the interest of their common Protestantism* (§§ 490–495).

## CHAPTER XXXII.

### CHARLES II. AND THE PROTESTANT NONCONFORMISTS, 1660-1670.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Born in St. James's Palace, May 29, 1630; assumed the title "Charles II." on the execution of his father, January 30, 1649, but did not actually exercise the power of king until he was "restored" by the English Parliament in May 1660; married Katharine of Braganza (*d.* 1705), May 20, 1662, but had no legitimate children; died at Whitehall, February 6, 1685. For family connections, see Table, p. 280.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	TURKEY.	ELSEWHERE.
Alexander VII. (1655)	Leopold I (1658-1705)	Louis XIV. (1643-1715)	Philip IV. (1621)	Muham- mad IV. (1648-1687,	Frederick Wil- liam "Great Elector" of Brandenburg (1640-1688)
Clement IX. (1667)			Charles II. (1665-1700)		
Clement X. (1670)					
Innocent XI. (1676-1689)					

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

#### (i) International: relations with—

- (1) France: §§ 451-6, 459, 460.
- (2) United Provinces: §§ 455, 456, 459, 460.
- (3) Spain: §§ 454, 455, 459.
- (4) Sweden: § 459.
- (5) Portugal: § 454.

#### (ii) Constitutional.

- (1) Church: §§ 446, 449, 453, 459.
- (2) Ministers: §§ 450, 454, 457, 458.
- (3) Parliament: §§ 445-449, 452, 453, 457, 459.
- (4) Finance: §§ 446, 447, 457.
- (5) Parties: §§ 449, 453, 458.
- (6) Scotland: § 450.
- (7) Ireland: § 451.
- (8) Colonies: §§ 454, 455, 456.

### I. THE RESTORATION SETTLEMENT IN THE THREE KINGDOMS.

#### § 445. The Work of Convention, June-December 1660:

(i) **Regicides.**—The assembly which Charles found sitting at Westminster is called a "Convention" partly because it lacked the royal

summons required to constitute it technically a Parliament, partly because its functions were those of a constituent assembly—a body chosen to decide the future constitution of the country (cf. § 505). Its main business was to determine the extent of the indemnity for life, liberty, and property which Charles had promised from Breda (§ 441), and to furnish supplies for the needs of the Government. After prolonged discussion in both Houses, a *Bill of Indemnity and Oblivion* received the King's assent at the end of August. By that Act all persons who had sided against the King in the Great Rebellion, or had taken part in the Government of the Commonwealth, received a full pardon, with the exception of certain classes and individuals who were either subjected to various disabilities as citizens, or ordered to be brought to trial before a special Judicial Commission. Those who had had any direct share in the trial and condemnation of "King Charles of Blessed Memory"—the Regicides as they were called—were especially singled out for exemplary punishment. In the end thirteen Regicides were beheaded, and nineteen imprisoned for life; the carcasses of four prominent dead Regicides—Oliver Cromwell, Ireton, Bradshaw, and Pride—were dug up and hanged in chains at Tyburn; and special vengeance was taken on four leading Presbyterians who were not Regicides. The bodies of Pym and Blake were cast out of Westminster Abbey. Lambert and Vane were sentenced to perpetual imprisonment and to death respectively. The execution of Vane—which did not take place till June 1662—was contrary to the intention of the Convention and aroused unfavourable comments. In this case Charles II., contrary to his custom, was not on the side of clemency: "Vane was too dangerous to live," Charles wrote, "if he could honestly be put out the way."

§ 446. (ii) **The Lands Question.**—The Convention thus settled the principle of the "indemnity for life and liberty," but left many details to judicial bodies. In the kindred question of "indemnity for property" Convention could not even lay down any principle, and left the whole matter to be fought out in the Courts. "During the late troubles" the Government had sold both royal and ecclesiastical lands, and also the confiscated estates of Royalists; and among the land-transfers of the period many which were voluntary in outward show had really been necessitated by the heavy pressure of special taxation imposed on Royalists (§ 435). The Law Courts dispossessed without indemnification all who had bought land from the late Government, on the ground that its existence, and therefore



its acts, were illegal, but it treated all "voluntary" sales as valid. Thus, many who had lost either their lands, or their incomes for many years, solely through their loyalty to Charles I., received no compensation of any kind at the Restoration. One of these discontented Royalists aptly described the work of the Convention as "Indemnity to the King's enemies, and Oblivion to his friends."

§ 447. (iii) **The Revenue.**—Charles II. was much more plentifully supplied by Parliament with money than his father had ever been (§§ 383, 393). Convention made him a life-grant of various taxes which were estimated to bring him in £1,200,000 per annum. Among these taxes was an excise on beer—a mode of taxation introduced during the Commonwealth, after the example of the Dutch, and now granted as compensation to the King for formally relinquishing the dues payable to him as feudal lord by tenants in chivalry. These feudal dues, like the feudal obligation to take up knighthood (§§ 118, 393), had become a troublesome and useless survival; attempts had been made under James I. to get rid of them by law (§ 374); they had actually been intermitted during the Commonwealth; and they were now formally abolished on terms advantageous to both King and tenants—the King obtaining a larger sum of money, and the tenants being able to foist some of the burden of the substituted taxes on to the shoulders of the community at large in the form of the Excise.

§ 448. (iv) **The Army.**—Convention provided the money with which Monk paid off and tactfully disbanded the bulk of the Army whereby he had brought about the Restoration. One of his regiments was retained, and, under the name of the Coldstream Guards, became the nucleus of the English standing army. During the reign of Charles II. other regiments were raised for garrison work or for service abroad; but this imitation of the methods of the Commonwealth was viewed with suspicion by all parties, who feared that the standing army might be used as an instrument of royal despotism (§§ 421-424, 506). Having thus closed some of the outstanding questions of the time on a basis which, considering the exuberant loyalism of the hour, may fairly be considered moderate, the Convention was dissolved on December 29, 1660: in the royal speech of dismissal Charles bestowed on it "a name to live to all posterity—the *Healing and Blessed Parliament*."

§ 449. **Settlement of the English Church, 1660-1662.**—The most important question which the Convention left open was the future of the Church of England. The Commons petitioned the

King to consider the matter in conjunction with a body of divines; but the Savoy Conference in April and May 1661 failed to find any compromise satisfactory to both Episcopalians and Presbyterians (cf. §§ 372, 420, 507). Charles himself was indifferent: he thought "Presbyterianism was no religion for a gentleman," but on the other hand he inherited not his father's Protestant Episcopalianism, but his mother's Roman Catholicism, and what he really wished was toleration. As the King could not get what he wanted he let his second Parliament have what it wanted (§ 452). In that assembly the Presbyterians were few in numbers, and the Episcopalian Royalists had matters all their own way. They repealed the Act excluding the Bishops (§ 420); and, following the example set by the Commonwealth Government in ejecting the Laudian clergy (§ 435), thrust out from their livings all beneficed ministers who declined to conform to the conditions imposed on all officers in the Church of England by the *Fourth Act of Uniformity*, February 1662:—

- (1) To have received ordination from an Anglican bishop.
- (2) To use the revised *Book of Common Prayer*, and nothing else, in Church services.
- (3) To declare unfeigned consent to all the contents of the Prayer-Book.
- (4) To renounce the *Solemn League and Covenant*.
- (5) To make a sworn declaration against the legality of making war on the King.

§ 450. **The Restoration in Scotland, 1660-1665.**—The Restoration released Scotland from its parliamentary union with England (§ 433), and from the presence of Monk's English army and garrisons; but at the same time it deprived Scotsmen of equality in trade-privileges with Englishmen. Moreover, Charles soon showed that, in his estimation, the Scots opposition to his father outweighed the grudging services which they had rendered to himself in 1650-1651 (§§ 395-398, 413-418, 428). Argyll, who had set him on the Scots throne in 1650, suffered death as a traitor in May 1661. About the same time Episcopacy was restored in the Scots Kirk by the *Act Rescissory*, rescinding all ecclesiastical laws made in Scotland since Charles I.'s coronation visit in 1633, and the *National Covenant* was burned by the common hangman (§§ 395, 510). Many ministers left their manse rather than submit to the new state of things, and preached to their followers in open-air "conventicles." These Covenanters were especially numerous in south-western Scotland, and there they offered a steadfast resistance to the attempts of the Government to suppress their conventicles as treasonable assemblies

(cf. § 453). In 1666 a body of these Covenanters took up arms and marched on Edinburgh; but they were defeated at Rullion Green in the Pentland Hills. During the greater part of Charles II.'s reign his chief advisers in Scottish affairs were John Maitland, Earl—afterwards Duke—of Lauderdale, and James Sharpe, Archbishop of St. Andrews. Sharpe was a convert from Presbyterianism, and zealously persecuted the “outed ministers” and their adherents: in 1669 Lauderdale, who was a Royalist before all things, obtained relief for the Presbyterians—scornfully called the *Black Indulgence* (cf. § 469)—in the hope of strengthening the power of the Crown.

**§ 451. The Restoration Settlement in Ireland, 1660-1665.**—Shortly after the Restoration Ormonde was again appointed Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland (§§ 412, 427). There the main difficulty, as usual, was the land question. On the one hand, Charles was bound to do something for those who had helped his father, and who had suffered under the Commonwealth either for their politics or for their religion. On the other hand, it was dangerous to disturb the Cromwellian soldiery who had received allotments in Ireland; and it was also inexpedient to do so lest the Anglo-Protestant ascendancy should be shaken. Ormonde tried to meet the difficulty by passing two measures through the Irish Parliament—the *Act of Settlement*, 1662, and the *Act of Explanation*, 1665. The general effect of these Acts was to deprive the soldiers and adventurers of one-third of their lands, which were thereupon distributed among such of the Irish Royalists as had influence enough at Court to make their claims heard. The settlement pleased no one; and about the same time further dissatisfaction was caused by an English Act which protected English farmers from Irish competition by forbidding the export of cattle, meat, or butter to England. The commercial position of Ireland, like that of Scotland, suffered from the dissolution, at the Restoration, of the parliamentary union compulsorily effected under the Commonwealth (§ 433).

## II. THE ANTI-PURITAN PERIOD, 1661-1670.

**§ 452. Beginnings of the Cavalier Parliament, 1661-1665.**—In May Charles II. met his second Parliament (§ 449); it is sometimes known from its duration—it was not dissolved till January 1679 (§ 465)—as the “Long Parliament of the Restoration”; and its exuberant loyalty in its earlier stages has earned it the name of “the Cavalier Parliament.” Clarendon had some trouble in persuading it to confirm the Acts of the irregular Convention (§§. 445-448).

During its first session it explicitly declared that Parliament had no legislative authority without the King; that it could not lawfully make war on the King; and that the sole command of the militia and of all other military forces by land and sea was vested in the King (§ 405). While thus limiting its powers of interference with the Crown, it was careful to guard against certain attempts to interfere with itself (cf. §§ 423, 431, 440). In 1661 it passed an *Act against Tumultuous Petitioning* which provided that no petition for constitutional changes should be signed or presented to Parliament by a large number of persons; in 1662 it passed a *Licensing Act* which gave parliamentary sanction to the various restrictions on the Press—limiting the number of printers and presses, and requiring all writings to be approved by State officials before publication—which had hitherto been imposed by the authority of the Crown alone (§§ 344, 522); and in 1664 it passed a *Triennial Act* which, while repealing many of the provisions of the Act of 1641, enacted that Parliament should meet at least once in three years (§§ 400, 519).

§ 453. **The Clarendon Code, 1661-1665.**—Besides this purely civil legislation, the Cavalier Parliament passed several notable ecclesiastical or semi-ecclesiastical laws. The *Act of Uniformity*, its principal example of purely ecclesiastical legislation (§ 449), was preceded by a semi-ecclesiastical measure—the *Corporation Act* of December 1661—and was followed by two Acts which may be described as measures of church-defence—the *Conventicle Act* of May 1664, and the *Five-Mile Act* of October 1665. The *Corporation Act* required all candidates for office in any municipal corporation to take the Communion in accordance with the rites of the Church of England, to renounce the Covenant, and to make a declaration against the lawfulness of making alterations in Church and State. This Act thus used a religious test as a qualification for lay office. The other two Acts attempted to protect the Established Church from competition in religious teaching: the *Conventicle Act* made illegal all assemblies for religious worship, save those held in accordance with the *Act of Uniformity*; the *Five-Mile Act* forbade ministers who had declined to conform to the Act of 1662 to teach or come within five miles of any borough or of any place where they had held livings. These two Acts were designed to prevent the military arrangements for rebellion being made under cover of meetings for religious worship, especially in the towns (§ 406). Taken together, the four Acts are known, after the title of the statesman who was credited with drafting them, as the “Clarendon Code.”

§ 454. **Clarendon's Foreign Policy, 1660-1664.**—Edward Hyde had been Charles's principal adviser for some years before the Restoration, when he was created Lord Chancellor and Earl of Clarendon, and his daughter Anne became the wife of the King's brother, James, Duke of York. He had been one of the parliamentary minority in 1641 which approved of the civil reforms of the Long Parliament, but drew the line at meddling with Episcopacy or imposing further restraints on the King (§ 402). His rigid conservatism showed itself not only in his home, but also in his foreign policy. Like Cromwell, he clung to the Elizabethan tradition of friendship with France: in 1661 he married the King's favourite sister Henrietta to Louis XIV.'s only brother, the Duke of Orleans; in May 1662 he married his master to Katharine of Braganza, whose family had recently, with French help, made the Portuguese kingdom independent of Spain (§ 352); in the following November he sold Dunkirk, Cromwell's last conquest from Spain (§ 436), to Louis XIV. for £250,000. Dunkirk was of no particular use, and its sale was recommended by Monk, now Duke of Albemarle and Commander-in-Chief; but its loss, like that of Boulogne and Calais (§§ 322, 330), wounded popular vanity and helped to weaken Clarendon's position. Katharine's territorial dowry was more valuable if less esteemed: she brought Tangier—which, after being garrisoned for twenty years as an English naval station at the entrance of the Mediterranean, was abandoned on account of its expense—and Bombay, the first English possession, as distinct from *factories*, on the west coast of India.

§ 455. **Colonial Expansion, 1660-1664.**—Elsewhere also the early years of Charles II. were marked by territorial expansion. The African Company obtained a footing on the Gold Coast. In 1663 several of Charles II.'s intimates, including Clarendon, Albemarle, and Anthony Ashley Cooper, obtained a charter to found, south of Virginia, the colony of Carolina, which bears in its place-names the memorial of its origin. Charleston, the capital of one of the Carolinas, is situate at the junction of the Ashley and Cooper rivers. In the following year, Sir Robert Holmes seized the Dutch colonies lying between Virginia and New England (§ 377); and in honour of the Lord High Admiral, James, Duke of York, its island capital, New Amsterdam, was renamed New York. Thus for the first time there stretched along the strip of country intercepted between the Alleghanies and the Atlantic an unbroken line of English colonies—from the French settlements in Canada to the Spanish settlements in Florida.

§ 456. **Second Anglo-Dutch War, 1665-1667.**—English aggression in the Dutch preserves of West Africa and the Hudson Valley helped to bring about a second war with the United Provinces in 1665: other causes were the enactment, in 1661 and 1663, of further laws on the lines of the *Navigation Act* of 1651 (§ 430), and the exclusion from office in the Netherlands of Charles II.'s nephew, William of Orange (§ 462; Table, p. 280). In June 1665 York, Prince Rupert, and Edward Montague—who had been created Earl of Sandwich for bringing the Navy round to Monk's side in supporting the Restoration—defeated Opdam in Solebay, near Lowestoft. Fighting was interrupted during the remainder of the summer by the prevalence of a terrible epidemic, which, from its peculiar deadliness in the crowded capital, is known as the Great Plague of London. In June 1666 Albemarle attacked the superior force of Witt and Ruyter in the Downs, and was saved from destruction only by the arrival of Prince Rupert; but he retrieved his reputation in August by defeating a Dutch fleet and capturing the merchantmen in its convoy off the Dutch coast. The following month was marked by the Great Fire of London, which raged three days, burned three-fifths of London, rendered 200,000 people homeless, and gave Sir Christopher Wren the chance of setting upon the new city the stamp of his architectural genius. In June 1667 a Dutch fleet under Ruyter burned an English squadron and stores in the Medway, but was prevented from sailing up the Thames to bombard London by the promptitude of Albemarle. On July 31 the *Treaty of Breda* brought the war to a close: the Dutch kept Pularoon in the Moluccas and Surinam in Guiana; the English retained the Hudson Valley, but recognized the right of France—who had been the passive ally of the Dutch during the later phases of the war—to the colony of Acadie or Nova Scotia (§ 391).

§ 457. **The Fall of Clarendon, 1667.**—The English fought well during the war when they had the chance, but they had been hampered by the inefficient civil administration of the Navy. The money voted by Parliament had been squandered on the King's mistresses; and the waste had excited the anger of even the loyal Cavalier Parliament. In 1665 it had stipulated that its extraordinary vote of over a million pounds—doubling the King's usual revenue—should be spent entirely on the Navy. Two years later Parliament followed up this revival of the occasional practice of parliamentary *appropriation* of supplies by insisting on a parliamentary *audit* of the royal accounts: it was useless for Parliament to be able to say that

money should be spent in a certain way unless it had also the power afterwards to see that it had been so spent (§§ 200, 226, 381, 505). Clarendon resisted these innovations, and was made the scapegoat for the disasters of the Dutch war. He had annoyed the extreme Royalists by standing between them and vengeance on the "Buff Grandees of the Independent Swordsmen"; and he had annoyed the King and his mistresses by looking askance at their goings-on. Charles dismissed him from office in August 1667; and, when he was impeached in the following November, Charles urged him to leave the country lest he should meet the fate of Strafford (§ 399). In exile Clarendon wrote his *History of the Great Rebellion*.

§ 458. **The Cabal, 1667-1672: (i) Members and Features.**—Clarendon's fall was followed by a marked change in Charles II.'s methods and policy. Instead of having one principal adviser, he worked with a small group of ministers, officially known as the "Committee of Council on Foreign Affairs," but usually spoken of as the King's *Cabinet* or *Cabal*. But it is important to remember that neither was Clarendon "Prime Minister," nor did the ministers who succeeded him form a "Cabinet," in our modern sense of those terms (cf. §§ 496-503). The particular cabal which more or less enjoyed Charles II.'s confidence from 1667 to 1673 is known as "*The Cabal*," because the initial letters of the names of its members happened to spell that word, and because each of the five was a person of conspicuous personality. They were Clifford, Arlington, Buckingham, Ashley, Lauderdale. Sir Thomas Clifford and Henry Bennet—created respectively Baron Clifford of Chudleigh and Earl of Arlington for their services in 1672—were Roman Catholics. Buckingham, the son of Charles I.'s friend, was a restless and brilliant profligate of no particular principles: to use the words of John Dryden—the Poet Laureate, and the leading literary figure of the period that followed the deaths of Milton and Bunyan—he "was everything by starts, and nothing long." Lauderdale was Secretary for Scotland (§ 450). Anthony Ashley Cooper, created Lord Ashley at the Restoration and Earl of Shaftesbury in 1672, was a politician gifted with exceptional wit, good humour, energy, and foresight. He was more bitterly satirized by Dryden than even Buckingham; and Butler, the author of *Hudibras*, later described him in such lines as these :—

"Another factious grave bell-wether,  
Whose tongue 's the Devil's breeches leather . . .  
The city's God, the rabble's leader,  
A lord, a rebel, and a trader."

§ 459. (ii) **General Policy.**—Butler's description of Shaftesbury as a "trader" calls attention to his constant advocacy of the cause of English commerce: another cause to which he was true throughout all his political changes was that of religious toleration. Toleration and, in a less degree, hostility to France were the only points of policy which all the members of the Cabal had in common: in this respect their advent to power marks a change from the policy of the Clarendon period. In 1668 they brought in a Bill for the "Comprehension" of Presbyterians in the Church of England, and for the "Toleration" of other kinds of Protestant Nonconformists; but neither scheme was successful, and in 1670 they were compelled to let Parliament pass a second *Conventicle Act*. In 1668 also they assented to the *Triple Alliance* which Sir William Temple formed between England, the United Provinces, and Sweden to check Louis XIV.'s aggressions in the Spanish Netherlands. The "Triple Bond" between the Three Protestant Powers was immensely popular in England, and it helped to bring about the Franco-Spanish *Treaty of Aachen*, or *Aix-la-Chapelle*, at the end of the same year. Samuel Pepys, the Admiralty official whose *Diary* tells us so much about the inner workings of Court life at the time, called the *Triple Alliance* "the only good thing that hath been done since the King came to England."

§ 460. **The Secret Treaty of Dover, 1670.**—Charles had no wish to quarrel with his cousin, the King of France: he admired Louis's religion and despotic government, and wished to imitate them in England. He knew that he could not effect his designs without foreign help, and the *Triple Alliance* was merely a device to force better terms from the French King for the neutrality of England. In June 1670 the *Secret Treaty of Dover* was negotiated between the two monarchs by Henrietta, Duchess of Orleans (§ 454): in return for subsidies and a share of the plunder, Charles was to help Louis to conquer the United Netherlands; and as soon as Charles thought it safe to declare himself a Roman Catholic, Louis was to find further subsidies and lend troops to put down any rebellion which Charles's announcement of his change of religion might cause in England. Clifford and Arlington, and one or two other Roman Catholics, alone knew the terms of this treaty; but, in order to explain the change of front in foreign policy, Buckingham was allowed to negotiate another treaty from which the religious clauses were omitted, and which is therefore known as the "*Sham Treaty of Dover* (December 1670).



## CHAPTER XXXIII.

### CHARLES II. AND THE CATHOLIC NONCONFORMISTS, 1670-1685.

- A. PERSONAL HISTORY. } See previous chapter.  
B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS. }

#### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(i) <b>International: relations with—</b></p> <p>(1) France: §§ 462, 465, 472, 474.<br/>         (2) United Provinces: §§ 462, 464, 465, 471, 472.<br/>         (3) Spain: § 464.</p> <p>(ii) <b>Constitutional:</b><br/>         (b) <i>Non-English.</i><br/>         (1) Scotland: § 469.<br/>         (2) Ireland: § 469.</p> | <p>(ii) <b>Constitutional: (a) English—</b></p> <p>(1) Church: §§ 463, 464, 466, 468.<br/>         (2) Ministers: §§ 464, 465, 467, 474.<br/>         (3) Parliament: §§ 464, 465, 467-471, 473.<br/>         (4) Justice: §§ 466, 468, 472.<br/>         (5) Finance: §§ 461, 472.<br/>         (6) Parties: §§ 465, 467, 469, 471, 472.</p> |
|---|---|

#### I. THE ANTI-ROMANIST PERIOD, 1670-1681.

§ 461. **Stop of the Exchequer, 1672.**—The *Treaties of Dover* have been called by Hallam "the first act in the drama which ended in the Revolution." They do indeed mark a notable change in the international and ecclesiastical policy of the Stuarts; but the importance of the change was not immediately made manifest. For some time Charles was able to proceed with his plans without serious molestation (§ 464). Early in 1671 he obtained a grant of £800,000 for the Navy, which Parliament gave in the belief that it was to be used for war against France. A year later—in January 1672—Charles obtained further funds by a device recommended by his Lord Treasurer, Clifford, and known as the "Stop of the Exchequer": that is to say, he announced that the £1,300,000 which had been advanced to the Government by the goldsmiths, the bankers of those days (cf. § 518), on the security of the revenue, would not be repaid when due but would be retained for a twelvemonth,

and that the interest would be reduced from 12 per cent. to 6 per cent. The trick was dishonest and silly—it was analogous to killing the goose that lays golden eggs; but it furnished ready money.

§ 462. **Third Anglo-Dutch War, 1672.**—In March 1672 Holmes made a treacherous and unsuccessful attack on the Dutch Smyrna fleet lying off the Isle of Wight; in June, York and Sandwich, in command of an Anglo-French fleet, fought a drawn battle with Ruyter off Southwold; and about the same time Louis invaded the Northern Netherlands in person, with an army that included an English contingent under Charles's illegitimate son James, Duke of Monmouth. The main results of the attack were to rouse English feeling against the Government, to set afoot a European coalition against France, and to raise William of Orange to the head of affairs in the United Provinces, under the title his father and other members of his family had held before him—Stadholder.

§ 463. **The Declaration of Indulgence, March 1672.**—Meanwhile Charles had been feeling his way towards the ecclesiastical revolution which he had in mind. In March 1672 he issued a Proclamation wherein, by virtue of "that Supreme Power in ecclesiastical matters which is not only inherent in Us but hath been declared and recognized to be so by several Statutes and Acts of Parliament," the King "suspended the execution of all and all manner of penal laws in matters ecclesiastical against whatsoever sort of Nonconformists or Recusants." This Proclamation—which had the effect of releasing from gaol many thousands of persons who had disobeyed the *Conventicle Act*—is known as the *Declaration of Indulgence*. Amongst those thus set free was John Bunyan the preaching tinker who during his eleven years' confinement in Bedford Gaol had written the *Pilgrim's Progress*.

§ 464. **The Test Act and the Break-up of the Cabal, 1673.**—In January 1673 Parliament reassembled after an intermission of nearly two years; it had little certain knowledge of what had been going on, but it saw enough to be suspicious of the King's designs. Charles had hoodwinked Parliament about his foreign policy; he had joined France, now obviously taking the place of Spain as the champion of Roman Catholicism, in a treacherous attack on a Protestant Power; he was under the influence of the French "Papist," Louise de Kerouaille, whom Louis had sent over to be his mistress and political adviser, and whom Charles had created Duchess of Portsmouth; his brother James had publicly announced his reception into the Roman Church, and was about to

take as his second wife a Roman Catholic princess, Mary of Modena ; and in issuing the *Declaration of Indulgence* Charles had not only stretched his Prerogative, but also, under the specious plea of toleration, he had taken "Papists" under his protection. These were the principal facts which caused the sudden revulsion from fear of Puritanism to fear of "Popery." In the session of 1673 Parliament compelled Charles to withdraw his Declaration, and to give his assent to a Bill "to prevent danger from Popish Recusants." This *Test Act* required all office-holders to take the sacrament according to the Anglican use, and to make a declaration against Transubstantiation. York, the Lord High Admiral, and Clifford, the Lord Treasurer, at once resigned ; Arlington followed their example. About the same time Charles dismissed Buckingham at the request of the Commons, and also Shaftesbury, who, having discovered that he had been duped about the Dover treaties, had joined in the cry for the *Test Act*. Lauderdale alone of the Cabal remained in office ; and he really belonged to the Scottish rather than to the English administration.

§ 465. **Danby's Ministry, 1673-1678.**—On the break-up of the Cabal, Sir Thomas Osborne, created Earl of Danby, became Lord Treasurer and Charles's principal minister. Danby followed Clarendon's "Church-and-King" policy, so far as it was applicable in a widely different state of affairs. He was hampered by the King's stealthy endeavours to attain his personal objects ; by the rise of a powerful opposition in Parliament—led by Shaftesbury in the Lords, and by Lord William Russell in the Commons ; by the increasing suspicions of his own party ; and by the difficulty of squaring his own preference for a Dutch alliance with his master's preference for a French alliance. His five years' ministry was a tangle of cross-purposes, in which no person or party steered a straight or consistent course. Danby tried to keep the Commons in hand both by persuasion and by force (cf. § 376). He systematized the practice of paying members for their support with pensions or offices : hence the "Cavalier" Parliament in his time became known as the "Pension" Parliament (§ 452). In 1675 he tried to pass a *Placemen's Bill* binding every officer of State, and every member of either House, to take the oath of Non-Resistance—i. e. to swear that he would not at any time "endeavour the alteration of government in Church and State." At the end of the same year he attempted to restrain external criticism of the Government by ordering the closing of the coffee-houses, where men met to drink the new

oriental beverage and to discuss politics or any other subject in which they took an interest. Besides buying off or silencing opposition, Danby sought to conciliate national feeling: in February 1674 he made peace with the United Provinces, obtaining their renewed recognition of the English right to St. Helena and the Hudson Valley; and in November 1677 he married Mary, eldest daughter of the Duke of York, to her cousin William of Orange (§ 491 and Table, p. 280). Meanwhile Parliament was swayed between a desire to join the Dutch alliance in fighting France and a fear lest the military and naval forces, raised for such a war, should be turned to purposes of which it disapproved (§§ 405, 452); and Louis, fearing that England should be forced into war, was paying Charles for long prorogations of Parliament. Knowledge of one of these undignified money transactions leaked out in 1678—after the European wars had been brought to a close by the *Peace of Nymwegen*; and Danby was impeached for treason by an infuriated House of Commons. To save his minister, Charles dissolved the eighteen-year-old Parliament in January 1679 (§ 452).

§ 466. **The Panic of the Popish Plot, 1678-1680.**—The two years that followed the dissolution of the Long Parliament of the Restoration were marked by the assembling of the three short parliaments which truthfully reflected the national disregard of foreign politics and intense alarm at the growth of "Popery." In the autumn of 1678 tales of a Popish plot began to be spread abroad by Titus Oates, Bedloe, Dangerfield, and other miscreants. The details of these stories were absurd enough—that Charles and James were to be murdered, and Roman Catholicism re-established by a French army—but the nation lost its head, and was fooled to the top of its bent. For two years any person who was suspected of adherence to, or even sympathy with, the Church of Rome, might be accused of plotting by any informer, with a good prospect of obtaining a verdict of guilty from juries and a death-sentence from the judges. The incidents which first frightened men into a panic were the unexplained murder of Sir Edmund Berry Godfrey, the London magistrate before whom Oates had given evidence of his bogus plot, and the discovery of compromising letters among the papers of Coleman, chaplain and secretary to the Duke of York. These things affected the masses even more violently than the revelation of Charles II.'s underhand dealings with France affected Parliament.

§ 467. **Temple's Reorganization of the Privy Council,**

1679.—Charles II.'s third Parliament met in March 1679, and at once resumed the impeachment of Danby: sweeping aside as irrelevant his contention that he had acted by the King's order and had the King's written pardon, the Commons committed him to the Tower, where he remained without trial for some years. Parliament had not as yet repeated the endeavours of mediæval parliaments and of Charles I.'s parliaments to assert explicitly a right to choose ministers, but it had thrice got rid of ministers of whom it disapproved (§§ 457, 464, 465); and to many persons such a power seemed an undue encroachment on the Prerogative. In order to secure continuous harmony between King and Parliament trial was now made of Sir William Temple's scheme for the reform of the Privy Council. That body was in future to consist of thirty members—half officials, half private members of Parliament; all the members were to be persons of wealth and standing; and no public act was to be done by the King without consulting the whole body and obtaining the consent of the majority. Here was a Council in which Parliament "might have cause to confide." But the Council was too unwieldy for administrative purposes; Charles soon began to consult only an inner ring, and he did not always consult even them.

§ 468. **The Third Parliament and Habeas Corpus Act, 1679.**—Before Temple's scheme had quite broken down, the third Parliament had followed up its predecessor's *Parliamentary Test Act* of 1678—shutting out Roman Catholic peers from sitting in the Upper House—by taking into consideration an *Exclusion Bill* designed to prevent Charles II.'s "Papist" brother James from coming to the throne. Charles attempted to draw the Commons' attention from the Bill by giving assent to a Bill of Lord Shaftesbury's, the famous *Habeas Corpus Act*. This Act sought to stop various devices by which, since the reforms of 1628 and 1641 (§§ 387, 400), the Government had evaded or delayed the action of the *Habeas Corpus* writ: it provided pecuniary penalties for judges who refused to issue the writ at any time, and for jailers who did not render immediate obedience to the writ by producing the prisoner before the judge. The new Act did not introduce new principles, but it improved the legal mechanism for protecting the Liberty of the Subject in the matter of personal freedom (§§ 143, 144). As the concession did not block the *Exclusion Bill*, Charles dissolved Parliament after less than three busy months.

§ 469. **Whigs and Tories, 1680.**—In the autumn of 1679 Charles issued writs for a new Parliament, but, in the hope that the

popular ferment would settle down, delayed the meeting of this fourth Parliament for a year. Shaftesbury led an agitation, which took the form of petitions for a speedy assembling of Parliament; and those who disliked either the method, or the object, of putting this pressure on the King expressed their abhorrence of the *Petitioners* in loyal addresses, and were therefore called *Abhorrrers*. These names disappeared with the question in hand: two nicknames they gave one another survived, were adopted as honourable party-labels, and in our own time have again passed into nicknames. The *Petitioners* were said to be no better than a set of sour-faced Lowland Covenanters—hence the name *Whigs*: the *Abhorrrers* incurred what was meant to be the triple reproach of being likened to Irish Papist bog-trotters—hence the name *Tories*. The coinage of these party-names illustrates both the frequent reaction of affairs in the sister kingdoms on the course of affairs in England, and also the existing state of things therein. Ireland was naturally elate at the prospect of a Roman Catholic Restoration: Scotland was equally alarmed. In 1679 the Covenanters of the Clyde Valley had risen against oppression (cf. § 450); but after defeating their chief oppressor, John Graham of Claverhouse, at Drumclog, they had been defeated by Monmouth at Bothwell Brigg (June 1679). In the previous month Archbishop Sharpe had been murdered by a party of Fife Covenanters near St. Andrews. The Duke of York, who superseded Monmouth as the King's representative in Scotland, crushed out the rebellion with great cruelty (§ 484).

§ 470. **The Fourth Parliament and the Exclusion Bill, 1680.**—Roughly speaking, the Tories represented the old Cavaliers, the Whigs the old Roundhead party; and during the rest of the seventeenth century the latter favoured the limitation of the Prerogative by parliamentary law and action, the extension of trade, toleration for Protestant Nonconformists, and an anti-French foreign policy, while the Tories had for their cry, "Church and King!" When at last Charles's fourth Parliament came together in October 1680, the Whigs had a large majority in the Commons, and carried the *Exclusion Bill*. Its rejection in the Lords was secured by a remarkable man, who expressed his aloofness from the extremes of party politics by calling himself a "Trimmer"—George Savile, Marquess of Halifax. Charles told the Houses plainly that his habit of giving way to pressure could never be applied to the *Exclusion Bill*; the Commons thereupon declined to furnish supplies; and in January 1681 Charles dissolved Parliament.

§ 471. **The Fifth Parliament at Oxford, March 1681.**—Before the fifth Parliament met, the tide had turned, and Charles knew it. The popular sympathy with Thomas Howard, Viscount Stafford—great-grandson of the Duke of Norfolk executed in 1572 (§ 347)—at his execution in December 1680, showed that the panic fear of Popery had burned itself out. The Whigs had fallen apart in the choice of a substitute for James: the obvious person was his daughter Mary, a Protestant married to the champion of Protestantism (§ 465); but Shaftesbury pitched upon Monmouth, alleging him to be the legitimate son of Charles II. Moreover, the violence of the agitation was making civil war seem imminent, while the dangers of James's succession were entirely problematic; why not give the rightful heir a fair trial? Charles cleverly took advantage of these circumstances to summon his fifth Parliament to meet at Oxford—where the Whigs would not have the London populace at their back—and to make a moderate proposal, the rejection of which would put his opponents clearly in the wrong. He offered to give his consent to a Bill providing that if his brother came to the throne, the actual administration of affairs should be in the hands of his Protestant daughter. On the refusal of these terms, Charles dissolved Parliament after a session of only a week (March 21-28, 1681).

## II. THE ROYALIST REACTION, 1681-1685.

§ 472. **The Flight of Shaftesbury and Rye House Plot, 1682-3.**—Charles did not live to summon another Parliament: unlike his father he had a comfortable income without any extraordinary grants. Besides, Louis XIV.—alarmed at the prospect of a union of England and the United Provinces under a single sway (§ 515)—had promised him £200,000 a year for three years if he would only leave Parliament unsummoned for that period. Charles had won his brother's battle and the cause of hereditary succession: he now felt strong enough to strike back at his opponents. His first attack on Shaftesbury failed because the Grand Jury of Middlesex, being Whigs, were unable to find evidence sufficient to present him for trial for treasonable conspiracy; but at the end of 1682 Shaftesbury thought it safer to take refuge in Holland, where he died a few months later. After his flight some of the lesser Whig leaders formed a plot to kill Charles and James at Rye House, near Broxbourne, on their way back from a race-meeting at Newmarket in June 1683. The plot was discovered, and its actual designers escaped; but some of the more prominent Whig leaders—notably

Russell and Algernon Sidney—were accused of complicity and were executed. In these trials the law-courts, under judges like Scroggs and Jeffreys, turned against the Whigs the unfair judicial practices the use of which the Whigs had lately encouraged against the victims of Oates and his crew. About the same time Monmouth was sent out of the country, and York—despite the *Test Act* of 1673 (§ 464)—was restored to his office of Lord High Admiral.

§ 473. **Remodelling of the Corporations, 1682-4.**—Besides taking vengeance on the Whigs, Charles prudently availed himself of his hour of triumph to diminish their chances of success in future Parliaments. The Tories, like the Cavaliers, were strongest in the country: the Whigs were strongest in the towns (cf. §§ 406, 453). In most parliamentary boroughs at this time the elections were in the hands of the corporations: to secure a control over the corporations, therefore, was equivalent to securing a control over their parliamentary representatives. Accordingly, during the years 1682-4, judicial commissions were sent round the country which on various pretexts declared the existing charters of boroughs invalid, and left the Crown free to grant new ones, in which provision was made for securing a permanent Tory majority in the corporations. Though thus sure of a Parliament favourable to him, Charles allowed the triennial limit of intermission to pass without summoning a Parliament (§ 452).

§ 474. **Death of Charles II., February 6, 1685.**—After the collapse of the Exclusion agitation, Charles's chief advisers were a group of young men known as "The Chits"—Laurence Hyde, Earl of Rochester, Clarendon's younger son; Robert Spencer, Earl of Sunderland, a clever but unprincipled politician; and Sidney Godolphin, a pliant and ingenious financier. All these were friendly with the Duchess of Portsmouth, whose business was to keep England from interfering with the quiet extension of France to the Rhine. After a troublous time, through which he had gone with the unruffled cheerfulness that caused men to call him "the Merry Monarch" and "Old Rowley," Charles had thus a few peaceful years at the last. In February 1685 he had an apoplectic fit, and died after a few days' illness. Even on his death-bed he did not publicly proclaim his adhesion to the Roman Church; but before he died the Duchess of Portsmouth privately secured for him the ministrations of Father Huddleston, a Benedictine monk who had saved his life during his flight after the battle of Worcester (§ 428).



## CHAPTER XXXIV.

### JAMES II., 1685-1688.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Born in St. James's Palace, October 15, 1633; created Duke of York, January 1613; married (a) Anne Hyde (who died March 31, 1671), September 3, 1660, (b) Mary Beatrice d'Este of Modena, September 30, 1673; succeeded his brother, February 6, 1685; crowned, April 23, 1685; "deserted" his English kingdom, December 23, 1688; declared by an English Parliamentary Convention to have "abdicated," February 13, 1689; died at St. Germain, September 16, 1701; buried at St. Germain. For family connections, see Table, p. 280.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	TURKEY.	ELSEWHERE.
Innocent XI. (1676-1689)	Leopold I. (1658-1705)	Louis XIV. (1643-1715)	Charles II. (1665-1700)	Muham- mad IV. (1648-1687)	Frederick Wil- liam, Bran- denburg (1640-1688)

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(i) <b>International: relations with—</b><br/>         (1) France: §§ 480, 483, 491, 493.<br/>         (2) United Netherlands: §§ 478, 483, 487, 490-493.</p> <p>(ii) <b>Constitutional:</b><br/>         (b) <i>Non-English—</i><br/>         (1) Scotland: §§ 478, 484.<br/>         (2) Ireland: § 485.</p> | <p>(ii) <b>Constitutional: (a) English—</b><br/>         (1) Ministers: §§ 476, 479, 483, 494.<br/>         (2) Parliament: §§ 477, 480, 487, 494, 495.<br/>         (3) Resistance to Authority: §§ 477-479, 483, 489.<br/>         (4) Penal Laws: §§ 475, 486, 488, 495.<br/>         (5) Removal of Religious Tests: §§ 475, 480, 481, 482, 495.<br/>         (6) The Royal Succession: §§ 477, 490, 494, 495.<br/>         (7) Colonies: § 479, 486.</p> |
|---|---|

### I. THE APPEAL TO THE ESTABLISHED CHURCH, 1685-1686.

§ 475. **James II.'s Early Words and Deeds, 1685.**—In the Privy Council held immediately after the death of Charles II., James

pledged himself to "preserve the government in both Church and State as it is now by law established"; he would "maintain the Church, which he knew to be loyal, and the laws, which made him as great a King as he wished to be; he would neither relinquish his own rights, nor invade those of his subjects." His words were taken to mean that he had learnt the lesson of the Exclusion Struggle (§§ 468-471); that, while going his own way in the critical matter of religion, he would allow his subjects to go their way. His speech was published, and was generally accepted as both trustworthy and satisfactory: "we have the word of a King—and of a King who was never worse than his word."

**§ 476. James's Ministers, 1685.**—James II. retained "the Chits" and most of his brother's ministers, but their relative influence was altered. Rochester was promoted to be Lord Treasurer: his elder brother Edward, Earl of Clarendon, replaced the aged Marquess of Ormonde as Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland. Sunderland remained Secretary of State. Godolphin was appointed Chamberlain to the Queen. Halifax lost ground: his services in securing the rejection of the *Exclusion Bill* in 1680 weighed less with James than his habitual independence and openmindedness; he was promoted to the merely dignified position of Lord President of the Council—a process which he himself described as "being kicked up-stairs." How far these men were prepared to go in order to keep in favour with the King was revealed by their attitude during the services according to the Roman use in Passion Week 1685: Sunderland and Godolphin "felt no scruple about bowing officially in the House of Rimmon"; Ormonde and Halifax remained in an antechamber; Rochester obtained leave to spend holy-days out of town.

**§ 477. First Session of James II.'s Only Parliament, May-July 1685.**—In the middle of May, James met his first and only Parliament. Thanks partly to the prevalent confidence in the King, partly to the recent Tory gerrymandering of the boroughs (§ 473), its loyalty beat all records in Stuart annals: James himself allowed that "there was not more than forty members but such as he wished for." It would listen to no grumbings about the unauthorized levying of the customs after Charles II.'s death (§ 447), to no protest against the recent interference with the corporations, to no petitions that the penal laws might be strictly enforced. It granted for life the same taxes which had been granted to Charles II., and it added thereunto for a term of years further taxes on tobacco, sugar, and wines, which were estimated to bring in an additional £500,000 a

year. James thus had an annual revenue of nearly two millions, one quarter of which was hereditary—i. e. it was derived from the Crown lands, or from the excise monies for which the feudal dues had been commuted (§ 447). Parliament also gratified the King by extending the law of treason to cover attempts to change the descent of the crown.

§ 478. **Rebellions of Argyll and Monmouth, May-July 1685.**—Such “treason” was in active progress while Parliament was still in session. The Whig exiles—turned out of the United Netherlands by Stadholder William on James II.’s accession—gathered in Brussels, and there resolved to unseat the man whom they had failed to exclude beforehand. In May, Argyll made unsuccessful attempts to raise his fellow-clansmen, the Campbells of the Western Highlands, and his fellow-religionists, the Covenanters of the Western Lowlands; and at the end of June he met a traitor’s death at Edinburgh, as his father had done before him (§ 450). Rumbold, the principal author of the Rye House Plot (§ 472), shared his fortunes and his fate. Meanwhile Monmouth had landed at Lyme Regis in Dorset on June 11, and issued a manifesto demanding annual parliaments, a reformed judiciary, and toleration for Protestant Nonconformists (cf. § 507). Nine days later he assumed the title of King at Taunton. After failing in an advance on Bristol, he drew back to Bridgewater, and thence made a night march to surprise James II.’s army on the half-drained marshes of Sedgemoor. Monmouth’s troops were raw country lads, brave, but deficient in both arms and discipline; he had no cavalry and artillery; the surprise failed; and the royal troops, who were professional soldiers led by professional soldiers like Feversham and Churchill, easily cut their assailants to pieces. The fight at Sedgemoor on July 6, 1685, was the last worthy of the name of battle fought on English soil. Monmouth was captured in disguise a few days later, and despite his tearful appeals for mercy, was executed in accordance with the Bill of Attainder which Parliament had passed in anticipation of his defeat.

§ 479. **Jeffreys’ “Bloody Assize,” August-September 1685.**—These armed attempts to get rid of James II. were punished yet more severely than the constitutional agitation of 1679-81 (§§ 472, 473). Immediately after the battle of Sedgemoor, Colonel Kirke—who had learnt the arts of barbarity while in charge of the garrison at Tangier in Barbary (§ 454)—pursued the fugitives, and put to death in summary fashion all whom he could lay hands on. This

military pursuit of the actual combatants was followed by a judicial pursuit of all abettors in the late rebellion. In the autumn George, Lord Jeffreys, Chief Justice of the King's Bench, went on the Western circuit; and in the course of his "Bloody Assize" he sentenced three hundred and twenty persons to be hanged, and eight hundred and forty-one to be transported to the West Indies. Jeffreys made no allowance for youth or sex, and he was not exacting in his demands for proof of complicity; but his zeal was rewarded by his elevation to the office of Lord Chancellor. About the same time Halifax was dismissed from office for suggesting that "mercy should season justice," and for protesting against autocratic interference with the constitutional liberties of the colonies in New England.

**§ 480. Second Session of Parliament, November 1685.**—In November Parliament met for its second session. James pointed out that the *Habeas Corpus Act* seriously hampered the Government in the work of maintaining order, and that the success of the regular troops in putting down the late rebellion showed the wisdom of increasing the standing army; and when Parliament declined to grant the necessary supplies unless the *Test Act* were strictly enforced, James angrily prorogued Parliament after a nine days' session. On the whole the hearty welcome given to James as King and his easy triumph over Monmouth did him more harm than good; his success infatuated him so much as to make him think *possible* what his religion taught him to be *desirable*, and what his notion of the Prerogative caused him to regard as *legal*. Across the Channel James's cousin and ally was setting an example which at once encouraged James and dismayed his subjects: in October 1685 Louis XIV. set at naught his grandfather's promise of toleration to the Huguenots by revoking the *Edict of Nantes*. The French Protestant exiles who poured into England as a result of this revocation enriched the land of their adoption not only by their industrial skill, but also by warning their hosts of the consequences of over-confidence in "the word of a King."

**§ 481. The Dispensing Power and Hales' Case, June 1686.**—In order to effect the King's purposes the existing laws must be either altered or evaded; as Parliament would not join him in altering the laws, James was driven to adopt the alternative course of evasion; and for aid in the method of evasion James, like his father and brother, appealed to the Bench of Judges. Among the discretionary authorities included in the Royal Prerogative were the powers of modifying the actual application of the law known to

Stuart lawyers as the Dispensing and Suspending Powers. The former was an extension of the recognized royal prerogative of pardoning a person convicted of the breach of an existing law so as to include giving leave beforehand to a person to disobey a law. For instance, Henry VIII. had followed a common practice in licensing Wolsey to act as Papal Legate, despite the *Statute of Praemunire*. James followed the same practice in allowing persons to "dispense with" the statutory declarations imposed on the holders of military and civil offices under the Crown. In June 1686 the Court of King's Bench decided, in the test case of Sir Edward Hales, "that it was part of the King's Prerogative to dispense with the penal laws in particular cases." On the strength of this decision James filled his army with Roman Catholic officers; "for it was not right," he said, "that subjects capable of serving well should be prevented from doing so by reason of their creed."

**§ 482. The Court of Ecclesiastical Commission, July 1686.**—The Dispensing Power thus declared to be legal by the constitutional exponents of the law was of course applicable to other statutes besides the *Test Act*. In July 1686 James applied it to the *Act of Uniformity* by appointing John Massey, though a Roman Catholic, to be Dean of Christ Church, Oxford, and by permitting Obadiah Walker, despite his conversion to Roman Catholicism, to continue in office as Master of University College, Oxford. As such offices were semi-ecclesiastical in nature, these acts were naturally regarded as breaches of the King's promise "to maintain the Church as by law established." In July 1686 James set up a Court of Ecclesiastical Commission somewhat like that abolished in 1641; it differed chiefly in having no jurisdiction over the laity. All its members were Protestants; but the member whose presence was necessary to form a quorum, Lord Chancellor Jeffreys, was known to regard obedience to the King's will as paramount. The new Court at once suspended Henry Compton, Bishop of London, for refusing to suspend a clergyman who had denounced the Papacy.

## II. THE APPEAL TO THE NONCONFORMISTS, 1687-1688.

**§ 483. Fall of the Hydes, February 1687.**—The established Church of England had officially asserted its belief that "resistance to the King is in all cases unlawful"; and James, relying on this attitude, hoped gradually to bridge over the gulf between Anglicanism and Rome. As he found that the advocates of non-resistance were in fact quietly resisting his changes, James resolved to base

his work for the future on the *interests* of the Nonconformists rather than on the *principles* of the Anglicans. This change of policy was marked by the dismissal of the Hydes in February 1687: henceforth his chief advisers were drawn from the extreme Court party, who were either Roman Catholics or professed their willingness to be converted. The chief of these were Sunderland, Father Petre, a Jesuit, and Richard Talbot, Earl of Tyrconnel. Having at length obtained ministers in whom he believed he could place implicit confidence, being on friendly terms with his cousin, Louis of France, and William of Orange, his son-in-law, and controlling London by an army of 13,000 posted at Hounslow, James II. felt himself strong enough to do whatever he would.

§ 484. **Scottish Affairs, 1679-1687.**—Early in 1687 also a similar change from a tentative to a decisive policy was made in the sister-kingdoms. Ever since their defeat at Bothwell Brigg the Scottish Presbyterians had been passing through a severe persecution known as “the Killing Time.” James had himself superintended the work of repression for some time, but on his accession to the throne he took up the same attitude as in England. He first endeavoured to induce the Scottish Estates to repeal the various civil and religious disabilities of Nonconformists: failing in that, he put forth a Proclamation early in 1687, whereby, “by his sovereign authority, prerogative royal, and absolute power, which all his subjects were to obey without reserve,” he suspended all laws against Roman Catholics and moderate Presbyterians. Naturally enough he did not extend his toleration to the extreme Covenanters who accepted the statement, made in the *Sanquhar Declaration* (June 1680) of their leader Richard Cameron, that the Stuarts had forfeited the crown by their “perjury and breach of the Covenant.”

§ 485. **Tyrconnel in Ireland, 1687-8.**—James II.’s toleration of Roman Catholics was no more popular in Scotland than in England; but in Ireland that policy was hailed by the majority with delight. Early in 1687 Tyrconnel succeeded Clarendon as Lord-Lieutenant, and set himself to complete the work of filling military and civil offices with Roman Catholics. Like his father (§ 392), James hoped to create in Ireland a standing-army which might be used if necessary to keep the other two British kingdoms in order; but Tyrconnel, unlike Strafford, was at heart an Irish nationalist, and hoped to use his power in the interest, not of the English Crown, but of the independence of his own country.

**§ 486. First Declaration of Indulgence, April 4, 1687.**—In England the fall of the Hydes was followed in April by the issue of a *Declaration of Indulgence* suspending the operation of all laws which imposed civil or religious disabilities on Nonconformists. As contrasted with James's previous steps, this was an advance from giving leave to individuals to disobey certain laws to the simpler process of allowing a general disobedience to those laws: as contrasted with Charles II.'s *Declaration of Indulgence*, it did not limit itself to permitting liberty of worship, but sought to place Nonconformists on a footing of complete equality with members of the Established Church. Some Dissenters—notably William Penn, the Quaker who in 1682 had founded the colony of Pennsylvania on the broadest basis of religious toleration—accepted the relief offered with gladness; but most of them regarded it as illegal in method and suspicious in its ultimate object (cf. §§ 463, 464).

**§ 487. The Government and the Nation, 1687.**—Certainly many acts of the Government about this time suggested that its specious policy of toleration simply meant the substitution of Roman Catholic for Protestant Episcopalian ascendancy. In the spring of 1687 the Ecclesiastical Commission punished the Vice-Chancellor of Cambridge University for refusing to confer the M.A. degree on a Benedictine monk commended by the King, and ejected all the Fellows of Magdalen College, Oxford, for refusing to accept either of the King's Roman Catholic nominees—Parker or Giffard—to be their President. In July 1687 James publicly received at Court a Papal Nuncio, and, dissolving Parliament, set about the task of re-modelling the corporations in order to secure a Parliament which would be likely to give statutory sanction to his *Declaration of Indulgence* (§ 473). The attempt failed; and some of the staunchest Tories in England began to discuss with William of Orange what was to be done in case James continued his present course of action.

**§ 488. James's Second Declaration of Indulgence, April 22, 1688.**—In April 1688 James reissued his *Indulgence* with orders that it should be read aloud in the churches on the Sundays of the month of May. It was as much the practice then for the clergy to read royal proclamations from the pulpit as it is now-a-days the practice to post State documents on the notice-boards of churches: nevertheless there was in this case a widespread disobedience. In the four London churches where the parson, like the Vicar of Bray in the old song, "read the Declaration," the congregation protested by the simple method of walking out of church.

**§ 489. Trial of the Seven Bishops, June 1688.**—The “passive” disobedience of the clergy was approved by the Episcopate. Early in May, William Sancroft, the Primate, and six other bishops drew up a petition to the King praying to be excused from reading in God’s house a manifestly illegal document. The King called their petition “a standard of rebellion,” and ordered the prosecution of the Bishops for seditious libel. They were arrested on June 8, and the trial commenced in the Court of King’s Bench on June 29. The prosecution had to prove, first, that the document had been “published” by the Bishops, and secondly, that its contents were seditious. The fact of publication was proved by Sunderland; on the second point the prosecution insisted that to censure the Government was equivalent to rebellion, while Somers and his fellow-counsel for the Bishops maintained (a) that subjects had a right to petition the King, and (b) that the particular thing against which the Bishops had petitioned—the exercise of the Suspending Power—was illegal. After a long debate the jury acquitted the Bishops; and the verdict was received with rapture, not only by the citizens of London, but by the army which James had posted at Hounslow to overawe them.

### III. THE INVASION OF ENGLAND, 1688-1689.

**§ 490. The Invitation of William of Orange, June 30, 1688.**—The English nation had borne James II.’s disregard of its laws and prejudices with patience so long as it could count with confidence on the succession of his Protestant daughter Mary. But two days after the arrest of the Bishops the birth of a son and heir to James, who was certain to bring up his successor as a Roman Catholic, crushed that hope, and made it seem necessary to take steps to change the course of affairs at once. Men salved their consciences for plotting against their lawful monarch by catching at the rumour that the infant was supposititious: it was almost universally regarded at the time as a baby smuggled into the palace in a warming-pan. The popularity of the Seven Bishops showed clearly the unpopularity of the King; but the failure of Argyll and Monmouth had shown how little could be done by unorganized crowds against a body of regular troops such as James had at his disposal. Accordingly, on June 30, 1688, a letter, signed by seven prominent persons representative of all parties, was dispatched to William of Orange, asking him to come over to England with an army to protect the Protestant liberties of England.



**§ 491. International Position of William of Orange, 1688.**

—William was interested in this appeal as a husband, as a Protestant, as a Dutchman, and as a European statesman; and in each capacity he had enormous difficulties to overcome before he could respond to the appeal. But in all capacities he was desirous of wresting England from its present connection with France—which James had felt bound to continue—and joining it to the great *League of Augsburg* which he had built up in 1686 to resist the aggressive policy of Louis XIV. William displayed great ingenuity in representing his intended expedition as a religious crusade to the Protestant members of the League, and as a purely political enterprise to his Roman Catholic allies. Ultimately William was relieved of his chief difficulty—the danger of leaving the Netherlands defenceless—by a great strategic blunder of Louis XIV. himself. When Louis attacked the League by marching all his available troops to the Upper Rhine, William was able to use some of the forces of the League in a counter-attack by invading England.

**§ 492. William's March from Torbay to London, November–December 1688.**—William landed at Torbay in Devonshire on November 5, the anniversary of the capture of Guy Fawkes. The recent memory of Monmouth's failure in the West of England made men hesitate to join him there; but on the other hand Danby raised the North in his favour, and James's troops were too much discouraged by desertions to enable him to resist William's advance towards London. Alarmed by his growing isolation, the King—who had already tried to conciliate public feeling by hasty concessions to the classes whom he had offended—sent commissioners to Hungerford to enter into negotiations with the invader and agreed to call a Parliament. Both armies were to remain at equal distances from Westminster during the session, in order to secure its freedom of action.

**§ 493. Flight of James, December 1688.**—In his heart James was resolved not to yield. He thought that if he withdrew for a while his opponents would fall out among themselves, and that he would then be able to return in triumph (cf. §§ 420–424). On December 11, therefore, he left London for France—whither he had already dispatched his wife and child; but he was captured and brought back. During his absence riots broke out in the capital, and William's troops came in to restore order. William persuaded the King to retire for safety to Rochester; and thence, on December 23, James made good his escape to France.

§ 494. **The Convention, January 1689.**—By the advice of the Lords and of the City of London, Prince William now followed Monk's precedent of 1660 in summoning "a free Parliament"—called, like the assembly which Monk had convened, a "Convention." Its principal business was to decide the future government of the country. The four main courses open to that body were the two Tory plans—either to recall James with or without conditions, or, while retaining a nominal allegiance to James, to transfer his actual authority to a Regent—and the two Whig plans—either to assume that Mary had succeeded her father, as though he were dead and his son were an impostor, or, treating the throne as empty, to elect a person to occupy it. William having refused to be either Regent for the absent James, or Prince-Consort to Mary, ultimately the Lords adopted this last solution by accepting the Commons' Resolution:—

"That King James II., having endeavoured to subvert the constitution of this kingdom, by breaking the original contract between King and people, and by the advice of Jesuits and other wicked persons having violated the fundamental laws, and having withdrawn himself out of the kingdom, has abdicated the government; and that the throne is thereby vacant."

§ 495. **The Declaration of Right, February 13, 1689.**—This "lumbering Resolution" embodied that fantastic theory of the Social Compact which the Whigs had adopted in opposition to that of the Divine Right of Kings. Having thus settled its basis of action, and having further voted "that it was inconsistent with the national safety to be ruled by a Popish Prince" (cf. § 508), the Convention offered the crown jointly to William and Mary, who accepted it on the conditions laid down in the *Declaration of Right*:—

- (1) That the pretended Suspending Power and the pretended Dispensing Power, "as it hath been assumed and exercised of late," are illegal.
- (2) That such Courts as the Court of Ecclesiastical Commission are illegal and pernicious.
- (3) That levying of money by pretence of prerogative, without grant of Parliament, for longer time than the same is granted, is illegal.
- (4) That it is the right of subjects to petition the King.
- (5) That the raising or keeping a standing army within the kingdom, in time of peace, unless it be with consent of Parliament, is illegal.
- (6) That elections of Parliaments ought to be free.
- (7) That the freedom of speech or debates in Parliament ought not to be impeached or questioned in any court or place out of Parliament.
- (8) That for the redress of all grievances, and for the amending, strengthening, and preserving of the laws, Parliaments ought to be held frequently.

**THE SOUTHERN NETHERLANDS**

Scale: 0 to 30 English Miles

NOTE.—The Barrier Towns arranged between Austria and the States General in 1713 are indicated by a dotted line. The territory between the dotted line and the solid line was under Austrian control, but after 1713, the barrier towns were dropped.

The map shows the following provinces and regions: Flanders, Brabant, Hainaut, Namur, and the County of Flanders. Major cities and towns include Brussels, Antwerp, Ghent, Bruges, Lille, Valenciennes, Douai, Arras, and Namur. The map also shows the French frontier in 1700 and the French frontier in 1713.

NOTE.—The Barrier Treaty arranged between Austria and the States General in 1715 was doubly underlined. Those singly underlined were also guaranteed by Great Britain in 1709, but afterwards dropped.

University Correspondence Company Press

## BOOK IX.

### THE RISE OF PARTY-GOVERNMENT, 1688-1754.

#### INTRODUCTION.

§ 496. **Retrospect, 1660-1688.**—In 1660 the Stuarts had been restored with almost universal applause, and on the whole they had retained their popularity throughout the quarter-century occupied by the actual reign of Charles II. We have seen how, in little more than three years, James II. had contrived to dissipate this popularity so completely as to lose the most important of his three kingdoms (ch. xxxiv.) : we have now to see how he lost the sister-kingdoms and how his dynasty was kept out of the realms which he had thrown away. The main grievances against him had been his constitutional methods, his ecclesiastical objects, and—intimately connected with both of these things—his alliance with France. Naturally the Revolution of 1688 was marked by a strong, but not unopposed or unbroken, reaction in each of these respects.

§ 497. **Incompleteness of the Revolution.**—The acceptance of the *Declaration of Right* by William and Mary forms a convenient stopping- or starting-place for the historian of *England*; but it must be remembered that in February 1689 that document did not bear the appearance of finality which it has for us who know the sequel, and that it was a purely English affair which had no direct constitutional concern with the other kingdoms in the British Isles (§§ 510-514). It was nearly three years after James's flight before William and Mary secured their hold on the two minor British kingdoms: it was nearly sixty years before a Stuart restoration was shown to be outside the range of practical politics (§§ 583, 584).

§ 498. **The Protestant Succession, 1688-1754.**—Our main business, therefore, in telling the story of the next two generations, will be the Protestant Succession: that is the matter which dominates British foreign policy, involves the abandonment by England of the attempt to enforce ecclesiastical unity within the Kingdom of England (§ 507), and compels England to make Roman Catholic Ireland submit to a third English conquest (§ 514), and to take Protestant Scotland into full partnership (§ 540). The Protestant Revolution also brings many constitutional changes in its train.

**§ 499. International Aspects of the Revolution.**—The Convention of 1689, unlike the Rump of 1649 (§ 425), had the majority of the English nation at its back; but on the other hand the ejected Stuarts had a powerful and interested advocate in the person of the French king. Therefore the English Revolution of 1689 was an international as well as a constitutional revolution (§§ 515-525): it was the first stage in a European war which may be called "The War of the English Succession," which itself was the first stage in our Second "Hundred Years' War" with France (1688-1815). Naturally this war was on a much greater scale than the First "Hundred Years' War" (1338-1453); it grew into a world-wide struggle for Colonies and Commerce (§ 503): and at certain portions of its course nearly all the states in Europe were directly or indirectly concerned in it. Throughout the long conflict the strength of England lay mainly in her insular position and in her Navy.

**§ 500. Constitutional Changes: (i) In Ecclesiastical Affairs.**—Various notable ecclesiastical changes were among the unexpected consequences of the Protestant Revolution. The expulsion of the legitimate monarch was in various ways distasteful to the Roman Catholics and to the party in the Anglican Church which was most nearly allied to them, through its respect for Authority claiming to rest on Divine Right. The advocates of the Protestant Revolution naturally rewarded the ecclesiastical parties which could conscientiously support them. The result was the granting of a measure of religious toleration to Protestant Nonconformists in England (§ 507), the recognition of a Presbyterian polity in the national church of Scotland (§§ 510, 540), and the repression of Protestant Episcopalians in Scotland and of Roman Catholics in Ireland (§ 514). All this involved the definite abandonment of the attempt to maintain ecclesiastical unity, on the English model, throughout the dominions of the ruler of England.

**§ 501. (ii) In Civil Affairs.**—One of the immediate effects of the Protestant Revolution was a diminution of the powers of the Crown by suppression of some powers and by making others dependent on the approbation of Parliament. These limitations, laid down in the *Bill of Rights* (§§ 495, 508), involved many unforeseen innovations which were widely regarded as objectionable but which were ultimately accepted as inevitable. The starting of the practice of granting only for short periods money-supplies and the powers requisite for the maintenance of military discipline made frequent Parliaments necessary (§§ 505, 506); and when Parliament, endowed

with such powers, met constantly, the King quickly found that he must choose, as his ministers, men who were not unacceptable to Parliament (§ 521). Gradually there came into being those complicated methods of keeping harmony between the ruler and the ruled which we know now-a-days as "Party-Government."

**§ 502. (iii) In the Relations between the Different Parts of the Empire.**—The Protestant Revolution was, in general terms, approved by the more important part of the Kingdom of Scotland and disapproved by the more important part of the Kingdom of Ireland. The consequence was that while Ireland was made more than ever dependent on the predominant partner (§§ 514, 565), England consented to the destruction of her separate existence, of her anglicizing aspirations, and of her commercial monopoly, in order to persuade Scotland to enter into a fuller and more permanent union than hitherto (§§ 539, 540). This new kingdom of Great Britain, partly because of the Union, partly because of the increasing influence of commercial interests, was destined to play a much more important part in the world's history than either of the vanished kingdoms could possibly have done.

**§ 503. English Colonies and Dependencies, 1607-1688.**—It is important to remember that these international and constitutional changes, directly or indirectly brought about by the Protestant Revolution, affected not only England or even the British Isles, but also the various territories outside Europe which had come under English rule during the seventeenth century (Table, p. 316). These outlying territories had been occupied by Englishmen for various reasons and by various means; and they stood in various relations, both social and political, to the Mother Country. They can therefore be classified in many ways; but the most important classification is that drawn by nature itself in the form of climate. There were territories in regions where Englishmen could live permanently and bring up families; and there were territories in regions where Englishmen could not make their homes permanently, but where they were willing to stay for some years to enrich themselves by trading. The former class are "colonies" proper, the latter class are "dependencies." At the end of the seventeenth century the English colonies were confined to a fringe of the eastern seaboard of North America; her dependencies were thinly scattered along the coasts of West Africa and Southern Asia; and neither were so much valued at home as were the intermediate possessions—ranking between "colonies" and "dependencies"—in the West Indies.

# British Colonies and Dependencies, 1714.

<b>I. EUROPE :—</b>			
	<b>Gibraltar . . .</b>	<b>1704</b>	Taken from Spain by Rooke. } Ceded to <i>Gr. Br.</i> by the Taken from Spain by Stanhope } <i>Anglo-Spanish Treaty</i> and lost in 1756, 1781, 1802. } <i>of Utrecht, 1713.</i>
	<b>Minorca . . .</b>	<b>1708</b>	
<b>II. ASIA :—</b>			
	<b>Madras . . .</b>	<b>1639</b>	First Indian territory acquired—by purchase from a Hindu prince in the Carnatic : Presidency, 1654. Dowry of Katharine of Braganza ; handed over by Portugal, 1665 ; leased by Charles II. to E.I.C., 1668 : Presidency, by transfer from Surat, 1685. Fortified by leave of the Nawáb of Bengal. N.B. The E.I.C. had at times many other factories in Hindustán and throughout the Orient.
	<b>(Fort S. George)</b>		
	<b>Bombay . . .</b>	<b>1662</b>	
	<b>Calcutta . . .</b>	<b>1686-96</b>	
	<b>(Fort William)</b>		
<b>III. AFRICA :—</b>			
	<b>S. Helena . . .</b>	<b>1651</b>	Occupied by E.I.C. on its abandonment by the Dutch. First visited by Englishmen, 1591 ; occupied 1618. Lagos, etc., seized from the Dutch, 1661 : ceded by the <i>Treaty of Breda</i> , 1667.
	<b>The Gambia . .</b>	<b>1618</b>	
	<b>Gold Coast . .</b>	<b>1664</b>	
<b>IV. WEST INDIES :—</b>			
	<b>Barbados . . .</b>	<b>1605</b>	Occupied 1605, and again 1621 : escheated to the Crown from its grantees, 1663.
	<b>Antigua, S. Kitts</b>	<b>1623</b>	Occupied 1623 : French portion of S. Kitts ceded 1713
	<b>Bahamas . . .</b>	<b>1629</b>	Occupied 1629 ; held by Spaniards, 1641-66, 1703-18.
	<b>Jamaica . . .</b>	<b>1655</b>	Captured from Spain, under Oliver Cromwell, and ceded by the <i>Treaty of Madrid</i> , 1670. NOTE.—S. Lucia was held by Englishmen, 1639-40, 1661-7.
<b>V. AMERICA :—</b>			
i. South Colonies.	<b>Virginia . . .</b>	<b>1607</b>	After Raleigh's failures (1583-9), the London Co. planted a successful colony, 1607 ; escheated to Crown, 1621
	<b>Maryland . . .</b>	<b>1634</b>	A Roman Catholic colony founded by Lord Baltimore
	<b>Carolina . . .</b>	<b>1663</b>	Founded 1663 ; divided into two colonies, 1712.
	<b>Massachusetts .</b>	<b>1629</b>	This colony, chartered in 1629, absorbed the <b>Plymouth Colony</b> of the Pilgrim Fathers, established 1620.
ii. New England Colonies.	<b>Maine . . .</b>	<b>1627</b>	{ Both colonies fell under the dominion of Massachusetts till the American Revolution.
	<b>New Hampshire</b>	<b>1627</b>	
	<b>Connecticut . .</b>	<b>1639</b>	Formed by the self-union of three separate colonies. Wethersfield, Windsor, and Hartford ; founded 1635-6.
	<b>Rhode Island .</b>	<b>1644</b>	<b>Providence</b> , one of its constituent colonies, fd. by Roger Williams, 1636. <i>Others</i> : Newport, Warwick, 1738-9.
iii. Mid. Colonies.	<b>New York . . .</b>	<b>1664</b>	{ Formed the New Netherlands, founded 1613, seized by the English 1664, and ceded by the <i>Treaty of Breda</i> , 1667.
	<b>New Jersey . .</b>	<b>1664</b>	
	<b>Pennsylvania .</b>	<b>1682</b>	A Quaker colony founded by William Penn, 1682.
			NOTE.—The above colonies, with <b>Georgia</b> (founded in 1733), severed their connection with England, 1776-88.
iv. North Colonies.	<b>Newfoundland .</b>	<b>1713</b>	Discovered by the Cabots, 1497. } All finally ceded to
	<b>Nova Scotia . .</b>	<b>1713</b>	Granted to the Scotsman, Sir } Great Britain by the
	<b>Hudson's Bay T. or Rupertsland</b>	<b>1713</b>	William Alexander, 1621. } <i>Anglo-French Treaty</i>
v.	<b>Fermudas . . .</b>	<b>1609</b>	Occupied for fur-trading, 1670. } <i>of Utrecht, 1713.</i> Declared English by Sir George Somers, who was wrecked there in 1609, and colonised 1616.

## CHAPTER XXXV.

### WILLIAM AND MARY, 1689-1694.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.** William and Mary were declared joint rulers of England, France, and Ireland by the English Convention on February 13, 1689; they were declared joint rulers of Scotland by the Scottish Convention on May 11, 1689. Mary was the eldest daughter of James, Duke of York—afterwards James II.—by his first wife, Anne Hyde; born, April 30, 1662; married her cousin, William of Orange, November 4, 1677; died at Kensington, December 28, 1694; buried at Westminster. For William III.'s personal history, see next chapter: for his family connections with the Stuarts, see Table, p. 280

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	POLAND.	RUSSIA.
Alexander VIII. (1689) Innocent XII. (1691)	Leopold I. (1658-1705)	Louis XIV. (1643-1715)	Charles II. (1665-1700) ( <i>Last of the Spanish Hapsburgs</i> )	John Sobieski (1677-1697)	Peter the Great (1689-1725)

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(i) <b>International:</b> <i>relations with—</i></p> <p>(1) France: §§ 504, 513-517.</p> <p>(2) The Netherlands: §§ 513, 515.</p> <p>(ii) <b>Constitutional:</b></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) <i>Non-English—</i></p> <p>(1) Scotland: §§ 510, 511.</p> <p>(2) Ireland: §§ 512-514.</p> | <p>(ii) <b>Constitutional:</b> (a) <i>English—</i></p> <p>(1) Ministers: §§ 504, 518.</p> <p>(2) Church: § 507.</p> <p>(3) Army: § 506.</p> <p>(4) Finance: §§ 505, 518.</p> <p>(5) Parliament: §§ 505-509, 518, 519.</p> <p>(6) Royal Succession: §§ 508, 519.</p> |
|--|---|

### I. THE REVOLUTION SETTLEMENT IN THE THREE KINGDOMS, 1689-1691.

§ 504. **William's Ministers and Party Relationships, 1689.**—William took little interest in English domestic politics: what he wanted was to have England, or rather all the three British kingdoms, solid at his back in his struggle against the



predominance of France in Europe. In order to gain this support he chose his ministers from all parties—more especially picking out those party-leaders who had actively assisted him to the throne: Danby, who became Marquess of Caermarthen and Duke of Leeds, was President of the Council; Shrewsbury, Secretary of State; Edward Russell and Arthur Herbert at the Admiralty. These four had all signed the invitation sent him after the acquittal of the Seven Bishops. The other leading ministers were the three men who had been employed in the Hungerford negotiations between James and William (§ 492)—Halifax, Privy Seal; Nottingham, the Tory colleague of the Whig Shrewsbury in the Secretariate of State; and Godolphin, at the Treasury. After the Revolution the Secretaryships of State became more and more important, while some of the older offices were weakened in power. Partly to diminish the power of individuals, partly to have more offices for distribution amongst the supporters of the Government, the practice of assigning the work of the great officials, the Lord Treasurer and the Lord High Admiral, to a Committee or Board—the Treasury and Admiralty respectively—now became more and more common. At the same time James II.'s bench of judges was dismissed, and replaced by one of a better stamp.

§ 505. **The Work of the Convention Parliament, February 1689–January 1690:** (i) **Finance.**—The Convention, which had declared William and Mary to be King and Queen, was itself declared to be a lawful Parliament by its own nominees. Its main business was to consolidate and give practical application to the general principles laid down in the *Declaration of Right*. In finance it made several notable changes: besides voting more than half a million for the Navy, and a similar sum to recoup the Dutch for their expenses in aiding the Revolution, this Parliament began to draw a distinction between the ordinary and the extraordinary expenses of the Crown, and, while making a life-grant for the former (about £700,000 a year, in addition to the hereditary revenue of £500,000), resolved to supply the latter by special grants for short periods only. In this session William promised facilities for parliamentary *audit* of accounts, and in a few years' time the practice of parliamentary *appropriation* of supplies came into regular and systematic use. Broadly speaking, the Protestant Revolution resulted in establishing parliamentary control over the *expenditure*, as the Puritan Revolution had resulted in establishing parliamentary control over the *revenue*, of the Crown (§ 400).

§ 506. (ii) **The Army.**—The Parliament was able to hit upon a device which met both the felt needs of the time for a regular army and also the strong and anxious prejudice against such an army. The national *well-being* seemed in danger if the Crown permanently possessed those exceptional powers of restraining the liberty of citizens which are necessary to maintain the discipline of a standing army; but, on the other hand, the very *being* of the nation was in danger if England lacked trained forces similar to those of her Continental neighbours. Accordingly, in March 1689 a *Mutiny Act* authorized the Government, for six months only, to punish by martial law all manner of insubordination or desertion by soldiers in the pay of the Crown. The Act was renewed for short periods, and its principle is still maintained in the modern *Annual Army Act*: thus the legal power of the Government over the Army depends on the continuance of the confidence of the Parliament.

§ 507. (iii) **The Church.**—Besides providing for the financial and military necessities of the new Government, Parliament endeavoured to protect it from internal treachery by requiring all office-holders in Church and in State to take new Oaths of Allegiance and Supremacy. Some three hundred of the Anglican clergy, including Sancroft and most of the Seven Bishops, held to their doctrine of non-resistance and declined to take the new oaths: they were therefore ejected from their offices and, with their handful of followers, became known as the Non-Jurors; and this body maintained its existence and independence, claiming to be "the true Church of England," for more than a century. At the same time fresh penal laws were enacted against Popish Recusants, while the Protestant Nonconformists were rewarded for their support of the Revolution with the *Toleration Act* of May 1689. By this Act all English Nonconformists—save Roman Catholics and Unitarians—were permitted to assemble for public worship on condition that the meeting-houses were registered, that the meetings were held with open doors (cf. § 453), and that the ministers took the Oaths of Allegiance and Supremacy. This measure of relief was much less extensive than that which William and Mary followed James II. in advocating: it applied only to *Dissenters*—i. e. Nonconformists who were not only Protestant but also Trinitarian; and it did not extend to the removal of *civil* disabilities. But on the other hand it rested on statutory sanction, not on a strained use of the Prerogative, and it did not run counter to the national

prejudices of the day. The *Toleration Act* is important as being the death and burial of two propositions heretofore taken for granted by the English Law:—

(a) That the English Church and the English Nation are co-extensive in membership—barely distinguishable aspects of the same thing.

(b) That it is the duty of the Christian State to train all its members in the *one true* (whatever it be) form of Christian Truth.

§ 508. **The Bill of Rights, October 1689.**—Parliament was prorogued in August and met for its second session in October. The principal achievement of this session was the turning of the *Declaration of Right* into statutory form as the *Bill of Rights*. There were two important alterations; the Dispensing Power was entirely abolished; and the English Crown was declared incapable of descending to, or remaining in, any person who became a Papist or married a Papist. The Whigs, having thus at last carried their *Exclusion Bill* in a generalized shape, endeavoured to clip the wings of their Tory opponents by inflicting permanent disabilities on all persons who had connived at the remodelling of the corporations during the last two reigns. William, who wanted to heal not to perpetuate party rancour, dissolved his factious Parliament in January 1690.

§ 509. **The Act of Grace, May 1690.**—The second Parliament, which met two months later, had a Tory majority. It threw out a *Bill of Abjuration* requiring the office-holder to abjure King James (cf. § 531), and gladly gave its consent to William's *Act of Grace*, whereby indemnity was given to all political offenders except the surviving Regicides and thirty others (§ 445). The King was thus, after fifteen months' parliamentary strife in England, able to give personal attention to pressing matters elsewhere.

§ 510. **The Scots Revolution, 1689-1690.**—When James II. withdrew his troops from Scotland to oppose the Prince of Orange, the Covenanters rose against their oppressors, and there ensued the riots known as "the Rabbling of the [Episcopalian] Clergy." By the advice of some of the Scots nobility who were with him, William sent three Scottish regiments which had been serving under him on the Continent to restore order, and also summoned a Convention to meet at Edinburgh. When this body seemed likely to follow the lead of the English Convention in substituting William and Mary for James, many of the partisans of James—now called *Jacobites* from *Jacobus*, the Latin form of his name—repudiated the Conven-

tion and appealed to arms under the leadership of Claverhouse, whom James had created Viscount Dundee. In their absence Convention drew up a *Claim of Right*, declaring that James had "forfeited" the Scots crown, and offering it to William and Mary. They accepted the offer in May 1689; the death of Dundee, in a fight in the Pass of Killiecrankie on July 27, practically ended the armed opposition of the Highland clans; and in October 1690 William and Mary secured themselves in possession by giving their consent to an Act of the General Assembly re-establishing Presbyterianism in the Scots Kirk. The usual precautionary measures were passed against Scottish Nonconformists, both Roman Catholics and Protestant Episcopalians of the Anglican school; but on the whole the Revolution church-settlement in Scotland was temperate. William thus expressed his own views in a message to the General Assembly:—

"We could never be of the mind that violence was suited to the advancing of true religion; nor do we intend that our authority shall ever be a tool to the irregular passions of any party. Moderation is what religion requires; neighbouring churches expect it from you; and we recommend it to you."

§ 511. **The Massacre of Glencoe, February 1692.**—It was easier to "intend" than to attain such moderation. The acts of the Convention and of the General Assembly had comparatively little interest for the Highlands, where the clans still lived in patriarchal style under their chiefs and supported themselves largely by cattle-stealing. Nor did the Highlanders take kindly to a Revolution which restored to power the hated clan of Campbell (cf. § 416). But after the dispersion of their forces and the establishment of Fort William in the heart of the Highlands, most of the chieftains obeyed the order, rendered attractive by gifts of money, to take the Oath of Allegiance before December 31, 1691. Ian MacDonald of Glencoe, near Loch Linnhe, accidentally failed to comply with these conditions; and William's ministers, not knowing that he had made his submission after the time had expired, resolved to make him an example. In the early morning of February 13, 1692, a detachment of troops, mainly belonging to the Campbell connection, treacherously rose against the chief of his clan, whose hospitality they had been enjoying for some days, and successfully carried out William's order "to extirpate that sect of thieves."

§ 512. **Third English Conquest of Ireland: (i) Siege of**

**Londonderry, 1689.**—While Scotland obtained a religious settlement agreeable to the majority of its people as the reward for accepting the change of dynasty, Ireland took a different course and received different treatment. James II.'s policy had suited the religious feelings of the majority of the Irish nation; and the bulk of that nation remained true to his cause after it had failed in the sister kingdoms. In March 1689 James landed at Kinsale and at once held a Parliament in Dublin which, representing the opinion of the Roman Catholic majority, repealed the Restoration *Acts of Settlement* (§ 451), and attainted a large number of Protestants. Meanwhile the Protestant inhabitants of Ulster took refuge in the towns of Londonderry and Enniskillen, and there contrived to beat off the attacks of the besiegers. After undergoing great privations, Londonderry was relieved by Kirke on July 30, 1689—three days after the battle of Killiecrankie; and a few days later the Enniskilleners sallied forth and won a victory at Newtown Butler.

§ 513. (ii) **Battles of the Boyne and Beachy Head, 1690.**—In June 1690 William took the field in person against his rival. Landing near Belfast with an army of English and Dutch troops, he pushed south towards Dublin, and on July 1 won so complete a victory at the battle of the Boyne that James incontinently fled to France. William occupied Dublin and laid siege to Limerick, but was driven off by Patrick Sarsfield. William then returned to England, while John Churchill, Earl of Marlborough, formerly an intimate friend of James II., overran the south of Ireland. The struggle was not yet over: on the day before the battle of the Boyne the French fleet under Tourville had completely defeated the Anglo-Dutch fleet under Herbert, now Lord Torrington, off Beachy Head, and, by obtaining the command of the seas, had acquired the power of transporting troops in safety from France to Ireland.

§ 514. (iii) **Siege and Treaty of Limerick, 1691.**—The French troops did not work smoothly with their Irish allies: none the less, they made a stubborn struggle in the final campaign of 1691. In July, Ginkel, having taken Athlone, defeated the Franco-Irish army at Aghrim; the French commander, St. Ruth, fell in the battle; but his successor, Sarsfield, held Limerick for nearly two months before he was obliged to surrender in October 1691. The *Treaty of Limerick* permitted the Irishmen who had fought for James to leave the country with their personal property, and also contained certain stipulations relating to the non-combatants. Under the military

capitulation over 30,000 fighting men were conveyed to France: the civil articles were not observed, and they have therefore been branded with the name of the *Broken Treaty*. More than a million acres of land were confiscated; the Roman Catholics were shut out from all offices and professions, and were forbidden to meet for religious worship; and additional restrictions were placed on the trade and industries of Ireland in the supposed interests of English agriculture and manufactures. The English and the Irish Parliaments worked together to build up both the Penal Code and the Commercial Code; and for nearly a century Ireland lay crushed beneath the heel of the Anglo-Protestant ascendancy (§ 640). -

## II. THE DEFENCE OF THE REVOLUTION, 1691-1694.

§ 515. **Theatres of the War of the English Succession, 1688-1697.**—The fighting in the European War which, from a British point of view, is called the War of the English Succession, took place not only in Scotland and in Ireland and on the seas, but also in the Southern Netherlands—"the cock-pit of Europe." There for the next six summers after the Boyne campaign William III. commanded in person the troops of the Allies. He seldom won a battle, but on the whole he maintained his ground and kept France in check. Throughout he was hampered not only by the difficulty of managing a number of quarrelsome Allies, but also by the jealousy of the Dutch Burgher party, by parliamentary wranglings and by the half-heartedness of his ministers in England. Most of the British politicians of the day, thinking it likely that there would be a second Restoration, took care to be on the safe side by holding communication with the exiled James II., and occasionally sending information of William's designs. For instance, Torrington was suspected—though unjustly—of losing the battle of Beachy Head in order to curry favour with James; and early in 1692, for a similar but better-grounded reason, William had to dismiss Marlborough, whom he regarded as the greatest military genius in his service, and who more than justified William's estimate during the great wars of Anne's reign (1702-1713).

§ 516. **Battles of La Hogue and Steinkirk, 1692.**—William's first campaign on the Continent was marked by his failure to save the fortress of Mons; his second, by his defeat at Steinkirk in August 1692, and by his failure to relieve Namur. But these defeats were more than counterbalanced by Russell's great naval victory in a running fight with Tourville off La Hogue (May

19-24). This victory not only stopped the projected invasion of England, but also restored to the English Navy the command of the seas. It also illustrated how the dependence of James on French help weakened the Jacobite cause. Russell himself was prepared to welcome James back, but he was not prepared to accept defeat at the hands of the French; and James, watching the defeat of his hopes from the shore, showed his sympathy with the national spirit by exclaiming, "See how my brave English fight!"

§ 517. **Fighting by Land and Sea, 1693-4.**—In July 1693. William was badly beaten by Luxembourg at Landen or Neerwinden. In the preceding month Tourville surprised the valuable Smyrna fleet off Lagos in Portugal, as it was sailing from London to the Mediterranean, defeated Rooke's convoying squadron, and captured or sunk nearly three hundred merchantmen. In June 1694 Talmash, the most promising of the English generals after Marlborough, lost his life in an unsuccessful attack on Brest.

§ 518. **English Finance, 1693-4.**—All this fighting not only compelled the English to learn again the art of war, but also involved the devising of new financial expedients to bear the strain of a prolonged struggle. These new expedients—for which Godolphin and Charles Montague, afterwards Earl of Halifax, were largely responsible—consisted partly in improving the methods of taxation, partly in throwing the burden of the war on posterity by borrowing the surplus wealth of the merchant class. The National Debt dates from 1693, when the Government borrowed £1,000,000, not on the personal security of the King, but on the parliamentary security of the nation (cf. § 461). In the following year a group of Whig capitalists, in return for a loan of £1,200,000 at 8%, received a charter to found the Bank of England, and became the chief financial agents of the Government. The advantages were mutual: the Bank, having a well-secured income from the Government, could offer greater facilities than its private competitors both for depositors and for borrowers; and the Government obtained not only the financial but the political support of the moneyed classes.

§ 519. **Death of Queen Mary, December 1694.**—Finance took up most of the time of the second Parliament of William and Mary; but, in its last session, despite the King's opposition, it passed an important constitutional measure limiting the duration of Parliament to three years. A few days after this *Third Triennial Act* became law, the then virulent and common disease, small-pox, deprived William of his consort, Queen Mary.

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

### WILLIAM III., 1694-1702.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Posthumous son of William II., Prince of Orange, etc., by Mary, elder daughter of Charles I. of England: born at The Hague, November 4, 1650; elected Stadholder of Holland, etc., July 8, 1672; married Mary, elder daughter of James, Duke of York, afterwards James II., November 4, 1677; succeeded his father-in-law as King of England, etc., February 13, 1689, as King of Scotland, May 11, 1689; sole monarch after his wife's death, December 28, 1694; died at Kensington, March 8, 1702; buried at Westminster, no children. For his family connections, see Table, p. 280.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

EMPIRE.	PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	SWEDEN.	RUSSIA.
Leopold I. (1658-1705)	Innocent XII. (1691)  Clement XI. (1700-1720)	Louis XIV. (1643-1715)	Charles II. (1665-1700) <i>(Last of the Spanish Hapsburgs).</i>	Charles XI. (1660)  Charles XII. (1697-1718)	Peter the Great (1689-1725)

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) France: §§ 523, 525, 528, 530.
- (2) The Netherlands: §§ 523, 525, 526.
- (3) The Empire: §§ 525, 528.
- (4) Spain: §§ 526-528, 531.
- (5) Hanover: § 529.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) Ministers: §§ 521, 526, 529, 530.
- (2) Finance: §§ 524, 526.
- (3) Press: §§ 522, 531.
- (4) Army: § 526.
- (5) Royal Succession: §§ 520, 523, 529, 530.
- (6) Ireland: § 526.
- (7) Scotland: § 527.
- (8) Colonies: § 532.

### I. CONCLUSION OF THE WAR OF THE ENGLISH SUCCESSION, 1695-1697.

**§ 520. Effects of Mary's Death on William's Position.**—The death of Queen Mary seriously weakened the position of William



III. She was a Stuart, and, assuming the spuriousness of James II.'s son, the next heir to the throne after her father; her domestic virtues and warmheartedness made her personally popular; and her tactful energy did much to smooth the working of the machinery of government, the direction of which she had voluntarily left in her husband's hands. Her death left William exposed to the full brunt of the dislike which his foreign extraction and his cold manner excited in the mind of the average Englishman. In particular the Tories, who somehow salved their consciences for their "sin" in deserting James by the thought that the natural course of events had only been anticipated by a few years in the elevation of his daughter to the throne (§ 494), tended to drift more and more away from their allegiance to the King; and the years following Mary's death were exceptionally full of Jacobite intrigues.

§ 521. **Experiment in Party-Government, 1695-1698.**—The consciousness of isolation caused by Mary's death impelled William to adopt a plan recommended by Sunderland to secure steadiness and strength in the Government. Sunderland pointed out to the King that his ministers would work better together if they held similar political views, and that they would be less hampered by the growing interference of the House of Commons if the ministers were of the same party complexion as the majority in the House of Commons; and, applying these principles to the political situation at the time, he further pointed out that the Whigs, who happened to have a parliamentary majority at the moment, were satisfied with his title to the crown, and were hearty supporters of the war in which that title was being vindicated. There was no definite "change of ministry" as in our own day, but as Tory ministers dropped off one by one Whigs took their places, and from 1697 to 1699 all the principal ministers were Whigs. The chief four—Somers, Lord Keeper; Montague, First Lord of the Treasury after Godolphin's retirement; Russell, and Thomas Wharton—were called "the Junto." The Junto forms a kind of half-way house between the Cabal of Charles II.'s time—a mere group of royal favourites—and our modern Cabinet—an organized group of party-leaders under a Prime Minister.

§ 522. **Lapse of the Licensing Act, 1695.**—The censorship of the Press and the other regulations about printing authorized by the *Licensing Act*—first passed in 1662 and periodically renewed since that time—had not worked satisfactorily; and in 1695 Parliament, not having time to amend the machinery, allowed the

**Act to expire.** The increasing strength of the State as compared with all other organizations in the country made it less timorous of criticism; and since 1695 the Government, instead of directly attempting to prevent the publication of opinions or statements, has contented itself with leaving the law-courts to decide whether anything actually published is in any way harmful to the general weal.

§ 523. **Jacobite Plots and the Loyal Association, 1696.**—Early in 1696 two notable Jacobite schemes came to light: James, Duke of Berwick, an illegitimate son of James II. by Marlborough's sister Arabella, proposed to invade England with a French force, while Sir George Barclay was to seize William, and, if necessary, cut his throat. William's re-capture of Namur in September 1695 had made him popular for the moment; many who had no liking for William had still less liking for French invasions and nocturnal assassinations; and the discovery of the twin plot roused a burst of enthusiasm, which expressed itself, among other ways, in the formation of a Loyal Association like that of 1585 (§ 353). Among those who were executed for their share in the murder scheme was Sir John Fenwick, who was the last person to suffer death by Act of Attainder. The reason for adopting this extra-judicial procedure was that, owing to the abduction of one of the witnesses, there was not enough evidence to convict him under the recent *Treason-Trials Act*, which gave persons accused of treason facilities for defending themselves, and required at least two witnesses of each overt act of treason.

§ 524. **Restoration of the Currency, 1696.**—Those who donned the orange ribbon of the Loyal Association pledged themselves to support the war against France. But for this purpose money was required as well as zeal; and the year 1696 witnessed some notable attempts to improve the financial strength of England. Robert Harley promoted a scheme called the Land-Bank, which was an attempt to make the Government indebted to the Tory landowners in the same way as the Bank of England made it indebted to the Whig merchant interest. As the landowners had no ready money to spare the scheme failed utterly; but the Bank of England speedily found the money required immediately for the war. At the same time the general financial position of the country was permanently benefited by the restoration of the currency. Since Elizabeth's time the coinage had been going from bad to worse; the coins were badly shaped and easy to "clip"; and the result was that coins were frequently worth in weight less than half their face-

value (cf. § 313). By the advice of the politicians Montague and Somers, and under the practical management of the philosophers John Locke and Isaac Newton, the old coinage was replaced in 1696 by a new coinage, secured against defacing by having "milled" edges. The Government, by giving good coins for bad, bore the immediate loss caused by the change—more than £1,000,000; but it profited in the long run by the consequent improvement in trade and credit. At the same time Montague persuaded Parliament to pledge the entire public resources of the country as security for the public liabilities.

§ 525. **Peace of Ryswick, 1697.**—The financial power of England and the United Provinces was having its effect in the struggle against France. Louis XIV. had better troops, but he could not bring them to bear even on the United Netherlands, much less on the island-kingdom, the control of which he had so lightly allowed to pass to the ablest of his antagonists. In September and October 1697 he made peace with all his enemies—England, the United Provinces, Spain, the Empire, and several of the princes within the Empire—in the group of treaties known as the *Peace of Ryswick*. He abandoned all conquests since 1678 except Strasburg, and recognized the Protestant Succession in the British Isles.

## II. THE SWING OF THE PARTY PENDULUM, 1698-1702.

§ 526. **Parliamentary Attacks on William, 1698-1700.**—Both William and Louis regarded the peace merely as a breathing space, and silently set about the work of making ready for the approaching scramble for the Spanish dominions. But here William stood almost alone. The National Debt had risen during the war to more than £14,000,000, an amount which filled the politicians of those days with alarm; the standing army was regarded as both costly and dangerous to the Constitution. Hence, while William wished to keep up the Army as the best guarantee of peace, Parliament wished to take advantage of the peace to reduce the Army. Early in 1698 it successfully reduced the Army to 10,000. Later in the year a new Parliament, in which the Tories had a majority, vented its spleen on "the little Dutchman" by insisting that William's Dutch guards should be sent home—thus reducing the Army to 7000—and by ordering an inquiry into William's gifts of confiscated lands in Ireland. Finding that a large portion of these lands had been given to favourites of Dutch extraction, Parliament in 1700 cancelled all grants by a *Resumption Act*.

§ 527. **The Darien Scheme, 1698-1700.**—Meanwhile William

had raised a storm in Scotland also by his supposed opposition to the Darien Scheme. William Paterson, the Scots promoter of the Bank of England, had floated an African Company intended to give Scotsmen opportunities for trading with Africa and the East Indies. The Scheme included the formation of a settlement on the Isthmus of Darien or Panama ; but owing partly to the unhealthiness of the climate, partly to the opposition of Spain, the "New Caledonia" was an utter failure. The loss of lives and money was a great blow to a poor country like Scotland ; and the failure was ascribed to the King.

§ 528. **The Partition Treaties, 1698-1700.**—Louis XIV. had partly accepted defeat on the question of the English Succession in order to have his hands free for the more pressing and profitable question of the Spanish Succession (Tables pp. 190, 332). Charles II. of Spain was the last male descendant through males of the Spanish branch of the House of Hapsburg (§ 361) ; and throughout his reign (1665-1700) there was anxiety among statesmen as to what was to become of his vast possessions all over the world when his sickly life gave out. His nearest blood-connections were his cousins of the Austrian Hapsburg and of the French Bourbon lines ; but considerations of the Balance of Power made diplomatists unwilling to regard the succession merely on the basis of family arrangements. Accordingly various schemes of partition among the different claimants were devised, in the last of which England was actively concerned. In October 1698 the two Protestant Sea-Powers, England and the United Netherlands, came to terms with France, in the *First Partition Treaty*, whereby most of the Spanish dominions were assigned to the least formidable of the three claimants, Joseph, Electoral Prince of Bavaria. He died in the following year ; and in March 1700 a *Second Partition Treaty* allotted the greater part of the plunder to the Archduke Charles of Austria, and the lesser part—including Naples, Sicily, and the Milanese—to the Dauphin. But when Charles II. died in the following November, leaving the whole of his possessions to Philip, Duke of Anjou, younger son of the Dauphin, Louis XVI. threw over the treaty and accepted the will. The Hapsburg protested, but he could do nothing effective without the help of England ; and in April 1701 William was constrained by Parliament to recognize the Bourbon claimant.

§ 529. **Act of Settlement, June 1701.**—The death of William Duke of Gloucester in July 1700 interested Englishmen more than the death of Charles II. of Spain. He was the last of the numerous but short-lived children of Queen Mary's sister Anne ; and his death

left the English succession open after the death of William III. and his sister-in-law. Accordingly in June 1701 Parliament made further provision for the royal succession: setting aside the descendants of James II. and of his sister Henrietta—who were excluded as “Papists” under the *Bill of Rights*—the *Act of Settlement* settled the crown, after Anne’s death, on Sophia, Electress of Hanover, as the next Protestant heir (Table, p. 280). In return for regulating the royal succession in accordance with Whig ideas, the Tories were allowed to insert in the Act a number of constitutional provisions—some of them repealed as impracticable before they came into effect—which were designed to prevent the House of Hanover from adopting various practices that helped to make William III. additionally objectionable in Tory eyes:—

- (1) Whoever shall come into possession of the English crown shall join in communion with the Church of England as by law established.
- (2) This nation shall not be obliged to engage in any war for the defence of any territories which do not belong to the crown of England, without the consent of Parliament.
- (3) The Sovereign shall not go out of the dominions of England, Scotland, or Ireland, without the consent of Parliament.
- (4) All matters relating to the well-governing of this kingdom, which are properly cognizable in the Privy Council, shall be transacted there, and all resolutions taken thereon shall be signed by such of the Privy Council as shall advise and consent to the same.
- (5) No person born out of the three kingdoms, although he be naturalized, shall be “capable to be of the Privy Council,” or a member of either House, or to enjoy any office or place of trust.
- (6) No person who has an office or place of profit under the King shall be capable of serving as a member of the Commons.
- (7) Judges’ commissions shall be made *quandiu se bene gesserint*, and their salaries shall be ascertained and established; but upon the address of both Houses it may be lawful to remove them.
- (8) No pardon under the Great Seal shall be pleadable to an impeachment by the Commons.

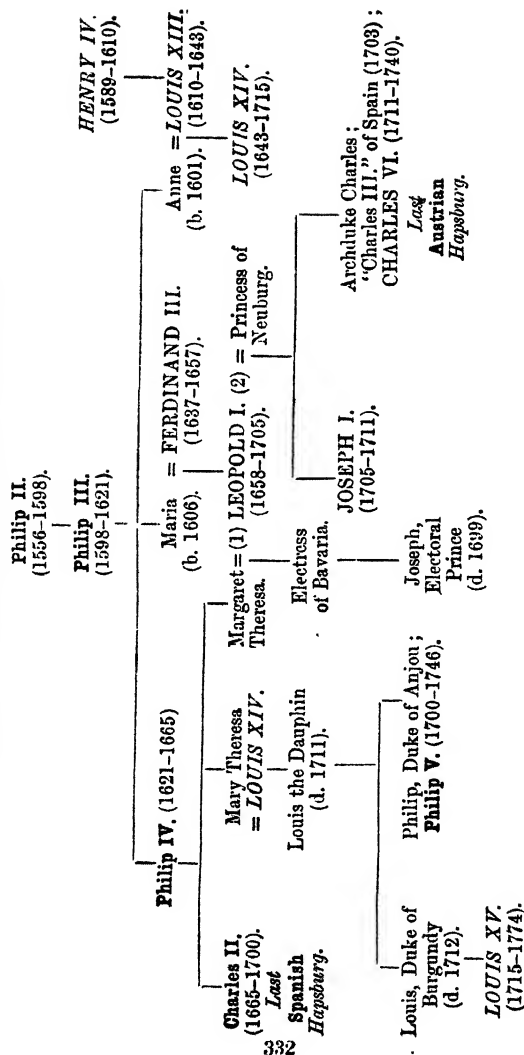
§ 530. **Death of James II., September 1701.**—The House of Commons which thus obliquely censured William’s conduct by inserting these safeguards into the *Act of Settlement*, and which compelled him to acknowledge the new Bourbon King of Spain, also attacked him more directly by impeaching three members of the Junto—Somers, Halifax (Montague), and Russell (now Earl of Orford)—and his especial friend William Bentinck, Duke of Portland. Their main fault was their connivance in the *Partition Treaties*. The im-

peachment fell through, and the continued attacks on the King were already causing disgust among moderate men, when Louis XIV. accelerated the turn of the tide in William's favour by acknowledging James Edward Stuart, "the Old Pretender," as King of England on his father's death in September 1701.

§ 531. **Death of William III., March 1702.**—Louis XIV.'s act of generous impolicy practically drove Englishmen to accept as their king either a foreigner selected by their own Parliament, or a native Stuart imposed on them by a foreign potentate. That very insular feeling which Daniel Defoe had laughed to scorn in his *True-born Englishman* (1701) rallied the nation round William III. He built up a Grand Alliance to support the Hapsburg claimant against the Bourbon possessor of the Spanish throne; and he found his new Parliament sufficiently in his favour to carry bills attainting "the pretended King" and compelling all officers in Church and State, and all members of the Universities, to abjure the Stuart cause (§ 509). In the height of his triumph, and before open hostilities commenced, William broke his collar-bone, and died on March 8, 1702.

§ 532. **The East India Company, 1600-1698.**—The close of the seventeenth century witnessed many notable extensions in the English outlook upon the world outside Europe. In 1699 William Dampier was sent out by the Government to explore the unknown regions of New Holland or Australia. Foreign and Colonial missionary work within the Church of England was inaugurated by the foundation of the "Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge" in 1698, and of the "Society for the Propagation of the Gospel" three years later. The name Fort William (Calcutta) reminds us that it was in the reign of William III. that the East India Company obtained a permanent foothold in Bengal. The Company, since its foundation in 1600, had removed its principal field of operations from the Spice Islands to India, and had there established many trading stations or "factories." Its success roused much jealousy and many attempts to break its monopoly; and in 1698 Montague took advantage of these commercial jealousies to allow a group of Whig capitalists, in return for a loan to Government, to found a new "English" Company in opposition to the Tory "London" Company. But the old concern had too strong a grip on the trade to allow successful competition by the new company: the two companies made a pooling agreement in 1702, and amalgamated in 1708. It was this united company which, half a century later, began to acquire the "Empire of Indostan" (§§ 596-599).

# **Pedigree Illustrating the Spanish Succession.**



NOTE.—The double dates within parentheses give the periods during which a title is held; the Emperors are in **ROMAN CAPITALS**; the French Sovereigns in **ITALIC CAPITALS**; the Spanish Sovereigns in **dark type**.

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

### QUEEN ANNE, 1702-1714.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Younger daughter of James II., by his first wife, Anne Hyde; born at St. James's Palace, February 5, 1664; in 1683, after being sought in marriage by George Lewis, of Hanover (her successor), married George (1653-1708), second son of Frederick III., King of Denmark; of her seventeen children all died young except William, Duke of Gloucester, who died July 30, 1700 (aged eleven); under the terms of the *Bill of Rights*, 1689, and *Act of Settlement*, 1701, succeeded her brother-in-law, William III., as Queen of England, etc., March 8, 1702; became Queen of Great Britain, May 1, 1707; died at Kensington, August 1, 1714; buried in Westminster Abbey. For family connections see Table, p. 280.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY	EMPIRE.	PRUSSIA.	FRANCE	SPAIN.	SWEDEN.	RUSSIA
Clement XI. (1700-1721)	Leopold I. (1658) Joseph I. (1705) Charles VI. (1711)	Frederick I. <i>Brautemburg</i> (1688-1713) <i>First King of Prussia</i> , 1701	Louis XIV. (1643-1715)	Philip V. (1700-1746) Rival Claimant ( <i>Hapsburg</i> ): Archduke Charles	Charles XII. (1697-1718)	Peter the Great (1689-1725)

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN

- (i) **International: relations with—**
- (1) France: §§ 533, 535-538, 541-546, 550.
  - (2) Spain: §§ 533, 535-538, 541, 545, 546, 550.
  - (3) Portugal: § 536.
  - (4) Savoy: § 535.
  - (5) Netherlands: §§ 533, 535-538, 542, 545, 546
  - (6) Empire: §§ 533, 547, 549.
  - (7) Sweden: § 541.

- (ii) **Constitutional.**
- (1) Ministers: §§ 534, 544, 548.
  - (2) Parliament: §§ 539, 540, 549, 552.
  - (3) Succession: §§ 542, 552.
  - (4) Church: §§ 547, 548, 551.
  - (5) Scotland: §§ 539, 540, 551.
  - (6) Ireland: § 539.
  - (7) Colonies: § 550.

### I. MARLBOROUGH'S EARLY TRIUMPHS, 1702-1706.

§ 533. **Motives in the War of the Spanish Succession.**—Queen Anne and her friends, the Churchills (Lord and Lady Marlborough) had frequently been on bad terms with the late King; but



towards the close of his reign they became reconciled to him, and they now took up his policy of war against the Bourbons. War was formally declared in May 1702, and it lasted for eleven years (§ 550). This struggle had many other motives besides that expressed in its general name—the “War of the Spanish Succession”; and some of these were commercial rather than dynastic (§§ 528, 531). England was mainly interested in upholding the Protestant Succession, and in preventing France from excluding Englishmen from all hopes of participation in the trade of Spanish America. Her principal ally was the United Netherlands, which had now become so closely connected with England that diplomatists habitually spoke of them together as “the Sea Powers” (cf. §§ 430, 456, 462). The United Provinces were chiefly alarmed lest France should acquire such a hold over the Spanish Netherlands as to be able to threaten Dutch independence. Other Powers on the Continent were in various ways anxious lest the close dynastic connection between France and Spain should affect them harmfully: they therefore allied against Louis XIV., nominally maintaining the cause of the Archduke Charles against that of “Philip of Anjou,” but really each intent on his several interests. England took part in the campaigns in the Netherlands, in Spain and on the sea, but there were other areas of war than these.\*

§ 534. **Marlborough-Godolphin Administration, 1702–1710.**—Louis XIV. had sole control of his affairs, while his enemies were divided in locality, in interests, and in leadership. The one thing which for many years kept the jealous Allies working together towards a common object, and with a fair measure of success, was the military and diplomatic genius of Marlborough. Like William III., Marlborough had many qualities which do not commend themselves to the eye of the moralist; but he also possessed that rare power of devising sound plans and carrying them into execution which makes the great statesman. While he was busy abroad, his position was maintained at home by the influence which his wife, the “Queen’s Favourite” of dramatic fiction, had over the sovereign—they were so familiar that in their correspondence the Queen was “Mrs. Morley,” and the Duchess “Mrs. Freeman”—and by the influence in Parliament of Godolphin, a friend and marriage-connection of Marlborough, who held the position of Lord Treasurer.

\* There is a detailed synoptic view of the chief events of the War in the *Intermediate Text-Book of English History*, vol. III., pp. 294, 295.

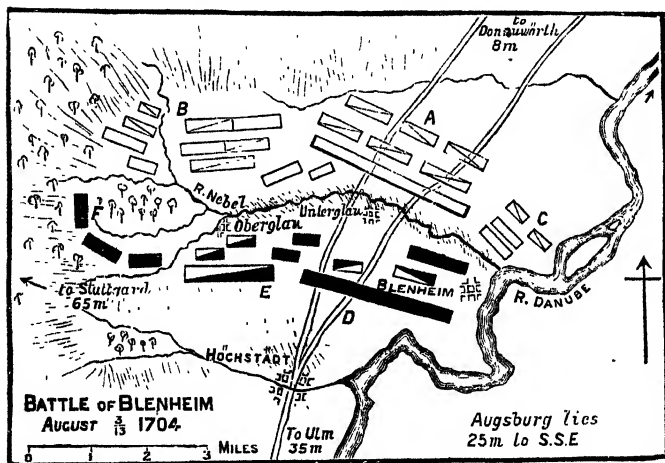
At first, the Marlborough-Godolphin Administration consisted of members of both parties ; but in the years 1703-4, the High Tories Rochester and Nottingham gave place to the more moderate Tories. Robert Harley and Henry St. John ; and a few years later, the Tories were wholly eliminated, leaving in power, as for a brief period in William III.'s reign (§ 521), a group of ministers belonging to one party only (§ 544).

§ 535. **The War in 1702-1703.**—The weakness of the Allies was clearly exhibited in the first two years of the War. In 1702 Admiral Benbow was defeated in the West Indies ; and defeat was the common lot of most of the opponents of France. Marlborough, however, conducted two successful campaigns in the Southern Netherlands, obtaining a hold of the country as far as Bonn in order to keep in touch with the German princes who were ranged against Louis XIV. But these military reverses were more than counter-balanced by two diplomatic successes in the adhesion of Portugal and Savoy to the Grand Alliance. The Duke of Savoy was afraid that if Bourbons were established in Milan as well as in France, his existence as an independent prince would not long survive.

§ 536. **The Methuen Treaty, 1703.**—Portugal was persuaded to join the Alliance partly through her traditional jealousy of Spain, partly through commercial considerations. The Anglo-Portuguese treaty, negotiated by Methuen in May 1703, admitted Portuguese wines into England, and English woollens into Portugal at lower rates than the similar products of any other country. This treaty put on a firm basis the long-standing amity between the sinking and the rising Sea-Power (cf. § 454), and had an important influence on the course of history. It also had a curious effect on British social customs by practically substituting port for claret as the foreign wine most largely drunk by the well-to-do classes.

§ 537. **Blenheim and Gibraltar, 1704.**—Encouraged by two years' success, Louis XIV. resolved in 1704 to strike at the heart of his rival, by sending a French army through the territories of his ally, the Elector of Bavaria, against the Emperor's capital of Vienna. Marlborough resolved to prevent this scheme, and, despite Dutch opposition and the obstacles interposed by nature, he finally succeeded. Marching *via* Mainz and the Neckar Valley, he brought the Franco-Bavarian army under Marshal Tallard to bay at Blenheim on the Danube, and there, early in August, won an overwhelming victory (August 3). The battle of Blenheim not only defeated the French schemes and compelled Louis to withdraw his forces to his

own side of the Rhine, but also proved that French armies were not, as people were beginning to fancy, almost invincible. Hardly less important, from a national point of view, though it attracted less attention at the time, was Rooke's capture of Gibraltar ten days before the battle of Blenheim. This acquisition—which has since been retained, despite Spanish onslaughts—was not the outcome of deliberate operations but an incident in the course of a series of naval raids on the Spanish coasts.



Army of the Allies, 52,000.  
[Losses, 11,000.]

Franco-Bavarian Army, 60,000.  
[Losses, 40,000, including 14,000 prisoners.]

HORSE, ; FOOT, .

FOOT, ; HORSE, .

A = Marlborough.

D = Tallard.

B = Eugene.

E = Marsin.

C = Cutts.

F = Elector of Bavaria.

NOTE.—The distances marked are air-line distances from Blenheim.

§ 538. Campaigns of 1705-1706.—In 1705 the principal theatre of war was Spain. Leake defeated French fleets in Mediterranean waters and took part in the capture of Barcelona by Charles Mordaunt, the brilliant but erratic Earl of Peterborough. The people of the district round Barcelona—Catalans and Aragonese—were likely to give active support to the claims of the Archduke Charles against the Bourbon occupant of the Spanish throne, favoured by

the people of Castile. In the following year Peterborough marched inland from Barcelona and temporarily occupied Madrid, where he proclaimed "Charles III." King of Spain. About the same time, Marlborough, having defeated Villeroy in a pitched battle at Ramillies in Brabant, occupied Brussels and made a similar proclamation. In the same year two Spanish capitals in Italy, Naples and Milan, fell into the hands of the Hapsburg claimant. "Charles III.," thus placed actually in possession of the four Spanish capitals in Europe, seemed to have such rosy prospects of success that Louis XIV. opened negotiations on the basis of recognizing Charles as King over all the Spanish dominions except Naples and the Milanese. Owing mainly to the influence of the Emperor and of Marlborough, the Allies rejected these terms and prolonged the war--only with the result of gaining less in the end.

## II. THE ANGLO-SCOTTISH UNION, 1707.

§ 539. **Causes of the Anglo-Scottish Union, 1699-1706.**—The year 1706 was thus the year of Marlborough's greatest triumph: the following year witnessed the greatest achievement of his friend and fellow-worker, Godolphin. The latter event was almost as closely connected with the war as the former. The war was largely due to a desire felt by the merchants of England to develop trade with Spanish America: the union project came within the sphere of practical politics largely through the failure of similar designs on the part of Scottish merchants (§ 527). Irritation over the Darien fiasco made the Lowlanders, the only section of Scotsmen who were hearty supporters of the Protestant Succession, resolve to obtain either complete commercial equality with Englishmen or release from an unequal partnership. On the other hand, English merchants cherished their trade privileges, and English Tories looked askance on any further recognition of Scottish presbyterianism in church-government. In 1702 an attempt inaugurated by William III. to arrange a compromise broke down, and in the following year the Scottish Estates enacted that Scotland was not to be involved without their consent in any war begun by England. In 1704 Anne was compelled to assent to an *Act of Security* which empowered the Scots Estates to appoint a successor to herself different from the person arranged for England and Ireland in the *Act of Settlement*, 1701 (§ 529). The English Parliament retorted with an *Alien Act* declaring Scotsmen to be aliens, prohibiting imports from Scotland, and providing for the repair of the Border fortresses. The danger

of war between two kingdoms whose common interests far outweighed points of difference made moderate men on both sides strenuous in pressing forward an accommodation. In 1706, under the guidance of Godolphin and Somers, a body of English and Scottish commissioners quickly arranged terms, which were accepted by both Parliaments.

§ 540. *Terms of the Anglo-Scottish Union, 1707.*—The *Act of Union*, which came into force on May 1, 1707, merged the old kingdoms of England and Scotland into one new kingdom, while it preserved their identity in certain respects—notably in the spheres of Church, Law, and Education. The “personal union” begun in 1603 was replaced by a closer but still far from complete union. It was, for instance, less complete than the unions attempted by Edward I. and Oliver Cromwell (§§ 178, 434); but it had the merit, which all previous attempts had lacked, of being made voluntarily and on equal terms on both sides, not under the compulsion of the southern kingdom. The following were the chief provisions of the *Act of Union*.—

- (1) *Kingdoms*: the two kingdoms of Scotland and England are to be united into one kingdom, entitled “The United Kingdom of Great Britain.”
- (2) *Parliaments*: the two parliaments are to be amalgamated into a British Parliament in which England is to be represented as before, while Scotland is to be represented by forty-five members in the Commons and sixteen peers in the Lords, elected for each Parliament.
- (3) *Churches*: each ex-kingdom is to retain its established church—episcopalian in England, presbyterian in Scotland.
- (4) *Law*: each ex-kingdom retains its own system of law and law-courts—subject to modification by the United Parliament, and with appeal from the highest local courts to the British House of Lords.
- (5) *Trade*: Englishmen and Scotsmen are placed on the same footing as regards trade with one another and with the outside world, as regulated in English *Navigation Acts*, etc.; and the weights, measures, and coinage of the two countries are assimilated to the English model.
- (6) *Finance*: England pays off the Scottish National Debt and indemnifies the shareholders in the Darien Company; Scotland takes her share of the future financial burdens of the United Kingdom.

### III. THE WHIGS AND THE WAR, 1707-1710.

§ 541. *Almanza, 1707.*—During the year of the Anglo-Scottish Union, the main theatre of war was Eastern Spain. There the Allies speedily lost the ground which they had won in 1706 (§ 538). “Charles III.’s” troops were expelled from Madrid after less than a month’s occupation (cf. § 546); and in April 1707 they were

badly beaten at Almanza by James, Duke of Berwick, an illegitimate son of James II. by Marlborough's sister Arabella. The battle of Almanza was roughly balanced by a diplomatic success earned by Marlborough. He persuaded Charles XII., the adventurous king of Sweden, not to join in the War of the Spanish Succession—probably on the side of France, the old ally of Sweden—but to continue his struggles against Poland and his arch-enemy, Peter the Great. His Russian enterprise ended in his defeat at Pultowa, 1709, which practically marked the end of Sweden as a Great Power.

§ 542. **Battle of Oudenarde, 1708.**—In 1708 fortune swung round again to the side of the Allies both in Italy and in the regions which directly concerned Great Britain. Early in the year Byng drove back a French fleet which was escorting the Chevalier de St. George—"James III."—to Scotland in the hopes of rallying round the Stuarts all who were discontented with the Union. The Chevalier himself reached the Forth but deemed it prudent not to land. In July, Marlborough and his no less brilliant colleague, Prince Eugene of Savoy, won a great victory at Oudenarde, which resulted in the recovery of the Southern Netherlands (partly lost during the previous year) and enabled them in the autumn to take the offensive by the capture of the French fortress of Lille.

§ 543. **Capture of Minorca, 1708.**—In the Mediterranean, a joint British force under General Stanhope and Admiral Leake took possession of Sardinia and Minorca—the latter being then generally esteemed a more suitable place for a naval station than Gibraltar. These events led to a renewal of overtures for peace by Louis XIV. in the spring of 1709 and to their rejection by the Allies. The latter insisted that Louis should himself help in expelling his grandson from the throne of Spain. Louis refused, and appealed to his subjects for the help which he was wont to take as a matter of course. Appeal to national feeling now, as a hundred years later (§ 692), turned the scale in a great war.

§ 544. **Whig Administration, 1708-1710.**—Despite Marlborough's victories, his countrymen were beginning to lose their interest in the war and their belief in the necessity of its continuance: even the recognition of Philip V. as King in Spain would not make the united Bourbons as strong as Louis XIV. by himself had been before the war. The growth of the feeling that Marlborough's "family party"—including himself, Godolphin, and Sunderland—were prolonging a useless struggle simply for the sake of their own interests was clearly shown by the ministerial changes

of 1708. The moderate Tories, Harley and St. John, resigned their posts, and were replaced by Whigs such as Somers, Wharton, and Walpole. Godolphin made these changes reluctantly. Like William III., he preferred to follow the old plan of having the best men as ministers, disregarding differences in personal opinion. But party distinctions were now becoming so sharply defined in both home and foreign politics, that Whigs and Tories would not work smoothly together. Hence Godolphin was compelled for a brief period to have recourse to William III.'s expedient of an administration drawn entirely from the ranks of one party, and that the party which really believed not only in the expediency but also in the rightfulness of the Protestant Succession.

§ 545. **Malplaquet, 1709.**—The great efforts made by Louis XIV. had immediate effects on the course of the war in 1709. In the Netherlands, Marlborough and Eugene could do nothing except capture fortresses such as Tournay and Mons: in the pitched battle which they fought at Malplaquet in September, they contrived to defeat Villars, the best of the French generals, but their losses were twice those of the enemy. The days of overwhelming victories for the Allies were over. Meanwhile, in Spain, Galway had been defeated at La Gudina in an attempt to invade Spain from the Portuguese base.

§ 546. **Gertruydenburg and Brihuega, 1710.**—Nevertheless the Allies refused the favourable terms again offered by Louis XIV. in the Conference held at Gertruydenburg in the spring of 1710. He now expressed his willingness to subsidize the Allies while they were engaged in expelling Philip V. from Spain, but, as before, he refused to bear arms himself against his grandson. In the following year Marlborough took Douay, and "Charles III." forced his way into Madrid. On his way up his troops under Stanhope and Staremberg won joint victories at Almenara and Zaragoza: on their retreat—for Madrid has always been quite untenable by an enemy lacking the support of the population—they were severally defeated at Brihuega and Villa Viciosa in December 1710.

§ 547. **Queen Anne and the "High Church" Party.**—The decisive event in the war, from a British point of view, took place in 1710: the corresponding event, from an international point of view, took place in the following year (§ 549). The British event was the overthrow of the Whigs by a group of Tories who had quite different views about the war from those of their opponents. Harley had contrived to place his relative Mrs. Masham near the

Queen, and had thus gradually weaned Anne from the predominance of the Duchess of Marlborough. Harley's cue was to work on Queen Anne's religious sentiments and prejudices. She was an Anglican of what was just beginning to be called the "High Church" school; and it was therefore not difficult to persuade her that the Whigs, being patrons of Dissenters, were enemies of true religion.

• § 548. **Sacheverell and the Whig Collapse, 1710.**—Towards the end of 1709, Dr. Henry Sacheverell preached some official sermons inveighing against the Glorious Revolution and the Protestant Succession as sins against God and His Anointed. The Whigs thought him worthy of the distinction of impeachment (February, March, 1710). The Lords suspended him for three years; Anne compensated him by giving him preferment. Sacheverell became almost as much of a popular hero as the Seven Bishops of 1688; and in August 1710 Anne, taking courage from her popularity as an admirer of Dr. Sacheverell, dismissed the Whig ministers from her service. Harley (soon afterwards created Earl of Oxford) became Chancellor of the Exchequer and the principal member of a purely Tory Administration, which included St. John as Secretary of State, as well as Rochester and Ormonde.

#### IV. THE TORIES AND THE PEACE, 1710-1714.

§ 549. **Charles VI. and the Balance of Power, 1711.**—The Tories had their own reasons for wishing to bring the war to a close, and before they had been in office for a year an event occurred which completely changed the international situation. In April 1711 the Emperor Joseph II. died; and his successor, both in the family estates and in the elective dignity of Emperor, was his brother the Archduke Charles. It was obviously absurd that the Allies should continue a war nominally undertaken to preserve the Balance of Power simply in order to restore the double-monarchy of Charles V. (§§ 286, 287). Better to leave Spain with a Bourbon who was otherwise a nobody, and who by the recent birth of an heir to his elder brother was removed a step farther from the French crown than he had formally renounced, than with a Hapsburg who held the throne of Caesar and the power of an Austrian archduke. The British Ministry thus had good reasons of State, as well as strong party reasons, for seeking to stop the war; and the publication of Swift's pamphlet, *The Conduct of the Allies*, six months after the death of the Emperor, greatly increased the popularity of a peace



policy. They opened negotiations with France, and at the end of the year got rid of one of the chief obstacles in the way of peace by persuading the Queen to dismiss Marlborough from all his offices.

§ 550. **The Peace of Utrecht, 1713-1715.**—Marlborough's successor, the Duke of Ormonde, was instructed to withdraw from active prosecution of the war in the Netherlands; and these instructions were given and obeyed in such a sense that Queen Anne's Government can hardly be exonerated from the charge of treachery towards its allies. In 1712 negotiations went on both secretly at Paris between the envoys of France and Great Britain, and openly at a general congress held at Utrecht in the United Netherlands. The result was the conclusion of a number of treaties, mostly arranged at Utrecht, among the different parties to the war except Philip V. and the Emperor; and in order to obtain the consent of Parliament to those treaties which concerned Great Britain, Queen Anne created twelve Tory peers to outvote the previous Whig majority in the House of Lords. The principal provisions of the British Utrecht treaties with France and Spain fall naturally under four main headings.

- (i) *Dynastic.* Great Britain recognizes Philip V. as King of Spain on condition that (a) the Bourbons recognize in turn the Protestant Succession in the United Kingdom, that (b) the French and the Spanish crowns are never to be united, and that (c) Louis XIV. assents to the transference of the outlying Spanish possessions in Europe to his rivals—the Netherlands, Milan, Naples and Sardinia to the Emperor Charles VI., and Sicily (afterwards exchanged for Sardinia) to the Duke of Savoy.
- (ii) *Territorial.* France abandons, in favour of Great Britain, her former claims to Acadie (Nova Scotia), Newfoundland, and Rupertsland (Hudson's Bay Territory); Spain formally cedes to Great Britain her conquests of Gibraltar and Minorca.
- (iii) *Commercial.* Spain transfers to Great Britain certain trading privileges with Spanish America that she had formerly assigned to France: viz. (a) the *Asiento*—i. e. permission to import 4800 negroes into America during the following thirty years; (b) the right of sending one small ship annually to Porto-Bello, the chief Spanish emporium on the Isthmus of Panama (§ 562).

§ 551. **Church Questions, 1704-1714.**—The British authors of the *Peace of Utrecht* were Tories who differed from their Whig opponents not only on the war but also on questions of the Church and of the Royal Succession. In 1704 the Queen had shown her disinterested affection for the Church of England by forming the

first-fruits of ecclesiastical benefices into the nucleus of a fund for the augmentation of small livings—a fund ever since known as “Queen Anne’s Bounty”; and the excitement over the trial of Dr. Sacheverell in 1710 had shown that the Anglican clergy were no less in favour with the English people. The Tories were acting in strict accordance with their principles in following this tendency in their legislative measures. The *Occasional Conformity Act*, 1711, and the *Schism Act*, 1714—both aimed at the Protestant Nonconformists, the chief supporters of the Whigs—respectively punished those who took the Sacrament according to Anglican rites simply in order to obtain municipal office (§ 453) and forbade any but Anglicans to keep school. These Acts remained in force for only a short time; but a *Scottish Patronage Act*—passed in 1712 to assimilate the method of appointing parish ministers in Scotland to that which prevailed in England—had lasting effects in increasing the divisions in the Scottish Church.

§ 552. **The Succession Question, 1710-1714.**—Closely connected with this ecclesiastical legislation were certain secular measures designed to maintain the Tories in control of public affairs. The *Property Qualification Act*, 1711, was designed to secure the predominance of the landed interest in the House of Commons against the newer commercial interest by disqualifying persons who did not possess a considerable amount of landed property from becoming members of Parliament; and the *Newspaper Stamp Act*, 1712, was framed to check the influence of outside criticism on Parliament and Government by imposing a stamp-duty on all periodical publications such as newspapers (cf. § 522). But it was useless for the Tories to obtain control over Parliament and the expression of public opinion, unless they could also control the Kingship: and the ill-health of the Queen made the Tories anxious as to their fate under her successor. Here they were divided between their Protestant and their Legitimist sympathies: Oxford was inclined to favour the Hanoverian Succession laid down by Act of Parliament in 1701 and 1707, while St. John (now Viscount Bolingbroke) seems to have been driven by necessity towards adopting the Jacobite cause. In July 1714, Bolingbroke ousted his rival from office because he had opposed the *Schism Act*; but before he could take any decisive measures to secure his position the death of Queen Anne ruined his career, at least for a time (§ 571).

# The House of Brunswick or Hannover.

(GEORGE I.  
(1714-1727)

= Sophia Dorothea of Brunswick and Zell.

GEORGE II.  
(1727-1760)

= Caroline of Brandenburg-Anspach.

Sophia Dorothea =  
Frederick I. of Prussia.

Frederick II. of Prussia  
(1740-86).

Frederick Louis,  
d. 1751,

= William, D. of Cumberland.  
Anne  
= William, D. of Orange.  
P. of Orange.

William Augustus, 4 daughters.

= Augusta of Saxe-Coburg.

GEORGE III.  
(1760-1820)

= Charlotte of Mecklenburg-Strelitz.

3 sons and 2 daughters.

Frederick,  
D. of York,  
d. 1827

WILLIAM IV.  
(1830-1837)  
= Adelaide of  
Saxe-Meiningen.

Edward, D. of Kent,  
d. 1820,  
= Victoria Mary Louisa  
of Saxe-Coburg.

Ernest, D. of  
Cumberland &  
K. of Hannover  
(1837-1851).

3 sons and  
4 daughters.

GEORGE IV.  
(1820-1830)

= Caroline of Brunswick.

Alexandrina VICTORIA,  
'1837-1901

=, Feb. 10, 1840, Albert of  
Saxe-Coburg and Gotha.

George,  
D. of Cambridge.

Mary Adelaide =  
Francis, D. of Teck.

Charlotte =

Leopold, K. of the Belgians.

EDWARD VII.  
b. Nov. 9, 1841.

NOTE.—The years within brackets give regnal years; important names in dark type; English Sovereigns in capitals.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

### GEORGE I., 1714-1727.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Eldest son of Ernest Augustus, Duke of Brunswick-Lüneburg and first Elector of Hanover, by his wife Sophia, granddaughter of James I. of England; born at Hanover, May 28, 1660; in 1682 married his cousin Sophia Dorothea of Zell (whom in 1694 he imprisoned at Ahlden till her death, November 13, 1726); succeeded his father as Elector of Hanover, 1698; in accordance with the *Act of Settlement*, 1701, and the *Act of Union*, 1707, became King of Great Britain, etc., on the death of Queen Anne, August 1, 1714 (his mother Sophia having died, May 28, 1714); died at Osnabruck, June 11, 1727; buried at Hanover. For descent from James I. see Table, p. 280; for descendants, see Table, p. 344.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	PRUSSIA.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	SWEDEN.	RUSSIA.
Clement XI. (1700)	Charles VI. (1711)	Frederick I. (1701)	Louis XIV. (1643)	Philip V. (1700-1746)	Charles XII. (1697)	Peter the Gr. (1689)
Innocent XIII. (1721)		Frederick William I. (1713-1740)	Louis XV. (1715-1774)	Louis I. (1724-5)	Frederick I. (1718-1751)	Katharine I. (1725-1727)
Benedict XIII. (1724-1730)						

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

#### (i) International: relations with—

- (1) France: §§ 555, 558, 566.
- (2) Spain: §§ 558, 560, 562, 566.
- (3) Austria: §§ 560, 566.
- (4) Prussia: § 566.
- (5) Sweden: §§ 557, 558, 560.

#### (ii) Constitutional.

- (1) Ministers: §§ 553, 554, 559, 563.
- (2) Parliament: §§ 554, 556, 561, 562, 564, 565.
- (3) Church: §§ 561, 565.
- (4) Scotland: §§ 555, 560.
- (5) Ireland: § 565.

### I. THE STUART AND THE GUELPH, 1714-1716.

§ 553. **Accession of George I., 1714.**—Despite the deep divisions in public opinion regarding the Succession, there was no difficulty in placing, and little difficulty in keeping, George Augustus on the thrones vacated by Queen Anne. At the crisis of the quarrel

between Oxford and Bolingbroke, the two Tory leaders, a group of Whig peers, headed by Argyll and Shrewsbury, contrived to seize the reins of power; and their party, despite their quarrels, did not let them go for nearly half a century. Until the arrival of the new King, affairs were administered by twenty-one Lords Justices, nominated beforehand by the Elector under powers conferred in a *Regency Act* of 1705; and when he arrived he rewarded the Whigs for their support by choosing his Ministers entirely from their ranks. Montague, Earl of Halifax, was for a few months First Lord of the Treasury; but the Secretaries of State, Charles, Viscount Townshend, and James Stanhope, the conqueror of Minorca, were the most important members. Rooin was also found in the Ministry for Sunderland and Walpole; Marlborough became Captain-General; Somers was too old to hold office again long.

§ 554. **The Riot Act, April 1715.**—George I.'s first British Parliament met early in 1715 and showed itself strongly Whig. The Ministers naturally followed their Tory predecessors in turning their parliamentary majority to their own advantage. They impeached the chief among the late Ministers for various crimes and misdemeanours—especially in connection with their peace negotiations and with their alleged attempt “to bring in the Pretender.” This was the last occasion on which the method of impeachment was adopted by a party in power as a means of taking vengeance on political adversaries. Bolingbroke and Ormonde deemed it prudent to leave the country and were attainted in their absence. Oxford remained to face impeachment and after long proceedings was ultimately acquitted. Thus abandoned by their leaders, the disappointed Jacobites were unable to organize a great rising and broke out into the petty local movements which occasioned the *Riot Act*. By this Act it was made felony for the members of a crowd to disobey for more than one hour the orders of a magistrate to disperse.

§ 555. **The Fifteen, September-November, 1715.**—A well-organized Jacobite rising immediately after the death of Queen Anne, and while there was a fair prospect of help from France, would have had considerable chances of success. But the rising did not begin until George had been nearly a year in England and until its most promising patron, Louis XIV., was dead; and besides being ill-timed it was also badly bungled. Ormonde landed in Devonshire, but at once gave up the enterprise; and the only serious movements took place in the North. Early in September the Earl of Mar—

known from his many political changes as "Bobbing John"—set up the Stuart standard in Braemar. Most of the Scottish peers were prepared to support him if he showed promise of success; and nearly all the Highland clans actually did rally round him. He did nothing with the force at his disposal; but he sent a detachment under M'Intosh to help the movement further south, headed by Lords Nithsdale and Kenmuir in the Lowlands and by Forster and Lord Derwentwater in Northumberland. This united army marched southwards, and on November 13 surrendered at Preston. On the same day Mar fought an indecisive battle with Argyll at Sheriffmuir near Perth. In the following month "James III." himself arrived at Peterhead; but his presence was embarrassing rather than inspiring, and he soon returned to France. The whole affair was such a miserable failure that the Whigs could afford to treat it with contempt. They executed about a score of the prisoners, and took precautions against future attempts by partially disarming the Highlanders, and by building a few military forts and making roads in the Highlands (§§ 582-584).

§ 556. *The Septennial Act, May 1716.*—The chief result of the Fifteen was the passing of the *Septennial Act*. The elections for the new Parliament would, according to the *Triennial Act* (§ 519), have fallen in the spring of 1718. The Government were of opinion that the nation was too excited, and Jacobite hopes still too strong, to make it safe for the Hanoverian succession that the election should take place so early. They therefore passed a Bill prolonging the possible legal existence of the present and all future Parliaments from a period of three to a period of seven years. Parliament thus set at nought the time conditions under which it had been brought together; but this was done in a perfectly legal way to meet exceptional dangers and it has not been regarded as a precedent. The chief importance of the Act was not its unusual character but its permanent effect in securing the stability of parliamentary institutions. At a time when Parliament was becoming less and less representative of the nation, when elections were conducted by open voting, not by ballot, and were spread over a long period, it was a distinct gain for the country to be spared the horrors of frequent General Elections. Parliament was henceforth legally entitled to a duration of seven years, and as a matter of fact, few parliaments in the eighteenth century lasted less than six years. This increased longevity of Parliament made it easier for the great landowners to control the House of Commons.

§ 557. **International Results of the Hanoverian Succession.**—The accession to the British thrones of the Elector of Hanover had important effects on British international policy. The new King was a German who knew no English, and who naturally took much more interest in the affairs of his native country than in those of his insular kingdoms. The framers of the *Act of Settlement* had tried in vain to prevent any evil consequences flowing from this preoccupation; and during the reigns of the first two Hanoverian Kings British politicians were continually jealous lest the island kingdoms should be sacrificed to the continental electorate. An illustration of this occurred at the very outset of the Personal Union. The King of Denmark sold the territories (not the cities) of Bremen and Verden, which he had conquered from Sweden, to the Elector of Hanover; Charles XII. of Sweden was naturally angry with the Elector, and attempted to strike at him not only in his electoral but also in his royal capacity. And on the other hand, George I. sent a British fleet into the Baltic in order to help the Grand Alliance against Charles XII.; and this led to loud outcries in England that the country was being embroiled in a Northern War which did not concern Great Britain, "all on account of Hanover." George I.'s lavish gifts to his German favourites gave colour to this complaint; but in point of fact Great Britain had large commercial interests in the Baltic which justified her intervention, quite apart from her dynastic connection with Hanover.

§ 558. **The Triple Alliance, 1717.**—The Swedish imbroglio was only part of a diplomatic tangle which cannot be fully understood without a considerable knowledge of European History. So far as Great Britain was concerned, the main facts were these: she was interested in maintaining the *Peace of Utrecht*, especially the recognition of the Protestant Succession; her ally, the United Provinces, was similarly interested; and so too—for family reasons which held good only because Louis XV. was still a minor without issue (§ 568)—was the Regent Orleans in France. On the other hand, Charles VI. and Philip V. were dissatisfied with the partition of the Spanish dominions; and the latter, under the influence of his Italian wife, Elizabeth Farnese, was determined to recover the Spanish possessions in Italy from the intrusive Hapsburg. Hence the Powers dissatisfied with Great Britain—Spain, under the minister Alberoni, and Sweden, under Charles XII. and his minister Görtz—began to combine in favour of a Jacobite restoration; and, on the other hand, the Powers interested in maintaining the *status quo*

began to draw together in defence of the Utrecht settlement. The result was that, early in 1717, France, Great Britain and the United Provinces—so lately at bitter enmity, open or concealed, with one another—entered into a *Triple Alliance*.

## II. THE FIRST WHIG SCHISM, 1717-1720.

§ 559. **The Whig Split on Foreign Policy.**—The *Triple Alliance* revealed the dormant divisions in the dominant Whig party. One section believed that a spirited foreign policy on the lines laid down during the last two reigns was the best guarantee of the Protestant Succession: not unnaturally, Stanhope, the victorious general, and Sunderland, the son-in-law of Marlborough, were the leaders in this group. The other section, headed by Townshend and his brother-in-law, Walpole, thought that the maintenance of peace and the development of commerce would do more than anything else to eradicate Jacobitism. Accordingly we find that towards the end of 1716 Stanhope had taken Townshend's place as Secretary of State for the Northern Department—i. e. the minister in charge of British relations with Northern Europe; and early in 1717 Townshend, Walpole and Pulteney were forced from office altogether because they would not support Stanhope's foreign policy. There was much shuffling of offices during the next three years, but on the whole the Stanhope-Sunderland group were "in" and the Townshend-Walpole group were "out." All this marked a step in the development of party-government. It was not enough that the ministers should belong to one party: they must also act harmoniously together, if their joint action was to be effective.

§ 560. **Stanhope's Foreign Policy, 1717-1720.**—The schemes which the *Triple Alliance* was meant to checkmate were mostly concerned with Northern and Central Europe; but the Italian ambitions of Elizabeth Farnese directed attention to the South. In 1717, Spanish forces occupied Sardinia and began to attack Sicily; but the possibility of further success here was ended by Sir George Byng's destruction of the Spanish fleet off Cape Passaro in August 1718. A few months later Spain lost her only ally by the death of Charles XII. at Frederickshall in Norway; and in 1719 a Spanish attempt to arouse a new Jacobite insurrection was defeated at Glenshiel, on the west coast of Scotland. Meanwhile the Emperor had joined the anti-Spanish coalition, which thus became a *Quadruple Alliance*. Spain, having failed all round in consequence of starting operations before she was ready and of the untiring



diplomacy of Great Britain, came to terms: in 1719, Alberoni was dismissed; and in the following year Philip V. acknowledged the Protestant Succession and the Utrecht partition of the Spanish dominions. The Duke of Savoy accepted the island of Sardinia, with the title of King, instead of the more distant island of Sicily, which had been assigned to him by the *Peace of Utrecht*, but which was now transferred to Austria (§§ 550, 570). About the same time British mediation effected a settlement among the Baltic Powers on favourable terms for Sweden; and thus for a moment Europe was at peace.

§ 561. **Stanhope's Home Policy, 1717-1720.**—Stanhope's foreign policy, on the whole, had been creditable and successful: the home policy of his Administration was less successful, partly through the opposition of the ejected Whigs. In ecclesiastical affairs they tried to put a stop to the violent controversies, largely anti-Hanoverian, of the Anglican clergy by discontinuing the meeting of Convocation, which did not again meet for business till 1858; and their *Protestant Interests Act* of 1719 gratified their supporters among the Protestant Nonconformists by repealing the *Occasional Conformity Act* and the *Schism Act* of Anne's closing years. Their experiments in politics and finance proved abortive. In 1719 Sunderland introduced a *Peerage Bill* designed to prevent the expansion of the English and British peerages by more than six beyond their present number (178) and to substitute for the sixteen elective Scots peers in the House of Lords twenty-five hereditary ones. The Bill was intended to make impossible a repetition of the tactics whereby Queen Anne had secured a majority in the House of Lords for the *Peace of Utrecht*; but it was also meant to supplement the *Septennial Act* by making the Upper House a close and compact body exposed as little as possible to outside influences. The Bill, had it become law, might have effected permanent changes in the balance of the Constitution; but it was rejected by the House of Commons. Here, as in the failure of the contemporary proposals to modify the *Test Act* of 1673 in favour of the Dissenters, the effective leader of the triumphant majority was Robert Walpole, whom the Ministry therefore deemed it prudent to conciliate by readmission to their ranks in 1720.

§ 562. **The South Sea Bubble, 1720.**—In 1719 the Stanhope-Sunderland Administration made a financial experiment which proved disastrous to itself, both individually and collectively, and which occasioned widespread distress. They sold the National

Debt, now standing at some £35,000,000, to the South Sea Company—which had been founded by Harley in 1711 and later endowed with the trading facilities wrested from Spain at Utrecht—in return for increased commercial privileges. The Government was to obtain a large premium and to effect a great saving in annual interest; the Company was to increase its capital and business; and its fortunate shareholders were to become rich beyond the dreams of avarice. This huge speculation led to many others; and the result was a financial crisis which Walpole was called upon to bring to an end. Practically his settlement amounted to this: those who had been reduced to penury through their trust in the South Sea Company, as supported by Government, were compensated at the expense of the Directors; the Government sacrificed most of its financial gains; and the Company was restricted to its proper work as a trading concern—in the course of which it was destined to involve the country in further trouble (§ 574).

### III. BEGINNING OF WALPOLE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1721-1727.

§ 563. **Walpole's Ministerial Policy.**—The First Whig Schism ended with the death or disgrace of the Stanhope-Sunderland group, in consequence of their connection with the South Sea Bubble, and with the restoration to power of the peace section of the Whigs. Walpole, being a financier, was made First Lord of the Treasury and Chancellor of the Exchequer; Lords Townshend and Carteret were Secretaries of State; and it gradually became clear that Walpole was going to retain the pre-eminence which his financial work in 1720 had given him. George I., who was a good man of business, and a keen judge of character, had been loth to lose him in 1717, and now welcomed him back to office, giving him an increasing measure of well-deserved confidence. Yet Walpole did not throw himself heartily, as Stanhope had done, into George's continental schemes, but rather devoted himself to the peaceful development of Great Britain.

§ 564. **Atterbury's Jacobite Plot, 1722.**—The Jacobites had been encouraged by the South Sea Crisis, and by the birth of a son to "James III." in 1720, to form a plot on an extensive scale; but the only result was that the most capable of their leaders in England, Francis Atterbury, Bishop of Rochester, was deprived of his see and banished by special Act of Parliament (1722). Bolingbroke, on the other hand—who had not remained long in the service of the exiled Stuart—was allowed to return to England, and took an active

part in opposing the Ministry. About the same time, another disappointed politician, Jonathan Swift, Dean of St. Patrick's, Dublin, made such an outcry against one of the lesser grievances under which Ireland was suffering that it was redressed by the Government.

§ 565. **Wood's Half-Pence and Ireland, 1719-1727.**—A patent had been granted to William Wood of Wolverhampton to issue a copper coinage for Ireland; and as he had had to pay the Duchess of Kendal, one of the King's mistresses, a heavy bribe to secure the monopoly, he recouped himself by supplying a coinage in excessive quantity. Swift, under the guise of a Dublin clothier, wrote a series of *Drapier's Letters* in which he denounced the existing misgovernment of Ireland. Carteret was relieved of his Secretaryship, which was given to the Duke of Newcastle, and sent over to Ireland to restore quiet; but no redress was given except in the withdrawal of "Wood's Half-pence." In other respects, the condition of Ireland was made worse about this time. In 1719, the British Parliament passed a *Declaratory Act* formally asserting its right to make laws for that kingdom over the head of the Irish Parliament; and eight years later the Penal Code was completed by an Act of the Irish Parliament excluding Roman Catholics from the parliamentary franchise in Ireland.

§ 566. **The Rival Alliances of Vienna and Hanover, 1724-1727.**—In 1722, Charles VI. granted a Charter to an Ostend East India Company to compete with the British, Dutch, and French companies in the Oriental trade; and in 1725 he entered into an alliance with Spain whereby the Emperor promised help in recovering Gibraltar in return for trade concessions and for Spanish recognition of his *Pragmatic Sanction*. This arrangement, negotiated by Elizabeth's new minister, Ripperda, and known as the *First Treaty of Vienna*, was met by a *Treaty of Hanover*, whereby Great Britain, France, and Prussia made a counter coalition in defence of the Utrecht settlement. In 1727, Spain laid vain siege to Gibraltar and Hozier was sent on an equally futile expedition against Porto-Bello, the chief Spanish town on the isthmus of Panama. Meanwhile, Walpole and Fleury, the new French minister, were doing their utmost to prevent this diplomatic war leading to open hostilities on a large scale; and before the sudden death of George I. in June 1727 the Vienna Alliance had broken up and its original members had agreed to accept the terms of the *Treaty of Hanover*.

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

### GEORGE II. AND WALPOLE, 1727-1742.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Son of George Lewis, Elector of Hanover (George I. of Great Britain); born at Hanover, October 30, 1683; married Caroline Wilhelmina of Anspach (*d.* November, 1737), 1705; created Duke of Cambridge, 1706; created Prince of Wales, 1714; succeeded his father as Elector-King, June 11, 1727; died at Kensington Palace, October 25, 1760; buried at Westminster Abbey. For family connections, see Table, p. 344.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	PRUSSIA.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	POLAND.	RUSSIA.
Benedict XIII. (1724)	Charles VI. (1711-1740)	Frederick William I (1713)	Louis XV. (1715-1774)	Philip V. (1700)	August II. (1697-1704, 1709-1733)	Peter II. (1727)
Clement XII. (1730)	Maria Theresa, Qu. Hung. & Bohemia (1740-1780)	Frederick II. <i>the Great</i> (1740-1786)			August III. (1733-1763)	Anna (1730)
Benedict XIV. (1740)	Charles VII. <i>Wittels- bach</i> (1742-5)			Ferdinand VI. (1746)		Ivan VI. (1740)
Clement XIII. (1758-1769)	Francis I. (1745-1765)			Charles III. (1759- 1788)		Elizabeth (1741- 1762)

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

**(i) International: relations with—**

- (1) France: §§ 568, 570, 575, 576.
- (2) Spain: §§ 563, 570, 574, 575, 577.
- (3) Austria: §§ 570, 575, 576, 577.
- (4) Prussia: § 576.

**(ii) Constitutional.**

- (1) Parliament: §§ 567, 571, 572, 574, 577.
- (2) Trade and Finance: §§ 567, 568, 569, 570, 574.
- (3) Colonies: §§ 570, 574.
- (4) Church: §§ 567, 573.

### I. WALPOLE AND QUEEN CAROLINE, 1727-1737.

§ 567. Walpole and Sir Spencer Compton, 1727.—The accession of George II. filled the growing number of Walpole's enemies with hopes of ministerial changes, but they were speedily disappointed. These hopes were based on the habit which the heirs

of the House of Guelf had contracted of quarrelling with their parents. George II., as Prince of Wales, had been barely on speaking terms with his father, and was therefore naturally ill-disposed toward his father's minister. But Sir Spencer Compton, the man whom George II. proposed to put in Walpole's position, had neither the personal capacity nor the parliamentary influence of Sir Robert; and George II., being well acquainted with the peculiarities of the British Constitution and being also influenced by his clever wife, Caroline of Anspach, speedily resolved to give his confidence to his father's friend. This confidence Walpole retained not only till his fall from office in 1742, but also till his death three years later. His first service to his new master was to persuade Parliament to augment the Civil List; and at the same time he increased his popularity with the Dissenters by beginning the practice of passing an *Indemnity Act*, whereby Dissenters were annually relieved from any penalties they might have incurred through holding municipal offices contrary to the terms of the *Test Act* and the *Corporation Act*. Such a method of gratifying friends without stirring the activity of enemies, was characteristic of Walpole's policy throughout: his favourite motto was, "Let sleeping dogs lie."

§ 568. **Second Treaty of Vienna, 1731.**—The death of George I. and other events about the same time caused hitches in the negotiations between the rival alliances of Vienna and Hanover; but in the long run the steady pressure on the side of peace exerted both by Walpole in Great Britain and by Cardinal Fleury in France brought about a settlement of existing quarrels by the *Treaty of Seville*, 1729, and the *Second Treaty of Vienna*, 1731. The main factor in these complicated diplomatic arrangements was the desire of the Emperor Charles VI. to secure the succession in his hereditary dominions to his elder daughter, Maria Theresa, as provided in a document known as the *Pragmatic Sanction*. He purchased the guarantee of Great Britain to this document by suppressing his Ostend Company, and that of Spain by ceding the Italian duchies of Parma and Piacenza to Don Carlos, eldest son of Elizabeth Farnese. Meanwhile there had occurred an event which had a more enduring importance in international politics than these territorial arrangements: the birth of a son to Louis XV. of France in 1729 had removed the cause of various family jealousies between the two branches of the House of Bourbon, and had prepared the way for the renewal of the natural family alliance which had been in abey-

ance since the death of Louis XIV. The gradual *rapprochement* between France and Spain ultimately proved fatal to the Anglo-French understanding, and to the peace policy which Walpole and Fleury based on that understanding.

§ 569. **The Excise Bill, 1733.**—Walpole's "passion for peace" was due to his desire to give the nation a chance to accumulate wealth by trade and to become reconciled to the Protestant Succession. He rearranged the customs duties so as to encourage both the import of raw materials and the export of manufactured products; and his biographer, Archdeacon Coxe, has declared that "he found our tariff the worst in the world and he left it the best." But his greatest effort in this direction proved to be premature. His *Excise Bill*, 1733, was intended to levy taxes on wine and tobacco by way of *excise*, collected shortly before the articles were distributed to consumers, rather than by way of *customs*, collected when the goods were imported. This change would have checked smuggling by making it less profitable, enriched the Exchequer, and cheapened the goods for the consumer; and Walpole also hoped that it might have helped "to make London a free port and the market of the world." Loud outcries against what was represented as an inquisitorial measure and an electioneering dodge compelled Walpole to abandon a measure which has since been generally recognized to be based on sound principles of finance. He "declined," to use his own words, "to raise taxes at the price of blood."

§ 570. **Georgia and the Polish Election, 1733.**—The year of the Excise Scheme was marked also by the foundation of Georgia and the outbreak of the War of the Polish Election. The colony of Georgia, established by James Oglethorpe as a refuge for debtors and religious exiles, was, in its early years, the scene both of the labours of the Wesleys and of frontier disputes with Spanish Florida. The War of the Polish Election, which broke out in the same year, was a conflict between the Bourbons and the Hapsburgs in which Great Britain took part only as a mediator. In the end, Austria placed her candidate, Augustus of Saxony, on the throne of Poland. The French candidate, Stanislaus Leczinski, Louis XV.'s father-in-law, was consoled with the duchies of Lorraine and Bar (to fall to France on his death); Francis, Duke of Lorraine (betrothed to Maria Theresa, and afterwards Emperor), was compensated with the duchy of Tuscany, where the Medici were dying out; and Don Carlos gained the kingdom of the two Sicilies in exchange for the duchies of Parma and Piacenza. Walpole won the ill-will of

Austria for not helping her, but consoled himself with the fact that no Englishman had fallen among the 50,000 killed in Europe. France and Spain, fearing British intervention, had made the *First Bourbon Family Compact* (1733). The results of the war were embodied in a *Third Treaty of Vienna*, which was slowly put together and accepted during the years 1735–1738.

## II. THE SECOND WHIG SCHISM, 1737–1742.

§ 571. **Death of Queen Caroline, 1737.**—Before the various disputes connected with the War of the Polish Election had been finally adjusted, Walpole had lost his firmest friend, Queen Caroline “the Illustrious,” who died towards the end of 1737. About the same time, her eldest son, Frederick Prince of Wales—who inherited the faults but not the capacity of his parents—definitely quarrelled with his father, and became the centre of the political opposition to Walpole. This opposition was growing in variety, in numbers, and in strength; but when the time of triumph came it was speedily found to lack both the coherence and the leaders necessary to enable it to take Walpole’s place (§ 578). It contained four principal groups. The first and most thorough-going section consisted of the Jacobites, headed by “honest” Shippen—who had a strong personal regard for Walpole’s probity and capacity, but could not endure his principles. Next to these, and hardly distinguishable from them, were the Hanoverian Tories led by Sir William Wyndham in Parliament and by Bolingbroke outside. The latter had been allowed to return from exile in 1723, but had not been permitted to take his seat in the House of Lords: his opposition, therefore, had to take a literary form—in various pamphlets, especially his *Idea of a Patriot King*, and in the political periodical called *The Craftsman*, which existed from 1727 to 1735, when Bolingbroke abandoned an apparently hopeless struggle and returned to France. But the two sections of the Tories, however brilliant in leadership, were less practically dangerous than the malcontent Whigs. Some of these, e.g. Carteret, Pulteney, and Chesterfield, were former members of the Administration, who had lost their offices because they would not work in harmony with Walpole: others, like John Stuart, Marquess of Bute, and William Pitt, were younger men who were angry with Walpole for not taking them at their own valuation as desirable colleagues. The latter Walpole good-humouredly called “The Boys”; and all of them, denouncing Walpole as a man who sacrificed the nation to party interests, called themselves

"Patriots," a high-sounding name which Bolingbroke had made fashionable.

§ 572. **Walpole's Position as Prime Minister.**—The principal accusations hurled against Walpole were that his methods were corrupt, that his political aims were altogether wrong, and that he was absolutely dominated by self-interest. To which charges the proper reply seems to be that his methods were not more corrupt than those of his predecessors and rivals, and that his policy was much more successful than that of his accusers and supplanters. The King's government could not be carried on unless the Ministers had the confidence not only of the King, but also of the House of Commons; and as that body was then constituted, the only effective way of securing its continuous support was to give its members pensions or places. As Walpole truly enough said, they required to be paid, "not for voting *against*, but for voting *with*, their consciences." Walpole's alleged "jealousy of rivals" sprang out of his perception that the members of an administration must not only be drawn from one party, but must also work together. They must all have the same "opinion" as expressed in action; and that opinion must, he considered, be *his* opinion. That is why he has been generally recognized as the first British "Prime Minister" in anything like the modern sense of that term.

§ 573. **Rise of Methodism, 1729-1739.**—Walpole was in fact a somewhat good specimen of an Englishman in an age of coarse and material "rationalism." Nevertheless, this Walpolean age of common-sense witnessed the rise of an "enthusiastic" movement in religion which has since continued to spread among English-speaking peoples. The originators of this movement were a group of Oxford men who about 1729 formed a small society whose members were bent on leading earnest and regular lives in the service of others: their regularity, or methodical habits, in religion won them the academical nickname of "Methodists." Of this society the chief were the brothers Wesley, John and Charles, and George Whitefield, who all began to work on a large scale in 1739, shortly after John Wesley's return from Georgia. They took orders in the Church of England and wished merely to supplement its work by preaching the Gospel to those who did not come under the influence of the parochial system. In the long run, however, they were driven, by the hostility of the beneficed clergy, and by the peculiarities of the law with regard to meeting-houses, to establish organizations apart from the established churches in the



British Isles, while differences among themselves on theological points caused them to form various distinct "connexions" which developed into separate churches. These fall into two main groups—"Wesleyan" and "Calvinistic" Methodists, of which the latter became strongest in Wales.

§ 574. **Trade Quarrels with Spain.**—Heartily supported by the King, and commanding a steady majority in the House of Commons, Walpole had no difficulty in keeping his place so long as none but professional politicians were ranged against him. Early in 1739, indeed, the Opposition formally seceded from the House, explaining that so long as "the arguments were all on one side and the votes on the other," their presence there was of no use. But before the year was out they returned to their places because they found that the Minister was becoming unpopular with the nation at large. He was not taking as decided a stand against what was called Spanish aggression as amateur politicians thought he ought to take. The trouble, like the South Sea Bubble, rose out of the commercial clauses of the Anglo-Spanish *Treaty of Utrecht*. The British merchants tried to evade the severe restrictions imposed by that treaty on commercial dealings with Spanish America; not unnaturally the Spanish Government insisted that its Customs' officers or *guarda costas* should see that the treaty was duly observed; and though the palmy days of the West Indian buccaneers had ended with Morgan's capture of Panama in 1671, there was doubtless much lawless trading on the one side that was barely distinguishable from piracy, and on the other much cruelty in the enforcement of the law. One story made a great impression on the public. A trader, named Jenkin, went about showing an ear which, he said, had been brutally torn off by a Spanish official. When asked what he had done on this occasion, Jenkin said, "I commended my soul to my God, and my cause to my country." Walpole thought that Captain Jenkin's country could best deal with the cause of Jenkin and his fellow-traders by negotiating with Spain; the merchants and the parliamentary Opposition clamoured for war; Walpole, after his fashion, yielded to the general will; and towards the end of 1739 war was declared on both sides.

§ 575. **The War of Jenkin's Ear, 1739-1748.**—The war thus begun lasted for nearly nine years and was almost wholly uneventful. For this there were two reasons. Firstly the "colony" war became swamped by a number of European wars which arose out of the death of the Emperor Charles VI. in 1740, and which are

generally called "The War of the Austrian Succession." Secondly, neither Spain nor Great Britain had paid much attention to the fighting services, especially on the naval side, during the generation which followed the *Peace of Utrecht*: they were consequently unable to prosecute the war with much vigour. So far as Great Britain is concerned, experts in naval history divide the blame for the unpreparedness pretty evenly between Walpole's ignorance of war and the growth of various traditions in the British Navy which hampered efficiency. In December 1739, Admiral Vernon took Porto-Bello, on the Isthmus of Panama, but two years later he failed to capture the neighbouring town of Carthagena. Meanwhile Commodore Anson had started on a four years' voyage round the world (1740-1744), in the course of which he plundered various Spanish vessels and towns in South America.

§ 576. **The War of the Austrian Succession, 1740-1743.**—The "War of the Austrian Succession" was a renewal of the old conflict between Bourbon and Hapsburg. Spain attacked Austria directly in Italy, France attacked her indirectly in Germany, under the guise of a subsidized ally to Charles Albert, the Elector of Bavaria, who was the principal claimant against Maria Theresa for the Hapsburg estates. Frederick II., who had just succeeded to the throne of Prussia, seized Silesia. Great Britain under Walpole's rule confined herself to supplying Maria Theresa with subsidies according to treaty, and with mediating between her and her Prussian enemy, a mediation which ended successfully for a time with the *Treaty of Breslau-Berlin* (1742). But the confusion in Europe was great. Saxony, Sardinia, Russia and Sweden all had a share in the diplomacy and fighting. Walpole in Great Britain and Fleury in France were both opposed by vigorous war-parties who objected to the half-hearted policy of their ministers. Fleury remained in office till his death in 1743. Walpole was driven from office in the previous year.

§ 577. **Fall of Walpole, February 1742.**—Walpole was loudly blamed, both for mismanagement of the maritime war against Spain and for not giving adequate assistance to Maria Theresa, daughter of Charles VI., against her many enemies. As in 1733, Walpole wanted to stop the war in order to lessen the chances of a Jacobite rising; but this time the task of peacemaker proved beyond his powers. The Opposition closed up their ranks and ceaselessly attacked him; and the new Parliament, which was elected in 1741, when the war-fever was at its height, was far less favourable to him than its predecessor. The change was partly due

to the fact that Walpole had offended Scottish national sentiment by inflicting a fine on the City of Edinburgh on account of the Porteous Riots of 1736. A number of close divisions before and after Christmas 1741 was followed by a Government defeat on a disputed election for Chippenham; and Walpole, realizing that it was useless to remain in office without parliamentary support, at length persuaded the King to permit him to resign. There were wild hopes that he would share the fate which had befallen another "tyrant minister," Strafford, exactly one hundred years before (§ 399); but the attempt to find evidence of criminal action on his part proved abortive, and he retired to the House of Lords with the title of Earl of Orford. That was for him not only a reward, but also a kind of banishment. When he there met his old rival Pulteney, who had been created Earl of Bath, he greeted him with these words: "Here we are, my lord, the two most insignificant fellows in England."

## CHAPTER XL.

### GEORGE II. AND THE PELHAMS, 1742-1754.

- A. PERSONAL HISTORY. }  
B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS. } See previous chapter.

#### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (i) International: <i>relations with</i> — | (ii) Constitutional.                                      |
| (1) France: §§ 579-582, 586-588.           | (1) King v. Ministers: §§ 578, 581, 585, 589.             |
| (2) Spain: §§ 580, 586, 588.               | (2) Ministers and Parliament: §§ 578, 581, 582, 585, 589. |
| (3) Austria: §§ 579-582, 586.              | (3) Jacobitism: §§ 580, 583, 584.                         |
| (4) Prussia: §§ 579, 585, 586.             | (4) Finance: § 589.                                       |
| (5) Russia: § 587.                         | (5) Colonies: §§ 579, 580, 586, 587.                      |
| (6) United Netherlands: §§ 581, 586.       |   |

#### I. CARTERET'S "DRUNKEN ADMINISTRATION," 1742-1744.

§ 578. **Walpole's Successors in Office, 1742.**—The circumstances of Walpole's fall illustrate several important differences between the constitutional practices of his day and of our own. His resignation had been only incidentally connected with the General Election of 1741, and it had not greatly affected the position of his colleagues. Now-a-days, the constitutional custom or convention is that a Ministry defeated in the House of Commons should either "dissolve Parliament" and "appeal to the country," or else resign *en masse*. Walpole, on the contrary, had resigned after his parliamentary defeat, not as a matter of course, but because he chose to do so; and his resignation did not involve the resignation of the entire Ministry. Most of his colleagues remained in office, except Harrington, who was succeeded as Secretary of State by John, Lord Carteret. Walpole was succeeded as Chancellor of the Exchequer by Sandys, and as First Lord of the Treasury by Lord Wilmington—the Sir Spencer Compton of 1727 (§ 567). Pulteney, whom Walpole had recommended to the King as his chief adviser, declined

to take any definite office, but accepted a peerage and a seat in the Cabinet. Bolingbroke returned from France only to find that the men who had been glad to make use of his services in opposing Walpole would have nothing to do with him as a candidate for office in the "Patriot" Ministry. In the absence of Pulteney and Bolingbroke, the chief place in the new Cabinet was left to Carteret, an erudite scholar and brilliant politician whose ideas were much more intelligible and acceptable to the King than to his colleagues. His erratic conduct—attributed by contemporary scandal to his convivial habits—won for his term of office the name of the "Drunken Administration."

**§ 579. Carteret's Foreign Policy.**—Carteret knew little and cared less for home or colonial affairs; the matter in which he was interested, and of which he had a unique knowledge, was European international relations. Here he pursued a "Hanoverian" policy, and was eager to do all he could to help the Queen of Hungary against her enemies. A British fleet under Matthews bombarded Naples and compelled King Charles to remain neutral; and British subsidies enabled the Queen to carry on war successfully against the Wittelsbach rival, who had been elected Emperor (Charles VII.) in January 1742, but whose position was aptly described as "*Et Caesar et nihil*." In 1743 Great Britain and Hanover intervened still more actively in German affairs; and Carteret was accused, especially by William Pitt, of having swallowed some potent drug which made him forget his own country and think of nothing but a "despicable German Electorate." George II. in person led southwards a "Pragmatic Army" of British and Hanoverian troops, and fought an indecisive battle against the French allies of Bavaria at Dettingen-on-Main (June 27).

**§ 580. The Second Family Compact, 1743.**—In the following September Carteret negotiated the *Treaty of Worms* whereby Sardinia agreed to help Maria Theresa against the Bourbons in return for a portion of the Milanese. In reply to this treaty, France and Spain entered into a *Second Family Compact*, October 1743, whereby they pledged themselves to deprive Austria of her remaining Italian possessions, and to wrest Gibraltar, Minorca, Georgia and the Assiento from Great Britain (cf. §§ 570, 609). The upshot of these diplomatic arrangements was that in March 1744 France declared war against both Great Britain and Austria: in other words, instead of being merely rival auxiliaries to Powers formally at war with one another, France and Great Britain openly renewed

their long-intermitted struggle. This time the fighting took place not only in Europe and in North America, but also in India. During the month before war was declared a British fleet under Norris had driven back a French Jacobite expedition, and another fleet under Matthews had repulsed a Franco-Spanish squadron off Hyères, near Toulon.

§ 581. *Fall of Carteret, November 1744.*—Meanwhile a ministerial struggle was going on within the British Cabinet between Carteret, now Earl Granville, and his colleagues. Granville's chief rivals were the two Pelhams, Thomas, Duke of Newcastle, who had been Secretary of State since 1724, and his younger brother Henry, who had also served under Walpole, and who had become First Lord of the Treasury on Wilmington's death in July 1743. The Pelhams were as willing as Granville to subsidize Austria against France, but they preferred the old familiar Whig diplomacy which centred at the Hague, to the new "Hanoverian" method which led into incomprehensible complications in Germany. They wanted to revive the "old system" of Anne's war-time. They were united among themselves, and controlled the votes in Parliament. When therefore, in November 1744, they asked the King to choose between themselves and Granville, George was reluctantly compelled to yield to the "Whig Oligarchy" and dismiss his favourite minister. His Secretaryship was given to Lord Harrington, an old adherent of Walpole; and places were found for Chesterfield, Grenville, Bedford and Grafton.

## II. THE PELHAMS' "BROAD-BOTTOM" ADMINISTRATION, 1744-1754.

§ 582. *Battle of Fontenoy, 1745.*—The Pelhams readily accepted the French invitation to shift the chief theatre of the continental war from Germany to the Southern Netherlands; but they were far from successful there. In May 1745, George II.'s capable younger son, William Augustus, Duke of Cumberland, nearly won a pitched battle at Fontenoy; but he was ultimately defeated by the skill of Marshal Saxe, the greatest general of the day, and by the immortal valour of the Irish Brigade (§ 514). Shortly afterwards the British troops were withdrawn from the Netherlands to meet danger nearer home. Walpole was hardly dead (March 1745), before the Jacobite insurrection which he had so clearly foreseen, and which he had done so much to render hopeless, came to pass.

§ 583. **The Forty-Five : (i) The Advance to Derby, 1745.**—In July 1745 Charles Edward, "the Young Pretender," landed on the West Coast of Scotland with "the Seven Men of Moidart"; and on August 19, he set up his standard in Glenfinnan. He came without the sanction of his father, and with no support from France—whose ministers had learned that the hopeful prospects on which the extensive expedition of the previous year had been based, were pure fabrications of Jacobite intriguers. Yet the daring, and the winsome bearing of the young Chevalier were potent to persuade several of the principal Highland chieftains to throw in their lot with him. Sir John Cope, the Hanoverian commander in Scotland, left the road to the south open; Prince Charles, moving rapidly south, successively occupied Perth and Edinburgh; and in the dawn of September 21, he surprised and defeated Cope at Prestonpans. Charles spent about five weeks keeping his Court in Edinburgh, and then resolved to make a dash for England. Marching through Carlisle, Preston and Lancaster, he reached Derby early in December. Only a small force encamped at Finchley barred the way to London; and George II. packed up his jewels ready for flight to his native land. But the Highland army was small in number; it had gathered few recruits on its journey south; and it was in danger of being crushed by the larger armies of Wade and Cumberland in its rear. Against his will, Charles yielded to the cautious counsels of his advisers and gave the word to retreat.

§ 584. **(ii) The Retreat to Culloden, 1746.**—Charles's retreat, like his advance, occupied just about four months. In its course he gained slight victories at Clifton near Penrith—the last battle fought on English soil—in December, and at Falkirk in the following January. The defeated generals, Cumberland and Hawley respectively, learned by experience how to deal with the Highland rush; and when they finally met Charles's dispirited and diminished forces on Culloden Moor near Inverness (April 6), they won a decisive victory. Charles passed through many hairbreadth escapes while wandering about the Highlands and Western Isles during the next five months; but at length the loyalty of the clansmen, and especially of Flora Macdonald, enabled him to return in safety to France. The British Government exacted ample vengeance for its twelvemonth of alarm and anxiety, and also took steps to provide against the recurrence of rebellion. Besides striking a blow at Scottish sentiment by abolishing the office of Secretary of State for

Scotland, which had been in existence since the Union of 1707, the Pelhams passed and enforced Acts disarming the Highlanders, forbidding the use of their national costume, and putting an end to the hereditary jurisdictions of the clan chieftains. The policy of anglicization was kept in force for a shorter time, and did less harm in Scotland than in Ireland. The worst result has been a partial depopulation of the Highlands; but this was less due to the Pelhams than to economic causes. A few years later, the elder Pitt found an outlet for Scottish military energy by forming Highland regiments which have ever since been among the most popular and efficient in the British Army.

§ 585. **The Two-Days' Ministry of Bath and Granville, February 1746.**—In February 1746, shortly after the retreat from Derby had made the danger of a Jacobite restoration less imminent, but while it was still possible that "James VIII." might continue to hold Scotland, there was a renewed struggle for mastery between the Pelhams and the King. George II., in pursuance of his natural Hanoverian policy, wished to give more active help to Austria, especially against the possibility of a third attack by Prussia: the Pelhams wanted rather to oppose France in the Netherlands, and also to introduce Pitt into the Ministry. By way of putting pressure on the King, the Pelhams resigned office; George accepted their resignation and invited Bath and Granville to form an Administration. After being in office, according to the wits, for precisely "forty-eight hours, seven minutes, eleven seconds," they abandoned their allotted task, partly because they could find few politicians willing to become colleagues, and partly because they had so small a following in either House of Parliament. Once again Granville had found his mistake in fancying that "a minister with the King on his side could do anything"; once again George found himself "held prisoner" by his masterful servants; and the Pelhams returned to office, bringing Pitt with them. After a short time Pitt was made Paymaster of the Forces, a minor office which was chiefly valuable for the patronage and perquisites attached to it. Though a poor man, he refused to enrich himself at the expense of his country and thus won a deserved reputation for incorruptibility, and consequently a widespread popularity which stood him in good stead in after years.

§ 586. **European Theatres of War, 1745-1748.**—Meanwhile the wars begun since 1739 were still dragging on, but they had completely changed their direction. The various wars arising



directly out of the question of the Austrian Succession had come to an end in 1745, when Frederick II. of Prussia brought to a close the Second Silesian War, and when Bavaria had abandoned all claims to the Hapsburg estates and recognized Maria Theresa's husband, Francis, Duke of Tuscany, as Emperor in succession to the dead Wittelsbach, Charles VII. France and Spain remained allies against Great Britain and Austria. The Austro-Spanish fighting took place in Italy and gave some employment to the British fleet in the Mediterranean. The Austro-French fighting took place in the Austrian Netherlands, which, despite British help in troops and subsidies, fell into French hands; and thus in 1747 the United Netherlands were at last drawn into the fray.

§ 587. **Maritime and Colonial Warfare, 1745-1748.**—Great Britain was chiefly interested in the struggle against France, and the main fighting took place outside the European mainland. In June 1745 a New England force under Pepperell, aided by a British fleet, took the strong fortress of Louisburg on Cape Breton Island, which not only protected the French colonies on the St. Lawrence, but harboured privateers engaged in raiding the ships and shores of British North America. In September 1746 the French under La Bourdonnais captured Madras, the British head-quarters in India. In June 1747 Anson and Warren almost destroyed a French fleet off Cape Finisterre; and in the following October Hawke defeated another French fleet off Ushant and occupied Belleisle. On the whole the French had the advantage by land, Great Britain by sea; and in 1747 the Sea Powers resolved to turn the scale on land by subsidizing Russia to send an army into Western Europe.

§ 588. **Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, 1748.**—This display of energy led directly to the negotiations which resulted in the inconclusive *Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle*, 1748, which confirmed the cessions of territory made by Austria to Prussia and Sardinia, restored the duchies of Parma and Piacenza to the Bourbons (in the person of Charles's younger brother, Philip), and arranged that France and Great Britain should abandon their various conquests in the Netherlands, North America, and India. By a supplementary *Treaty of Madrid*, 1750, Great Britain abandoned her trade-rights with Spanish America in return for a lump sum down. Nothing was said about the Spanish claim to the "right of search" on the high seas; and nothing definite was settled in the case of the outstanding Anglo-French disputes in East and West. The wars of 1739 to

1748, in both their European and their extra-European aspects, were merely preliminary to the far greater struggle fought out in the Seven Years' War of 1756 to 1763 (ch. xli.).

§ 589. *The Pelham Peace, 1748-1754.*—The six years following the *Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle*, were almost uneventful. In 1750 Pelham rearranged the National Debt, which now stood at £78,000,000, in such a way that, though the capital sum was slightly increased, the annual charges were lowered by the reduction of the rate of interest from four or five per cent. to three per cent., and by consolidating fourteen different loans into four loans—thereafter known as “Consols.” In 1751 the death of Frederick Prince of Wales weakened the Opposition and made it safe for the King and the Pelhams to agree in recalling Granville to the Ministry, in the dignified but unimportant office of Lord President of the Council. In the same year Chesterfield carried a useful *Calendar Act*, whereby the British method of reckoning time was assimilated to that in use among the Western States of the Continent. The Julian Calendar had made too liberal an allowance of leap years; and the error, though slight in itself, had caused the time, as reckoned by it, to fall eleven days behind the true solar time. The error had been rectified by Pope Gregory XIII. in 1582 by temporary adjustments and providing that for the future the last year of a century should not be accounted leap year unless it was divisible by 400. By Chesterfield's Act the Gregorian Calendar—hitherto contemned in England on account of its Popish origin—was adopted; the error of eleven days was got rid of by counting as September 14, 1752 the day which under the “Old Style” would have been September 3; and the year, from 1753 onwards, was legally appointed to begin on January 1 instead of March 25 as hitherto. In 1753 the Lord Chancellor, Hardwicke, passed a *Marriage Act* aimed at the suppression in England of clandestine and irregular marriages by providing that no marriage, except in the case of Jews or Quakers, should be recognized as legal unless performed, after due notice or under special license, by a duly qualified Anglican priest. In March 1754 Henry Pelham died, and was succeeded as First Lord and Prime Minister by his less capable brother, the Duke of Newcastle. It will be convenient to leave to the following book, the manifold reasons which George II. had for his very true forecast: “Now I shall have no more peace.”



## BOOK X.

### *THE MAKING AND REMAKING OF EMPIRE, 1754-1793.*

#### INTRODUCTION.

§ 590. **Retrospect, 1688-1754.**—The half-century following the Protestant Revolution of 1688 was occupied with maintaining the principal result of that Revolution—namely the establishment of a Protestant Succession in the three British kingdoms. This task had involved the legislative union of the Protestant kingdoms of England and Scotland, the subjection of the dependent kingdom of Ireland to the English Protestant Ascendancy, the fighting of three great wars against France and Spain, the development of a curious system of party-government, and a political toleration of non-episcopalian forms of Protestant church-government which was quite contrary to the traditions of the English State. During this period the course of political events had been largely controlled by constitutional considerations. But we now enter on a period when international and imperial considerations dominate the course of events, when British activity outside the British Isles for the first time rises to a position of acknowledged pre-eminence. George III.'s domestic struggles against the Whig Oligarchy, important though they be, sink into comparative insignificance beside the fight between Great Britain and France for North America and India and its direct consequence, the American Revolution.

§ 591. **The Seven Years' War, 1756-1763.**—When Henry Pelham died in 1754 Great Britain was nominally at peace. But in point of fact there were private wars going on in her distant dependencies in North America and India which, much to the annoyance of the Home Government, developed into open war and became entangled with various hostilities among the great Powers of Europe. The combined conflict has a much less definite label—it is always known from its duration as "The Seven Years' War"—than its immediate predecessor, the so-called "War of the Austrian Succession"; but it was itself much more definite in object and much more decisive in its results. The difference was largely due to the fact that in the latter struggle there were two strong men working together who knew what they wanted and how to get it—

Frederick II. of Prussia, and Pitt, "the Great Commoner." Most of the wars of 1739-1748 had centred in Austria, though there were minor wars going on at the time among the Baltic States and between Great Britain and Spain. But the various contemporary wars which make up the Seven Years' War had two equally important centres of interest, one exclusively European, one mainly maritime and colonial. Almost simultaneously, Great Britain and Prussia became aware that they were being made the objects of hostile schemes by neighbouring Powers—France in the former case, Austria and Russia in the latter case; and in self-defence they sought one another's alliance. Their respective rivals followed their example; but, as they had still less in common than Prussia and Great Britain, their co-operation was never very effective. From a British point of view, the main result of all these complications was this: France chose to throw her whole strength into supporting Austria against Prussia (a quarrel in which she had little direct interest), and so weakened herself for her own struggle against Great Britain; and the consequence was that France lost the remainder of her possessions in North America and was reduced to political impotence in India.

§ 592. **George III.'s Constitutional Experiments, 1760-1770.**—In the middle of the Seven Years' War, George II. died and was succeeded by his grandson, George III. The new King gratified his subjects by saying that "he gloried in the name of Briton"; but what he really gloried in was the name of King. He wanted to restore the Kingship to what he conceived to be its rightful place in the constitution; but being young, inexperienced, and more liberally endowed with will-power than with intellect, he acted with more energy than tact, and sometimes forgot that the Kingship is not an end in itself but a means to an end—the good government of its subjects. He spent the first ten years of his reign in trying to find a minister who would really subordinate himself to his master's will; and in the course of his search he contrived to sacrifice many of the gains made in the Seven Years' War, to arouse the hostility of many persons more deserving of respect than his most conspicuous opponents, Wilkes and "Junius," and to stoop to many political artifices which were no better than those which had been used by his rivals, the heads of the Whig Oligarchy of former days. From this domestic turmoil the King emerged triumphant, but not unsmirched in reputation, with the establishment of Lord North as his chief minister in 1770.

§ 593. **The American Revolution, 1765-1783.**—It was during North's long ministry (1770-1782) that various disputes between Great Britain and her dependencies reached a climax and began to tend towards settlement in favour of the dependencies. A series of attempts—reasonable in intention but unfortunate in method—to impose taxes on the American Colonists was met by protests on constitutional grounds, by riots and outrages of various kinds, and by armed resistance. The Colonists laid aside their mutual jealousies so far as to join together in declaring themselves independent in July 1776; in the following year they won at Saratoga such a conspicuous success that France deemed it safe to make open alliance with the rebels; and in 1781 the Allies won a decisive victory at Yorktown and thereby practically secured the independence of the Colonies. The American Revolution gave the Irish Parliament a chance of asserting its legislative independence of the Parliament of Great Britain; indirectly it involved Warren Hastings, the first British Governor-General in India, in difficulties from which nothing but his genius could have extricated the East India Company; and it brought about the fall of Lord North and the temporary overthrow of the political system which George III. seemed to have established so successfully.

§ 594. **Pitt's Years of Peace, 1783-1793.**—Great Britain was never in a worse plight than that in which she found herself towards the close of the American Revolution; and her consolation was the not very satisfactory one that her enemies, France, Spain, and the new "United States of America," were in a still worse plight. The Bourbon Powers, by helping the revolted Colonists, were able to do considerable damage to Great Britain; but they obtained little reward for their pains, and were besides brought nearer to national bankruptcy. Moreover, Great Britain had the good fortune to get the start in emerging from the abyss. That was due partly to the beginnings of the Industrial Revolution, and partly to the establishment of the younger Pitt as chief Minister (1783-1801). The Industrial Revolution increased the material resources of Great Britain; and Pitt used these resources, during the ten years of peace allowed him, to revive the power of the Executive, to restore national credit, and to carry into effect a number of useful reforms. The result of his labours was to prepare Great Britain for the unprecedented burdens of the Great War in which she was involved through the outbreak of the French Revolution in 1789 and the rise of Napoleon to imperial Power.

# The Seven Years' War.

DATE.	WEST.	OCEAN AND FRANCE.	EAST.
1754.	Gt. Meadows (July 2).	NEWCASTLE <i>vice</i> PELHAM.	RECALL OF DUPLEIX.
1755.	Braddock beaten (July).	Boscawen in W. Atlantic.	Peace between the Br. and the Fr. Companies (Jan.).
1756, Jan.	Br. Colonists take Beau-séjour and Gaspereau.	.. ..	.. ..
Apr.	.. ..	Fr. exped. to Minorca.	.. ..
May	Anglo-Fr. War decl. (17).	Byng to Minorca.	.. ..
June	.. ..	Fr. take Minorca (28).	"BLACK HOLE" of Calcutta (20).
Aug.	Montcalm takes Oswego	.. ..	.. ..
Oct.	(14).	.. ..	.. ..
Nov.	.. ..	PITT-DEVONSHIRE <i>vice</i>	.. ..
1757, Jan.	.. ..	NEWCASTLE.	Clive retakes Calcutta (2).
Apr.	NEWCASTLE <i>vice</i> PITT.	Br. exped. to Rochefort	Br. take Chandarnagar.
May	.. ..	fails.	Plassey (23). Br. v. Beng.
June	.. ..	PITT-NEWCASTLE MINY.	.. ..
July	Br. exped. to Quebec fails.	.. ..	.. ..
Aug.	Fr. take Ft. Wm. Henry.	.. ..	.. ..
Sept.	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
Nov.	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
Dec.	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
1758, Apr.	.. ..	.. ..	Lally to Pondicherry.
May	.. ..	Br. take Fort S. Louis	Lally takes Ft. S. David.
June	take Louisburg (26).	(Senegal).	.. ..
July	Br. attack Ticonderoga (8).	Br. destroy Cherbourg	.. ..
Aug.	Br. take Frontenac (27).	and attack S. Malo.	.. ..
Oct.	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
Nov.	Br. take Ft. Duquesne (25).	.. ..	.. ..
Dec.	.. ..	Br. take Goree.	.. ..
1759, Feb.	.. ..	.. ..	Fr. raise siege of Madras.
Apr.	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
May	Br. take Guadeloupe (1).	.. ..	.. ..
June	Br. exped. to Quebec starts	.. ..	.. ..
July	FERDINAND VI.	Br. bombard Havre.	.. ..
Aug.	CHARLES III., <i>Sp.</i> , succ.	Lagos (18). Br.	.. ..
Sept.	Heights of Abraham (13).	.. ..	Br. fleet defeated off Trinkamali.
Nov.	Br. take Quebec (18).	Quiberon (20). Br.	Wandiwash (22). Br.
1760, Jan.	.. ..	Thurot def. off Man (28).	.. ..
Feb.	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
Sept.	Br. take Montreal (8).	.. ..	.. ..
Oct.	GEORGE III. succ. GEORGE	.. ..	.. ..
Nov.	II. (25).	.. ..	.. ..
1761, Jan.	.. ..	.. ..	Br. take Pondicherry
Feb.	.. ..	.. ..	Br. take Mahé (10).
July	Br. take Dominica.	Br. take Belleisle.	.. ..
Aug.	"THIRD" BOURBON FAMILY COMPACT (15).	.. ..	.. ..
Oct.	.. ..	BUTE <i>vice</i> PITT.	.. ..
1762, Jan.	BRITAIN v. SPAIN (4).	SPAIN v. PORTUGAL.	.. ..
Feb.	Br. take Martinique (6).	.. ..	.. ..
May	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
July	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
Aug.	Br. take Havana (12).	.. ..	.. ..
Oct.	.. ..	Br. take Manila (6).	.. ..
Nov.	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
1763, Feb.	.. ..	PRELIMINARIES FONTAINEBLEAU.	.. ..
	.. ..	PEACE OF PARIS (10) [Fr., Sp., G. B., Port.].	.. ..

## CHAPTER XLI.

### THE SEVEN YEARS' WAR, 1756-1763.

- A. PERSONAL HISTORY OF GEORGE II. } See Chapter xxxix.  
B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS. }

#### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (i) <b>International: relations with—</b>            | (ii) <b>Constitutional:</b>                              |
| (1) Austria: §§ 603, 604, 609, 612.                  | (a) <i>Home Affairs—</i>                                 |
| (2) Russia: §§ 603, 610.                             | (1) Ministers: §§ 602, 605, 610.                         |
| (3) Prussia: §§ 603, 604, 606, 610, 612.             | (2) Monarchs: §§ 603, 610.                               |
| (4) France: §§ 595-601, 603, 604, 606-609, 611, 612. | (b) <i>Colonial Affairs—</i>                             |
| (5) Spain: §§ 609, 611, 612.                         | (3) North America: §§ 600, 601, 602, 606, 607, 611, 612. |
|  | (4) India: §§ 596-599, 603, 612.                         |

#### I. THE CAUSES OF THE WAR, 1748-1756.

§ 595. **The General Circumstances of the War.**—In examining the conditions which led to the outbreak of the Seven Years' War, we have to survey an extremely wide field. It is not sufficient to know something of the leading political personalities of Europe and their dominant motives: we must also be acquainted with the geographical and historical conditions of the long submerged rivalries existing between some of these Powers with regard to their possessions and territorial influence outside Europe. It will be convenient to review the past relations between France and Great Britain in India and in North America before passing to consider the international situation in Europe and the constitutional position in Great Britain at the commencement of the Seven Years' War.

§ 596. **European Merchants in India, 1600-1708.**—During the seventeenth century, Portuguese, English, Dutch, and French merchant-companies obtained a foothold in India for purposes of trade. Their objects were purely commercial, and their relations with the native princes were those of tolerated intruders. There had always been considerable competition between the different



national companies, and the English company had often been exposed to competition by its own countrymen. But in 1708 the rival English traders were amalgamated into the united East India Company which for the next hundred and fifty years played an ever-increasing part in Indian affairs. At that time the Company possessed small territories at Madras (1639) and Bombay (1662-8), and had factories or trading stations at Calcutta and various other places. The French Company, which was much more dependent on the State than its British rival, had corresponding stations at Mahé on the Malabar coast, at Pondicherry on the Coromandel coast, and at Chandernagore on the Hugli. About the same time (in 1707) died Aurangzeb, the last of the great Mogul Emperors who for nearly two centuries had been the chief political power in India; and the outlying provinces of the Empire became practically independent—sometimes under Muhammadan Nawábs or Nabobs and sometimes under Hindu rājás, like the Maráthá princes.

§ 597. **First Anglo-French War in Coromandel, 1744-1748.**—During the "War of the Austrian Succession," Dupleix, the Governor of Pondicherry, resolved to make use of the native princes to expel the British merchants and establish the French Company as a political Power. The conditions of the Peninsula were more favourable for such a purpose than those obtaining further north. On the West coast the Maráthás, and near the Ganges delta the Nawáb of Bengal proved powerful obstacles to European ambition; but the smaller states in the Deccan, fragments of the decayed Mogul Empire, offered a tempting opportunity. In 1746 Dupleix, aided by a French Fleet under La Bourdonnais, captured Madras; and when the Nizám of the Deccan, the prince in whose territories Madras lay, claimed his share of the booty, he was defeated in a pitched battle at St. Thomé. This battle not only gave Dupleix a great reputation, but also first revealed to the world at large the superiority of European troops and native troops (sepoys) drilled by Europeans over the usual native levies. The restoration of Madras to Great Britain at the *Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle*, 1748, deprived Dupleix of the most tangible fruit of his labours but not of his prestige.

§ 598. **Second Anglo-French War in Coromandel, 1748-1754.**—Dupleix used his influence to settle disputed successions to the thrones of the Deccan (capital Haidarábád) and of the Carnatic (capital Arcot) in favour of candidates acceptable to the French. It was clear to Saunders, the able Governor of Madras, that, if French

influence became supreme in South India, the position of the British as traders would become untenable ; and he therefore determined to help one of the defeated candidates who was holding out in Trichinopoly. Not being strong enough to relieve the beleaguered town, he made a diversion ; and with this object Robert Clive, a young employé of the Company, surprised and held Arcot in 1751. Clive's brilliant feat turned the tide ; and, after some years' desultory fighting, the Home Governments interfered and forced the Companies to make peace and to promise not to take part in native quarrels. Dupleix was recalled in 1754, and the peace was formally signed in 1755.

§ 599. **The Black Hole and Plassey, 1756-1757.**—About the same time Clive, who had returned to England, was sent back to India, and he found the Company's affairs in a critical posture. Siráj-ud-daulá, the new Nawáb of Bengal, had picked a quarrel with the British merchants in his dominions, captured Calcutta, and imprisoned his one hundred and forty-six captives in a small room, where one hundred and twenty-three died of heat in a single night (June 20, 1756). The Madras Government dispatched Clive northwards to avenge this "Black Hole" tragedy ; and the result was that the Nawáb was defeated in a battle at Plassey (June 23, 1757). This victory practically placed the rich province of Bengal at the disposal of the Company ; but it was as yet disinclined to take up what a modern Anglo-Indian poet has called "the white man's burden." The Company contented itself with setting up a Nawáb of its own choice ; and Clive took care that both the Company and its officials, including himself, should obtain ample rewards for their trouble. The importance of the battle of Plassey lies chiefly in the facts that it freed the Company from its embarrassments in Bengal before the French were in a position to renew their struggle in the South, and that it increased the resources of the Company for that struggle.

§ 600. **European Colonies in North America, 1600-1750.**—During the early part of the seventeenth century, English colonies had been established in New England (Massachusetts, Connecticut and Rhode Island), and further south in Virginia and Maryland ; Dutch colonies in the Hudson Valley ; and French colonies in the St. Lawrence Valley (Canada and Acadie). During Charles II.'s reign, the Carolinas had been founded to compensate Cavaliers, and the Dutch possessions in the intermediate region between New England and Virginia had been captured by England and formed

into the colonies of New York, New Jersey and Pennsylvania (including Delaware). Somewhat later, towards the close of the seventeenth century, French explorers had pushed up the St. Lawrence, and, travelling overland by various routes, had discovered the Mississippi, and established at its mouth a colony named Louisiana in honour of Louis XIV. Later still, the British had acquired the major part of Nova Scotia in the north at the expense of France (1713), and Georgia in the south at the expense of Spain (1733); but these extensions had all been along the coast. The hinterlands were claimed by France; and about 1750, the French authorities in Canada undertook the effective occupation of their claims by erecting forts along the Ohio Valley. This deliberate attempt to hedge in the British Colonies between the Alleghanies and the sea (probably with a view to their ultimate conquest) alarmed some of the English Colonists and their English Governors; and the result was a kind of private war for some years, analogous to the contemporary war between the British and the French Companies in India.

§ 601.—**Anglo-French Struggle for the Ohio Hinterlands, 1752-1755.**—In 1752, Duquesne, the New French Governor of Canada, built a fort called by his name at a commanding point on the River Ohio (where Pittsburg now stands); in 1753 a young Virginian, George Washington, paid him a visit and pointed out courteously that he was trespassing; in 1754 he made an unsuccessful attempt to seize the fort; and in 1755 Braddock, a general specially sent out by the British Government, was defeated and slain in making a similar attempt. In the same year Boscawen, the admiral in command of the British Channel Fleet, was instructed to intercept French reinforcements for Canada. Failing in that, he seized French merchantmen by way of retaliation for the occupation of Fort Duquesne. Thus at the very moment when disputes between the British and the French in India were being lulled to sleep, their quarrels were growing in intensity in America and were being brought nearer home.

§ 602. **Newcastle and his Colleagues, 1754-1755.**—The British Government for the time being was not particularly competent for handling such questions. Newcastle, the head of the Government, had been for many years the Secretary of State in charge of the Colonies; but he had not even learnt that "Cape Breton was an island." He had had considerable difficulties in finding colleagues, for he wanted men able enough to do the work

adequately and not so able as to cast him into the shade. In particular, he had been troubled to find a man fit to be leader of the House of Commons. Sir Thomas Robinson, his first choice, had been so much ridiculed as a "jackboot" by his more brilliant colleagues, Henry Fox and William Pitt, that he was forced to resign. In November 1755 Fox accepted his office and so incurred the lifelong hostility of Pitt.

§ 603. *Treaties of Westminster and Versailles, 1756.*—The most fertile cause of dissension in ministerial circles was the question of means for defending Hanover against the French attack which appeared imminent. George II. wanted to renew the intimate alliance with Austria; but Austria did not respond cordially to his advances. In the course of 1755 various subsidy-treaties for the defence of Hanover were made with German princes and also with Russia; and in January 1756 a similar treaty was made with Prussia. The conclusion of the *Anglo-Prussian Convention of Westminster* caused the protracted negotiations for an alliance between Austria and France to attain sudden completeness in the "*First Treaty of Versailles*, May 1756. Maria Theresa and her chief minister, Kaunitz, were principally bent on wresting Silesia from Frederick the Great (§ 576); and in this treaty they practically persuaded Louis XV. to help them without giving him any advantage in return. In June 1756 the French attacked and captured Minorca, which the British fleet under John Byng failed to relieve, and in August Frederick II. invaded Saxony, and thus began the Third Silesian War.

## II. THE COURSE OF THE WAR, 1756-1763.

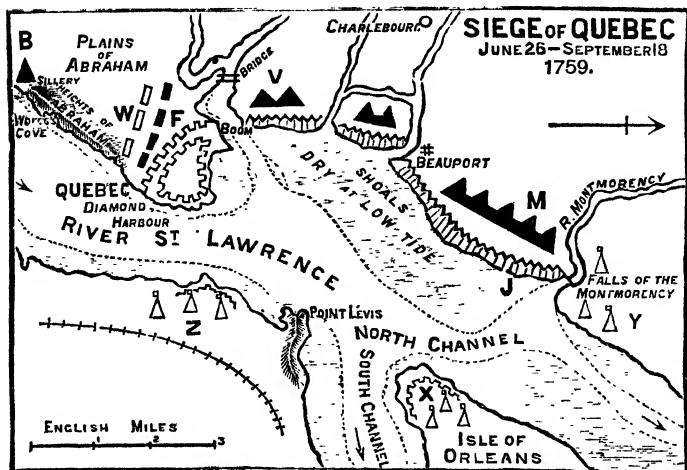
§ 604. *Main Theatres of the Seven Years' War, 1756-1763.*—The invasions of Minorca and Saxony marked respectively the recommencement of the old Anglo-French and Austro-Prussian duels; and those duels, connected by the treaties of Westminster and Versailles, form the essence of the Seven Years' War. That war, in its European aspects, consisted of attacks on Prussia by Austria and Russia, with the active help of France and the languid help of Saxony and Sweden; naturally therefore the chief theatres of war were in and around the dominions of Prussia. In its extra-European aspects, the war was a struggle between Great Britain and France (joined by Spain in 1762) for supremacy in North America and India; and as such it was fought out partly in those regions and partly on the connecting seas. The series of campaigns in

which Frederick the Great held his own against overwhelming odds concerned Great Britain only in so far as they helped to divert the attention of France from the struggle in America and Asia, until in those regions she had been hopelessly defeated.

§ 605. **The Rise of Pitt to Power, 1756-1767.**—Great Britain was ill prepared for war and at first fared badly. The loss of Minorca in 1756, followed by Montcalm's capture of Oswego, the British fortress on Lake Ontario, aroused violent attacks on the Ministry; and in November 1756 Newcastle resigned. He was succeeded by the Duke of Devonshire, with Pitt as Secretary of State. The new Ministry was popular, but it disappointed the unreasonable expectation that it could at once change the course of events. It organized a militia and built forts to protect England from invasion; but its chief offensive operation—an attack by Hawke and Mordaunt on Rochefort—was unsuccessful, and it failed to save Byng from being shot for his failure to relieve Minorca. In April 1757, the King, who had not yet forgiven Pitt for his youthful attacks on Hanover, dismissed the Ministry, and recalled Newcastle. But Newcastle needed something more than a numerical majority in the House of Commons to carry on the war; and in June 1757 he took Pitt into partnership. In this Pitt-Newcastle Administration the Whig Oligarchy—thanks to the genius of Pitt, who was in it but not of it—reached its highest pitch of power and performed its greatest services for the nation.

§ 606. **The Campaigns of 1757-1758.**—For some months the British run of ill-luck continued. In America, an expedition against Quebec proved abortive, and Fort William Henry was taken by the French; in Germany, Cumberland was defeated by the French at Hastenbach in July 1757, and compelled to promise to evacuate Hanover by the *Convention of Klosterseven* (September 1757). But the inspiring energy of Pitt soon began to make itself felt. Casting aside his old prejudices against intervention in Germany, Pitt repudiated the *Convention of Klosterseven*, secured from Parliament a subsidy of nearly three-quarters of a million for Frederick, and he secured from Frederick a competent general, Ferdinand of Brunswick, for the command of the Anglo-Hanoverian army which protected Hanover and Frederick's western frontier from French attack. But Pitt was more interested in the West than in Europe, and supported Prussia merely in order to "win America on the fields of Germany." There also in 1758 British operations were mainly, but not uniformly, successful. In July, Boscawen and

Amherst captured Louisburg; in August, Bradstreet captured Fort Frontenac (now Kingston); and in November Forbes took Fort Duquesne, which was renamed Fort Pitt (now Pittsburg) by the Colonials in honour of the man who understood their needs and was able to pick out the men who could help them.



British and Colonial troops, under Wolfe,  
8,000 =   ▲

X = Wolfe's First Camp and Batteries,  
June 26.

Y = Wolfe's Second Camp (evacuated after  
the failure of his attack at J, July 31).

Z = Wolfe's Third Camp and Batteries.

W = Wolfe's Position (with about 3,600  
men) at the

French and Canadian troops, under Mont-  
calm, 13,000 =   ▲

M = Montcalm's Head-quarters during  
July.

V = Vaudreuil's Head-quarters during  
July.

B = Bongainville's Detachment, after  
Samdars' ships had sailed past Quebec,  
July 18.

F = Montcalm's Position (with 4,000 men)  
at the

**Battle of the Heights of Abraham, September 13, 1759.**

§ 607. **Minden, Lagos, Quebec, Quiberon Bay, 1759.**—The following year, however, was the year of Pitt's greatest triumphs: "it was necessary," says Horace Walpole, "to ask every morning what new victory there was for fear of missing one." The series of victories began with the battle of Minden (August 1), whereby Ferdinand of Brunswick swept the French out of Hanover. A fortnight later Boscawen fell in with the French Toulon fleet off

Lagos in Portugal, and left very little of it to join the Channel squadrons in the projected scheme for the invasion of the British Isles. In November, Hawke treated the Brest fleet in much the same way in a fight off Quiberon. Meanwhile for three weary summer months a British force under Wolfe and Saunders had been hurling itself against Quebec; and then, when most men were beginning to despair, Wolfe hit upon the plan which led to success. On the night before September 13 he scaled the Heights of Abraham, and in the morning defeated Montcalm in a battle which made the surrender of Quebec inevitable. Neither commander lived to see this result, which was followed by the completion of the British conquest of Canada in the surrender of Montreal a year later.

§ 608. **Battle of Wandiwash, 1760.**—Meanwhile the Anglo-French struggle in India had for some time seemed to be going in favour of the French. A strong French force under Lally arrived in 1758 and promptly took Fort St. David. But Lally soon ruined his chances, partly by his ignorance of Indian politics, partly by making himself intolerable to his colleagues and subordinates. His naval colleague, the Count of Aché, sailed away to Mauritius; and when Lally laid siege to Madras, it was relieved by the British fleet (February 1759). Having the command of the sea, the British could readily draw supplies from Bengal; this was one of the reasons why Eyre Coote was able to defeat and capture Lally and Bussy in the decisive battle of Wandiwash, in January 1760. Just a year later Pondicherry fell into the hands of the British; and the hope of French ascendancy in India was at an end.

§ 609. **Charles III. and the Third Bourbon Family Compact, 1761.**—So far, the Allies of 1756 had been tolerably faithful to their treaty obligations; and the advantage had remained with Great Britain and Prussia. But France had got over her early infatuation for Austria, and was beginning to see that her activity in Germany had been entirely misdirected. The rise of Choiseul to power in France, 1758, and the accession of Charles III. in Spain, 1759, were prominent causes of the slackening of the Austro-French alliance. Charles III., the Don Carlos of former days, was an old enemy of Great Britain; and his accession to the Spanish throne was speedily followed by the renewal of the Bourbon alliance in the great *Family Compact* of August 1761 (cf. §§ 570, 580). Pitt got wind of this treaty and wished to forestall Spanish attacks on Great Britain by attacking Spain; but, being overruled in the Cabinet, he tendered his resignation, which was accepted in October (§ 614).

§ 610. **The Breach between Prussia and Great Britain, 1762.**—Pitt's resignation was a direct consequence of another change of monarchs. In October 1760 George II. had been succeeded by his grandson, George III., who was eager to bring the war to a close and to get rid of the Ministers who were conducting it. He had introduced his former tutor, the Marquess of Bute, into the Ministry; and Bute had been the King's spokesman in withstanding Pitt's proposals for making war against Spain. Bute's next step was to discontinue paying subsidies to Prussia; and Frederick was saved from ruin only because the Tzarina Elizabeth died in January 1762, and was succeeded, after an interval, by Katharine II., who did not share her predecessor's persistent enmity to Prussia. Thus Bute's sudden change of front did not destroy Prussia, but it eventually harmed Great Britain by offending her one ally in Europe—an ally who might have stood her in good stead in the hour of her sorest need (§§ 637-645).

§ 611. **Anglo-Spanish War, 1762-1763.**—Bute shook off the burden of the Prussian alliance, but he was not able to avoid the struggle with Spain against which he had previously protested. He was compelled to declare war in January 1762. The Spanish interposition came too late to turn the scale against Great Britain. In the course of 1762 all the remaining French islands in the West Indies were captured by British fleets, and the Spanish colony towns of Havana and Manilla shared their fate. The allied Bourbons were powerless in the face of the maritime supremacy of Great Britain.

§ 612. **Peace of Paris, February 1763.**—All the Powers concerned were weary of the war, and some had special reasons for bringing it to a close. In February 1763, the Austro-Prussian War was ended by the *Peace of Hubertsburg*, which restored the *status quo*, and the Anglo-Bourbon War was ended by the *Peace of Paris*, which consisted of voluntary restorations on the part of Great Britain and compulsory cessions on the part of France and Spain.

- (i) **FRENCH CESSIONS TO GREAT BRITAIN:** Canada, Cape Breton Island, Eastern Louisiana (*i.e.* all French territory east of the river Mississippi), Grenada, Senegal, and Minorca (restored).
- (ii) **SPANISH CESSIONS TO GREAT BRITAIN:** Florida and the right to cut mahogany in Honduras.
- (iii) **BRITISH RESTORATIONS TO FRANCE:** all territories in India (on condition that they were not to be fortified), Goree, Guadeloupe, and Belleisle (in exchange for Minorca).
- (iv) **BRITISH RESTORATIONS TO SPAIN:** Cuba and the Philippines.



## CHAPTER XLII.

### GEORGE III.'S CONSTITUTIONAL EXPERIMENTS, 1760-1770.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Eldest of the four sons of Frederick Louis, Prince of Wales (*d.* 1751) and Augusta of Saxe-Coburg, George was born at Norfolk House, London, May 24 (N.S., June 4), 1738; succeeded his grandfather, George II., as King of Great Britain and Elector of Hanover, October 25, 1760; married Charlotte Sophia of Mecklenburg-Strelitz (*d.* November 17, 1818), September 8, 1761; crowned at Westminster, September 22, 1761; had nine sons and six daughters; became insane in 1810; died at Windsor, January 29, 1820. For his more important family connections, see Table, p. 344.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS (to 1789).

PAPACY.	EMPIRE.	PRUSSIA.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	POLAND.	RUSSIA.
Clement XIII. (1758)	Francis I. (1745)	Frederick II. (1740)	Louis XV. (1715)	Charles III. (1759)	Augustus III. (1733-1763)	Elizabeth (1741)
Clement XIV. (1769)	Joseph II. (1765-1790)				Stanislaus Augustus (1764-1795)	Peter III. (1762)
Pius VI. (1775-1800)		Frederick William II (1786-1797)	Louis XVI. (1774-1792).	Charles IV. (1788-1808)	Partitions, (1772-1795)	Katharine II. (1762-1796)

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) France: §§ 616, 619, 621.
- (2) Spain: §§ 616, 619, 621.
- (3) Prussia: §§ 616, 619, 621.
- (4) Bengal: § 624.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) King and Ministers: §§ 613-616, 618-623.
- (2) Wilkes: §§ 616, 623.
- (3) India: §§ 621, 624.
- (4) America: §§ 617, 620, 621.

### I. BUTE, GRENVILLE AND WILKES, 1760-1765.

**§ 613. George III.'s Character and Policy.**—George III.'s accession effected great changes in both the international and the constitutional position of Great Britain. He differed from his two predecessors of the House of Guelf in being British in birth and education; and the consequence of this was that he paid more attention to his island realm than to his continental electorate (which

he never took the trouble to visit), and in being more interested in home affairs than in foreign affairs. His mother, the Princess of Wales, and her friend, the Marquess of Bute, impressed upon him that it was his duty to "be a King," and to carry out the programme sketched by Bolingbroke in his pamphlet, *The Patriot King*. In other words, he meant to choose his own ministers and to dictate his own policy; and, in order to do this, he must needs overthrow the Whig Oligarchy which had domineered over the first two Georges.

§ 614. **Fall of the Pitt-Newcastle Ministry, 1761-1762.**—His first step was to appoint his old tutor, Bute, Secretary of State, in order that he might represent the King's personal views in the Cabinet. The consequence was the speedy break-up of the Pitt-Newcastle Ministry. Pitt resigned in October 1761, because his colleagues refused to accept his decision that war against Spain was necessary: Newcastle resigned in May 1762, because he was no longer allowed to exercise the patronage of the Crown. Bute, who succeeded Newcastle as First Lord of the Treasury, was not well qualified by experience to act as head of the Government; and his Scottish origin and his intimacy with the Princess of Wales (upon which the worst construction was put) made him unpopular. With the help of Henry Fox, and with the prestige and the patronage of the Crown behind him, George III. set himself to build up a party of his own, to support his measures in Parliament. This party was drawn partly from the Whigs, some of whom favoured the Prerogative, but mainly from the Tories, who saw that Jacobitism was dead; it became known as "the King's Friends"; and it formed the nucleus of the new Tory party of the future.

§ 615. **Bute's Administration, 1762-1763.**—The principal events of Bute's short-lived Administration were the Spanish War, the desertion of Prussia, and the negotiation of the *Peace of Paris*. Bute, like Bolingbroke half a century before (1713), let off a beaten foe lightly in order to have leisure for carrying out changes at home; and like Bolingbroke, he was hotly attacked for making peace on terms less favourable than the circumstances warranted. Frightened by his unpopularity, Bute resigned in April 1763, and was succeeded by George Grenville.

§ 616. **Wilkes and the North Briton, 1763.**—Amongst Bute's most out-spoken critics was John Wilkes, a M.P. and a brilliant but disorderly man of fashion, whose paper, the *North Briton*, was, in both title and contents, a jibe at Bute's nationality. In No. 45 of this paper, issued in April 1763, the King's Speech

describing the Peace was criticized in such terms that Lord Halifax, Secretary of State, issued a general warrant for the arrest of its authors, printers, and publishers, on the charge of uttering a seditious libel. The charge may have been reasonable enough, but the methods adopted gave the opponents of the Government an opportunity of which they were not slow to take advantage. Wilkes, who was one of the persons arrested under the warrant, became a popular hero; the judges set him at liberty on the ground of his privilege as a member of Parliament; and this impartial decision carried more weight than the party vote of the House of Commons that privilege did not protect a member from the penalties due for libel. Wilkes was soon afterwards outlawed for printing indecent literature at his private press; but a few years later both he and others obtained damages for unlawful imprisonment under the general warrant. Altogether, the affair cost the Government over £100,000 in money, and did it an incalculable amount of harm in prestige. Wilkes and his supporters sedulously fostered the popular impression that the King and the Parliament were engaged in a conspiracy against the "Rights of the People."

§ 617. *George Grenville's Administration, 1763-1765.*—The Wilkes affair was the most notorious event during George Grenville's Administration; but his attempt to tax the American Colonies was the most important. That attempt will be discussed later (§ 631); but its connection with the general attitude of the Government may be shown here. The attack on Wilkes and the *Stamp Act* of 1765 were in themselves natural and defensible attempts to assert the authority of the Government; but they were performed in such a way that they called forth the bitter hostility of the unrepresented classes in England and America. George Grenville, like his master, was honest and well-meaning, but deficient in the higher qualities of statesmanship: in particular, he had a lawyer-like belief in the strength of legal rights, which stands in marked contrast to the attitude of Walpole and Chatham, the most successful statesmen of the eighteenth century. But while he was at one with George III. as to the proper relations between the governing and the governed classes, they fell out as to the proper relations that should subsist among the governors themselves. George III. thought that his Ministers should be what their name imports—servants to do his bidding: Grenville, a "Whig Royalist," thought that the Ministers should have a mind of their own—showing deference, but not subservience, to the King.

**§ 618. The Regency Bill, 1765.**—This difference of opinion became more marked after George III. had been compelled to obtain the support of the Whig group headed by the Duke of Bedford, known at the time as the "Bloomsbury Gang." Bedford himself became President of the Council in succession to Grenville, and a secretaryship was given to the Earl of Sandwich. This Grenville-Bedford Ministry fell in the summer of 1765, not because it was unpopular but because its dictatorial conduct offended the King. Early in 1765 George became insane for a time; and on his recovery it was thought well to make arrangements for a regency in case he should again fall ill. The ministers proposed to exclude the Princess of Wales from becoming Regent under the measure introduced into Parliament; and George, offended by the slight put upon his mother, began to look out for more tolerable ministers.

**§ 619. George in Search of a Ministry, 1765.**—George III. and Bute had some time since discovered their mistake in quarrelling with Pitt. The "Great Commoner" was not himself a member of any of the great Whig families—though he was allied by marriage to the Grenvilles—and had small sympathy with their endeavour to keep the government exclusively in their own hands. On the contrary, he believed that the government should be directed by the King in such a way as to secure the hearty support, and not merely the passive acquiescence, of the nation irrespective of party; and he showed so much deference to the King that "when he bowed to him his hooked nose could be seen between his crooked legs." Overtures had already been made to him on Bute's resignation, and now they were repeated when a successor was wanted to Grenville. On the former occasion he had declined office because he was not allowed to choose his own colleagues: on the present occasion the negotiations broke down partly because Pitt could not persuade Earl Temple to join him, and partly because his stipulations for a renewal of the Prussian alliance in opposition to the *Family Compact* were not agreeable to the King. The course of British history might have been very different had George III. and Pitt been able to come to terms at this juncture.

## II. ROCKINGHAM, GRAFTON, AND JUNIUS, 1765-1770.

**§ 620. Rockingham's Ministry, July 1765-July 1766.**—Unable to secure the aid of Pitt, George was compelled to fall back on the main body of the Whigs. Their leader, the Marquess of Rockingham, became First Lord of the Treasury, and Newcastle and

Grafton were amongst his colleagues. Rockingham himself is chiefly important because he introduced into politics Edmund Burke, a young Irishman who was destined to make his mark on British political thought. Rockingham's Ministry was chiefly important for endeavours to undo part of the work of its predecessors: it got the House of Commons to pass a resolution accepting the judge's opinion that general warrants were illegal, and it repealed Grenville's American *Stamp Act* as a matter of expediency. The King secretly opposed his own Ministers, and, after weakening them till they were barely able to carry on the government, he dismissed them and called in Pitt.

§ 621. **Chatham's Ministry, 1766-1768.**—Pitt was no longer the man he had been during his first Ministry: his health was giving way; and though he formed the Ministry and planned an ambitious policy, he was unable to exercise any effective control over the conduct of affairs. Instead of taking his old part as Secretary and leader of the House of Commons, he took the unimportant office of Lord Privy Seal, and retired to the House of Lords with the title of Earl of Chatham. He had large schemes for renewing war on the Bourbons in alliance with Prussia and for reforming the political administration of the East India Company in India. In his absence through ill-health, his colleagues supported and carried a fresh Bill for taxing America devised by the brilliant but shallow Chancellor of the Exchequer, Charles Townshend. Townshend died in September 1767, before the ill effects of this rash measure became manifest, and was succeeded by Lord North; and a year later Chatham formally withdrew from the Ministry and left the leadership to the First Lord of the Treasury, the Duke of Grafton.

§ 622. **Burke and Junius, 1768-1770.**—Grafton possessed the confidence neither of the King nor of the Commons, nor of the masses outside political circles. He and his colleagues were the subject of virulent attacks in the famous letters which the mysterious "Junius" contributed to a paper called the *Public Advertiser*; and they were also attacked in more decorous language by Burke, whose *Thoughts on the Causes of the Present Discontents* (1770) condemned with philosophic calm George III.'s theory and practice of government, especially his habit of following the advice of others than his responsible ministers.

§ 623. **Wilkes and the Middlesex Election, 1768-1769.**—The Ministry also became entangled in another contest with Wilkes, and again obtained a formal victory at the expense of a

practical failure. In 1768 Wilkes had come back to England, and was returned as member for Middlesex in the General Election of that year. He was thrice rejected by the House of Commons as disqualified for sitting under his recent sentences, and thrice elected by the Middlesex electors. On the third occasion (1769) he had an opponent, Colonel Luttrell, who was accepted by the House of Commons on the ground that votes cast in favour of his rival were invalid. The dispute created great excitement throughout the country; men who ordinarily took no part in politics formed societies, attended public meetings, and signed petitions in favour of Wilkes and the "Rights of the People"; and this agitation is generally considered to mark the birth of modern Radicalism. George stood by the Ministry in its fight against Wilkes, but he thwarted it in other respects; and in January 1770 Grafton resigned his position and made way for his principal colleague, Lord North. North was a man after George's own heart, and he was therefore able to retain office for twelve years (ch. xliii.).

§ 624. Clive's Second Governorship of Bengal, 1765-1767.—While these parliamentary squabbles were going on at home Clive had been doing great things in India. During his absence from Bengal (1760-1765) the British Governors had quarrelled with the new Nawáb, Mír Kásim; he had retaliated by massacring Europeans at Patna; and, after being defeated by Major Munro at Buxar (October 23, 1764), he had been deposed. The battle of Buxar had more important consequences than the better-known battle of Plassey. Clive now made up his mind that quarrels between British officials and native rulers in Bengal could be avoided only if the Company took a greater share of power and responsibility. Accordingly, the *Treaty of Allahábád*, August 1765, arranged that the Company was to act as Diwán, or Treasurer, on behalf of the Nawáb of Bengal: the Company was to collect the taxes (about £2,000,000 per annum), and keep about half the total amount for itself, handing over the balance to the Nawáb and his suzerain, the Great Mogul. As far as possible, native officials were employed in the actual work of collecting the taxes; and every attempt was made to disguise the installation of the Company as a territorial power. Clive also tried to check the rapacity of British officials by securing them larger salaries and by forbidding the receipt of gifts from natives. When he returned to England the House of Commons, after listening to attacks on his honesty, formally declared that Clive "had rendered meritorious services to his country."

# The American Revolution.

## GREAT BRITAIN AND AMERICA.

DATE.	NORTHERN COLONIES.	SOUTHERN COLONIES.	GREAT BRITAIN.
1754.	Fr. build Ft. Duquesne.	FRANKLIN'S ALBANY	NEWCASTLE <i>vice</i> PELHAM
1759.	Br. take Quebec.	[PLAN OF UNION.	Br. Sea Victories.
1760.	.. ..	.. ..	GEORGE III.
1761.	<i>Writs of Assistance Case.</i>	.. ..	BUTE <i>vice</i> PITT.
1763.	[Pontiac War.	P. OF PARIS (Feb. 10)	GRENVILLE <i>vice</i> BUTE.
1764.	Bushy Run ends the	.. ..	Stamp duties mooted.
1765.	STAMP ACT	CONGRESS.	Stamp Act. ROCKINGHAM
1766.	.. ..	.. ..	Stamp Act rpld. CHATHAM.
1767.	.. ..	.. ..	Townsend's Duties Act.
1768.	British troops to Boston.	.. ..	GRAFTON <i>vice</i> CHATHAM.
1769.	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
1770.	Boston Massacre (Mar. 5).	.. ..	NORTH <i>vice</i> GRAFTON
1771.	[June 10).	.. ..	[Jan.).
1772.	Burning of <i>The Caspée</i>	Comm. of Correspond-	.. ..
1773.	Boston Tea Party (Dec. 16).	ence.	.. ..
1774, June	FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.	.. ..	North's "Intolerable
Oct.		DECLARATION OF RIGHTS (11).	[Acts."
	Gage <i>vice</i> Hutchinson.	.. ..	General Election.
1775, Apr.	Lexington (19): A. [(10).	Howe <i>vice</i> Gage.	.. ..
May	Ticonderoga taken by A.	2nd Continental Congress.	.. ..
June	Bunker Hill (17): Br.	Washington appointed	.. ..
Dec.	Quebec (31): Br.	[C.-in-C. (15).	.. ..
1776, Mar.	Br. evac. Boston (17).	End of New England War-Section.	.. ..
June	.. ..	Ft. Moultrie (28): A.	.. ..
July		DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE (1).	.. ..
Aug.	Brooklyn Heights (27): Br.	[Philadelphia.	.. ..
Sept.	Br. take New York (15)	and advance towards	.. ..
Dec.	.. ..	Trenton (25): A.	.. ..
1777, Jan.	.. ..	Princeton (3): A. ?	.. ..
July	Br. occ. Ticonderoga (5).	.. ..	.. ..
Aug.	Oriskany (6), Bennington	(16): A. [(26)	.. ..
Sept.	Bemis Heights (19): A.	Br., occ. Philadelphia	[Section.
Oct.	SURR. OF SARATOGA (17).	Germantown (4): Br.	End of Central War-
1778, June	Monmouth (28): Br. defeated during retreat		Death of Chatham (May).
July	Ind. Raid on Wyoming	[from Philadelphia.	.. ..
Dec.	[Vall. (3).	Br. take Savannah (29).	.. ..
1779, July	Stony Point seized by A.	[retake Savannah (9).	.. ..
Oct.	.. ..	Fr.-Amer. force fails to	.. ..
Sept.	G. R. Clarke's Cam-	Paul Jones's Vict. off Flamborough (23).	.. ..
1780, May	paigns on Western	Br. take Charleston (12).	.. ..
Aug.	Frontier.	Camden (16): Br.	Gordon Riots, etc.
Sept.	Treason of Arnold.	.. ..	.. ..
Oct.	.. ..	King's Mountain (7): A.	.. ..
1781, Jan.	.. ..	Cowpens (17): A. [Br.	.. ..
Mar.	.. ..	Guildford Courthouse. (15):	.. ..
Apr.	.. ..	Hobkirk's H. (25): drawn.	.. ..
Sept.	.. ..	Entaw Springs (8): drawn	[War-Section.
Oct.	.. ..	SURRENDER OF YORK-	End of Southern
1782, Mar.	.. ..	.. [TOWN (19): A.	ROCKINGHAM <i>vice</i> NORTH.
July	.. ..	.. ..	SHELburne <i>vice</i> ROCK-
Nov.	<i>Preliminaries of Peace</i> (30) [Gr. Br.,	U.S.A.]. [INGHAM (d. 1.)	.. ..
1783, Apr.	.. ..	PORTLAND <i>vice</i> SHEL-	.. ..
Sept.	PEACE OF VERSAILLES (3) [Gr.	Br., U.S.A.]. [BURNES.	.. ..

## CHAPTER XLIII.

### THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION, 1765-1783.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY OF GEORGE III. } See Chapter xlii.**  
**B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS. }**

#### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

**(i) International: *relations with*—**

- (1) France: §§ 626, 637-639, 643-645.
- (2) Spain: §§ 626, 630, 637, 638, 644, 645.
- (3) Baltic Powers: §§ 626, 642.
- (4) United Netherlands: §§ 642, 645.
- (5) United States: §§ 635-638, 643, 645.

**(ii) Constitutional.**

- (1) Ministries: §§ 625, 631, 640, 645
- (2) Parliament: §§ 625, 627, 631, 632, 640, 641.
- (3) Ireland: §§ 637, 640.
- (4) India: §§ 628, 639, 644, 645.
- (5) American Colonies: §§ 627, 629-635.

#### I. LORD NORTH AND THE EAST, 1770-1773.

**§ 625. Lord North's Constitutional Position, 1770-1782.—**

During the first ten years of George III.'s reign seven different "administrations" may be distinguished, whereas Lord North's administration lasted twelve years. North was assuredly not a much abler man than his predecessors, nor was his task much lighter, nor did he perform his work with greater success—for the latter part of his Ministry was one of the gloomiest periods of British History. What then is the reason for the marked contrast between the first and the second decades of George III.'s reign? The answer is, that North had the King's support, and, having his support, had also his "influence," which enabled him to maintain his hold over the House of Commons. George had successfully pitted the different sections of the Whigs against one another till they had no strength left except for opposition, and had made his own party of King's Friends the strongest of the party-groups. North had the knack of managing the House of Commons, and he managed it with the prime object of getting the King's orders obeyed. For convenience' sake he is made to figure in the roll of British "prime ministers"; but his strength lay in the fact that he was not a "prime minister" in the same sense as Walpole or the Pitts.



**§ 626. Lord North's International Position, 1770-1772.**—On Grafton's resignation, George III. practically had to choose between North and Chatham. It is possible that had Chatham been selected, the breach with the American Colonies might have been postponed; but, on the other hand, it is probable that he would have plunged the country into international complications. There were various things happening in Europe which might have caused the renewal of war between Great Britain and the Bourbons. In 1766 France acquired Lorraine under the treaty of 1735; in 1768 she bought the right of conquering the island of Corsica from the Republic of Genoa; and in 1769 Spain expelled a British garrison from the Falkland Islands. There were many who wished Great Britain to withstand in arms these "encroachments" of the House of Bourbon. Further east, the death of Augustus III., King of Poland, in 1763 led to troubles not altogether dissimilar to those attending the death of his predecessor thirty years before, but ending in a quite different way—namely, in the First Partition of Poland in 1772 between Austria, Prussia and Russia. The exclusion of Chatham from office was one of the reasons why Great Britain abstained from trying to check the aggrandisement of France and the Eastern Powers; and France, though constantly preparing for vengeance against her successful maritime rival, followed the example of abstention set by Great Britain and refused to help Spain in the Falkland Islands. North was therefore able, in the early days of his ministry, to reinstate the British garrison.

**§ 627. King, Parliament and Press, 1770-1772.**—North began his ministry with a measure of conciliation which kept affairs in America quiet for a short time; and before the threatened storm burst there, some notable things took place nearer home. In 1770 Grenville carried an Act which transferred the decision of election petitions from the whole House of Commons (where they were treated as party questions pure and simple) to a committee of the House pledged to treat the cases judicially. In the following year the House of Commons plunged into another dispute with Wilkes, and was again practically beaten. The Commons desired to preserve their privilege of Secrecy of Debate from infringement by the publication of reports of their debates and proceedings; and with this object they imprisoned printers who had published reports. Wilkes and other magistrates of the City of London successfully fought for the Liberty of the Press in this respect, and so made it possible for the outside public to have more exact knowledge of

what went on in Parliament. While Parliament was thus compelled to become less mysterious and exclusive, the Kingship became more exclusive. In 1772 North passed a *Royal Marriage Act* which made it illegal for any descendant of George III. to contract a valid marriage before the age of twenty-five without the consent of the reigning monarch.

§ 628. *North's Regulating Act, 1773.*—More important was the Act which North passed in 1773 for the regulation of Indian affairs. Despite the territorial acquisitions and administrative reforms of Lord Clive, the East India Company had got into debt and had acquired an evil reputation through the rapacity of its officials. Stories of the devastation wrought by a great famine in Bengal, in 1770, reached the home country and made men's consciences uneasy; and the result was the passing of the *Regulating Act*, which appointed a Governor-General in Bengal having general powers of supervision over all other British officials in India but responsible to the Home Government. The Act itself was well meaning but weak: fortunately for Great Britain, however, Warren Hastings, the first Governor-General appointed thereby, was well meaning and strong.

## II. LORD NORTH AND THE WEST, 1773-1777.

§ 629. *English Colonies in North America, 1607-1733.*—The *Regulating Act* was accompanied by a measure, intended to benefit the finances of the East India Company, which directly led to the outburst of the American Revolution. In order to understand that movement, it is necessary to know something of the nature and diversity of the English colonies in America, and especially how, after a century and a half of "wise and salutary neglect," they became the objects of an unwelcome solicitude on the part of the Home Government. The older English colonies in North America—that is, all except the colonies acquired from France by the treaties of 1713 and 1763, fall naturally into three groups (Table, p. 316; Map, p. 368): (1) the New England colonies, Puritan in origin and sentiment, accustomed to a far greater degree of self-government in their town-meetings and colonial legislatures than was even dreamt of in the Mother Country; (2) the Middle Colonies of New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania and its enclave Delaware, consisting mainly of lands captured from the Netherlands and largely settled by Dutch and Germans; and (3) the Southern Colonies from Maryland to Georgia, mainly settled by planters who cultivated

tobacco, sugar-cane, and other sub-tropical crops with the help of slave labour, and as aristocratic in tone as the New Englanders were democratic. These colonies were not only diverse in origin, but also (as they still are) divergent in interests: they had been slow to act together against the French; and they were now still slower to act together against Great Britain.

§ 630. **The Colonies and the Mother Country, 1660-1763.**—These colonies stood in somewhat vague relations towards the Mother Country. They had, for the most part, owed their foundation to private enterprise: the Home Government had done little to help them, and had usually taken but little interest in their doings. They were scarcely regarded as integral parts of the State, but rather as outlying properties useful as a market for English manufactures, and as a source of supply of produce which could not be grown at home. Various Navigation Acts passed after the Restoration had limited the industries and commerce of the colonies in the supposed interests of the Mother Country; and the Colonists had shown outward respect for these Acts, while evading them in practice by carrying on a smuggling trade, especially with the neighbouring colonies of Spain.

§ 631. **The Question of Imperial Taxation, 1765-1773.**—Alarmed at the expense of the Seven Years' War, and realizing the reasonableness of getting the Colonies to contribute something towards the cost of their own defence, Grenville passed a *Stamp Act* in 1765, which required Americans to pay fees for the stamping of certain kinds of documents in order that they might be recognized as legally binding. The proceeds were to be used for the maintenance of a colonial military establishment; but this fact did not distract criticism. Representatives of several of the colonies met in Congress at New York to protest against the imposition of internal taxes by a Parliament in which they were not represented. Pitt supported the claims of the Colonists on constitutional grounds: Burke made his maiden speech in Parliament in support of their claims, but on the ground of expediency. To lull the storm, Rockingham repealed the *Stamp Act* in 1766; but at the same time he passed a *Declaratory Act* asserting the right of the British Parliament to "bind the Colonies in all cases whatsoever." In 1767 Townshend took advantage of Chatham's absence through illness to pass an *American Import Duties Act*, imposing duties on glass, red lead, painters' colours, paper, tea, etc. These duties differed from those which had been imposed by the old Navigation Acts only in being

levied not for the regulation of trade but for the raising of revenue ; and they were on that ground resented by the Colonists. In 1770 North abolished all the taxes, except that on tea—which was retained simply to uphold the rights of the British Parliament. Three years later North hit on a happy idea of enriching both the American Colonies and the East India Company by allowing the latter to carry tea to America without paying the British home duties.

§ 632. North's "Intolerable Acts," 1774.—There was a wide-spread impression among the Colonists that this boon of cheap tea was merely an attempt to bribe them into abandoning their principle, "*No Taxation without Representation*." Accordingly, in December 1773 a band of Massachusetts citizens boarded some tea-ships lying in Boston harbour and emptied the tea-chests into the sea. This "Boston Tea-Party," coming as it did on the top of many outrages against "law and order," roused the British Government to measures of repression. In the spring of 1774 North passed the measures which the Americans dubbed "The Intolerable Acts." The *Boston Port Act* closed the port of Boston until its inhabitants should compensate the East India Company for the tea ; the *Massachusetts Government Act* annulled the charter of the Colony and placed it under martial law ; the *Transportation Act* gave British officers charged with murder in Massachusetts the right to demand trial in Britain ; and the *Quebec Act* annoyed the Puritan New Englanders by recognizing Roman Catholicism as the established religion in Canada, and by including the Ohio Valley within the limits of that province.

§ 633. Lexington and Bunker Hill, 1775.—These measures were promptly met by fresh preparations for resistance in America. Massachusetts set up a provincial assembly at Concord, near Boston, in the room of its ejected assembly, and organized a force of militia known as "Minute Men." All the Colonies, except Georgia, sent representatives to a "First Continental Congress" at Philadelphia, and expressed their sympathy with Massachusetts in the *Declaration of Rights*, whereby they claimed the rights of representation, self-taxation, free discussion, and local juries. The determined attitude of the Colonists, coupled with the diminution of the Anglo-American trade, caused the Home Government to unbend a little ; and early in 1775 North proposed that the British Parliament should relinquish its claims to tax any American colony which would promise to support its own civil and military establishment. But before the news of this proposal had reached America the first battle had been

fought. In April 1775 Gage, the Governor of Boston, sent a force to destroy ammunition collected at Concord; and on its way back this force was attacked by Colonials at Lexington and driven into Boston with heavy loss. In June the Massachusetts militia occupied some of the high ground commanding Boston on the north side; and were expelled with difficulty after a long day's fight known as the battle of Bunker Hill. In the autumn the Colonies presented an *Olive Branch Petition*, which the King refused to receive on the technical ground that it proceeded from an unlawful assembly.

§ 634. **The Declaration of Independence, July 4, 1776.**—The early leaders of American discontent—such as Patrick Henry of Virginia, Samuel Adams of Massachusetts, and even Benjamin Franklin of Pennsylvania—had not been above suspicion on the score of motive; but George Washington of Virginia, who became commander-in-chief of the "Continental Army" in 1775, stands on the same moral and political level as King Alfred himself. For a long time, however, he was fully occupied with putting his ragged troops in order; and the earlier aggressive movements of the Americans were conducted by others. In the autumn of 1775, for instance, Richard Montgomery took Montreal and joined Benedict Arnold in an unsuccessful attack on Quebec: this defeat practically decided that the sometime-French Colonies in the St. Lawrence Valley were not to join the older English Colonies on the eastern littoral. In March 1776 Washington won his first military triumph against the British troops by occupying Dorchester Heights, and thus compelling Sir William Howe, Gage's successor, to evacuate Boston. Howe returned to Halifax to await reinforcements brought by his brother, Admiral Lord Howe; and with these he proceeded in June to establish himself at the mouth of the Hudson. The fact that the new troops consisted largely of Hessians and other German troops hired to serve under the British flag infuriated the Americans in much the same way as their ancestors in England had sometimes been infuriated by the use of "foreign mercenaries." The result of this annoyance—sedulously fanned into flame by Tom Paine's *Common Sense*—was the issue of the *Declaration of Independence* by the Second Continental Congress, July 4, 1776.

§ 635. **Party Aspects of the Conflict.**—Hitherto the Colonists had been struggling for what they believed to be their rights under the government of George III.: henceforth they claimed to be an independent state. But in all three stages of the conflict—constitutional agitation, civil war, and "foreign war"—the Americans were

divided not merely by colonies but also by parties. There were many "loyalists" who, though not always approving of George III.'s policy, believed that the points at issue could be settled amicably: these were known as "Tories." Their more strenuous opponents were known as "Whigs," and were generally supported by the Whigs in Great Britain itself—such as Chatham, Burke, and a brilliant newcomer in politics, Charles James Fox.

§ 636. **Burgoyne's Surrender at Saratoga, October 1777.**—The British Tories were determined to suppress rebellion, and a grand combination was arranged in 1777. Sir John Burgoyne and other commanders were to march from Canada by various routes and converge on the upper Hudson, where they were to be met by a detachment of Howe's force. The combination failed to work. Howe, who had occupied New York in August 1776, spent the summer of 1777 in occupying Philadelphia; and though he and his colleagues were usually successful against Washington, they had no troops to spare for operations on the Hudson. Consequently Burgoyne, who had advanced southwards *via* Lake Champlain, was surrounded by overwhelming numbers and compelled to surrender at Saratoga (October 17, 1777).

### III. THE BOURBON INTERVENTION, 1778-1783.

§ 637. **Franco-American Alliance, 1778.**—Burgoyne's surrender was the great turning-point in the American Revolution, for it immediately led to the intervention of the Bourbon Powers, without whom the Americans could hardly have been successful in maintaining their independence. The French Government, headed by Vergennes, had throughout secretly supported the American insurgents; but early in 1778 it ventured to make open alliance with them as an independent State. The inevitable result was the outbreak of war between France and Great Britain; and in 1779 Spain joined in the war. Neither France nor Spain cared a straw for the Americans (though many individual Frenchmen were their enthusiastic partisans), and Spain was naturally unable to sympathize with colonial rebellion; but they were eager to punish Great Britain for her successes in the Seven Years' War. They obtained their revenge, but at a cost more ruinous to themselves than to their adversary. The Bourbon intervention diverted the main interest of the war from land to sea, from America to Europe; and it was directly responsible for the rise of serious troubles in India and Ireland.

**§ 638. Maritime Operations, 1778-1780.**—In 1778 Chatham while demanding at once reconciliation with the Colonies and vigorous war against their French allies, sank down in a swoon and was borne home to die. His death destroyed the last faint flicker of hope for a conciliation between Great Britain and the Colonies, except on the basis of American independence. But at the outset French intervention did not seem to bring the latter much nearer. It is true that Howe's successor, Sir Henry Clinton, evacuated Philadelphia; but on the other hand, he started operations in the south, by sending a force to occupy Savannah in Georgia, and he defeated the attempt of a Franco-American expedition upon New York. But after all the result of the conflict necessarily depended on the command of the sea; and there the conditions were much more equal than they had been at the close of the Seven Years' War. In July 1778 Keppel and Palliser only just held their own in a fight off Ushant; in 1779 a joint French and Spanish fleet swept the Channel unopposed, and Spain began her most determined attempt to recover Gibraltar; and in 1780 Rodney, on his way out to the West Indies, defeated a Spanish fleet off St. Vincent and relieved Gibraltar. In the capture of outlying possessions in the West Indies and elsewhere, France was as successful as Great Britain.

**§ 639. Warren Hastings in India, 1773-1782.**—The outbreak of war between Great Britain and France added to the many difficulties against which Warren Hastings was struggling manfully in India. Though hampered at every turn by factious opposition in his Council, Hastings had put the administration of Bengal into good order during his five years of peace and was now, during his five years of external struggles, to save British dominion in India from overthrow by native princes, egged on by France. The desire of the Bombay Government to obtain Salsette and Bassein involved it in the First Maráthá War (1778-1782), from which it was extricated only by the generals sent by Hastings across India against the powerful Maráthá princes, Sindhia and Holkar. At the same time the Madras Government became exposed to the vigorous attacks of Haidar Ali, the Muhammadan ruler of Mysore (1778-1784). This first Mysore War arose partly out of the seizure of the French towns of Pondicherry and Mahé in 1778-9 (§ 637). Haidar Ali burst into the Carnatic in 1780 and defeated Munro; but he was himself defeated in the battles of Porto Novo and Polilore, 1781, by the veteran Sir Eyre Coote, whom Hastings had sent to the rescue. Fortunately for Hastings and his country, the crisis was passed before the

arrival of a French squadron under Suffren; and Suffren, the ablest French admiral of the eighteenth century, found his skill neutralized by the bull-dog tenacity of the British admiral, Sir Edward Hughes. The long struggle against the French and their native allies had to be maintained without any substantial help from the Home Government; and sheer necessity drove Hastings to those questionable means of raising money which have prevented the undisputed acknowledgment of his greatness.

§ 640. **Henry Grattan and the Irish Volunteers, 1779-1782.**—The Bourbon intervention also brought the constitutional agitation in Ireland to a climax and gave the agitators the opportunity to have their own way. It was necessary to denude Ireland of troops in order to use them against foreign foes; and in 1779 the British Government authorized the formation of a force of Protestant volunteers for internal defence. The Volunteers supported the demands for economic reforms which were advocated by Henry Grattan; and as these demands were reasonable in themselves, and were made, in a manner which involved little disrespect to the Crown, by a legally constituted body that the Crown had no power to resist, they were speedily and fully granted. In 1780 Lord North granted a measure of "Free Trade"—removing restrictions on the woollen industry and commercial intercourse between Ireland and the Colonies which had been imposed in the interests of British commercial classes. In 1782, North's successor, Rockingham, conceded the demand for legislative autonomy by permitting the Irish Parliament to repeal *Poyning's Law* of 1495, and by causing the British Parliament to repeal its *Declaratory Act* of 1719.

§ 641. **The Gordon Riots, 1780.**—The relief granted to Ireland did not extend to the disfranchised Roman Catholic majority, nor did it involve any purification of the Irish Parliament. But there was meanwhile going on in Britain itself a determined attempt to alleviate the lot of Roman Catholics and to improve the working of Parliament. In 1778 Savile procured the repeal of the anti-Romanist Act of 1700; but the attempt to pass a similar measure for Scotland led to a widespread agitation. Lord George Gordon put himself at the head of a mob which shouted "No Popery!" and which had London at its mercy for some days in June 1780, until the personal action of George III. quelled the riot. Two months earlier Dunning had carried a resolution in the Commons that "the influence of the Crown has increased, is increasing, and ought to be diminished." This resolution embodied the opinions of those Whigs, especially



Burke, who wanted to reduce the patronage of the Crown, nominally in the interests of "economy" but really in order to lessen the power of the Crown to control Parliament. But when these same Whigs got into office under Rockingham, they contented themselves with passing a very small measure of "Economical Reform."

§ 642. **The Armed Neutrality, 1780.**—Thus about 1780 Great Britain was struggling under great constitutional difficulties at home, and was only just holding her own in the maritime conflict with the Bourbons. Owing largely to her conspicuous success in the Seven Years' War, she had no friend abroad; and in 1780 various Powers who were not at war with Great Britain banded together in menacing protest against her use of her maritime supremacy. Russia, Denmark, and Sweden—afterwards joined by other states—formed an "Armed Neutrality of the North" to protect the rights of neutrals to trade in time of war. The leading principles of this league were that neutral ships may sail freely from port to port, even along the coasts of belligerents; that "Free Ships make Free Goods"—i.e. that goods on neutral vessels are not liable to seizure, except in the case of contraband of war; and that a blockade to be valid must be effective.\* The Armed Neutrality did not proceed beyond statements of general principles, and in particular did not help the United Netherlands in the war which Great Britain declared against them at the end of 1780.

§ 643. **Cornwallis's Surrender at Yorktown, October 1781.**—Black as the outlook for Great Britain was in 1780, that of the "United States" was still blacker. Lord Cornwallis was using Charleston as a basis of operations in the Tory South which for some time seemed likely to be successful. The aptest illustration of American despair is provided by the "treason" of Benedict Arnold, one of the ablest of the American generals, who made arrangements to desert to the winning side and hand over his important post, West Point, on the Hudson. His plans were discovered, and though he himself escaped, Major André, the British officer who was settling the final details, was captured and hanged as a spy in September 1780. A year later, the British successes which had led to Arnold's treason and André's execution were finally ended by the surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown on the Chesapeake. He had tried to march northwards to join Clinton, but had been

\* These technicalities are explained in treatises on International Law, and with special reference to the present case in *The Intermediate Text-Book of English History*, vol. iv. ch. x. § 30.

compelled to retire to the apparent safety of the sea-coast. But a powerful French fleet cut him off from the possibility of succour by sea; Washington and Greene hedged him in by land; and his surrender became inevitable.

§ 644. **Battle of the Saints, 1782.**—"My God! it is all over!" was North's exclamation on hearing the news of Cornwallis's surrender; and, so far as America was concerned, his assertion was perfectly true. But elsewhere, British prospects began to brighten soon afterwards. The last serious disaster was the loss of Minorca, which led to North's resignation in March 1782. On April 12, 1782, Rodney and Hood completely defeated the French fleet under Grasse near the Saints, islands lying between Guadeloupe and Dominica. Five months later Elliott beat off the grand effort of France and Spain to take Gibraltar by a furious three days' bombardment. And between February 1782 and June 1783 Hughes was holding his own against Suffren in Eastern waters. These victories not only re-established Great Britain as mistress of the seas, but revived the nation's fading belief in itself, and strengthened the hands of the British diplomatists in the negotiations for peace.

§ 645. **Peace of Versailles, 1783.**—These negotiations were carried on by the various British ministries which followed one another in quick succession during the two years that followed North's resignation in March 1782. The treaties with the United States, France, and Spain, were signed in September 1783, during the Coalition Ministry: that with the United Provinces was not signed till May 1784, after the younger Pitt had become firmly established in office. Lack of ministerial continuity did not prevent Great Britain from taking advantage of the mutual differences among her enemies; and the terms were less unfavourable than she could have reasonably expected in 1781. The independence of the United States was recognized and their boundaries were extended by the cession of British Louisiana; France gained Tobago, Senegal, and increased fishing facilities on the French shore of Newfoundland; and Spain retained her conquests of Minorca and the Floridas. On the other hand Great Britain gained from the Dutch Nagapatnam and the privilege of free navigation and commerce in Dutch East Indian waters. These treaties stood in marked contrast with the *Peace of Paris* twenty years before; and Great Britain seemed to be pulled down from her pride of place. Nevertheless, the events of the next ten years showed that Great Britain was less exhausted than any of her victorious enemies.

## CHAPTER XLIV.

### PITT'S YEARS OF PEACE, 1783-1793.

- A. PERSONAL HISTORY OF GEORGE III. } See Chapter xlii.  
B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS. }

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

(i) *International: relations with—*

- (1) France: §§ 646, 647, 653, 654.
- (2) Spain: §§ 646, 647, 654.
- (3) Prussia: § 654.
- (4) Russia: § 654.
- (5) United Netherlands: § 654.
- (6) United States: §§ 646, 647, 657.

(ii) *Constitutional.*

- (1) Ministries: §§ 646-649, 656,
- (2) Parliament: §§ 649, 651, 652, 656-658.
- (3) Commerce: §§ 650, 653.
- (4) Ireland: §§ 647, 653, 656.
- (5) India: §§ 648, 651, 655.
- (6) Australia: § 655.

### I. GEORGE III.'S SECOND STRUGGLE, 1782-1784.

§ 646. **Rockingham's Second Ministry, March-June 1782.**  
—On North's resignation in March 1782, George III. was compelled to accept the services of the two main sections of the Whigs—the official Whigs, headed by Rockingham, and the Chathamites, now under the leadership of William Petty, Earl of Shelburne. Rockingham became first Lord of the Treasury; Shelburne and Fox were Secretaries of State; and places were found for Burke and Dunning, now Lord Ashburton. This Ministry, during its short career, opened negotiations with France, “gave Ireland what she wanted in the way in which she seemed to want it” (as Fox described the grant of legislative independence to the Irish Parliament), and passed three measures of “Economical Reform.” These three Acts respectively disfranchised revenue officers (who controlled many elections and were absolutely under the thumb of the Government), disabled Government contractors from membership of the Commons, and abolished several useless offices, such as the Colonial Secretaryship instituted in 1768. The actual practice of the Ministry in dispensing pensions and places was not in accordance with the professed zeal of its members for purity.

§ 647. **Shelburne's Ministry, July 1782-February 1783.**—When Rockingham died early in July, the King promoted Shelburne to his place. Thereupon Fox, Burke, and Ashburton resigned their

posts, as they had special reasons for sharing the general distrust in which Shelburne was held. William Pitt, second son of the Earl of Chatham, became Chancellor of the Exchequer and leader of the House of Commons, and thereby began his lifelong rivalry with the younger Fox. This Ministry completed the concessions to Ireland by passing a *Renunciatory Act*, whereby the British Parliament explicitly abandoned all claim to override the Irish Parliament, and arranged the terms of peace with the "United States" which, however, were not formally signed until after its fall. After a precarious existence of less than eight months, the Ministry was defeated in the Commons in a debate on the peace by the combined efforts of the followers of Fox and the followers of North. Fox and North had been such acrid opponents in former days that their alliance was commonly denounced as an "unnatural coalition."

§ 648. **The Coalition Ministry, April-December 1783.**—More than a month elapsed before George III. could bring himself to call Fox and North into his counsels; but their overwhelming strength in the Commons at length obliged him to "swallow the bitter potion." Fox and North became Secretaries of State under the nominal leadership of the Duke of Portland. The Secretariate had been reorganized in 1782, when the old division of its work into Southern and Northern Departments had been superseded by a more logical division into Home Office and Foreign Office. It fell to Fox, as Foreign Secretary, to introduce an *India Bill* which was meant to amend North's Act of 1773, but which practically transferred the bestowal of Indian offices to the party in power. Lord Thurlow—the "King's Friend" who was Lord Chancellor almost continuously for nearly twenty years (1775-1793), except during the Coalition Ministry—represented the Bill as "taking the diadem off the King's head to set it on that of Mr. Fox." George took this view of the Bill and sent Lord Temple among his fellow peers with a paper declaring that the King would regard voting for the Bill as an act of personal enmity to himself. The Lords therefore rejected the measure, and the King at once dismissed the ministers who had introduced it.

§ 649.—**Pitt's Parliamentary Struggle, December 1783-March 1784.**—George invited Pitt to form an Administration; and as Pitt, despite his cold demeanour, was a man of sanguine temperament, he accepted the offer. The late ministers were at first more amused than annoyed at his presumption. He was only twenty-four years of age, and had had only three years' parliamentary

experience; and the wits made merry over the sight of "a kingdom trusted to a schoolboy's care." The King and the Lords were on his side, but he was hopelessly outnumbered in the Commons, and he could not get any politician of the first rank to serve under him. For three months he carried on almost single-handed a fight in the Commons, and thus revealed his own pluck and resourcefulness and the factiousness of the Opposition—which even threatened to cut off his supplies and to reject the renewal of the *Mutiny Act*. But like his father in 1756, he was immensely popular outside the House; and unlike his father, he resolved to appeal to his supporters by means of a General Election. This new device was a great success; over one hundred and sixty members of the Opposition lost their seats, and were jestingly called "Fox's Martyrs."

## II. PITT AS PEACE MINISTER, 1783-1793. •

§ 650. **Pitt the Younger and Adam Smith.**—Pitt remained in office for nearly eighteen years, and was throughout that period continually growing in power. His Ministry was almost equally divided between years of peace and years of war; and it is generally considered that the former period, though less crowded with striking events, was more glorious and successful than the latter period. Unlike his father, he was primarily a financier; and his main object was to set the affairs of his country in order after the strain of the War of American Independence. His ideas were largely drawn from Adam Smith's *Wealth of Nations*, a treatise which had appeared in the year of the *Declaration of Independence* (1776), and had marked the rise of a new system of Economic Policy. The Glasgow Professor had especially urged the removal of governmental restrictions on commerce and industry, and had advocated an entire change in the methods of taxation, and had emphasized the duties rather than the rights of the Government. Pitt applied these ideas so far as they were practicable, and thus helped to equip Great Britain with the material resources necessary to carry on the Great War of the future.

§ 651. **The India Act and Warren Hastings, 1784-1788.**—Pitt's first measure was an *East India Act*, designed to remedy the defects of North's *Regulating Act* of 1773. The Company retained its commercial monopoly; but its political and military administration was subordinated to a new department of the Home Government, called the Board of Control. Pitt's most intimate friend, Henry Dundas, who had drafted the Act, was for eighteen years responsible

for administering it as President of the Board of Control. The Act also strengthened the hands of the Governor-General, who was to be a prominent person appointed by the Crown. The first Governor-General under the Act was Lord Cornwallis (1786-1793), who effected the "Permanent Settlement" of the relations between the cultivators and the State in Bengal, and attempted to abstain from intervention in the politics of the Country Powers. During his term of office there began a prolonged inquiry into the government of his predecessor, Warren Hastings. In the time of stress Hastings had lent British troops to the Nawáb of Oudh for use against the Rohillás, and had adopted extreme measures to extract sums due from Chait Singh, Rájá of Benares, and from the Begams of Oudh. These acts were the chief charges for which he was impeached by Burke and Sheridan before the House of Lords; but the trial, after dragging along for eight years (1788-1796), ended in his acquittal.

**§ 652. Parliamentary Reform, 1785.**—Pitt inherited his father's dislike of the Whig Oligarchy, and his father's belief that the time had come for broadening the base of the parliamentary system. Burke and his friends merely wanted Economical Reform—i. e. to purify the working of the existing system: Pitt at the very outset of his political career had advocated Parliamentary Reform. Wilkes, Richmond and others had proposed the wholesale disfranchisement of rotten boroughs and a wide extension of the franchise: the Bill which Pitt introduced in 1785 was more moderate in its scope. He proposed to buy out the interests of the proprietors of thirty-six decayed boroughs, giving the seventy-two seats thus set at liberty to the counties and London, and to extend the county franchise. But, for the present, the influence of those who favoured the existing system was greater than that of those who desired changes. Pitt's scheme was rejected; and practically the question slumbered for nearly half a century (§ 718).

**§ 653. Commerce and Finance, 1784-1786.**—Pitt showed more tenacity of purpose in the field of economic reconstruction than in merely political reform. He put the parliamentary audit of accounts on a more regular footing, established a Sinking Fund for the reduction of the National Debt, and rearranged the import duties in such a way that the private citizen paid less for commodities while the State got more money out of the customs-dues. This he did by taking strong measures to repress smuggling, which had come to be thought an almost honourable profession, and at the same time made it less profitable by reducing the duties on various articles

of common consumption, such as tea. In the spirit of Adam Smith, Pitt also tried to remove restrictions on external commerce. His attempt to establish complete equality of trade between the kingdoms of Great Britain and Ireland broke down in 1785, because the merchant interest in the British Parliament insisted on conditions which the Irish Parliament regarded as impugning its legislative independence. But in 1786 Pitt was able to arrange an enlightened commercial treaty with France, which reduced the British duties on French wine, silk, and oil in exchange for the reduction of French duties on British wool, cotton, and iron.

§ 654. **The Triple Alliance, 1788.**—Pitt's commercial treaty was loudly denounced as truckling to the national enemy; but, as a matter of fact, his desire to turn the peace to good account did not interfere with his desire to prepare for war. The most conspicuous incident in Pitt's foreign policy during his early years was the *Triple Alliance* which he arranged with Prussia and the United Netherlands in 1788-9. The principal effect of this Treaty was to dis sever the United Netherlands from the Bourbon Alliance (§ 642), and thus to check French and Austrian schemes of aggrandisement in the Low Countries, both Dutch and Austrian. Pitt also hoped to use his alliance with Prussia to check the schemes of Austria and Prussia against the weak states of Turkey, Poland, and Sweden; but here Prussia preferred to go her own way. Even in the West the effects of the *Triple Alliance* were short-lived, owing to the outbreak of the French Revolution; but before its weakness was revealed, the prestige which Pitt had gained by negotiating it stood him in good stead. In 1789-1790 France declined to support the action of Spain in claiming to exclude Great Britain from Nootka Sound; and the result was that Great Britain obtained a foothold on the Pacific Coast of North America, laid the foundations of the Colonies of British Columbia and Vancouver Island, and made possible the future establishment of an all-British route across North America.

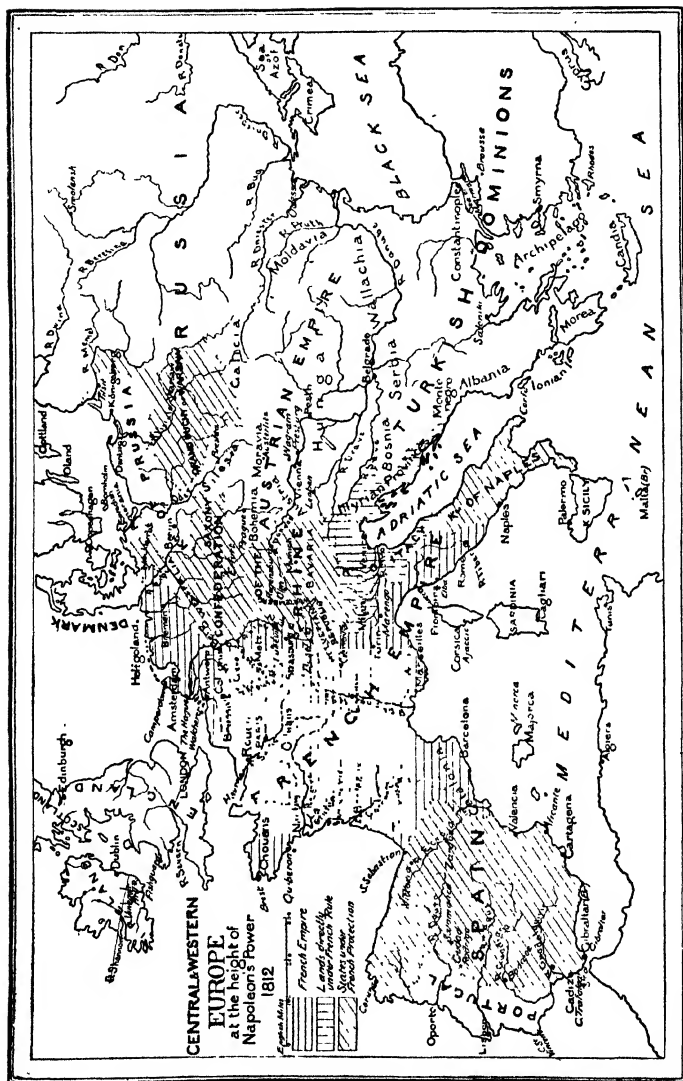
§ 655. **Botany Bay, 1788.**—About the same time Great Britain began to follow up Cook's explorations in the Pacific by establishing a colony in Australia. In 1788 Arthur Philip landed a gang of convicts at Botany Bay, and then, finding the place unsuitable for a settlement, moved into the neighbouring harbour of Port Jackson and there founded the town called Sydney in honour of Pitt's Foreign Secretary. With this unpromising material the Commonwealth of Australia made its start. Transportation to foreign shores had long been adopted as a cheap way of getting rid of criminals; and the

loss of the American Colonies had made it necessary to look out for fresh regions where social rubbish might be shot. The choice of Australia rather than West Africa was partly due to the rise of a humanitarian movement,—which was also being exhibited in the strenuous efforts of John Howard (1780-1794) to humanize the brutal prison systems of Europe, in the impeachment of Warren Hastings, and in the efforts of Clarkson and Wilberforce to abolish, or at least mitigate, the horrors of the traffic in negro slaves. Burke and Fox gave an enthusiastic support to this movement; Pitt—being bound by the responsibilities of office, which must always temper ideals by “practical” considerations—was more guarded in his support. In 1788, however, he helped his friend Wilberforce to pass an *Act for the Better Regulation of the Slave Trade*.

§ 656. **The Regency Question, 1788-1789.**—Towards the end of 1788 the King again became mad; and as no arrangements had been made for the conduct of government in such a case, there was plentiful opportunity for debate between Ministry and Opposition. Fox put forward the view that in case of the King's incapacity, his heir had a “right,” or at least a “legal claim,” to become Regent with the powers of King; and this view was adopted by the Irish Parliament. Fox was a personal friend of the Prince of Wales, and his constitutional theories were not uninfluenced by his hopes of supplanting Pitt as Prime Minister. Pitt maintained that the person and powers of a Regent depended absolutely on Parliament. Before anything definite was settled the King recovered.

§ 657. **The Canada Act and the Libel Act, 1791-1792.**—Two notable Acts of Parliament were passed between George III.'s recovery in 1789 and the outbreak of war. The *Canada Act* of 1791 was an attempt to meet the difficulties caused by the immigration of many “United Empire Loyalists” from the revolted colonies into the St. Lawrence Valley. They were mostly Protestants, and were quarrelling with the French Roman Catholic inhabitants; and Pitt sought to stop this quarrel by dividing Canada into two provinces, Quebec or Lower Canada, where the French were most numerous, and Ontario or Upper Canada, which the Protestant immigrants had all to themselves. Fox's *Libel Act* restored to juries in libel cases the right to give a general verdict: they might decide not only whether a certain statement had been published, but also whether it amounted to “libel.” The year 1792, in which this Act was passed, marked the transition from neutrality to hostility in the average British estimate of the French Revolution (§§ 666, 667).





## BOOK XI.

### *THE GREAT WAR AND THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION, 1793-1837.*

#### INTRODUCTION.

§ 658. **Retrospect, 1756-1793.**—During the period covered by our tenth book the first colonial empire of Great Britain attained its widest limits in the *Treaties of Paris* and *Allahábád*, and then suddenly fell to pieces at the *Peace of Versailles*, while in home politics the Whig Oligarchy reached its zenith during the Seven Years' War, and was gradually overthrown by the persistent efforts of George III. We have seen that that period falls naturally into two periods of war, each undertaken mainly for colonial objects, and each followed by a period of peace, mainly occupied with varied constitutional developments. In the period that lies before us we have again two great wars to study, and again France is the principal antagonist of Great Britain, but these two wars are almost continuous, and they are followed by a constitutional struggle on a much more extensive scale than those of George III.'s reign. Though the two periods have many features in common, yet many deep differences between them arise out of the French Revolution and the Industrial Revolution.

§ 659. **The French Revolution and the Napoleonic Empire, 1789-1815.**—The constitutional history of France has differed in many ways from that of Great Britain; and one consequence of this difference was that a number of political and social changes which took place gradually in Great Britain were effected hurriedly and with violence in the few years of "the French Revolution." The causes of that Revolution may be roughly ranged under three main headings—social, intellectual, and political. There were much wider gaps between the various classes in France than in England; the Clergy and the Nobles were privileged classes; the middle classes had very little political power; and the peasants were still subject to many of the burdens of feudalism without its compensating advantages. During the eighteenth century various philosophical writers, such as Montesquieu, Voltaire and Rousseau, had criticized existing institutions very freely, and had led the discontented classes to believe that changes in methods of government would restore the golden age. Finally, Louis XV. and Louis XVI. had so mismanaged the monarchical power handed down to them by Louis XIV. that the state was brought to the verge of

bankruptcy. In May 1789 Louis XVI. assembled the States-General, after an interval of exactly a century and three-quarters, in the hope that they would supply him with the money necessary to carry on the government. The representatives of the Third Estate obtained the mastery in the body, turned it into a "National Assembly," and, with the Paris mob at its back, compelled the King to assent to all manner of sweeping changes. In October 1791 the National Assembly was succeeded by a "Legislative Assembly," which plunged into the war with Austria; and a year later this was replaced by a "National Convention," which set up a Republic and made war on Great Britain and other kingdoms in the name of "Liberty." The Republic passed under the control of an executive committee of five members, known as the "Directory," in 1795, and in 1799 under a still smaller committee known as the "Consulate." Napoleon Bonaparte, a Corsican who might have become an Englishman but chose to become a Frenchman, became First Consul; and, in 1804 he superseded the French Republic by an Empire, which was twice overthrown by armed Europe in 1814-15.

§ 660. *International Aspects of the Revolutionary Era, 1793-1815.*—Thus during the quarter-century beginning in 1789 France underwent various constitutional changes which are interesting in themselves, and which would each demand close analysis in a study of European History. In this place, however, we are concerned with them mainly from the standpoint of British History; and here we find that Great Britain, though more unfriendly with some of the Governments than with others, was at war with all those which were in power for the twenty-one years after 1793, and that hostility to France and French ideas caused domestic reforms in Great Britain to come almost to a standstill. During the same period France was engaged in wars with nearly every state in Europe; but her most persistent enemy was Great Britain, which had only one year's peace (1802-3) between 1793 and 1814. The motives and methods of this long Anglo-French war varied from time to time, but the permanent motive was the old one of colonial and maritime rivalry; and the result was due to the fact that Great Britain proved invincible on sea, while France after twenty years of military triumphs proved to be not invincible on land. The hostility of France increased the discontent in Ireland which led to the Brito-Irish Union of 1800 (§ 678), directly provoked the extension of British rule in India (§ 680), and involved Great Britain in war with the United States of America (§ 698).

**§ 661. Causes of British Success in the Great War.**—If we ask how it was that Great Britain was able to keep up the sustained exertions of the Great War, we find the cause first in her insular isolation, which put her beyond the reach of effective attack, secondly in the doggedness of her leaders, who stubbornly refused to despair when they were beaten, and thirdly in her material resources. The strength which Great Britain derived from her geographical advantages and from the way in which her leaders made use thereof, will be illustrated in the following narrative (chs. xlv., xlvi.); but it will be more convenient in this place to consider the nature of her material resources. Great Britain suddenly increased in wealth, just at the time when she most needed it, in consequence of a series of economic changes known as "The Industrial Revolution." This label covers three distinguishable sets of data: (1) changes in the methods of agriculture, manufacture, and communication; (2) consequent changes in the structure of society; and (3) the demand, ultimately successful in great part, that British political institutions should be altered to adapt them to the new social conditions.

**§ 662. Economic Features of the Industrial Revolution.**—Throughout the eighteenth century the processes of British agriculture were being improved, especially in the adoption of a system of rotation of crops, in the improvement of the breed of sheep and cattle, and in the bringing of larger areas into tillage by means of enclosing the common fields and the waste which survived the enclosures of the sixteenth century. The general tendency of these changes was to increase the quantity, and raise the quality, of the produce of the soil; and all this was sheer gain for the country. Unfortunately for the nation as a whole, a disproportionate share of the gain was secured by the large landowners, and the useful class of yeomen and small farmers was almost destroyed. The corresponding changes in methods of manufacture, which began to be rapid and general somewhat later than the agrarian changes, had a similar result in benefiting the large capitalist rather than the small artisan; but here the man in a small way of business had a better chance than the small farmer. A number of mechanical inventions—especially the spinning-jenny contrived by James Hargreaves of Blackburn, 1767, and the spinning-frame contrived by Richard Arkwright of Bolton, 1769—cheapened and quickened the output of cotton goods; and these inventions were afterwards applied to the treatment of wool and were accompanied by improvements in the

processes of weaving. Meanwhile the home production of iron was increased by the re-discovery of the art of smelting iron by coal, instead of wood. Power to drive the new machinery was derived at first from running water, later from steam, which was first applied to textile manufactures by James Watt in 1785. The growth of manufactures made necessary improved means for the transport of heavy goods; and this improvement successively took the shape of canals, macadamized roads and steam-worked railways. About three thousand miles of canals were built in Britain by Brindley and others between 1760 and 1800; during the same period and onwards to 1830 Telford and Macadam constructed many turn-pike roads on which it was possible to run coaches at a net average speed of ten to fifteen miles an hour; and in 1830 George Stephenson completed the first steam-worked railway between Liverpool and Manchester. Meanwhile Bell and Symington had started a steam boat on the Clyde in 1812, and seven years later an American vessel, partly driven by steam, crossed the Atlantic.

#### § 663. Social Consequences of the Industrial Revolution.—

These vast changes, or such of them as were at work prior to the battle of Waterloo, increased the material resources of Great Britain as a State, and so enabled it to bear the burden of the Great War. But the economic benefits were naturally enough not evenly distributed amongst the citizens of that State; and the dislocation caused first by the transition from handicraft to machine production, and afterwards from war conditions to peace conditions, resulted in the widespread social misery and discontent which prevailed after the Great War. In consequence of the agrarian and industrial revolutions a much larger proportion of the population than before was "divorced from the land," and dependent for its livelihood on wages. The substitution of machinery for hand labour both lessened the demand for labour and lowered its rate of remuneration at the very time when a series of bad harvests, combined with the operation of new Corn Laws, raised the price of food. The condition of the rural labourers was not much better than that of the people who had crowded together in the large towns which had sprung up under the "factory system." Hence during the years following the *Peace of Paris* there were all manner of riots, made sometimes by persons who thought to improve their lot by burning hayricks and breaking machinery, and sometimes by persons who hoped to set things right by political reform. At first the Government, still imbued with its horror of "Revolution," met these disturbances

with measures of repression ; but gradually a new school of politicians arose who sought to check political discontent by striving to remove its causes (chs. xlvii., xlviii.).

§ 664. **Political Results of the Industrial Revolution.**—The politicians who desired to meet discontent not with repression but with reform were drawn partly from the ranks of the more progressive section of the Whig party and of the less rigid section of the Tories, and they assumed the continental name of “Liberals.” Practically they took up the task which the younger Pitt had been compelled to drop on the outbreak of the French Revolutionary War, and which had become much more pressing and complicated with the lapse of time. They had to adjust British institutions to the changed conditions of society, and especially to the rapid growth of the population, which had increased from about nine millions at the first census in 1801 to nearly fourteen millions in 1831. The Industrial Revolution had brought into existence “a supplementary race of men” (as the elder Peel phrased it), an industrial population which, in both its higher and its lower ranges, lay almost wholly outside the existing constitution of Church and State ; and the main object of the measures passed during the “Epoch of Reform” (about 1828–1837) was to admit these new classes to the position of active citizens. These measures fell into three main groups : (1) those which formally abolished various civil disabilities under which persons who did not belong to the established churches in the British Isles had been placed in past times (ch. xlvii.) ; (2) those which adapted the parliamentary constitution to the new state of things ; and (3) those which provided better opportunities and conditions of life for various classes which had hitherto been ignored or treated in ways which were now regarded as mistaken (ch. xlviii.). The repeal of the *Test Act* and *Corporation Act* in 1828, and the passing of the *Roman Catholic Relief Act* in 1829 come under the first heading ; the *Reform Acts* of 1832 come under the second heading ; and the third heading includes such various measures as provided for the Abolition of Slavery, the amelioration of life in factories, the amendment of the Poor Law, and the establishment of municipal government on new principles. Such far-reaching changes were not made without great constitutional struggles, nor were they as successful as their promoters had hoped ; but on the whole they tended to satisfy the moral principle formulated by Bentham, one of the most sanguine of the reformers, “the greatest happiness of the greatest number.”

§ 665. **The Rise of Nationalities.** The period which witnessed these domestic changes mostly in direct consequence of the Industrial Revolution, was marked also by the rise of new problems in British foreign and colonial relations which may largely be ascribed to the French Revolution. The events of the period 1789-1815 imbued the leading statesmen of Europe with an abiding fear of "revolution," while they encouraged the desires of their subjects for political change. Hence there arose the movements known as *Nationalism*—the idea that every "state" ought to correspond to a "nation"—and *Liberalism*—the idea that government in each state ought to be conducted in accordance with the wishes of the governed, as expressed in some representative assembly. In opposition to these movements the rulers sometimes met in congress to take joint measures against disturbances; and for many years the leading spirit in these conferences was the Austrian statesman Metternich. Gradually Great Britain dissociated herself from the continental monarchies and adopted an attitude of "non-intervention." This policy sometimes took the shape of preventing other states from interfering in the affairs of their neighbours, as when Canning prevented the European Powers from helping Spain to reconquer her revolted colonies in America, or when he prevented Egypt from helping Turkey to conquer the revolted Greeks. There was no sharp break in either the domestic or the foreign policy of Great Britain: in each department there was a tendency to abandon the attitude of fear of "reform," resulting in repression and sympathy with reaction, and to regard reform as inevitable at home and not necessarily reprehensible abroad. The reforming activity which marked the restoration of the Whigs to power in William IV.'s reign extended to India and to the colonies. The abolition of slavery caused much discontent in the West Indies, where the planters could not adapt themselves to the new conditions of labour, and in South Africa, where there began those trekkings of the Boers which gave Great Britain much trouble during the Victorian Age.

## CHAPTER XLV.

### THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR, 1793-1802.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY OF GEORGE III. :** see ch. xlii.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS (1789-1820).

PAPACY.	AUSTRIA.	PRUSSIA.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	SWEDEN.	RUSSIA.
Pius VI. (1775)	Joseph II. H.R.E. (1765) Leopold II. H.R.E. (1790)	Frederick William II. (1786)	Louis XVI. (1774-1792) <i>Republic</i> , 1792 <i>Directory</i> , 1795 <i>Consulate</i> , 1799 <i>Empire</i> , 1804	Charles. IV. (1788) Ferdinand VII. (1808- 1833) [Joseph Bonaparte Rival, 1808-1818]	Gustavus III. (1771) Gustavus IV. (1792) Charles XIII. (1809) Charles XIV. <i>Bernadott</i> , (1818-1844)	Katharine II. (1762) Paul I. (1796) Alexander I. (1801- 1825)
Pius VII. (1800-1823)	Francis II. H.R.E. (1792- 1806) [= Francis I "Emperor of Austria" (1804- 1835)]	Frederick William III (1797-1840)	Louis XVIII. (1814-1824)			

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

**(i) International: relations with—**

- (1) France: §§ 666-676, 677, 679.
- (2) Spain: §§ 667, 669, 676.
- (3) Austria: §§ 667, 670, 673.
- (4) Prussia: §§ 667, 669.
- (5) The Netherlands: §§ 667, 669,  
671, 673, 676.
- (6) Denmark: §§ 674, 675.

**(ii) Constitutional.**

- (1) Parties: §§ 666, 668, 675.
- (2) Repression: §§ 666, 668, 669.
- (3) Finance: § 671.
- (4) Mutinies and Rebellion: § 671,  
672, 677.
- (5) Ireland: §§ 669, 670, 677, 678.
- (6) India: §§ 672, 675, 679, 680.

### I. THE FIRST COALITION, 1793-1797.

§ 666. **British Opinion on the French Revolution.**—The French Revolution affected the political thought of Great Britain in various ways. Some rejoiced to see the ancient enemy apparently destroying herself; some were pleased to notice that a neighbour was striving to get a constitution like our own; those who had grievances gathered from the course of the French Revolution hints as to methods of securing remedies; and those who were tolerably content with the existing state of things saw in the events across the Channel only a case of "liberty degenerating into licence."



Roughly speaking, these and other British attitudes resolved themselves into two—sympathy with, and opposition to, the Revolution abroad and constitutional change at home ; and the various political groups ranged themselves into two distinct parties on these lines. Burke's great work, *Reflections on the French Revolution*, which was written in 1790, first began to turn the balance of opinion to hostility : it had much more weight than the rejoinders of Tom Paine, *The Rights of Man*, or Sir James Mackintosh's *Vindiciæ Gallicæ*. A minority of the Whigs, headed by Fox, and including Erskine, Grey and others, took a less unfavourable view of the Revolution. Pitt long maintained the attitude of neutrality suited to his responsible position ; but the increasing violence of the Revolutionists during the year 1792, especially after the Girondin party obtained power in the National Convention, gradually drove Pitt to adopt Burke's views. In May the Government issued a Proclamation authorizing the magistrates to suppress seditious writings ; and in December a second Proclamation called out the Militia to suppress the prevalent spirit of tumult and disorder. Early in 1793 Parliament passed an *Alien Act*, intended to prevent the landing of revolutionaries, and a *Traitorous Correspondence Act*, which made unauthorized intercourse with France into treason.

§ 667. **Outbreak of the Anglo-French War, 1793.**—Meanwhile France had in 1792 declared war against Austria and Prussia ; and, as those Powers were busy with a "second partition" of Poland, France was at first successful. Inebriated with these early triumphs, the National Convention abolished the French Monarchy and proclaimed a Republic in October 1792. In November, having conquered the Austrian Netherlands, it declared the Scheldt open to the trade of all nations, and finally it issued a decree offering aid to any "people" struggling to free itself from the "tyranny" of any "government"—other than that of the French Republic. Then in January 1793, it sent "Louis Capet," formerly King Louis XVI., to the guillotine. Pitt at once sent the French Ambassador his passports ; and in February France replied by a declaration of war against Great Britain and the United Provinces. The formal cause of the war was the fact that the opening of the Scheldt was a breach of many treaties from the *Peace of Westfalia* onwards. Great Britain and the United Provinces at once joined Sardinia, Spain, Portugal, Austria, and Prussia in a coalition against France, and for a moment this coalition was successful. But in July 1793 the determined Jacobin party overthrew the more moderate Giron-

dins and persuaded the French Convention to entrust the executive power to a vigorous "Committee of Public Safety." In the autumn French armies drove the Austrians out of the Southern Netherlands and Alsace, put down Royalist risings in La Vendée and elsewhere, forced the Duke of York to raise the siege of Dunkirk, and compelled Hood to evacuate Toulon, which had been held for some months on behalf of the French Royalists.

§ 668. **British Ministerial Changes and Maritime Successes, 1794.**—During the crisis of 1793 the Committee of Public Safety, including Robespierre, Danton, Marat, and other republican zealots, had struck wildly at all suspected enemies of the Republic; and their period of vigilance is known as the "Reign of Terror." Having destroyed the internal opponents of the Republic and driven back its external foes, their task was achieved; and in July 1794 France returned to a more normal kind of government. Meanwhile the fear of the establishment of a similar "Reign of Terror" in Great Britain had been dominating the governing classes. In 1794 Lord Braxfield, "the Scottish Jeffreys," had sentenced a young lawyer named Thomas Muir to fourteen years' transportation merely for advocating universal suffrage and annual parliaments; in May 1794 Parliament had armed Government officials with greater power of arrest and imprisonment by suspending the *Habeas Corpus Act*; and in June the "Old Whigs," who agreed rather with Burke than with Fox, formally went over to Pitt's side, and their leader, the Duke of Portland, became Home Secretary. Portland's predecessor, Dundas, was placed in charge of a new department specially created in view of the circumstances of the time—the Secretaryship of War. But even before this Great Britain had begun to compensate by her victories at sea for the defeats of her allies by land. On the "Glorious First of June" Lord Howe defeated a French fleet off Ushant; and before the end of the year other fleets had occupied various French islands in the West Indies, and even helped the Corsican patriot, Paoli, to throw off the yoke of France for a time.

§ 669. **Treaties of Basel and the Directory, 1795.**—The year 1795 abounds in illustrations of the burdensomeness of the French War. Great Britain lost three of her allies and was herself troubled by much internal discontent. Early in the year France conquered the United Provinces and erected them into a "Batavian Republic" on the French model, and under French control. In April and July respectively Prussia and Spain entered into *Treaties of Basel* with the French Republic; the former, in order to be free

to attend to the third and final partition of Poland, the latter out of sheer feebleness. Great Britain was able to seize various Dutch colonies, especially Ceylon and Cape Colony, but her expedition to Quiberon Bay in aid of the French Royalists was a disastrous failure. Owing to bad harvests, and also to the working of economic causes, the country was starving and seething with discontent. In order to feed the hungry, the Justices of the Peace in Speenhamland, a district of Berkshire, started the practice of supplementing wages by doles from the rates; and this demoralizing practice became general throughout the country. In order to have additional powers to repress the discontent which arose largely out of hunger, the Government passed the *Treasonable Practices Act* and the *Seditious Meetings Act*, making it treasonable to advocate or discuss the desirability of reform in Church or State. Early in the year the recall of Lord Fitz-William, the popular Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland, prepared the way for the outbreak of Irish discontent into rebellion.

§ 670. **Pitt's Overtures for Peace, 1796.**—The Directory established in October 1795 seemed so likely to give France a stable government that in 1796 Pitt twice opened negotiations for peace; but as he declined to leave France in possession of the Netherlands, the negotiations fell through. This year witnessed the recovery of Corsica by France, and an unsuccessful attempt to land a large force in Ireland in support of the United Irishmen (§ 677). But the most notable event in the year was the French campaign in North Italy, whereby Napoleon Bonaparte made his reputation as a general, and, after a series of victories, compelled Austria to make peace. The terms were practically settled in April 1797, but the definitive *Treaty of Campo-Formio* was not signed till October. Bonaparte bribed Austria with the stolen property of the Venetian territory to surrender all Germany west of the Rhine to France, and to recognize the erection of Piedmont and Lombardy into a "Cisalpine Republic."

§ 671. **St. Vincent and Camperdown, 1797.**—The Directory resolved to follow up its successful attack on Austria by an onslaught on Great Britain, the last remaining ally of Austria. Its first attempt—the landing of a small French force at Fishguard, in Pembrokeshire, in January 1797—was ridiculous, and was easily defeated; but it then planned operations on a larger scale, making use of the Spanish and Dutch fleets. Great Britain seemed to be in a perilous position. In February Pitt saved the Bank of England from bankruptcy only by authorizing it to suspend cash payments, that is

to refuse to give money in exchange for its notes. A little later (April-June) formidable mutinies broke out in the Navy. The grievances of the fleet at Spithead—the badness of the food supplied, the low rate of wages, and the cruelty of the officers—were speedily put right by the popular Admiral, Lord Howe. The mutineers at the Nore, headed by Parker, were infected with “Jacobinical” ideas, and wanted to conduct naval operations by mass-meeting. They were gradually brought to submission and their ringleaders were executed. Before these mutinies began Sir John Jervis and Horatio Nelson—who had previously done good service in Corsica—routed a Spanish fleet off Cape St. Vincent (February 14); and after it was over, Duncan defeated the Dutch fleet, which he had been blockading in the Texel, off Camperdown (October 11). These naval victories, won under exceptional difficulties and against great numerical odds, saved Great Britain from sharing the humiliation of her Austrian ally.

## II. THE SECOND COALITION, 1798-1802.

§ 672. **Bonaparte's Eastern Expedition, 1798.**—In 1798 Great Britain stood absolutely alone, and though her prospects were brighter than they had been the previous year, they were still gloomy. Her greatest danger was the Irish discontent which in this year flared up into a short-lived rebellion (§ 677). The Directory prepared to help this rebellion by sending expeditions not only to Ireland, but also against England. Bonaparte, however, who was placed in command of the “army of England,” persuaded the Directory, whom he had recently saved from overthrow, to let him try his fortune elsewhere. His imaginative temperament drew him towards the East, and he thought it possible to establish a French dominion in Egypt and Syria, and thence to conquer India and Turkey. Accordingly in May he sailed from Toulon, and, taking Malta from the Knights of St. John, made himself master of Egypt by the Battle of the Pyramids in July. But during the night of August 1 Nelson destroyed his fleet in Aboukir Bay, near the western mouth of the Nile; and in the following spring Sir Sidney Smith helped to beat him back from Acre. His visionary enterprise had utterly failed, but not without leading to important consequences in Europe and India (§§ 673, 679).

§ 673. **Formation of the Second Coalition, 1799.**—Bonaparte's invasion of Egypt and Syria offended the Tzar Paul (who had adopted the view that Russia was the natural heir to all the Turkish

dominions); and the increasing weakness of the Directory encouraged Austria and Naples to join Britain and Russia in another coalition against France. The Coalition was not long successful. Nelson was unable to maintain the Bourbon King of Naples and Sicily in his continental dominions; the Duke of York again failed in the Low Countries, and was compelled to withdraw his troops by the *Capitulation of Alkmaar*; and though Austria was for a time successful against France in North Italy, the Russian generals Suvórov and Korsákov failed to hold Switzerland. Early in November Bonaparte, who had deserted his army in Egypt, overthrew the Directory in the revolution of 18 Brumaire (the date in the fanciful Republican Calendar corresponding to November 10), and established himself in civil authority under the title of First Consul. This was the beginning of the military despotism in which, as Burke had long ago prophesied, the aspirations of the French Revolution were destined to culminate.

§ 674. **Second Armed Neutrality, 1800.**—Bonaparte's accession to power speedily resulted in the defeat of Austria and in the detachment of Russia from the Coalition. In the spring of 1800 Bonaparte himself crossed the St. Bernard Pass and in June defeated the Austrian army at Marengo. In December Moreau achieved a still greater victory over the Austrians at Hohenlinden, in Bavaria. Meanwhile Russia had been growing slack in her adhesion to the Coalition, and was finally estranged when Malta passed from French to British control in September, 1800. Bonaparte worked on the feelings of the Tzar Paul, and persuaded him to revive the Armed Neutrality of 1780 on behalf of the maritime rights of neutrals.

§ 675. **Resignation of Pitt, 1801.**—The rival leagues against France and Great Britain fell to pieces in the year 1801. In February Austria came to terms with France in the *Treaty of Lunéville*, and Pitt resigned office because he was not allowed to round off his union between Great Britain and Ireland by the promised measure of Roman Catholic Emancipation. In April Sir Hyde Parker and Lord Nelson fought the "Battle of the Baltic" in Copenhagen Roads, and compelled Denmark to give up her fleet; and shortly afterwards, following the murder of the Tzar Paul, Russia detached herself from co-operation with France. In June Great Britain made considerable modifications in her "Right of Search," and so broke up the Armed Neutrality. In August the remnants of the French army in Egypt, which had already been defeated at Alexandria in March by Sir Ralph Abercromby,

surrendered to an Anglo-Indian force under Sir David Baird. The general result of these events was to show that France could do nothing effective against the sea-power of Great Britain, and that Great Britain could do nothing effective against the military power of France.

§ 676. **Peace of Amiens, March 1802.**—The consequence of this, coupled with the desire of the new Addington Ministry for peace, and with Bonaparte's desire to gain leisure for organizing the French navy for his great colonial schemes, was that Great Britain and France came to terms which practically recognized that this struggle had been a drawn battle. France agreed to evacuate Naples and the Papal States, to acknowledge the independence of the Ionian Islands (formerly belonging to Venice), and to recognize the claims of Turkey to Egypt; while Great Britain agreed that its king should drop the empty title of King of France held since Edward III.'s days, promised, on certain conditions, to re-establish the Knights of St. John in possession of Malta, and restored all conquests to France and her allies, except the Dutch colony of Ceylon and the Spanish island of Trinidad. "It was," said a British onlooker, "a peace which every one would be glad of, and which nobody would be proud of."

### III. INDIA AND IRELAND, 1789-1805.

§ 677. **The United Irishmen and the Ninety-Eight, 1791-1798.**—The French Revolution had not only involved Great Britain in a great maritime war, and enabled Pitt to build up a powerful Tory party devoted to the maintenance of the existing British Constitution against all manner of "Jacobinism," but had also led to serious difficulties in Ireland and in India. In Ireland the legislative autonomy established in 1782 had not worked very well, either from a British or from an Irish point of view. The Irish Parliament was just as far from being representative of the nation as was the British Parliament, and it had not the same amount of control over the administration. Hence there arose demands for Parliamentary Reform and Roman Catholic Emancipation; and these were at first the chief aspirations of the "Society of United Irishmen," which was founded by Wolfe Tone and Hamilton Rowan in 1791. They were not alone in bidding for the support of the Irish Roman Catholics. In 1793, Pitt pressed through the Irish Parliament measures which abolished restrictions on the education and worship of Roman Catholics and re-admitted them to the parliamentary suffrage (§ 555), though not to seats in Parliament.

Two years later, Lord Fitz-William was sent over to Ireland to make further concessions; but hasty action on his part caused his immediate recall. This led directly to the revival of the United Irishmen, no longer on a national basis, but pledged to alliance with the lower classes among the Irish Romanists and the French Republic. Pitt, on the other hand, won over the Roman Catholic gentry and the Protestant minority. The great French expedition under Hoche was dispersed by storms in 1796 and achieved nothing; and before another expedition could start, the Government, with the help of the Protestant Yeomanry, had disarmed the Roman Catholics in most parts of Ireland. In the summer of 1798, however, a rebellion broke out in Wexford, which was crushed by Lake in a fight round Vinegar Hill, in Wicklow (June). When the rebellion was suppressed Humbert landed a French force at Killala, and routed Lake in the "Castlebar Races," but he soon had to surrender to Cornwallis.

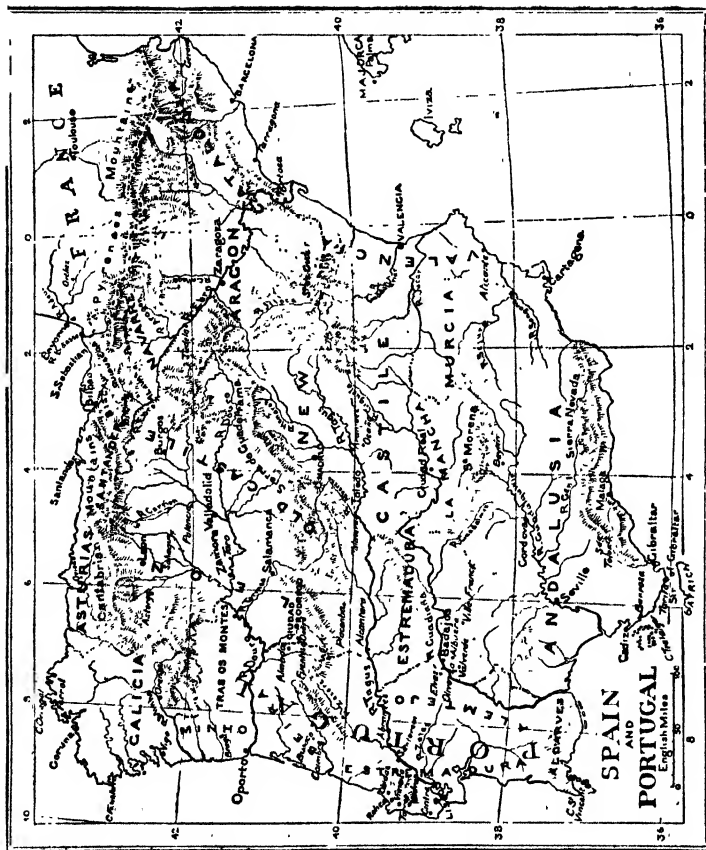
§ 678. **The Brito-Irish Union, 1800.**—The bitterness of Irish factions had disgusted the better kind of British officials—such as Abercromby and Cornwallis—who had to deal with Ireland during these years; and their representations confirmed Pitt in his belief that the only way out of the difficulty was to adopt the expedient of a legislative union. Pitt laid down the terms, and Lord Castlereagh, Chief Secretary to the Lord-Lieutenant Cornwallis, arranged with the Irish borough-mongers for their acceptance by the Irish Parliament. The *Act of Union* was passed by both Parliaments in 1800, and came into force on the first day of the following year. It provided that the Kingdoms of Great Britain and Ireland should form a united Kingdom, having a single Parliament in which Ireland should be represented by four spiritual lords, twenty-eight temporal lords, and one hundred commoners; that the established churches of England and Ireland should also be united; and that Ireland should be admitted to complete commercial equality with Great Britain, and should contribute two-fifteenths of the revenue of the United Kingdom. The Irish Union differed from the Scottish Union of 1707 in several respects, and especially in not containing securities for the religion of the majority of the Irish population. When Pitt introduced these securities in a supplementary measure, he was thwarted by George and compelled to resign in February 1801.

§ 679. **Third and Fourth Mysore Wars, 1790-1799.**—The year of the Irish Rebellion was also the year of Bonaparte's expedition to Egypt; and this latter fact had a great influence on the Indian policy of Richard Wellesley, Earl of Mornington, who became

Governor-General in that year. His two predecessors—Lord Cornwallis (1786-1793) and Sir John Shore (1793-1798)—had done their best to comply with orders from home to abstain from intervention in native affairs. Cornwallis, it is true, had been constrained to take steps against Tipú Sáhib, who had succeeded Haidar Ali as Sultán of Mysore in 1784; and the result of this Third Mysore War (1790-1792) had been the defeat of Tipú and the division of half his territory among the Company, the Nizám and Maráthás. But Shore had permitted the Maráthás to subject to tribute the Nizám of Haidarábád, the oldest native ally of the East India Company. Mornington held that the near approach of Bonaparte, and the actual presence of many French agents in India, made this policy of non-intervention no longer safe; and he resolved to make the Company the Paramount Power in India. With this object he required the Country Powers to cease making war on one another, to receive and pay for the protection of a body of British troops. The Nizám at once accepted these conditions, but Tipú Sáhib—who had had himself enrolled in a Jacobin club in Paris as “Citoyen Tippou”—declined to enter into a “subsidiary treaty.” The result was a short war, ended in May 1799 by the storming of Seringapatam. Tipú died in the fight; and his dominions were assigned partly to a member of the old Hindu line of Rájás, and partly to the Company and its allies. For these services Mornington was created Marquess Wellesley.

§ 680. **Second Maráthá War, 1803-1804.**—In the years 1800-1802 Wellesley annexed Tanjore, the Carnatic, Rohilkhand and the Doáb, and entered into subsidiary treaties with the Peshwá of Poona, the head of the Maráthá Confederacy, and with the Gaekwar of Baroda. But the other Maráthá chiefs held aloof; and Wellesley decided to break their restless energy. In 1803 Wellesley's brother Arthur, afterwards famous as the Duke of Wellington, defeated Sindhiá's troops in the battles of Assaye and Arghum, and overran the upper Deccan; while further north Lake won the battle of Laswári, and Harcourt defeated the Bhonsla of Nagpur and occupied Orissa. In 1804 Lake compelled Holkar to come to terms. The submission of the Maráthás, the most warlike of the native Powers in India, practically made the whole of India, outside Rájputána and the Indus Valley, directly or indirectly subject to the East India Company. Wellesley's activity was not approved of at home, and he was recalled in 1805, but his work remained (Map, p. 454).





## CHAPTER XLVI.

### THE NAPOLEONIC WAR, 1803-1815.

A. PERSONAL HISTORY OF GEORGE III.: see ch. xlii.

B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS: see ch. xlv.

#### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

##### (i) International: *relations with—*

- (1) France: §§ 681, 682, 684-695, 698-703.
- (2) Spain: §§ 682, 684, 687, 692-696, 698, 703.
- (3) Austria: §§ 684, 685, 688, 693, 698, 700, 703.
- (4) Prussia: §§ 688, 690, 698, 700, 703.
- (5) Denmark: §§ 690, 691, 703.
- (6) Russia: §§ 684, 685, 690, 698, 700, 703.
- (7) United States: §§ 682, 689, 697.

##### (ii) Constitutional.

- (1) Ministries: §§ 683, 686, 691, 694, 696
- (2) Parliament: §§ 686, 696.
- (3) Emancipation: §§ 683, 686, 696.
- (4) Regency: § 696.
- (5) Ireland: § 683.
- (6) Colonies: § 687, 703.

#### I. NAPOLEON'S MARITIME ATTACK, 1803-1805.

§ 681. **General Features of the Napoleonic Period.**—The *Peace of Amiens* lasted little more than a year, and was succeeded by a war still more arduous and protracted than that in which Great Britain had been engaged since 1793. As before, the dominant fact in the international situation was the maritime supremacy of Great Britain, which saved her from sharing the fate of her allies. Nevertheless, in other respects, the Napoleonic War differed in character from the Revolutionary War. On the one side, France was no longer heading a crusade on behalf of republican ideals, but was simply one of the instruments wielded by a powerful personality for the creation of a world-empire. On the other side, Great Britain soon lost the services of Pitt, her greatest statesman, and of Nelson, her greatest admiral; and none of their successors, though often men of ability, attained the same pre-eminence. Ultimately, too, Napoleon's imperial system became so oppressive as to arouse national resistances; and the peoples of Europe proved more powerful opponents than their governments had been. Thus, about 1807,

the character of the war changed ; and British operations became increasingly military and aggressive, whereas up to then they had been rather naval and defensive. The comparative safety of Great Britain reacted on home politics, and destroyed the need for the repressive measures of the Georgian Dictatorship.

**§ 682. Breach of the Peace of Amiens, 1803.**—In 1802 Bonaparte was made First Consul for life and thereupon assumed the style of Napoleon ; and in 1804 he received the more dignified title of "Emperor of the French." He not only reconstructed the political system of France on lines which, in the main, proved permanent, but also prepared to make her mistress of the whole world. His schemes ultimately threatened the independence not only of Great Britain but of all other States ; and though their full extent was not known, his annexations in Switzerland and North Italy during the peace which followed the treaties of Lunéville and Amiens caused general alarm. Great Britain made the "aggressions" of Napoleon a pretext for refusing to fulfil her treaty-obligations to evacuate Malta, fearing lest it should be seized by Napoleon, and resented the endeavours of Napoleon to throw impediments in the way of her commerce in the countries under his control. The continuance of peace was essential for Napoleon to make adequate preparations for carrying out his vast designs ; but his contempt for the Addington Ministry made him imagine that it would not attack him whatever he did. In May 1803 however, Great Britain declared war ; and Napoleon at once retorted by seizing some ten thousand British travellers in his dominions (whom he kept captive till the end of the war), and by renewing his preparations for the invasion of England. Henceforth a determination to overthrow Great Britain became his ruling passion ; and in 1803 he made a bid for allies in this policy by selling Louisiana (recently acquired from Spain) to the United States of America.

**§ 683. Pitt Succeeds Addington, 1804.**—In 1803 Napoleon tried to stir Ireland into rebellion against the Union ; but the projected national rising got no further than a riot in Dublin, ending in the capture and execution of Robert Emmett. This rising and Napoleon's vast preparations at Boulogne for an invasion of England itself aroused great excitement in Britain ; and the Addington Ministry showed much energy in building blockhouses along the coast, and in raising hosts of volunteers "for defence and not defiance." But there was no general confidence in Addington ; and in May 1804 he gave place to Pitt—whom Canning had well called

"the pilot that weathered the storm." In taking office again, Pitt promised not to raise the question of Roman Catholic Emancipation and tried to secure a broad-bottomed ministry, which should really represent the union of all groups of politicians against France. But his previous Foreign Secretary, Lord Grenville, would not take office without Fox, and Fox remained intolerable to the King. Pitt was therefore compelled to choose his colleagues exclusively from his old supporters, the Tories, and he naturally fell back on his old policy of forming a European coalition against France.

§ 684. **Battle of Trafalgar, October 21, 1805.**—It was not till the spring of 1805 that Pitt was able to arrange his "third coalition," his allies this time being Austria, Russia, and Sweden; and before that time the Emperor Napoleon had persuaded Spain to declare war on Great Britain, and had matured his plans for an invasion on a great scale. The fleets on which Napoleon depended were, however, shut up in Toulon, Cadiz, Ferrol, Rochefort and Brest by Nelson and his colleagues. Napoleon hoped that some of them might break the blockade and draw away the British fleets to the West Indies, and thence returning might overwhelm the British Channel Fleet and cover the crossing from Boulogne. On March 30, 1805, Villeneuve sailed from Toulon for Martinique, picked up some ships, eluded Nelson's chase, and was back off the coast of Spain early in July. On July 22, Sir Robert Calder failed to stop him in a battle off Cape Finisterre, and Napoleon confidently expected him at Boulogne in a few days. But Villeneuve retreated to Cadiz, and Napoleon, disgusted and impatient, turned his energies elsewhere. Two months elapsed before the Franco-Spanish fleet ventured out of harbour; and then on October 21, eighteen out of their thirty-three ships were taken or destroyed by Nelson and Collingwood, in command of twenty-seven sail, off Cape Trafalgar. Nelson was killed in the battle, but his life-work was achieved. It was not his victory which frustrated the intended invasion of 1805; but by annihilating both the Spanish and the French navies it made similar attempts impossible in the near future. "England," said Pitt in November 1805, "has saved herself by her courage, and will save Europe by her example."

§ 685. **Battle of Austerlitz, December 2, 1805.**—Napoleon had changed his plans on learning Villeneuve's retreat, and turned his "Army of England" against his Continental enemies. Here he was completely successful. Prussia was timidly hesitating between France and Austria, and Russia was still marching her troops west-

wards, when the Austrian general Mack was forced to surrender with the whole of his army at Ulm (October 20). Napoleon defeated the rest of the Austrian forces, and also the Russian army which had joined them, at Austerlitz near Vienna, December 2. The third coalition was shattered: Austria, in the *Treaty of Pressburg*, December 26, ceded Tirol to Bavaria, and her Italian lands to France, in order to save her existence. Pitt is said to have expressed his sense of the greatness of the disaster in the words: "Roll up that map of Europe—it will not be wanted for ten years."

§ 686. **Death of Pitt and Fox, 1806.**—In January 1806 Pitt died, prematurely worn out by his continuous labours and overwhelmed by the disaster of Austerlitz. His last days had also been clouded by the impeachment of his old friend Dundas, Viscount Melville, for malversation as Treasurer of the Navy: it was the last instance of impeachment, and it ended in Melville's acquittal. On Pitt's death, a combined administration such as Pitt himself had desired was formed, and became known as "The Ministry of All the Talents." Lord Grenville, the First Lord of the Treasury, represented the Old Whigs of Burke's school; Fox, the Foreign Secretary, and Erskine, the Lord Chancellor, represented the New Whigs; and Addington, now Lord Sidmouth, represented the "King's Friends." The Ministry, though short-lived, lasted long enough to exhibit some of its "talents." Fox tried to arrange peace, but before his death in September, he discovered that Napoleon was using negotiations simply to gain time for his Continental measures. The humanitarian sympathies of some of its members was shown in the promotion of a *Bill for the Abolition of the Slave Trade*. Before that Bill became law, the Ministry had been shipwrecked on the question of Roman Catholic Emancipation. Grenville introduced a measure giving to Roman Catholics a standing in the British Army similar to that which they had had in the Irish Army before the Union. George III. persuaded his ministers to drop the Bill and also asked them to promise not to renew the subject. On their refusal to make such a pledge, he dismissed them, and deliberately took the opinion of his subjects by means of a General Election. As in 1784, he obtained a large majority.

§ 687. **Transmarine Expeditions of the Talents Ministry, 1806-1807.**—Abroad the Talents Ministry displayed a feverish activity which produced practically no results. In the summer of 1806 they sent an expedition to Italy to help a Calabrian insurrection against Joseph Bonaparte, whom Napoleon had made King of

Naples; but the enterprise had to be abandoned soon after Sir John Stuart's victory at Maida in July. In the spring of 1807 they sent out two other Mediterranean expeditions—against Constantinople and Alexandria respectively; but the first was an immediate failure, and the second resulted only in the temporary occupation of Alexandria. More promising, but also more disastrous, was an attempt on the South American colonies of Spain, to which the Ministry gave its sanction. In January 1806 an expedition sent out by Pitt, took the Cape of Good Hope; and its commander, Sir Home Popham, conceived the idea of trying his luck on the other side of the Atlantic. Monte Video and Buenos Aires were successfully occupied for a time, but in July 1807 the British troops under Whitelock were driven out with great loss.

## II. THE CONTINENTAL SYSTEM, 1806-1808.

§ 688. **The End of the Holy Roman Empire, 1806.**—Meanwhile Napoleon had been busy re-arranging the political map of Europe and preparing to strike at "the nation of shopkeepers," through their commerce. After his great victory at Austerlitz he had created his brothers Joseph and Louis Kings of Naples and Holland respectively, and had organized the petty states of western Germany into a "Confederation of the Rhine" under French protection. These measures naturally alarmed Austria and Prussia. Austria had not yet recovered from her recent disaster, and her ruler contented himself with formally dissolving the Roman Empire—lest Napoleon should force him to abdicate in his own favour—and with falling back on the title which he had assumed two years earlier, "Hereditary Emperor of Austria": Prussia, whose King had accepted Hanover as a bribe from Napoleon to keep quiet during the Austerlitz campaign, imagined that the army which had been created by Frederick the Great was still invincible, and resolved to appeal to arms. In a single day (October 14, 1806) Napoleon at Jena and Davoust at Auerstadt overthrew the Prussians; and a fortnight later the French entered Berlin in triumph.

§ 689. **The Berlin Decrees and the Orders in Council, 1806-1807.**—From the Prussian capital Napoleon launched in November 1806 the decrees that were meant to starve the islanders who were inaccessible to his military power. He declared the British Isles to be in a state of blockade, and forbade any article of British manufacture or origin, or any vessel hailing from Britain and her Colonies, to be admitted within the dominions of France

and her allies. The British Government retorted with *Orders in Council* forbidding neutral vessels to frequent the ports of France and her dependencies unless they had previously touched at a British port; and in December 1807 Napoleon met their counter-attack by his *Milan Decrees*, declaring all ships that had touched at a British port, or had been searched by British warships, to be lawful prize of war. Napoleon's intention was to deprive Great Britain of a market in Europe for her manufactured goods or for her colonial produce: the intention of Great Britain was to make it impossible for any nation to enjoy the trade from which her own merchants were excluded. As Great Britain had a navy, she was able to enforce her Orders and thus deprive the inhabitants of the greater part of Europe of many commodities which had become almost necessities of life. The chief results of Napoleon's Continental System were to injure the growing American trade with the Old World, and to make the Americans annoyed with Great Britain, whose "Orders in Council" were much more operative than the French "Decrees," and, what was much more important, to make all the inhabitants of Europe suffer great inconvenience merely to gratify Napoleon's insensate hatred of Great Britain.

§ 690. *Treaty of Tilsit, July 1807.*—In order to be effective, Napoleon's commercial embargo had to be made as truly "continental" as possible; but when he issued the *Berlin Decrees*, he was still at war with Prussia and Russia, and neither Portugal nor the Scandinavian States had yet bowed the knee to the French Emperor. At first he did not seem to be in a position to isolate Great Britain, for in April 1807 that Power entered into the *Treaty of Bartenstein* with Prussia, Russia and Sweden for common action against France. But Great Britain neglected her Baltic allies in order to have her hands free for her Mediterranean and Oceanic projects; and the consequence was that Russia, after suffering defeat at Friedland in June 1807, came to terms with Napoleon. The Tzar Alexander met the "Emperor of the West," as Napoleon sometimes called himself, on a raft in the Niemen, and there made the bargain formally concluded in the *Treaty of Tilsit* :—

(i) **PUBLIC TREATY.** Russia agrees to recognize Napoleon's reconstruction of Germany—including the creation of a Duchy of Warsaw (held by the King of Saxony), and a Kingdom of Westfalia (held by Jerome Bonaparte), both at the cost of Alexander's ally, Prussia—and the Tzar promises to mediate between France and Great Britain.

(ii) **SECRET TREATY.** If Great Britain refuse the terms offered—abandonment of her maritime claims and recent conquests—Russia is to help France against her, receiving as compensation Finland (to be taken from Sweden), and Wallachia and Moldavia (to be taken from Turkey). Russia also permits Sweden, Denmark, and Portugal to be forced into the French alliance.

§ 691. **The Reply of the Portland Ministry, 1807.**—The Talents Ministry had replied to the *Berlin Decrees* by the *Orders in Council*; but it fell to the lot of their successors to meet these new dangers. Fortunately the new Ministry included members more capable than its nominal chief, the Duke of Portland, or his Chancellor of the Exchequer, Spencer Perceval. The Foreign Secretary was George Canning, one of the ablest of Pitt's followers, and the author of many of the most brilliant verses in the *Anti-Jacobin*; while the Secretary for War and the Colonies was Robert Stewart, Viscount Castlereagh, who had been trained in the same school and had made his mark during the negotiations for the Irish Union. It was Canning who anticipated the Franco-Russian designs on Denmark, by sending an expedition which bombarded Copenhagen in September 1807, and saved the Danish fleet from falling into the enemy's clutches. Naturally the two Emperors who had perpetrated the shameless bargain at Tilsit, joined in denouncing this new illustration of British perfidy and tyranny. The British Ministry also seized the Danish island of Heligoland, which became useful for smuggling goods into Germany; and they helped the Portuguese Royal Family to escape to Brazil when a French army marched into Lisbon to punish Portugal for her half-hearted adhesion to the Continental System.

### III. THE PENINSULAR WAR, 1808-1814.

§ 692. **The National Uprising in Spain and Portugal, 1808.**—Having secured Portugal, Napoleon resolved to take advantage of the presence of his troops in the Iberian Peninsula to strengthen his hold on Spain. In May 1808 he compelled Charles IV. and his son Ferdinand to abdicate in favour of Joseph Bonaparte. As a matter of fact, Joseph was likely to make a far better King than either of the deposed Bourbons; but the Spaniards saw in the change, not a boon to themselves but an insolent and treacherous attempt by a foreign upstart to impose a King on them against their will. They rose *en masse* and thus began a national resistance to Napoleon which was a prime cause of his overthrow. Canning



at once sent help to the insurgents, beginning with Portugal as more convenient. In August Sir Arthur Wellesley landed a considerable force in Mondego Bay, and defeated Junot at Rorica and Vimiero. He was then superseded by senior officers, who at once permitted the French to withdraw under the *Convention of Cintra*. Shortly afterwards Sir John Moore—who had just returned from a futile endeavour to save Sweden from Russia—took the command and marched into the heart of Spain. Completely misled by his Spanish allies, Moore nearly fell into the hands of Napoleon himself; but he contrived to retreat to Corunna, where he was killed in the battle fought to cover the embarkation of the remnant of his forces (January 16, 1809).

§ 693. **Wagram and Walcheren, 1809.**—Though the Spaniards were unable to face the French in pitched battles, and though the British had been forced to withdraw, the Spanish rising necessitated the presence of so large a French army in Spain, that Austria ventured on a fourth effort against France. She declared war in April, and in May she nearly defeated Napoleon in a great fight at Aspern. But in July Napoleon won a decisive victory at Wagram, and in October he again compelled Austria to make peace, and even enter into a marriage alliance. Napoleon divorced Josephine Beauharnais and became the son-in-law of the Emperor of Austria. Meanwhile Great Britain had been trying to help Austria by making a diversion in the Low Countries. The expedition started late; its commanders, Chatham and Strachan, quarrelled; and the army was half destroyed by fever while engaged in a useless siege of Flushing in the island of Walcheren. The failure of the Walcheren expedition led to a duel between Castlereagh, its originator, and Canning, who believed that the Peninsula provided a better field of operations. They both resigned their offices in September, and in the following month Portland retired in favour of Spencer Perceval.

§ 694. **Talavera and Torres Vedras, 1809-1810.**—In the reconstructed Ministry the Foreign Secretary was the Marquess Wellesley and the Secretary of War was the Earl of Liverpool, who, as Lord Hawkesbury, had had much diplomatic experience. Perceval's Administration, after some hesitation, took up the Peninsular War with vigour. There Sir Arthur Wellesley had again taken the command in May, and had at once driven Soult out of Portugal and invaded Spain. In July he had defeated Victor and Jourdan in a battle at Talavera, which gained him the title of Viscount Wellington and which partly balanced the contemporary disasters of Wagram.

and Walcheren. His position was still so uncertain, however, that he dared not risk a battle in the following year, especially as Napoleon had sent large reinforcements into Spain to finish off the war. He retreated slowly before Masséna, and finally retired behind the fortifications which he had had constructed to defend Lisbon across the peninsula between the Tagus and the sea. Masséna could not break through the "triple lines" of Torres Vedras; supplies failed him; and in the spring of 1811 he was compelled to withdraw his starving troops into Spain.

**§ 695. Peninsular Campaigns of 1811, 1812.**—Having secured his hold on Portugal, Wellington was now able again to take the offensive. In May he himself defeated Masséna at Fuentes de Oñoro, and his subordinate Beresford defeated Soult after a deadly struggle at Albuera. The latter battle was fought to cover the siege of Badajos, one of the fortresses on the frontier between Spain and Portugal which it was necessary to take before an invasion of Spain could be safe. Early in 1812 Wellington took both Ciudad Rodrigo and Badajos—not, however, without heavy loss—and pushed on into Spain. There he defeated Marmont at Salamanca in July and occupied Madrid for a moment; but, having received a check at Burgos in September, he again had to retreat to Portugal for the winter. But Napoleon had so drained the Peninsula of troops for his Russian campaign (§ 698), that the south of Spain and the whole of Portugal were now safe from the French; and the Spanish Cortes assembled at Cadiz showed their confidence in the future security of Spain by drawing up the Constitution of 1812.

**§ 696. The Regency and the Liverpool Ministry, 1810-1812.**—George III. was a warm supporter of Wellington; and one of his last public actions, before he became permanently insane in 1810, was to commend the active prosecution of the Peninsular War to his Ministers. The accession of his son George as Regent made little difference in politics: he retained his father's Ministers and later adopted his antipathy to Roman Catholic Emancipation. This change of views became important when the assassination of Perceval in May 1812 necessitated a reconstruction of the Ministry. There were some negotiations with Wellesley and Canning, and later with Lords Grey and Grenville, but all these men were definitely committed to the cause of Roman Catholic relief; and in the end the old Ministry was reconstructed under Lord Liverpool, with Castlereagh and Sidmouth at the Foreign and Home Offices respectively, and with the recognition of Roman Catholic relief as

"an open question." Liverpool remained Premier till 1827, but before that date several significant changes took place in the composition of his Cabinet (§ 708).

**§ 697. The Anglo-American War, 1812-1814.**—In 1812 the Anglo-French commercial war involved France in war with Russia, and Great Britain in war with the United States of America. The commercial regulations of the warring Powers was ruinous to American trade and industry; and though both Powers were equally to blame, the anti-British party in the States managed to concentrate their hostility on Great Britain. The British practice of searching American ships for deserters from the British Navy, and for goods from the French colonies, caused even greater irritation than Napoleon's practice of seizing American ships and goods in European harbours; and in June 1812, the United States formally declared war on Great Britain. The most conspicuous incidents in the war were a number of duels between frigates, in which the American vessels usually had the advantage—the victory of the *Shannon* over the *Chesapeake* outside Boston Harbour being the most notable exception (June 1, 1813). The Americans made various raids into Canada which resulted in barren victories; and British expeditions burnt Washington, but failed to take Baltimore and New Orleans. The war was terminated, without settling the original points of dispute, by the *Treaty of Ghent*, December 1814.

**§ 698. The Russian Campaign and the Wars of Liberation, 1812-1813.**—The American War had no influence whatever on the course of the conflict in Europe; but the contemporary war waged by Napoleon on Russia was even more disastrous to the French cause than the Peninsular War. Finding that Russia was getting few advantages out of the Tilsit agreement, and was suffering severely from the exclusion of British trade, Alexander withdrew from his French alliance; and Napoleon resolved to complete his hold over Continental Europe by conquering Russia. In June 1812 he crossed the Niemen at the head of half a million troops drawn from all the peoples of Europe, and in September he entered the holy city of Moscow. He was compelled by the partial burning of that city to retreat; and in his retreat, he lost nearly the whole of his army. At first his withdrawal seemed to leave him where he was before; but in February 1813 Russia was persuaded to take the offensive and help the states of Central Europe to rise against Napoleonic rule. The principal promoter of this scheme was Baron Sjein, who had re-organized Prussia after the defeats of 1806, and

who, on being driven into exile by Napoleon, had become the Tzar's confidential adviser. At Stein's instance, an appeal was made in Prussia and other German States, not to the duty of the inhabitants towards their princes but to their love for the German fatherland; and the result of their enthusiastic response was the "War of Liberation." In June Austria joined the movement; and in October the Allies drove Napoleon out of Leipsig in the three days' fight known as the "Battle of the Nations." By the end of the year the Allies had advanced to the eastern frontier, while Wellington had followed up a great victory at Vittoria in June by fighting his way inch by inch across the Pyrenees.

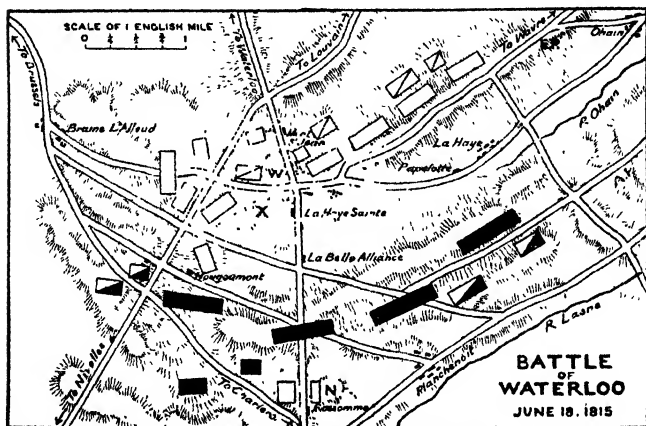
§ 699. **The First Downfall of Napoleon, April 1814.**—The Allies again and again offered favourable terms, which Napoleon rejected partly because he feared that the acceptance of defeat would ruin his domestic position, partly because he disbelieved in the continuance of union among the Allies. Despite their jealousies, however, their armies pressed forward into France during the first three months of 1814. Napoleon himself faced the invaders from Germany, while Soult offered a steady resistance to Wellington's march on the south. Early in April Napoleon was compelled by his marshals to abdicate; and a few days later, Wellington won his final victory over Soult at Toulouse. When the Allies reached Paris, they acquiesced in the preparations that had been made for a Bourbon restoration, in the person of Louis XVI.'s brother, who took the title of Louis XVIII. The *First Treaty of Paris* (May 1814), banished Napoleon to Elba, leaving him the title of Emperor, and assigned to France the boundaries of 1792.

#### IV. THE CONGRESS OF VIENNA, 1814-1815.

§ 700. **Agenda of the Congress.**—Towards the end of the year, the monarchs and statesmen of Christendom (for Turkey was excluded), met in congress at Vienna to settle the affairs of Europe. The four Great Powers—Austria, Great Britain, Prussia and Russia—had already, during the Wars of Liberation, made various agreements among themselves as to the future; and they now desired to keep the decision of outstanding questions in their own hands. But Talleyrand, the astute diplomatist who represented France, put forward the claims of both his own country and the minor Powers of Europe to have a voice in the settlement, and diligently turned the differences among the Great Powers to the advantage of France. In January he succeeded in forming an alliance between France,

Austria and Great Britain to counteract the designs of Russia on Poland and Prussia on Saxony.

§ 701. **The Return of Napoleon and the Fifth Coalition.**—Reports of the quarrels among the diplomatists at Vienna, and of French dissatisfaction with the restored Bourbons, induced Napoleon to make a bid for his old position. On February 26, 1815, therefore, he left Elba, and landing near Antibes, five days later, entered Paris on March 20, again Emperor of the French. The Congress at Vienna



Wellington, 61,000.  
[24,000 = British.]

Napoleon, 71,000.  
[Out of 124,000.]

W = Wellington's Head-quarters.

N = Napoleon's Head-quarters.

A.P. = Prussians under Bülow (4 p.m.).

E.P. = Prussians under Blücher (7 p.m.).

X = Repulse of the Imperial Guard.

at once abandoned their diplomatic discussions, and, in order to crush the common enemy before he should establish himself, promptly formed the Fifth Coalition. Thousands of men were sent by the Allies to the campaign on the north-eastern frontier of France, while Napoleon had on his side all the quarter million veterans, both officers and soldiers, who had been released from prison or garrison at the recent peace. With these he hoped to crush his enemies in detail, before they had time to concentrate.

§ 702. **The Waterloo Campaign, June 15-18, 1815.**—On June 15 Napoleon crossed the Sambre and tried to insert himself between the mixed army of Wellington, whose head-quarters were at Brussels, and the Prussian army lying further to the east. On June 16 Napoleon defeated the Prussians under Blücher at Ligny, and next day sent Grouchy in pursuit of them. On June 16 also, Ney tried, but failed, to dislodge the British and Belgian forces under Wellington from their position at Quatre Bras; and on the 18th Napoleon attempted\*to force his way northwards towards Brussels by way of Waterloo, while the British and their allies on the ridge at S. Jean stubbornly barred the road, till in the evening they were reinforced by the Prussians. Then the British assumed the offensive and helped the Prussians to scatter the French army. The Allies advanced across the French frontier, and on July 7 entered Paris. Napoleon abdicated in favour of his son, and then surrendered to the commander of the British ship *Bellerophon*, lying off Rochefort. He was sent to St. Helena, where six years later he died.

§ 703. **Territorial Settlement of the Congress.**—Having overthrown Napoleon, the Allies rapidly completed the work of settlement interrupted by "The Hundred Days" campaign. Their general plan was to restore the Balance of Power in Europe to the condition in which it was before the outbreak of the French Revolution, compensating some states for their losses, and punishing others which had supported Napoleon. The Bourbons were restored not only in France, but also in Spain and the Two Sicilies; France was reduced to its 1790 boundaries and compelled to pay an indemnity and submit to an army of occupation; Austria received the Venetian territories in North Italy; Prussia received compensation in Pomerania, Saxony, and the Rhine Provinces for the loss of part of her Polish possessions; the Netherlands, northern and southern, were created into a kingdom for the House of Orange; Sweden was compensated for the loss of Finland by the possession of Norway, taken from Denmark; the German lands included in the defunct Holy Roman Empire were formed into a loose confederation under the presidency of the Emperor of Austria; and Great Britain retained Malta, Heligoland, Cape Colony, and Mauritius. The general result was a curious compromise between the old state of things and the new arrangements framed by Napoleon; and the whole scheme was based on the interest of ruling Houses not on the national sentiments which had been recently aroused and which proved to be still active.

## CHAPTER XLVII.

### ROMAN CATHOLIC EMANCIPATION, 1815-1830.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—George IV., eldest son of George III., was born at St. James's Palace, August 12, 1762; was created Prince of Wales, August 17, 1762; married (1) Mary Anne Fitzherbert in 1785 (a marriage illegal under the *Royal Marriage Act* of 1772); (2) Caroline of Brunswick (*d.* August 7, 1821), April 8, 1795; appointed Regent, February 5, 1811; succeeded his father as King, January 29, 1820; crowned at Westminster, July 19, 1821; died at Windsor, June 26, 1830; buried in St George's Chapel. For family connections, see Table, p. 344.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	AUSTRIA.	PRUSSIA.	RUSSIA.	TURKEY.
Pius VII. (1800)	Louis XVIII. (1814)	Ferdinand VII. (1813- 1833)	Francis I. (1804- 1835)	Frederick William III. (1797- 1840)	Alexander I. (1801) Nicholas I. (1825- 1855)	Mahmoud II. (1808- 1839) [Mehemet Ali Pasha of Egypt, 1811- 1849]
Leo XII. (1823)	Charles X. (1824- 1830)		[= Francis II., H. R. E. 1792- 1806]			
Pius VIII. (1829- 1830)						

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) France: §§ 705, 710, 711.
- (2) Spain: §§ 707, 710.
- (3) Austria: §§ 705, 710, 711.
- (4) Russia: §§ 705, 710, 711, 713.
- (5) Turkey: §§ 710, 711, 713.
- (6) United States: § 710.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) Political Parties: §§ 704, 712, 715.
- (2) Ministries: §§ 707, 708, 712.
- (3) Social Discontent: § 706.
- (4) Parliamentary Reform: §§ 708, 715.
- (5) Commerce: § 709.
- (6) Toleration: §§ 712, 713, 714.

### I. CASTLEREAGH AND SIDMOUTH, 1815-1823.

§ 704. **Political Parties after the Great War.**—The era following the battle of Waterloo is sometimes known as "the Thirty Years' Peace." During that period, it is true, there were no great wars in Europe, but neither was there any "peace" in any real sense of the term. The financial burdens directly and indirectly caused by the long wars, together with the growth of political

aspirations among the middle and lower classes of society, brought about almost constant unrest in every European State; and this unrest led to all manner of international complications. The politicians who had to deal with this restlessness fall naturally into three groups—those who wanted to go back to the “good old times” when kings governed and people obeyed; those who wanted to remain where they were, not trying to undo what was done, and still less wishful to make further changes; and those who, either from deliberate choice or because they could not help themselves, wished to “move with the times” and to go forward. Corresponding with these states of mind we find such new party labels as “Reactionary” and “Ultra Royalist”; “Conservative” and “Moderate”; “Liberal,” “Progressive,” and “Radical.” In the beginning the first class of politicians naturally took the lead.

§ 705. **Reaction in Europe, 1815-1820.**—The diplomatists who settled the affairs of Europe at the *Congress of Vienna* were, for the most part, persons whose mental attitude had been formed during the last years of the eighteenth century: inevitably, therefore, they distrusted “popular” movements and dreaded “revolutions.” The leader of this reactionary movement, Prince Metternich, the Austrian Chancellor, had considerable influence over Castlereagh and Wellington, the most eminent British statesmen of the time, and also over the Tzar Alexander, who had done almost, if not quite, as much as Great Britain towards the overthrow of Napoleon. Despot by birth, Liberal in sentiment, Alexander towards the end of 1815 put forward a scheme of a *Holy Alliance* amongst all Christian Kings to “govern their peoples as one Christian nation upon Christian principles”; and most Kings assented to his scheme out of politeness, while laughing in their sleeves at its absurdity or annoyed at the “hypocrisy” of its projector. In the course of the next three years Alexander experienced so much difficulty in governing his kingdom of Poland on Liberal lines, that he practically dropped his ideals and adopted Metternich’s views. In 1818, at the *Congress of Aachen* (Aix-la-Chapelle), Austria, France, Prussia, and Russia formed a *Quadruple Alliance*, designed to check the outburst of revolution, not only in their own territories but in those of neighbouring monarchs. In 1820 revolutions broke out in Portugal, Spain, and Naples; and during the next two years the Great Powers met in various congresses to take joint measures against the revolutionaries. Great Britain, under the guidance of Castlereagh, took no part in these measures and gradually fell out of “the Concert of Europe.”



§ 706. **Reaction in Great Britain, 1815-1819.**—Meanwhile the British Ministry that had declined to repress disorder abroad, until it clearly threatened the peace of Europe, was busy repressing disorder at home. This disorder was almost wholly due to economic causes. The wages of both artisans and of agricultural labourers were low, while taxes and the price of food were high. During the period of the Great War the National Debt had risen from £239,000,000 to £861,000,000; the interest on this alone required taxation at the rate of about 30s. per head; and these taxes were largely raised by customs-duties on the necessities of life. In 1815, to protect the agricultural classes from foreign competition, a new *Corn Law* was passed forbidding the importation of grain until the home supply reached famine prices (in the case of wheat, 80s. per quarter); and the benefit of these high prices went almost wholly to the landlords and the farmers, not to the labourers. The conditions of life in the new factory towns which had sprung up were horrible. Such misery inevitably led to discontent; and this discontent—whether it took the form of riots or agitation, in public meetings or in the newspapers, for political reforms—seemed to a not very wise Government to call for repression. In 1817 Lord Sidmouth, the Home Secretary, obtained a suspension of the *Habeas Corpus Act*, and issued a circular authorizing the local magistrates to arrest persons publishing blasphemous or seditious libels. In 1819 a bungling attempt by the Manchester magistrates to arrest “Orator Hunt” and disperse an illegal meeting in St. Peter’s Fields led to a number of deaths; and this “Manchester Massacre” or “Battle of Peterloo” caused such an outcry that Sidmouth nervously passed the *Six Acts*, giving the magistrates summary powers to disarm agitators, to suppress public meetings and libels. But the same year Peel carried an Act for the resumption of cash payments (§ 671).

§ 707. **George IV. and Queen Caroline, 1820-1821.**—In January 1820 George III. died and was succeeded by his eldest son, who had been Regent for the previous nine years. On the whole this change had some effect in weakening the existing Government. In the first place, it was impossible to feel the same respect for a coarse, selfish, extravagant and immoral man like George IV. as for his father, who, with all his shortcomings, had been devoted to what he believed to be the best interests of his subjects, and whose insanity was partly due to his unremitting attention to his public duties. A silly scheme, known as the Cato Street Conspiracy, to murder the Ministers in February 1820 was evidence of the wide-

spread feeling that nothing good could be expected of the new King. But what chiefly injured the Ministry was its attitude towards a squalid scandal in the Royal Family itself. In 1795 George had married Caroline of Brunswick in order to obtain money from Parliament to pay his debts, but he had separated from her shortly afterwards ; and he now sought a formal divorce from her on the ground of her misconduct. Lord Liverpool was persuaded to bring in a *Bill of Pains and Penalties* dissolving the marriage ; but there was such an outcry against it in the country that the Bill had to be withdrawn. Caroline's foolish behaviour soon destroyed her popularity, and she died in August 1821 ; but the scandal lowered the prestige of the Kingship and the parliamentary position of the Ministers. Some people even thought that it might lead to a revolution similar to those which the misconduct of the restored Bourbons was causing in Spain and in Naples about this time.

**§ 708. Changes in the Liverpool Ministry, 1821-1823.**—Both Ministry and Parliament were undergoing changes which ultimately diminished these prospects of violent revolution. In May 1821 Sidmouth retired from public life owing to the infirmities of age, and was succeeded by Peel at the Home Office ; in September 1822 the Marquess of Londonderry, formerly Viscount Castlereagh, committed suicide, and Canning, about to sail for India as Governor-General, was detained to take the Foreign Secretaryship ; in 1823 Frederick Robinson, afterwards Viscount Goderich and Earl of Ripon, became Chancellor of the Exchequer, and William Huskisson President of the Board of Trade. Thus, instead of Sidmouth, Castlereagh, Vansittart, whose names connote old Toryism, we have Peel, Canning, Huskisson, men of newer and more liberal ideas on politics. The new men were not so much in favour of change as less obstinately opposed to it than their predecessors. In 1821, for instance, they allowed Lord John Russell to carry a Bill disfranchising the Cornish borough of Grampound for corruption, and transferring its two seats to the county of York.

## II. CANNING AND HUSKISSON, 1822-1827.

**§ 709. Huskisson's Commercial Policy, 1823-1826.**—Huskisson used his authority as President of the Board of Trade to transform the commercial policy of Great Britain. Statesmen, following the counsel of associated bodies of merchants, ceased to aim at mercantile supremacy by way of self-sufficiency: their object was to make the country rich by entering more freely into international

trade. He lowered or abolished the import duties on raw materials, especially silk and wool, in order to enable British manufacturers to compete with foreign manufacturers. His *Reciprocity of Duties Act*, 1823, modified the Navigation Laws by giving better terms to countries which facilitated the entrance of British goods and shipping than to those which aimed at complete exclusion of foreigners. In 1824 various old laws regulating wages, and restricting the movements and combinations of workmen, were repealed. In the same year Peel took up the work of criminal law reform, and in the course of the next six years he procured the abolition of many barbarous punishments previously inflicted for petty crimes.

§ 710. **Canning's Foreign Policy, 1822-1826.**—The problems which Canning had to deal with were somewhat different from those which had presented themselves to his predecessor, and he faced them in a somewhat different spirit. Like Castlereagh, Canning believed that his main duty was to maintain British interests; but whereas these had been threatened in Castlereagh's days by the disturbed state of Europe, the danger was now rather that one or other of the Great Powers should aggrandise itself under pretence of putting down disturbances. When he took office the Neapolitan rising had been suppressed by Austria, but the insurgents in Spain and Portugal were still in power, and a fresh rising had broken out in the Balkan Peninsula. The "Latin" risings of 1820 had been made on behalf of "constitutional government"—that is, government in accordance with principles set forth in some such document as the Spanish Constitution of 1812 (§ 695): the "Greek" revolt of 1821 was "national" rather than "constitutional" in object, for it aimed at liberating the Greek Christians from the rule of the Muhammadan Sultan of Turkey. But in dealing with all these different risings in Southern Europe, Canning was largely animated by that distrust of Russia which had been a dominant feature in the international policy of his master, the Younger Pitt. Castlereagh had taken up a policy of strict non-intervention in the internal affairs of other states: Canning sometimes carried this policy of non-intervention a step further, by intervening to prevent intervention. He did not interfere with the action of France in restoring the Bourbon King Ferdinand VII. to his full power in Spain in 1823. But when Russia proposed to help the restored Bourbon to reconquer his revolted Colonies in South America, Canning joined President Monroe of the United States in recognizing the new Republics and in forbidding European interference in America. And when in

1826 France proposed to follow up her intervention in Spain by "restoring order" in Portugal, Canning sent a fleet to the Tagus to help the existing Government, and France drew back, not desiring to become involved in another Peninsular War.

§ 711. **Canning and the Greek Revolt, 1822-1827.**—The Greek Rising in 1821 was variously regarded. To some it was wholly objectionable as being a revolt against a legitimate government: while others approved of it either on sentimental or on religious grounds, that is because they thought of the Greeks as descendants of the heroes of Marathon or as Christians struggling against Muhammadan oppression. Metternich on the one side and the poet Byron (who died at Missolonghi in 1823 while fighting for the Greeks) on the other side were representatives of these extreme views. Canning, though not without the sympathy of a classical scholar for people calling themselves Hellenes, professed to act entirely for the political interests of Great Britain. He could not permit Russia to extend her hold over Turkey under the pretence of championing the liberties of the Christian subjects of the Porte. In 1824 the Sultan obtained the help of his semi-independent vassal, Mehemet Ali, Pasha of Egypt; and an Egyptian army and fleet under Ibrahim Pasha began to reconquer the Morea. In 1825 Alexander I. was succeeded by his brother Nicholas, who was more disposed towards active intervention. Ultimately in July 1827, Canning—who had just become Prime Minister on the retirement of Liverpool—arranged a *Treaty of London* with France and Russia, whereby the three Powers agreed to a joint intervention to secure Greek autonomy. Turkey refused to accept their mediation; Ibrahim refused to withdraw his forces; and so in October the Egyptian fleet was destroyed by the Allied fleet under Codrington in the harbour of Navarino. This battle practically secured for the Greeks the independence which their intestine quarrels made them unable to win for themselves.

### III. WELLINGTON AND O'CONNELL, 1827-1830.

§ 712. **Ministerial Changes, 1827.**—Before the battle of Navarino had been fought Canning's brief premiership had been ended by death; and his successors disapproved of his policy so far as to describe the battle as "an untoward event." Lord Liverpool had retired through ill-health early in 1827, and Canning had taken his place in April. The immediate consequence was the resignation of the high Tories—Eldon, Wellington and Peel—who refused to

serve under Canning because he was in favour of Roman Catholic Emancipation. Canning obtained the support of some of the Whigs, and continued his efforts to bring the Greek revolt to a close in favour of the Greeks. He died in August 1827, and Goderich formed an Administration consisting mainly of Tories like Wellington, who could not endure Canning's progressive policy. Goderich was a capable official, but he lacked the power to control subordinates; and in January 1828 he resigned in favour of Wellington.

**§ 713. Wellington and Protestant Nonconformists, 1828.**—Wellington was popularly known as the "Iron Duke"; but as a politician he almost merited the description given to a later British statesman—"a lath painted to look like iron." A Tory of the "high and dry" school, he was continually taking up positions which he believed to be logically impregnable, but which in course of time his strong common-sense showed him to be practically untenable. In foreign policy he disliked the extension of Russian control over Turkey; and yet he withdrew from that intervention in Greek affairs whereby Canning had striven to diminish the influence of Russia in Balkan affairs. In home politics he wished to maintain the existing constitution in Church and State; and yet his Ministry was marked by two ecclesiastical measures which his friends regarded as revolutionary. These measures removed certain civil disabilities to which Protestant Dissenters and Roman Catholics respectively were still subjected on account of their religious beliefs. In 1828 Lord John Russell carried a motion for the repeal of the *Corporation Act* of 1661, and of the *Test Act* of 1673, so far as they related to the Dissenters; and the Ministry, though opposing the resolution, felt it expedient to support the Bill which was based on it. For more than a century, however, these Acts had been rendered practically inoperative in consequence of annual *Indemnity Acts*, by which Dissenters had been pardoned their offences against them during the preceding twelvemonth (§ 567).

**§ 714. Wellington and Catholic Nonconformists, 1829.**—The question of Roman Catholic Emancipation was more difficult, and was taken in hand in a different spirit. During the eighteenth century the persecution of Roman Catholicism as a religion had gradually disappeared; but there remained, as there still remains, the idea that the somewhat elastic and indefinable claims of the Papacy made it dangerous to accord to her adherents the privileges of full citizenship. These privileges, however, had been promised during the negotiations for the Irish Union; and there was a con-

tinuous demand in Ireland for the fulfilment of Pitt's pledges. Daniel O'Connell had organized Irish opinion on this point by means of a Catholic Committee (1809), and later by a "Catholic Association" (1823), which soon wielded more power in Ireland than the Government itself. Conflicts between this Association and the rival Orange Societies led in 1825 to the suppression of all such associations for three years. On the expiring of this Act in 1828 the Catholic Association at once showed its power by carrying O'Connell as member for Clare against a popular Protestant candidate, Vesey Fitz-Gerald. There seemed to be no alternative between civil war and the removal of the cause of discontent; and the Tory Ministry preferred the latter. In March and April 1829 they forced through Parliament a *Roman Catholic Relief Act* which admitted Roman Catholics, on taking a new oath instead of the Oath of Supremacy, to both Houses of Parliament, to all corporate bodies, to all lay judicial offices, and to all political offices except those of Regent, Lord Chancellor in England and Ireland, and Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland. This concession was safeguarded by measures suppressing the Catholic Association and minimizing the electoral influence of the Irish Romanist priesthood by raising the Irish freehold franchise qualification from 40s. to £10.

§ 715. **State of Parties at the Death of George IV., June 1830.**—Despite the opposition of the King and of the Anglican clergy, Wellington and Peel had carried their measure; but they had estranged many of their supporters in so doing. They had already quarrelled with the moderate Tories in 1828 over a point of Parliamentary Reform. There had been proposals to disfranchise the pocket boroughs of Penryn and East Retford, and to transfer the seats to Manchester and Birmingham; and the "Canningite" members of the Ministry—Huskisson, Henry Temple, Viscount Palmerston, and William Lamb, later Viscount Melbourne—had resigned because their leaders would not support the proposal. These differences of opinion all illustrated the break-up of the Tory party into the elements out of which it had been compounded—those who believed, and those who disbelieved, in the desirability or inevitableness of "reform." In June 1830 George IV. died, and in the following month Charles X. was suddenly expelled from France by the July Revolution. These events marked the collapse of the reactionary movement at home and abroad.

## CHAPTER XLVIII

### PARLIAMENTARY REFORM, 1830-1837.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—William Henry, Duke of Clarence, third son of George III., was born August 21, 1765; married Adelaide of Saxe-Meiningen, 1818; succeeded his eldest brother, George IV. (Frederick, Duke of York, having died in 1827), with the title William IV., June 26, 1830; died at Windsor, without surviving issue, June 20, 1837; buried at St. George's Chapel, Windsor. For family connections, see Table, p. 344.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	AUSTRIA.	PRUSSIA.	RUSSIA.	TURKEY.
Pius VIII (1829- 1830) Gregory XVI. (1831- 1846)	Revolution of July: Louis Philippe (1830- 1848)	Ferdinand VII. (1808) Isabella II (1833- 1868)	Francis I. (1804) Ferdinand I. (1835- 1848)	Frederick William III. (1797- 1840)	Nicholas I. (1825- 1855)	Mahmond II. (1808- 1839) Otto, King of Greece (1832- 1862)

### C. TOPICS OF THE REIGN.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) France: §§ 716, 721, 731, 732.
- (2) Belgium: §§ 716, 721, 731.
- (3) Spain: § 731.
- (4) Austria: §§ 716, 721, 731.
- (5) Russia: §§ 716, 721, 731, 732.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) Ministries: §§ 717, 719, 722, 725, 727, 728.
- (2) Parliament: §§ 717-720, 726, 729.
- (3) Social Reform: §§ 722-724, 726, 728-730.
- (4) Ireland: §§ 720, 722, 725, 730.
- (5) India: §§ 722, 732, 733.

### I. THE GREAT REFORM BILL, 1830-1832.

§ 716. **The Year of Revolution, 1830.**—The year of William IV.'s accession was a "year of revolution" in many parts of Europe. In July Charles X. of France was expelled from Paris, and after an interval was succeeded by his distant cousin, Louis Philippe, Duke of Orleans. The new monarch owed his position to popular election

not to the principle of "legitimacy"; and this fact was expressed both by his title "King of the French," and also by his pose of being a "citizen King." The establishment of the July monarchy made revolution infectious. The inhabitants of the Southern Netherlands, who had now assumed the classic name of Belgians, rose against their Dutch masters and were ultimately allowed by the Powers to form an independent Kingdom of Belgium. There were minor movements against the Metternich system in Germany; and further east the Poles rose in revolt against Russia—only to be subjugated in the following year. Quite as revolutionary in their ultimate effects though not involving bloodshed, were two British events in the same year—the opening of the Liverpool and Manchester Railway in September (when Huskisson was killed), and the resignation of Wellington in November.

**§ 717. Formation of the Grey Administration, 1830.**—The abolition of anomalous disabilities on the score of religion (§§ 713, 714) had left the way clear for the abolition of anomalous privileges in the parliamentary electorate. But Wellington and his friends were not inclined to give way on this point as they had done on the other. During 1830, in fact, Peel had given out as his deliberate opinion the statement that "there was a general representation of the people in the House of Commons, and that the popular voice was sufficiently heard"; while his chief had expressed himself as "fully convinced that the country possessed at the present moment a Legislature which answered all the good purposes of legislation, and this to a greater degree than any legislature had ever answered in any country whatever." On the other hand, Lord Grey, the leader of the Whigs in the Upper House, had advocated reform not because those taxed had a right to vote, nor yet because manhood was itself a right to suffrage, but in order "to secure the affections" of the unrepresented classes, and "to reduce their grievances." Grey, in fact, believed that Parliamentary Reform was the only way to avoid such civil wars and tumults as those which were convulsing continental states at the time; and when Wellington resigned in November, Grey formed a Ministry of men who shared his views. Some of his colleagues were Whigs—*e.g.* Lords Althorpe and Durham—and some were Canningites—*e.g.* Palmerston, Melbourne and Goderich, the three Secretaries of State.

**§ 718. First and Second Reform Bills, 1831.**—In March, 1831, Lord John Russell, who was in the Ministry but not in the Cabinet, introduced into the House of Commons a Reform Bill which



had the "unanimous consent of the whole Government"; the second reading was carried by a majority of one in the largest house on record (302 to 301); but a little later the Government was defeated in committee and resolved to "appeal to the country." The elections caused intense excitement and resulted in a great increase in the majority of the Government. In June Russell and Stanley introduced a second Bill, which passed the House of Commons in September, but was rejected by the Lords in October. During the autumn recess meetings were held all over the country in favour of the Bill: at one of these, in Birmingham, a resolution was passed not to pay taxes until the Bill became law; at another, in Bristol, riots resulted in the burning of many public buildings and the death or disablement of more than a hundred persons.

§ 719. **Third Reform Bill, January-June, 1832.**—In December 1831 there was introduced a Third Bill, embodying many amendments which had been suggested in the debates on its forerunners, and this passed through the House of Commons before the end of March 1832. Various attempts were made to stop its progress in the House of Lords; and in May the Ministry asked the King to create peers enough to pass the Bill. When he refused, the Ministers resigned; the Duke of Wellington tried to form an administration pledged to a more moderate scheme of reform, but failed; and the King had to take back Grey and his colleagues and promise to create peers or do anything else necessary to carry the Bill through the Lords. Under this pressure, applied by Ministers to King and Lords at the bidding of the masses outside Parliament, the Bill became law in June 1832.

§ 720. **The Reform Acts, 1832.**—The English *Reform Bill* was followed by similar Bills dealing with Scotland and Ireland. Their general effect was to redistribute seats according to the existing distribution of the inhabitants (but without provision for future changes) and to put the franchise on a wider and more uniform footing. The principal details may be thus summarized:—

- (i) **REDISTRIBUTION OF SEATS:** 143 seats are taken away from "rotten boroughs" and given to hitherto unrepresented towns, such as Leeds and Birmingham, to counties, to Ireland (5) and to Scotland (8).
- (ii) **FRANCHISE:** (1) *In Boroughs*, the old and various systems are replaced by a uniform £10 household franchise; (2) *in Counties*, the old freehold voters are supplemented by copyholders, leaseholders, and the more important tenants at will.

§ 721. **Palmerston's Foreign Policy, 1830-1832.**—While most of the members of Lord Grey's Ministry had been fully engaged with their scheme for Parliamentary Reform, the Foreign Secretary, Lord Palmerston, had been busy attempting to adjust the various revolutionary movements in Europe. Palmerston here acted in the spirit of Canning rather than of Castlereagh or Wellington. He opposed the reactionary policy of Metternich wherever he could—that is to say, roughly, wherever, if it came to fighting, he could make use of the British fleet. Poland and Germany were inaccessible, and accordingly Palmerston could do nothing to save the Polish nationalists or the German constitutionalists from being suppressed by the Emperors of Russia and Austria. But in the West he stood firm for Liberal principles and British interests. In close alliance with Louis Philippe he helped the Belgians to make good their independence; and in the Conference of London, 1831, he fixed with the Western Powers the limits of the new state, and arranged that the King should be Leopold of Saxe-Coburg, the widower of George IV.'s popular daughter, the Princess Charlotte. This settlement was ultimately accepted by Russia and Holland. The general trend of Palmerston's policy was in the early years of his Secretaryship to join France in opposition to the Eastern Powers, Austria, Prussia, and Russia; and, on the whole, this policy was continued, whenever France had not conflicting interests, throughout the thirty years of his career as Foreign Minister.

## II. THE FIRST TWO REFORMED PARLIAMENTS, 1833-1837.

§ 722. **Abolition of Slavery, 1833.**—By carrying the *Reform Acts* the Ministry was in some ways strengthened, and in others weakened. In the first reformed House of Commons, which met in January 1833, the Tories led by Peel numbered less than one hundred and fifty. But many of the supporters of the Government were not satisfied with the measure of Parliamentary Reform in its final shape and wanted other reforms; and in attempting to meet the wishes of its Radical and Irish supporters the Ministry not only became divided against itself, but also alienated many of its friends. Before it fell to pieces, however, it did a great deal of useful work. In 1833 it passed a *Coercion Act* to enable the authorities to cope with the disorder in Ireland; a new *Bank Charter Act*, according to which the Bank of England was to retain its monopoly of issuing notes within sixty-five miles of London, while the relations between the Government and the Bank

were modified; a new *East India Company Act*, by which the Company was to abandon all commerce and devote itself to the government of India, for which purpose it was subsidized by the State; and an Act for the total suppression of slavery in the Colonies. The planters received as compensation the sum of £20,000,000, and the slaves were to be gradually emancipated: this was later found impracticable, and they were freed entirely at once. This Act caused much trouble in the West Indian slave-holding Colonies, and in South Africa (§ 744).

§ 723. **The First Education Grant, 1833.**—The Act for the Abolition of Slavery was accompanied by measures for the relief and improvement of classes at home whose lot was little better, perhaps even worse, than that of the negro slaves in distant dependencies. One of these instituted the practice of parliamentary grants in aid of the education of the poor: the other continued on a more extensive scale previous attempts to alleviate the hardships of the factory system. During the eighteenth century private individuals like Robert Raikes of Gloucester had started teaching work in a similar spirit to that in which Wesley and Whitefield had begun preaching to the uneducated masses; and early in the nineteenth century two large societies had been founded with the same object. One of these, "The British and Foreign School Society" (1807), comprised Protestants of all denominations: the objects of the other (1811) are sufficiently indicated by its cumbersome title, "The National Society for the Education of the Poor in the Principles of the Established Church." The Whig Ministry in 1833, finding that only one quarter of the children in the land received any schooling, made a grant to help these societies in their work. The original grant was only £20,000 per annum, but it led six years later to an increase, to the beginning of a system of inspection by the State, and to ever-growing conflicts as to what should be the "religious" teaching supported by public money.

§ 724. **Ashley's Factory Act, 1833.**—The other Act of 1833 which inaugurated a new departure by the State sprang from humanitarian motives similar to those which brought about the abolition of slavery, but affected the home country more directly. At the instance of Lord Ashley, afterwards Earl of Shaftesbury, an Act was passed forbidding the employment in factories of children under nine years of age, and limiting the work-time of "children" (between 9 and 13) to forty-eight hours per week, and that of "young persons" (between 13 and 18) to sixty-nine hours a week.

Somewhat similar measures had, it is true, been passed in 1802 and 1819; but this "*Third*" *Factory Act* differed from its predecessors in being general—not merely confined to cotton mills—and in establishing special inspectors to see that its provisions were carried out. The Education Grant and the *Factory Act* mark the beginning of the reaction against the unrestricted "liberty" advocated by the Whigs—the reaction which has had such triumphs in our own day, and which, under the name of state-socialism, aims at diminishing individual liberty in the name of the welfare of the community.

§ 725. **Reconstruction of the Ministry under Melbourne, 1834.**—In the summer of 1834 differences on Irish questions led to the reconstruction of the Ministry. Immediately after the passing of the *Roman Catholic Emancipation Act* (§ 714), Daniel O'Connell had transferred his genius for political agitation to fresh fields, and had begun to work for the repeal of the Union and to release the Roman Catholic peasantry from paying tithes for the support of a Church to which they did not belong. In the years 1830-2 the struggle was so keen that practically no tithe could be collected in Ireland; and the question was one of the first that faced the Whig Ministry after the passing of the Reform Bill of 1832. In 1833 they passed a *Church Temporalities Act*, which gave to the State the control of Irish Church funds with a view to their better management. Incidentally, the question arose what was to be done with a possible surplus: should it be used simply for ecclesiastical purposes, or should it be "appropriated" to such objects as education? This new question of "appropriation" became more important in Brito-Irish parliamentary politics than the tithe question, out of which it arose. In May Stanley, Ripon and others resigned because they objected to a proposal to reduce the temporal possessions of the "Church of Ireland"; and in July Earl Grey followed their example. As Peel declined to take office, the remnants of Grey's Ministry were reorganized under Lord Melbourne, formerly Home Secretary under Grey.

§ 726. **Poor Law Amendment Act, 1834.**—Melbourne's four months' ministry was memorable only for the passing of the *Poor Law Amendment Act*. Owing to the extension of the practice of supplementing wages out of the rates by means of outdoor relief, more than one-seventh of the population had become paupers, and the cost of administering the Poor Law had mounted to nearly £9,000,000, entailing a charge of over 10s. per head of the population. The new law returned to the Elizabethan tradition of dis-

tinguishing sharply between the destitute poor and the professional loafer, requiring the latter to do a definite amount of work in return for a definite amount of relief ; and it at once lessened and more fairly distributed the cost of administration by requiring adjacent parishes to enter into "unions" and to submit their accounts to a department of the Central Government. In three years the amount spent on Poor Relief fell by nearly £3,000,000 ; and this pecuniary gain was accompanied by a marked moral improvement in the poorer classes.

**§ 727. Peel's First Ministry, December 1834-April 1835.**

—In November 1834 the death of Earl Spencer involved the transfer of his son Lord Althorpe, to the House of Lords. Believing that no member of the Ministry could take Althorpe's place as leader of the House of Commons, William IV. dismissed Melbourne and sent for Wellington, who advised the nomination of Peel as Prime Minister. Peel hastened back from Rome and undertook the task, giving the Foreign Office to Wellington, and a minor post to William Ewart Gladstone, whom a few years later Macaulay described as the "rising hope of the stern and unbending Tories." Peel at once dissolved Parliament and formulated in his *Tamworth Manifesto* a program of quiet reform which distinguished his new "Conservative" party from the frigid Tories out of whom it had grown. The new House of Commons contained a Whig majority ; and after two months struggle Peel had to abandon for the present his attempt to carry on the government. The whole episode is chiefly important for showing that, though William IV. was personally popular as "the Sailor King," the Kingship had no longer the same predominant weight in the Constitution that it had had in 1784 or 1807.

**§ 728. The Municipal Reform Act, 1835.**—Melbourne returned to office with most of his former colleagues, except the unruly intriguer, Lord Brougham, who had been Lord Chancellor in his former administration ; Lord John Russell was Home Secretary ; and Lord Palmerston was Foreign Secretary. Though still weak and divided, the Ministry continued to do useful work during the two years left to it before the death of William IV. in June 1837. In June 1835 Lord John Russell introduced a *Municipal Reform Act* which authorized the substitution of uniform representative government in towns for the various forms of government that existed in consequence of the varied developments of mediaeval boroughs and Stuart interferences therewith. The new boroughs were to be ruled by town councils elected by all male ratepayers

who had resided in the town for three years ; in order to keep the government respectable, a property qualification was required for town councillors ; and in order to keep the government steady and continuous, the councillors were to choose aldermen who were to hold office for six years (twice as long as the ordinary councillor). The Act was gradually adopted in most large centres of population—except the City of London, which still retains its ancient constitution, slightly modified—and everywhere the new councils set themselves to improve the conditions of the towns.

§ 729. **Various Reforms in 1836.**—In 1836 the House of Commons showed how it had outgrown the exclusiveness of its eighteenth century predecessors by beginning to publish its division-lists and by reducing the newspaper tax to one penny. In 1836 also a body of Ecclesiastical Commissioners was incorporated by Parliament to manage large parts of the revenues of the Church of England, and especially to adapt their distribution to the new needs. But most significant of Whig policy were the Bills passed in 1836 to diminish the friction between the established clergy and the Nonconformists. Registration of births and deaths was wholly secularized ; that of marriages was to be made by the minister performing the ceremony and transmitted to the Registrar if the minister were of the Established Church ; if not, the marriage could be solemnized in the Nonconformist building in presence of the Registrar. Tithes could also be commuted for rent charges, a permission which was almost everywhere used. Similar to these Bills in object was the combination of University College, an “undenominational” institution founded in 1827, with King’s College, an Anglican establishment founded in 1829, to form a University of London empowered to grant degrees to any persons passing purely intellectual tests. This was a sop to the Nonconformists to console them for their failure to gain full admission to the older Universities of Oxford and Cambridge.

§ 730. **Beginnings of the Oxford Movement, 1833-1837.**—The attitude of the Whigs towards the various questions connected with both the Irish and the Anglican Churches—an attitude which was meant to express impartiality but which struck many people as being the outcome of sheer indifference—was one of the many causes leading during the thirties of the nineteenth century to a great Anglican revival. This revival is variously known from its place of origin as “the Oxford Movement,” and from its method of appealing to the public by means of Tracts (begun in 1834) as “the

Tractarian Movement." Its leaders—John Keble, John Henry Newman, and Edward Pusey, all of Oxford, and Hugh James Rose of Cambridge—stoutly asserted the essentially spiritual nature of the Church, maintained its independence of the State, and traced the authority of its officials not to the State but to the Founder of Christianity by means of the apostolical succession of its ordained priests and bishops. The Tractarians laid more stress on the claims of the Church of England to be a branch of the Catholic Church than on its Protestant aspects; and in the long run some of their ablest men—especially Newman and Manning—joined the Church of Rome. Like their Evangelical predecessors, Wesley and Simcon, they threw themselves with great zeal into the work of preaching the Gospel to the masses of the uneducated poor.

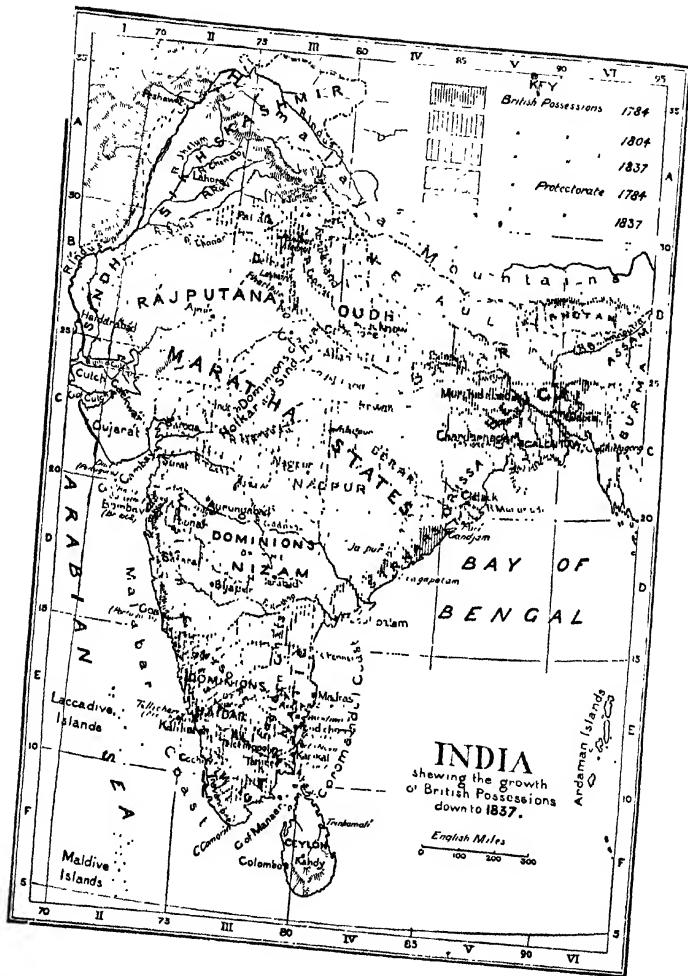
§ 731. **Palmerston and Mediterranean Questions, 1833-1837.**—Meanwhile Palmerston had been continuing to act in harmony with France in various questions that had arisen in the Mediterranean; and the friendly relations of the two Channel Powers had been answered by the Conference of Münchengrätz, in September 1833, when the three Eastern Powers drew closer together to resist the infection of their own spheres of influence by the Liberal principles of their late Allies. The chief spheres of Palmerston's activity were the Peninsula and the Levant. In both Spain and Portugal there were dynastic disputes between young queens (who owed their position to the setting aside of the "Salic Law") and rather unpleasant uncles, Don Carlos and Dom Miguel respectively, who put themselves at the head of the reactionary clerical parties. In April 1834 France and Great Britain formed with the existing Governments of Spain and Portugal a *Quadruple Alliance* to drive the pretenders from the Peninsula, and for a moment they were successful. In the previous year France and Great Britain had helped Mehemet Ali of Egypt to obtain Syria by the *Treaty of Kutaya* (§ 711); and the Sultan Mahmoud had retorted by inaking a *Treaty of Unkiar-Skelessi* with Russia, whereby the latter acquired an exclusive right of navigating the Dardanelles in time of war. Great Britain and France joined in a formal protest against this treaty, and some years later took steps to enforce their protest (§ 745).

§ 732. **Territorial Extension of British India, 1805-1828.**—French action in Mediterranean questions was partly determined by the fact that since 1830 France had been engaged in the conquest of Algeria, while British action was still more fully influenced

by the proposed revival of the Mediterranean route to India. Since the recall of the Marquess Wellesley (§ 680), British power in India had spread in many directions. Territorial extension had been made chiefly under the governorships of Lord Moira, Marquess of Hastings (1814-1823), and Earl Amherst (1823-1828). In 1815 the Ghurkas of Nepál had been chastised for their raids into the Ganges Valley; in 1817 the Pindaris of Malwá had been not only chastised but suppressed for their freebooting in Central India; and the Third Maráthá War of 1817-1818 had resulted in the annexation of Maráthá lands to the Bombay Presidency and to the Central Provinces. Hastings thus consolidated British dominion in India itself: his successor, Amherst, was rather bent on the protection of that dominion from external attack. The First Burmese War (1824-6) resulted in the *Treaty of Yandabu*, whereby the King of Ava ceded Assam along the Brahmaputra, and the maritime provinces of Arakan and Tenasserim.

§ 733. **Administrative Changes in British India, 1828-1835.**—Meanwhile the idea that India was a place to be exploited by British merchants and officials, was beginning to be more and more modified by the ideal of governing India for the good of its inhabitants. This new phase is especially associated with the governorship of Lord William Bentinck (1828-1835). He did his best to crush the two Hindu practices which had hitherto been winked at by the Company because of their religious basis: *sati*, the self-cremation of widows, was declared culpable homicide; and *thagi*, the strangling of wayfarers in honour of the goddess Kálí, was gradually suppressed by William Sleeman. Increased facilities were given to Christian missionaries; education was further endowed; and more openings in the Company's service were found for educated natives. During Bentinck's rule also the Company ceased to be distinctively commercial. In 1813, when its Charter had been revised, the Company had been deprived of its monopoly of Indian trade and received a Government guarantee on its stock: in 1833 it was deprived of its monopoly of the China trade, and became a purely administrative concern which was little more than a distinct department of the British Government.





## BOOK XII.

### *THE VICTORIAN AGE, 1837-1901.*

#### INTRODUCTION.

§ 734. **Retrospect, 1793-1837.**—In our last book we say Great Britain involved in two great struggles, each of which was intimately connected with the vast economic changes summed up under the phrase, “the Industrial Revolution.” During the years 1793-1815 Great Britain successfully maintained her right to exist, and even to extend her power by land and sea, against the opposition of various governments in France which, however different from one another in other things, had a common characteristic in hostility to Great Britain; and during the peaceful years which followed, 1815-1837, Great Britain was generally occupied with the various troubles—economic and political—arising at home and abroad out of the Great War. During the whole of this period British statesmen were almost wholly concerned with the British Isles, and showed themselves embarrassed rather than interested by the dependencies beyond the seas which, despite their indifference, increased almost automatically in extent and importance. In the Victorian Age, which forms the subject of our closing book, however, we shall find imperial questions gradually rising almost to a level with purely domestic questions in the thoughts of British statesmen and citizens; and at the opening of the twentieth century it begins to seem possible that an imperial patriotism may ultimately dominate the various provincial patriotisms existing within the British Empire.

§ 735. **Period Divisions of the Victorian Era, 1837-1901.**—In studying the history of modern times we are overwhelmed by the complexity and mass of events happening in a wider area than in former times came within the ken of Europeans; and we are also hampered in both the selection and the criticism of our facts by our nearness to the events described. In the following account of the Victorian Age we shall continue to adopt a roughly chronological order, even though that method involves sudden jumps from one end of the earth to the other; but before proceeding to the chrono-

logical narrative we shall endeavour to give a connected view of some of the leading topics of interest. Our chronological narrative will fall into four period divisions: in our first (1837-1846) we shall see how gradually Sir Robert Peel was driven, not by the Chartist agitation, but by his own strong common-sense, to adopt the policy embodied in the "Repeal of the Corn Laws"; our second period (1846-1865), which includes the Crimean War and the Indian Mutiny, is dominated by the personality and policy of Lord Palmerston; our third period (1865-1885) is mainly occupied with the rivalry between Disraeli and Gladstone about parliamentary reform, education, the relations of Church and State, Irish, Turkish and Indian questions, and a variety of other matters; and our fourth period (1885-1901), though partly occupied by a premature and partial attempt to dissolve the so-called "United Kingdom," is mainly filled with the scramble for Africa, in the course of which Great Britain is involved in wars in both North and South Africa, and ultimately emerges triumphant.

§ 736. *Europe during the Victorian Era, 1837-1901.*—Among the more notable features in the history of Europe during the Victorian Era were (1) the extension of the principle of Nationality; (2) the creation of armed nations equipped with weapons of precision; and (3) the Colonial Renaissance which has caused nearly all the states of Europe to indulge in colonial ambitions. Before the accession of Queen Victoria, the principle of nationality had already been successfully asserted by the Greeks (§§ 710, 711) and by the Belgians; and during the earlier part of her reign it was further asserted by the establishment of an Italian Kingdom in 1861, and a German Empire in 1871. But the principle of Nationality seems to have seen its best days. It is not yet clear whether the Italian national kingdom will be able to hold its own against the open hostility of the Roman Church, which had successfully hindered Italian unity for a thousand years; and it is clear that the principle of Nationality has failed in the Balkans, in Ireland, and in South Africa. The chances of small peoples asserting or maintaining their independence have been lessened by the growth in the greater states since the middle of the nineteenth century of huge armies, levied by conscription for short service, and armed with weapons which are in every way more effective than those used in the Great War. The inventive skill which early in the century revolutionized the industrial arts of manufacture and transport has later been applied to the military art; and the great preservative of

peace has come to be the fear of using, in actual war, an untried armoury of destructive machines. During the last twenty years or so the states of Europe have diverted their activity from mutual wars to the easier and safer pursuit of exploiting the backward peoples of the earth; and the result of this development is that, whereas in 1815 the only colonial states of Europe were Great Britain, Holland, Spain and Russia, in 1900 France, Germany, Italy, and the United States have been added to the number of competitors. One of the great questions of the twentieth century will be whether the increased contact between white and coloured peoples will have good or evil results on both parties.

§ 737. **Economic Features of the Victorian Era.**—One of the motives of this colonial activity of the European Powers has been the desire to secure markets for the goods manufactured in the home country. In this sphere of work there have been two conflicting ideals—the international ideal of “Free Trade,” and the national ideal of “Protection.” Some have advocated the breaking down of economic barriers (customs-dues and the like) between different countries, in the hope that free and unrestricted competition would enable the inhabitants of each country to obtain, without let or hindrance, what they needed from the countries which could supply best their needs. Others have advocated the policy of breaking down economic barriers inside states, but raising them against all foreigners in order to make each state as self-sufficing as possible, and to protect it from becoming dependent on others. About the middle of the nineteenth century, when many believed that a state of universal peace and brotherhood was both possible and desirable, Great Britain adopted a policy of Free Trade in the interests of her manufacturing population; and this policy she has ever since maintained. It was confidently expected by the champions of Free Trade that the rest of the civilized world would imitate the economic, as they were already imitating the political, ideals of Great Britain; and in 1851 a Great Exhibition was held in London to teach the world the beauties and delights of Peace and British Industrial Supremacy. Most other states, however,—even the self-governing Colonies of Great Britain—have adopted a policy of Protection; and it is not yet clear that their inhabitants are poorer or less contented than those of the British Isles in consequence. The improved facilities for communication (by cheap posts, telegraphs, and telephones) and transport (by railway and steamer) have diminished the physical obstacles in the way of intercourse

between different parts of the earth, but have increased rather than lessened the moral obstacles raised by mutual jealousies and conflicting interests.

§ 738. **Political Features of the Victorian Era.**—The middle third of the nineteenth century, when the dream of "universal peace" among the "nations" was most prevalent amongst earnest men, was also the flourishing period of "democracy"—the idea of "government of the people by the people for the people," as it was expressed by one of the great men of the century, Abraham Lincoln. During the latter part of the century the notion that democratic rule must necessarily be better in its results than monarchic or aristocratic rule has almost disappeared; but on the other hand the adoption of democratic principles, as the only possible working basis of government, has been general wherever English-speaking peoples have dwelt. In purely insular politics the great landmarks are the *Parliamentary Reform Acts* of 1832, 1867, and 1884-5, and the successive reform of Local Government on representative lines in the Borough (1835), the Shire (1888), and the Parish (1895). In imperial politics the great landmarks have been the grant of responsible self-government to all the great colonies situated in temperate climates—to Canada in 1840, to the principal Australian Colonies at intervals between 1850 and 1890, and to Cape Colony in 1872. For various reasons Ireland and India have not yet been treated in the same way.

§ 739. **Colonial Expansion during the Victorian Era.**—The relations between Great Britain and her Colonies underwent during the Victorian Era and are still undergoing interesting transformations, the end of which it would be rash to prophesy. The general nature of the change has been this: Mother Country and Colonies, instead of regarding one another as necessary evils, have come to regard one another as linked by common sentiments and common interests against the rest of the world. At the beginning of Queen Victoria's reign her most important dependencies were India and the West Indies; and few suspected that the fringe of settlements in Canada, South Africa, and Australia would grow into vast territories, both populous and prosperous, and would develop various types of British citizen different from one another and from the provincial types in the British Isles themselves. Still less could any one have suspected that "the Dark Continent" of Africa would not only be explored, largely by British men, but also portioned out among Europeans, among whom the British would be not the least

successful. None the less the British Empire has grown continuously ; and whereas at Victoria's accession it embraced only one-sixth of the land-surface of the globe, it had swollen to one-quarter before her death. So far this vast aggregation of lands and peoples gives more promise of holding together than of falling to pieces. In the palmy days of the little peoples—about the middle of the nineteenth century—it seemed only “natural” that the Colonies would assert their independence as they grew up ; but in these latter days the alternative to association on equal terms with Great Britain has seemed to be not independence but subordination to some other European Power. At the incoming of the twentieth century the growth of organic union among “all the Britains”—or even among all the English-speaking folk—would seem to be much more probable than the establishment of German unity or the continuance of the North American Union seemed a century ago. It scarcely seems possible that British types of civilization can continue to hold their own beside German, Russian, and French types without the adoption by the British peoples of some form of “Imperial Federation.”

## CHAPTER XLIX.

### PEEL AND THE CORN LAWS, 1837-1846.

**A. PERSONAL HISTORY.**—Alexandrina Victoria, only child of Edward, Duke of Kent (*d.* 1820), fourth son of George III., and Victoria Mary Louisa of Saxe-Coburg, was born at Kensington Palace, May 24, 1819; succeeded William IV. as Queen of Great Britain and Ireland (her uncle Ernest, Duke of Cumberland, becoming King of Hanover), June 20, 1837; crowned at Westminster, June 28, 1838; married, February 10, 1840, her cousin Albert of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha (*d.* December 14, 1861), by whom she had four sons and five daughters; proclaimed Empress of India, at Delhi, January 1, 1877; died January 22, 1901; buried in the Frogmore Mausoleum, near Windsor; succeeded by her eldest son, Albert Edward—the first British monarch of the House of Wettin—who took the title of “Edward VII.” For family connections, see Table, p. 344.

### B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS.

PAPACY.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	ITALY.	AUSTRIA.	PRUSSIA.	RUSSIA.
Gregory XIV. (1831)	Louis Philippe (1830) Second Republic (1848)	Isabella II. (1833-1868)	Victor Emmanuel II. of Sardinia (1849), of Italy (1861)	Ferdinand I. (1835)	Frederick William III. (1797) Frederick William IV. (1840)	Nicholas I. (1825)
Pius IX. (1846)	Napoleon III. Emp. (1852)	Amadeus I (1870-1873) Alfonso XII. (1874)	Humbert (1878)	Francis Joseph (1848)	William I. (1861) German Emp. (1871) Frederick III. (1888)	Alexander II. (1855)
Leo XIII. (1878)	Third Republic (1870)	Alfonso XIII. (1886)	Victor Emmanuel III. (1900)		William II. (1888)	Alexander III. (1881) Nicholas II. (1894)

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

#### (i) International: *relations with—*

- (1) France: § 745.
- (2) Austria: § 745.
- (3) Turkey: § 745.
- (4) Russia: § 745, 746.
- (5) Afghanistan: §§ 746, 747, 749.
- (6) China: § 747.

#### (ii) Constitutional.

- (1) Ministers: §§ 740, 748, 751.
- (2) Corn Laws: §§ 741, 742, 751.
- (3) Scotland: § 750.
- (4) Ireland: §§ 750, 751.
- (5) South Africa: §§ 741, 744.
- (6) Canada: §§ 741, 743.

### I. END OF MELBOURNE'S MINISTRY, 1837-1841.

**§ 740. Character of Queen Victoria.**—William IV. was succeeded in Hanover (where the “Salic Law” prevailed) by his

brother Ernest, Duke of Cumberland, and in his British dominions by his niece Victoria, a girl of eighteen. She had been brought up by her widowed mother in a quiet and healthy manner; and her modest and dignified demeanour at once gained all hearts. After her accession, her political education was continued first by Lord Melbourne, whose only claim to the name of statesman lies in the careful and tactful training which he gave to the young Queen, and afterwards by her cousin and husband, Albert of Saxe-Coburg, whom she married in 1840, and who overcame British jealousy so far as to receive the title of Prince Consort in 1857. Under these circumstances Queen Victoria acquired the difficult and novel art of governing as a "constitutional monarch," and gradually weaned her subjects completely from the sentimental preference for republicanism which was common in the early part of her reign. It seems to be generally allowed that the well-known eulogy of Victoria prefixed to Tennyson's poems expresses the truth and is not mere courtly and poetical flattery.

**§ 741. Early Troubles of Victoria's Reign.**—The political outlook at Victoria's accession was far from bright. At home the Ministry was weak and helpless in face of the discontent which expressed itself in the Chartist movement and the Anti-Corn-Law League; as to the Colonies, Canada and South Africa were on the verge of rebellion; and the necessity of guarding India was giving rise to serious difficulties in Afghanistan, China, and the Levant. Almost the only pleasant feature in her opening years was the adoption in 1839 of Rowland Hill's scheme for the transmissibility of inland letters at the uniform charge of one penny prepaid. The substitution of low rates for high rates of postage had similar effects to the previous substitution of low customs dues for high customs dues, in increasing both the revenue of the State and the conveniences of its subjects. Cheap postage was rendered easier by the growth of railways and steamships; and in 1838-1840 it began to be supplemented by the use of the electric telegraph.

**§ 742. British Social Discontent, 1837-1841.**—The various reforms, legislative and administrative, political and economic, of the thirties (ch. xlviii.) had diminished but not removed the causes of social discontent in Britain. As a matter of fact, a considerable proportion of the inhabitants could not earn enough money to buy sufficient food to keep themselves alive, still less to live in comfort. In 1838 two distinct methods of dealing with this difficulty were definitely put forward. Some believed that, if "the people" had



more political power, they would be able to put an end to their troubles, and they therefore drew up a *People's Charter*, advocating annual Parliaments, manhood suffrage, vote by ballot, equal electoral districts, abolition of property qualifications for members of parliament, and payment of members. Some of the Chartists, especially Feargus O'Connor, wished to carry out their views by persuasion, and were therefore known as "Moral Force Chartists"; while others thought that the middle classes could be moved only by violence, and were therefore known as "Physical Force Chartists." In 1839 the latter party got up serious riots in Newport, South Wales, and elsewhere. About the same time there was formed an association with the object of procuring a reduction in the price of food, not by the circuitous method of political reforms, but by the direct method of getting the Corn Laws repealed. In 1839 an Anti-Corn-Law League was formed in Manchester by Richard Cobden and Charles Villiers, both Lancashire men; and a few years later these men were joined by John Bright, whose great gifts of speech proved of much service to the cause.

**§ 743. Canada and Lord Durham's Report, 1837-1840.**—The troubles which broke out in Canada in 1837 were due partly to the continuance of friction between French Roman Catholics and British Protestants, and partly to the constitutional limitations under which the legislative assemblies of the two provinces had been placed by the Act of 1791. In 1838 Lord Durham was sent out with full powers to deal with the difficulty; and he promptly suppressed rebellion and drew up a report advocating the union of the provinces under a single governor, ruling with the advice of the leaders of a representative assembly. These Liberal recommendations of Lord Durham and his dictatorial conduct in dealing with "rebels" exposed him respectively to the attacks of his Tory opponents and his Whig friends; and he was literally "worried to death" in less than two years after his high appointment. His report was, however, to a large extent adopted; and its first-fruits were the passing of the *Canada Act of Union* in 1840. This measure was the first of a long series of Acts granting full powers of self-government to such Colonies as seemed able and wishful to take the responsibility out of the hands of the distant officials in Downing Street.

**§ 744. The Great Trek of the Boers, 1835-1843.**—The contemporary troubles in South Africa arose mainly out of the Abolition of Slavery in 1833, and took the form not of rebellion

but of removal. The Dutch farmers or Boers in Cape Colony believed that they had rights over the natives similar to those which the Hebrew patriarchs claimed over "the Canaanites that dwell in the land"; and they bitterly resented the partiality shown by the British missionaries and by the Home Government towards "persons with black skins and savage habits." Unable to turn the Government from its purposes they resolved to seek greater "liberty" in the wilderness; and in 1835 there began the Great Trek, resulting in the foundation of settlements north of the Orange River and in Natal. Sir George Napier, the Governor of Cape Colony in 1838, explicitly denied that the Boers could by emigration "be absolved from their allegiance as British subjects"; and in 1843 he took formal possession of Natal—where the Boers had been involved in serious struggles with the Zulu inhabitants.

§ 745. **Palmerston's Second Quadruple Alliance, 1840.**—In 1839 there broke out a fresh war between the Sultan of Turkey and the Pasha of Egypt which revealed a temporary disagreement between Great Britain and France. Palmerston believed that it was possible to make Turkey a strong Power capable of efficient government at home and of keeping Russia at bay: the ministers of Louis Philippe were for the time being more disposed to favour Mehemet Ali. Hence in 1840 Palmerston entered into an alliance not with France but with Austria, Prussia, and Russia, for settling "the Eastern Question" of the day. Russia agreed to abandon her exclusive rights to navigate the Dardanelles; and Mehemet Ali was impelled—partly by Sir Charles Napier's bombardment of Acre—to withdraw from Syria and accept instead the hereditary pashalik of Egypt. For a moment it seemed possible that the quarrel between France and Great Britain might deepen into war; but in 1840 Louis Philippe dismissed the bellicose Thiers and gave his post to the more pacific Guizot; and in 1841 Palmerston was superseded by a less aggressive Foreign Minister, Lord Aberdeen.

§ 746. **The First Afghán War, 1838-1842.**—While Great Britain was co-operating with Russia in the Near East, she was exhibiting her suspicions of that Power in the Far East. In 1838 Dost Muhammad Khán, Amír of Afghánistán, received a Russian mission at his capital, Kábul; and Lord Auckland, the Governor-General in India (1836-1842), at once replied by declaring war and invading Afghánistán to set up a friendly prince, Sháh Shújá, as Amír. In 1839 British troops captured Kandahar, Ghazni, and Kábul and established Sháh Shújá. In the early days of 1842 the

small British force was compelled to abandon Kábul; and out of sixteen thousand troops and camp-followers who began the retreat only one, Dr. Brydon, reached Jellalabad alive. This disaster was avenged by Sale and Pollock; but in the end the new Governor-General, Lord Ellenborough, deemed it expedient to leave Dost Muhammad in possession of the throne. This was the first and most disastrous of many British adventures on the North-West Frontier of India.

§ 747. **First Chinese War, 1839-1842.**—While thus being involved in political troubles to the west of India, Great Britain was being dragged into commercial troubles to the east of India by the pushfulness of the merchants. The abolition of the monopoly of the East India Company in the Chinese trade in 1833 had led to a great increase in the traffic with that country. The Chinese authorities disapproved of the influx of western barbarians and especially of their importing opium; and in 1839 they seized £6,000,000 worth of opium, the property of British merchants in China. The result was a war in which the Chinese were defeated; and by the *Treaty of Nan-King*, 1842, China paid an indemnity for the opium and for the cost of the war, threw open Canton and four other "treaty-ports" to British trade, and ceded the island of Hong-Kong. On this barren island there sprang up a town, named Victoria, which became the chief emporium of the trade between China and Europe. Already in 1819 Sir Stamford Raffles had obtained for Great Britain in Singapore a valuable half-way house between India or Ceylon and China; and in 1839 British troops had occupied Aden, which proved an almost equally useful port of call on the eastern portion of the overland route to India, *via* Egypt, that was now again coming into active use.

## II. PEEL'S SECOND MINISTRY, 1841-1846.

§ 748. **Fall of the Melbourne Ministry, 1841.**—Before the close of the Afghan and the Chinese Wars the Melbourne Ministry had ceased to exist. It had already stopped working for a moment in 1839, but had been started again because the Queen and Peel failed to come to terms on "the Bedchamber Question." Regarding the young Queen as particularly susceptible to the influence of her attendants, Peel insisted that the Whig ladies of the Royal Household should be removed; and failing to get his own way on the point, he refused to take office. In 1841 this domestic difficulty was solved by the voluntary resignation of the ladies involved. A

General Election had resulted in the return of a strong Conservative majority; and Melbourne, being defeated on a question of Free Trade, gladly laid down the cares of office in August 1841. His most notable memorial is the town which bears his name, the capital of a colony named after his young mistress, a town which has become the finest in the Southern Hemisphere.

§ 749. **Indian Questions, 1841-1846.**—During his second ministry Peel continued his work of effecting quiet reforms of an unsensational type; and the only striking events in the political history of his ministry are those connected with his conversion to Free Trade in Corn. The period was marked by stirring events abroad. The Ashburton Treaty of 1842 with the United States delimited the boundaries of Maine in a manner which has permanently crippled schemes for an all-British route across North America: as in the later (1846) delimitation of the boundary of British North America further to the west, the British representatives allowed themselves to be completely hoodwinked by the superior local knowledge of the American diplomatists. Meanwhile in the East Sir Charles Napier conquered and annexed Sindh, on the lower Indus, in 1842; and in 1845-6 the Sikhs who dwelt higher up the Indus basin made war in order to stave off the same fate from themselves. The Sikhs proved at this time to be the most formidable of the native opponents of British rule in India, as later they came to be its firmest supporters. In December 1845 Sir Hugh Gough won a battle at Moodkee; in January 1846 Sir Harry Smith gained another victory a little further north at Aliwal; and in February the two generals together achieved a crowning triumph at Sobraon. In consequence of these defeats, the Sikhs were compelled to admit a British resident (Sir Henry Lawrence) into their capital at Lahore.

§ 750. **Scottish and Irish Questions, 1842-1846.**—Nearer home Peel's ministry witnessed notable developments in Scotland and Ireland. In Scotland the old standing discontent with the system of lay patronage which had been imposed on the Scottish Church by English Tories in 1712 culminated in 1843 in the formation, by Dr. Chalmers, of the "Free Church of Scotland." This "Disruption" split the National Church of Scotland into two almost equal parts, and thereby did much to prevent Scottish Presbyterianism from bulking so largely in the eyes of the lay observer as English Episcopalianism. The Disruption, however, like the contemporary Oxford Movement, was a sign of growing interest in ecclesiastical and religious questions. Meanwhile Ireland was undergoing a kind

of political disruption. Alongside of O'Connell there was springing up another school of Irish agitators, headed by Thomas Davis and Charles Gavan Duffy, and known as "Young Ireland," who believed that salvation for Ireland was to be found by adopting English methods of politics and industry. In 1843 the Government prohibited a monster meeting at Clontarf at which O'Connell was going to advocate the repeal of the Union; and O'Connell's acquiescence weakened his influence. The leaders of the Young Ireland movement did not get much profit from the disappearance of their rival, because Ireland became absorbed in more pressing questions. In 1845 and 1846 the potato crop failed; the Irish peasantry perished wholesale by famine; and vast numbers escaped starvation only by emigration. During the years 1845-1850 the population of Ireland decreased by nearly two millions.

§ 751. **Repeal of the Corn Laws, 1846.**—The Irish Famine made relief imperative; and the Government found that relief was made not only more costly but also more difficult through the prohibitive duties imposed on food stuffs under the Corn Laws of 1816 and following years. Towards the end of 1845 Peel announced his conversion to the principles of the Anti-Corn-Law League; but many of his colleagues refused to follow him in offending the agricultural classes to whom they mainly owed their parliamentary majority. Peel therefore resigned in December, but resumed office on Lord John Russell's failure to form a ministry; and in June he carried a measure gradually taking off the duties on imported corn. He carried his Bill only by the help of the Whigs, for many of the Conservatives, headed by Lord George Bentinck and Benjamin Disraeli, an eccentric young man of Jewish descent, bitterly resented Peel's change of front. A few days later Peel's old allies and his new ones alike deserted him on an Irish Coercion Bill; and being defeated, he resigned office. He had saved many human lives by his concession of cheap corn, but he had for the time being wrecked the Conservative party; and for the next twenty years the Whigs enjoyed an almost unbroken spell of power (ch. l.).

## CHAPTER L.

### PALMERSTON AND DERBY, 1846-1865.

- A. PERSONAL HISTORY OF VICTORIA. } See Chapter xlix.  
B. CONTEMPORARY RULES. }

#### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) France: §§ 752, 754, 755, 762-765, 771.
- (2) Russia: §§ 762-765, 771.
- (3) Turkey: §§ 762-765.
- (4) Sardinia: §§ 754, 764, 771.
- (5) Switzerland: § 752.
- (6) Burma: § 761.
- (7) Persia: § 766.
- (8) China: § 766.
- (9) United States: § 772.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) Ministers: §§ 752, 755, 757, 758, 764, 769, 770.
- (2) Domestic Events: §§ 753, 756, 770, 772.
- (3) Parliamentary Reform: §§ 769, 770.
- (4) Ireland: §§ 753, 754.
- (5) Australia: § 758.
- (6) South Africa: § 760.
- (7) India: § 761, 766-768.

#### I. RUSSELL, DERBY AND ABERDEEN, 1846-1855.

§ 752. **The Spanish Marriages, 1846.**—Sir Robert Peel was succeeded as Prime Minister by Lord John Russell, who formed an administration consisting mainly of Whigs, but with Lord Palmerston as Foreign Secretary. Palmerston's restoration to office caused almost immediately a return to the unfriendly relations with France which had marked the close of his previous term of office. While Aberdeen was in charge of foreign affairs, Victoria and Louis Philippe had exchanged visits, and the relations between the two states had been friendly, and even intimate. In 1845 Louis Philippe had promised that his younger son, the Duke of Montpensier, should not marry the Infanta of Spain until her sister, Queen Isabella II., had an heir: this promise had been made because British politicians of Victoria's reign, like their predecessors in Anne's reign, disliked contemplating the possibility of the personal union of France and Spain. In October 1846, shortly after Palmerston had replaced Aberdeen, Louis Philippe broke his promises and procured the simultaneous marriages of the Spanish sisters. Palmerston could not prevent the marriage; but he took his revenge in the following year by checkmating French schemes of intervention in Switzerland

— then engaged in the civil war of the Sonderbund, which ended in the establishment of the enlightened democratic and federal constitution of that country. In the long run, the schemes of Louis Philippe to increase the prestige of his family by the Spanish Marriages not only failed but helped to bring about his sudden and complete overthrow in 1848.

§ 753. **Young Ireland and the Chartists, 1846-1848.**— Meanwhile Russell's Ministry had been much harassed by the various Irish questions which had given Peel much trouble, but which he had handled in a spirit of sympathy and firmness quite exceptional in an English politician. In the first place, both the potato famine and the disorder which arose partly out of the famine continued; and in 1847 the Government met these difficulties by making a grant of £10,000,000 for relief and by passing a new Coercion Act. The money was so ill-administered that it did little either to save life or to check the discontent increased by the measures of repression; and in 1848 a short-lived rebellion broke out under Smith O'Brien, the leader of the more violent section of the "Young Ireland" movement. In the same year there was an equally abortive "rising" in England. Feargus O'Connor declared his intention of marching at the head of half a million men from Kennington to Westminster to present the *People's Charter* (§ 742) to the House of Commons; but his followers proved less enthusiastic than the special constables sworn in by the Government, and the great demonstration was a fiasco.

§ 754. **The Year of Revolutions, 1848-1849.**—The Chartist demonstration in London, April 1848, and the Irish insurrection in July 1848 were amongst the most insignificant outbursts of that "year of revolutions." In February Louis Philippe was suddenly expelled from France for refusing to extend the franchise; and a Republic was set up which in December accepted Louis Napoleon Bonaparte, son of Napoleon's younger brother Louis, as its President. In March there broke out in Vienna, North Italy, Hungary, and various other parts of the dominions of the Emperor of Austria, rebellions which at first seemed likely to be successful, but which were put down in the course of a year or so. Further north, there were disturbances in Prussia, and in May a national parliament for the whole of Germany met at Frankfurt. The various revolutionary movements, whether constitutional or national in motive, failed everywhere; and their only substantial results were the fall of the Austrian minister Metternich and the French King, Louis Philippe.

**§ 755. The Queen and Lord Palmerston, 1850-1851.**—These disturbances in Europe led to the establishment of an important constitutional principle in Great Britain. Lord Palmerston, the Foreign Secretary, represented the views of the majority of his fellow-countrymen in disliking the two extremes of anarchy on the one side and despotism on the other, and was therefore popular with the mass of the nation. But his fondness for “making a hit off his own bat” (as he himself put it) annoyed both his colleagues and his royal mistress; and in 1850 some unguarded words of praise for Kossuth, the Magyar exile who was denouncing the Hungarian policy of the Austrian Emperor, brought on him a severe but deserved reprimand from the Queen. Her memorandum stated that she required Lord Palmerston to say distinctly what he proposed to do, and not to alter or modify proposals to which she had given her sanction, to supply her with full accounts of what passed between him and the secretaries of the Powers, and to send her drafts of his letters early enough to enable her to make herself acquainted with their contents before they were sent off. Palmerston had to submit to these rules, but he soon afterwards again got into trouble. In December 1851 Louis Napoleon carried out a brutal and treacherous *coup d'état* in order to make permanent his presidency of the French Republic; and Palmerston incautiously expressed to the French Ambassador his private opinion that the President could not have done differently. This opinion being blazed abroad, Lord John Russell compelled Palmerston to resign, and gave his post to Earl Granville. Two months later, when Russell introduced a Bill to raise a force of militia against possible French aggression, Palmerston took his revenge by defeating Russell on a verbal amendment. Russell seized the opportunity to resign.

**§ 756. The Great Exhibition, 1851.**—The most notable legislation of these years was Fielden's *Factory Act* of 1847, which limited the working day of women and children in factories to ten hours, the *Treason-Felony Act* of 1848, the repeal of the *Navigation Acts* in 1849 and Russell's *Ecclesiastical Titles Act*, 1852, which made it unlawful for Roman Catholic Bishops to use the territorial titles recently bestowed by Pope Pius IX. But the most representative event of the period was the Great Exhibition held in Hyde Park in 1851. This, the pioneer of many similar enterprises, was set on foot mainly through the influence of Prince Albert, and was intended to show the world the blessings of peace and to mark the close of wars among civilized states. Here the promoters were over



sanguine; but the popularity and success of the Exhibition as a spectacle illustrated the great changes which had been wrought in men's habits through the quickening and cheapening of the means of communication. The vast crowds which thronged the "Crystal Palace"—as Paxton's glass and iron building has become known in its permanent site at Sydenham—could never have been brought together but for the steam locomotive. Railways had now passed beyond the stage of experiment, and had been patronized even by conservatives like Wellington (who died in 1852) and by exalted personages like the Queen.

§ 757. **Lord Derby's First Ministry, February-December, 1852.**—There was some difficulty as to Russell's successor. Palmerston—who had begun political life as a moderate Tory, though he had since served with the Whigs—was not in a position to take the vacant place; the Peelite section of the Conservatives, never very numerous, had been still further weakened by the death of Peel in July 1850; and the only party left was the Protectionist wing of the Conservatives. Their original leader, Bentinck, had died in 1848; and their chiefs were now the Earl of Derby, who became First Lord of the Treasury and Premier, and Disraeli, who became Chancellor of the Exchequer and leader of the House of Commons. A General Election resulted in a House of Commons in which the Ministry could obtain a majority over the Liberals only by throwing overboard its policy of Protection; and even so it was defeated in December, mainly in consequence of Gladstone's attacks on Disraeli's Budget.

§ 758. **Formation of the Aberdeen Coalition Ministry, December 1852.**—On Derby's consequent resignation a Coalition Ministry was formed by Whigs and Peelites. The principal Peelites were Aberdeen and Gladstone, who became Prime Minister and Chancellor of the Exchequer respectively. The chief Whigs were Russell, who went to the Foreign Office, and Palmerston who took the Home Office, jauntily remarking "that it was a good thing for a man to learn something about his fellow-countrymen." Disraeli had recently asserted that "England does not love coalitions"; and certainly England soon found that she had little cause to love this particular one. It was largely because of differences of opinion within its ranks that the Ministry blundered into the Crimean War, which was its most notable exploit. But before we tell that story, it will be convenient to deal with various remarkable events that had happened oversea during the Russell-Derby periods.

**§ 759. Australian Colonies Act, 1850.**—The year of the Great Exhibition was also marked by the discovery of gold in Australia; and this event had an even greater influence in increasing the population and wealth of the Australian Colonies than the previous introduction of sheep-farming on a large scale. In 1850 Russell's Ministry had passed an Act extending to most of these colonies methods of government similar to those which had been introduced into Canada ten years earlier, and which had there been successfully applied through the genius of Lord Elgin (1847-1854). This principle, known as responsible self-government, recognized that the needs of a distant community of British citizens were more likely to be known to themselves than to a frequently-changed official in Downing Street. Though the details varied at different times and places, the common feature was the concession of full parliamentary powers (including some control over the administration) to the colonial legislature, under the control of a Governor, appointed by the Crown and representative of the Crown, who, however, had to rule by the advice of ministers in whom the local legislature had confidence. The colonies to which the new system was applicable were New South Wales, founded in 1788, South Australia, founded on novel lines by Edward Gibbon Wakefield in 1836; and Victoria, separated from the mother-colony of New South Wales in 1850. Western Australia, founded in 1829, was still too backward a state to be granted such full autonomy; and Van Diemen's Land—known after 1855 as Tasmania, after the name of its first discoverer—was still too full of convicts or ex-convicts, which had been shipped there in enormous numbers after New South Wales ceased to receive them in 1840. New Zealand, which had been formally annexed in 1839, and which was and is wholly different in climate and population from Australia, received a constitution in 1852. Some people feared, and others hoped, that the new colonial system would result in the establishment of colonial independence; but the establishment in 1854 of a separate Secretaryship of State for the Colonies (administered by the Secretary of War since 1801) does not point to the conclusion that the Aberdeen Ministry expected the Colonies to "cut the painter" in the near future.

**§ 760. Troubles in South Africa, 1846-1854.**—The experiments of the Russell and Aberdeen Ministries themselves in Australia had more fortunate consequences than their contemporary experiments in South Africa. British statesmen valued Cape Colony solely as a station on the road to India; they were acquainted with the

difficulties (though not with their exact nature) caused by the presence of large numbers of natives and of Dutch farmers; and they were not yet acquainted with the mineral wealth of the interior. Naturally, therefore, they were anxious not to extend British territories and responsibilities in so unremunerative and troublesome a region; and they often preferred their own opinion, necessarily based on imperfect knowledge, to that of the "man on the spot." Now the Russell-Aberdeen period happened to be a time of "great proconsuls"—Elgin in Canada, Dalhousie in India, and Sir Harry Smith in South Africa. In 1848 Smith—who has left his mark on South African place-names—formally annexed the region between the Orange and the Vaal rivers as the Orange River Sovereignty; and he defeated at Boomplatz the minority among the emigrant Boers who objected to British rule. Smith also brought to a successful conclusion wars against the Kaffirs and the Basutos, and successfully resisted the attempt of Lord Grey to use the Cape as a penal settlement. Before he left, however, he was compelled to make the *Sand River Convention*, 1852, which recognized the complete independence of the Boers north of the river Vaal; and in 1854, after his departure, the *Convention of Bloemfontein* thrust similar independence upon the unwilling Boers who dwelt between the Transvaal and Basutoland. The South African Republic and the Orange Free State were destined to give much trouble to the successors of the British Ministers who had thus light-heartedly given them legal sanction.

§ 761. **Dalhousie's Governor-Generalship in India, 1848-1856.**—Lord Dalhousie was more fortunate than Sir Harry Smith in being less subject to the intervention of the Home Government; and his Governor-Generalship in India is one of the great landmarks of British dominion in the East. In many ways he combined the excellences of Wellesley, the territorial expander, and Bentinck, the social reformer, of British India. His chief work as a social reformer consisted in the strenuous suppression of corrupt or ineffective government, whether in British India proper or in the protected states, and in the inauguration of great public works, such as canals and railways. His principal annexations, made partly for purposes of frontier defence and partly to secure better government, were the Punjab (1849), Pegu (1852), and Oudh (1856). The Punjab, annexed after the Sikhs had been defeated in hard-fought battles at Chillianwallah and Gujrat, was organized by the brothers John and Henry Lawrence in such a way that the Sikhs proved the staunchest allies of Great Britain in the trying period of the Mutiny. The annexation

of Pegu, at the close of the Second Burmese War, established the Company on the lower Irrawady; and the transfer of the rich province of Oudh from a debauched Nawáb to the Company, strengthened British hold on the Ganges basin and bettered the condition of the inhabitants. It also helped to bring on the Mutiny (§ 765).

## II. THE CRIMEAN WAR AND THE INDIAN MUTINY, 1854-1858.

§ 762. **The Eastern Question, 1852-1854.**—The weakness of the Aberdeen Ministry and the strength of its Indian representative, Lord Dalhousie, led to events in the East and the Far East which form the most conspicuous features in British history between the Napoleonic and the Boer Wars. In the Near East, the Ministry drifted into war with Russia; in the Far East, Dalhousie's successors had to deal with the most dangerous of all the Indian risings; and it was fortunate for Great Britain that these two troubles were not simultaneous. The Russian War arose primarily out of the desire of Russia to increase her hold on Turkey, and out of the desire of Louis Napoleon—who had become Emperor of the French under the title of Napoleon III. in 1852—to strengthen his position by a brilliant foreign policy. The actual occasion of the War was provided by ecclesiastical disputes which it is an insult to religion to call "religious." There were long-standing quarrels between Roman Catholic and Greek Catholic monks as to the custody of the Holy Places in Palestine; and when Nicholas I. warmly supported the Greeks, Napoleon III.—not wholly uninfluenced by the Tzar's contempt for the upstart French Emperor and by a desire to gratify the Papacy—retaliated by taking up the cause of the Latins. When the Sultan decided in favour of the Roman Catholics, the Tzar revived his claims—under the *Treaty of Kutchuk-Kainardji*, 1774—to a general protectorate over the Christian subjects of the Porte, and enforced them by occupying the vassal states of Wallachia and Moldavia in July 1853. A Congress of the Great Powers at Vienna drew up terms of settlement which were accepted by the Tzar but which were rejected by the Sultan, at the instance of Sir Stratford Canning, the masterful ambassador of Great Britain at Constantinople. Thereupon Russia declared war against Turkey in November, crossed the Danube and destroyed the Turkish fleet at Sinope. In December Palmerston resigned in order to force the Ministry to active measures; Great Britain and France joined in sending an ultimatum to Nicholas, threatening war unless he withdrew his troops from Turkish soil; and in March 1854 war was formally declared.

§ 763. **The Crimean War, 1854-1855.**—France, owing to her constant wars for the conquest of Algeria (since 1830), was less unprepared for war than was Great Britain, whose own army (as distinguished from the Indian army) had not been in active service since Waterloo; and as the Allied Powers had set themselves to attack an almost inaccessible state, they naturally boggled over their work. A British fleet, consisting of the untried arm of steam war-vessels under Sir Charles Napier, blockaded the Russian ports on the Baltic. A joint fleet, which had already been sent to the Black Sea, bombarded Odessa in April, and assisted in the work of



transporting troops and supplies. A joint land force of the Allies spent the summer catching cholera at Varna; and when winter was at hand, it was decided to convey this force to the Crimea and capture the Russian arsenal of Sebastopol. In the middle of September about 55,000 troops (less than half of which were British) were landed at Eupatoria and marched southwards. They defeated the Russians at the battle of the Alma (September 20), and, after throwing away their chance of storming Sebastopol, before it could be fortified, they laid formal siege to the place. The British troops drew their supplies from the port of Balaclava, on the south coast of the Chersonese; and it was in defending that port against Mentchikoff's Russians that the famous charges of the Heavy and

the Light Brigades were made on October 25. Ten days later, a joint attack on the British lines by the Russians was defeated in the confused fight at Inkerman. All these were "soldiers' battles"—battles, that is, which were decided not by skill in generalship but by sheer hard fighting, in which the British, whether through more dogged courage or through superior weapons, happened to win. Then came the winter, which revealed short-comings in the commissariat equal to those in the generalship and more fatal in the results. British troops died wholesale of hunger and cold in the trenches before Sebastopol; and in January 1855 Lord Raglan, the British commander, reported that more than half of his 24,000 troops were in hospital.

§ 764. **The War Correspondent and the Ministry, 1855.**—Avoidable hardships have been the common lot of the common soldier in all ages; but in this case there arose a new power—the War Correspondent—to make these hardships known to the fellow-countrymen of the sufferers. Russell, the representative of *The Times* in the Crimea, gave such accounts of the state of things at the front that there was a general outcry against the Ministry; and when in January 1855 Roebuck carried a motion for inquiry into the conduct of the war, Lord Aberdeen resigned. Lord John Russell and the Earl of Derby having both failed to form a Cabinet, Lord Palmerston became Prime Minister. His colleagues consisted mainly of the Whig members of the Aberdeen Ministry; but its Peelite members declined to serve under him. Sidney Herbert, the Peelite Secretary of State for War under Aberdeen, had already sent out Florence Nightingale to reorganize the hospital service at Scutari; but it was left to Palmerston to put things in order in the Crimea itself. A railway was built from Balaclava to the camp, which was thus supplied promptly with food and clothing; and fresh energy was displayed in the siege operations, in which, however, during 1855 the French took a more prominent part than the British. In January, the King of Sardinia, eager to win the good-will of the Western Powers towards his ambitious schemes in Italy (§ 771), joined France and Great Britain; in February the Tzar Nicholas died of grief at the comparative failure of his troops; though a series of changes in the French and British commanders delayed the siege operations, Sebastopol fell in September, and in December the new Tzar Alexander-II. asked for peace.

§ 765. **The Peace of Paris, March 1856.**—A Conference was held at Paris in which Napoleon III., having won all the prestige

he wanted, showed himself eager for peace, while Palmerston did his best to secure the permanent weakening of Russia in the interests both of Turkey and of Great Britain. Under these circumstances the resultant *Peace of Paris* was a compromise which really settled nothing and which, as Palmerston partly foresaw, merely annoyed Russia without strengthening Turkey. The independence and integrity of the Turkish Empire was recognized by Russia and guaranteed by the Powers; the Powers, including Russia, abandoned their conflicting claims to the protection of the Christian subjects of the Sultan, who, however, promised to accord them better treatment; and in order to diminish the powers of Russia for aggression, Wallachia and Moldavia were erected into independent states under the nominal suzerainty of Turkey, and Russia was pledged to destroy the fortifications of Sebastopol and to abstain from keeping a war fleet in the Black Sea. These terms were commonly thought at the time to be a great triumph for Great Britain.

§ 766. **Persian and Chinese Wars, 1856-1857.**—The year's interval between the conclusion of the Crimean War and the outbreak of the Indian Mutiny was marked by the commencement of two "little wars" in the Far East. In October 1856 Persia, which was already falling under the influence of Russia, seized Herat, but was speedily compelled by a British demonstration in the Persian Gulf to abandon her conquest to the Amír of Afghánistán. In October 1856 a Chinese official seized the lorcha *Arrow*, a boat unlawfully sailing under British colours; and the bombardment of Canton, to punish this "insult to the British flag," led to a Second Chinese War in which France took part. The joint forces occupied Canton in December 1857, bombarded the forts at the mouth of the Peiho in May 1858, and captured Peking in October 1860. This last event closed a somewhat dragging war by compelling China to confirm a *Treaty of Tientsin*, made in 1858, which legalized the introduction into China of opium, ambassadors and missionaries. The affair of the lorcha *Arrow* illustrates one special feature of Palmerston's foreign policy. He was bent on giving to a British subject, the wide world over, the same sort of protection which, to use his own words, was once accorded by the saying, "*Civis Romanus sum*." When Cobden carried a resolution condemning the Chinese War (March 1857) Palmerston dissolved Parliament and was rewarded by an increased majority.

§ 767. **Causes of the Indian Mutiny, 1857.**—One reason why the Second Chinese War dragged on so long was the pre-

occupation of British forces in India. There Dalhousie's annexations had caused considerable anxiety and vexation among the native princes, recent land settlements had annoyed the larger landowners, especially in Oudh, by favouring the actual cultivators of the soil, and religious prejudices had been offended by the equipment of the native sepoys with rifles which required greased cartridges. Those who cherished these and other grievances thought that they had a good opportunity for vengeance in the fact that the British troops in India were few and scattered. The discontent was most widespread in the native regiments in the North-West Provinces; and in May 1857 some of these, stationed at Meerut, broke out into open mutiny, shot their officers, and stirred up similar mutinies in the neighbouring camps. Bengal and the greater part of the Madras and Bombay Presidencies kept quiet; and the Sikhs of the Punjab had been so well used by Sir John Lawrence that they gave active help to the British. The main incidents in the struggle was the massacre of Cawnpore and the sieges of Delhi and Lucknow. The Europeans at Cawnpore surrendered in June, after a month's siege and were butchered. At Delhi, where a descendant of the Moguls had been set up as Emperor, the mutineers themselves were besieged from May to September by troops from the Punjab under John Nicholson. At Lucknow a handful of British troops under Sir Henry Lawrence held the ill-fortified Residency from May till September, when they were relieved by Sir Henry Havelock, and again on till November, when they were brought away by Lord Clyde, the Sir Colin Campbell of Crimea fame. Clyde reoccupied Lucknow in March 1858, and in June the Mutiny was finally crushed by the capture of Gwalior.

§ 768. **Results of the Indian Mutiny, 1858.**—The rising failed partly because it was, for the most part, a military, not a national movement; partly because it did not spread all over India; partly because the Hindus and the Muhammadans did not work well together; but above all because nearly all the British officers displayed a resourcefulness which matched the courage and endurance of the troops and civilians under their care. The most enduring results of the Mutiny were the re-organization of the Indian army and the transfer of Indian administration from the Company to the Crown. Preparations for such a transfer had been made when the Company's Charter had been renewed in 1853—not for twenty years, as heretofore, but simply until Parliament should determine otherwise. The *Indian Government Act* of 1858 placed the control of



British India in the hands of a new Secretary of State, responsible to Parliament, and represented in India by a Governor-General. George Canning's son, Lord Canning, who had succeeded Dalhousie, was continued in office and was thus the first Governor-General in India who can be called "Viceroy."

### III. DERBY AND PALMERSTON, 1858-1865.

§ 769. **The Second Derby Ministry, February 1855-June 1859.**—Before the Indian Mutiny was suppressed Palmerston had been succeeded by Lord Derby as Prime Minister. In January 1858 an Italian named Orsini had tried to murder Napoleon III. with a bomb made in England; and Palmerston at once brought in a *Conspiracy to Murder Bill* by which it was made penal to concoct on British soil such plots against foreign rulers. But the report that French military officers were urging the Emperor to lead them against England as a "lair of criminals," caused many people to regard Palmerston's Bill as truckling to France; and in February his measure was defeated by a combination of Radicals, Peelites, and Conservatives. On his resignation a Conservative Ministry was formed in which Lord Derby was First Lord of the Treasury and Prime Minister, and Disraeli was Chancellor of the Exchequer and leader of the House of Commons; while a future leader of the Conservative party, Lord Cranborne, afterwards Marquess of Salisbury, held a minor office. This second Derby Ministry, like the first, was short-lived but notable. It passed the *India Act*, supported the Volunteer movement inspired by fear of France, ended a long-standing quarrel by admitting Jews to Parliament, abolished the property qualifications for members of Parliament, and introduced a *Reform Bill* assimilating the county and borough franchises. This Bill was rejected in March 1859 mainly because Disraeli had proposed to supplement the usual household qualifications by various qualifications resting on education and savings—scornfully described by Bright as "fancy franchises." A General Election failed to give the Ministry a majority in the House of Commons; and Lord Derby accordingly resigned.

§ 770. **Palmerston's Second Ministry, 1859-1865.**—Lord Granville having failed to form a Government, Palmerston undertook the task and remained in office till his death in October 1865. His second Ministry was marked by many stirring events abroad—especially in Italy, Germany and the United States—but by an almost complete quietude in home affairs. The question of further

Parliamentary Reform was left to private members after a preparatory Bill introduced by Lord John Russell had died through lack of public interest in it; and almost the only events in purely domestic politics were Lowe's introduction of the principle of "payment by results" (abolished in 1890) in allotting the Education Grant, and a curious quarrel between the Lords and the Commons on a point of privilege. In 1860 Gladstone, as Chancellor of the Exchequer, proposed to abolish the duty on paper, partly in order to facilitate the publication of books and periodical literature; the House of Lords rejected the measure; and the House of Commons expressed its resentment by resolving that the power of the Lords to reject money-bills "has not been frequently exercised," and therefore "is justly regarded with peculiar jealousy." This constitutional difficulty was overcome in 1861 by including the abolition of the Paper Duty in a general money-bill which the Lords shrank from rejecting. In the same year the Prince Consort died, and the Queen gave way to grief so far as practically to withdraw from public life for many years.

§ 771. Lord Palmerston and Europe, 1859-1865.—Quite early in 1859 it became obvious that the French restlessness against which the Volunteer movement of 1858 had been directed would be diverted elsewhere; and in 1860 Palmerston gratified his life-long critic, Richard Cobden, by allowing him to negotiate a commercial treaty whereby France and Great Britain admitted each other's goods on more favourable terms than those of other countries. Meanwhile Napoleon III. had been persuaded by Cavour to help Sardinia to expel the Austrians from Italy; but after winning victories at Magenta and Solferino, he made peace in July, securing Lombardy from Austria for his ally and Savoy and Nice from his ally for himself. A little later, after several of the states in Northern Italy had voluntarily joined themselves to Sardinia, and Garibaldi had expelled the Bourbons from the kingdom of the two Sicilies and had handed it over to Sardinia, Napoleon sent troops to protect Rome from following the example of these states; and accordingly when an Italian Congress declared Victor Emmanuel King of Italy in March 1861, the capital had to be fixed at Florence, not at Rome. In 1863 Palmerston joined with Austria and France in protesting against Russian severity in crushing a Polish insurrection and was snubbed for his pains; and in 1864 his attempt to persuade Austria and Prussia not to take the duchies of Schleswig and Holstein from Denmark was wholly unsuccessful. In the course of 1864 Lord

Derby characterized the foreign policy of the Government as one of "meddle and muddle," and Disraeli attacked it in a motion which was lost by less than twenty votes; but it may be doubted whether they could have done more for the Poles or for the Danes had they themselves been in office.

§ 772. **Palmerston and America, 1861-1865.**—By far the most important foreign event, however, during Palmerston's Second Ministry was the Civil War in the United States of America. There were all manner of differences in origin, climate, temperament and economic conditions between the northern and the southern states in the Union; and when Abraham Lincoln was elected President in 1860, these differences came to a head over the questions of slavery and state-rights. Early in 1861 the southern states formally seceded from the Union and formed a Confederation under Jefferson Davis which for some time seemed likely to establish its independence. The most important effect of the Civil War on Great Britain was the fact that the naval superiority of the northern states enabled them to blockade the southern ports and so caused a cotton famine which brought Lancashire to the verge of starvation. Had the Lancashire operatives demanded active alliance with the southern Confederation in order to obtain a supply of cotton, they would probably have turned the scale in favour of war against the Federal Government. British opinion was much divided: on the whole the educated classes favoured the South, while the masses, who fancied that the war was simply between Slaveholders (of the type caricatured in *Uncle Tom's Cabin*) and Abolitionists, generally favoured the North. In May 1861 when the British Government recognized the Confederates as belligerents, and in November when the Yankees boarded a British vessel and seized two Confederate agents, Mason and Slidell, and threatened to invade Canada, it seemed more than probable that war would take place; and this probability was revived in the summer of 1862 when the *Alabama* was allowed to leave the Mersey and commence preying on Yankee commerce as a Confederate cruiser. Towards the end of 1862, however, both parties unconsciously testified to the impartiality of Great Britain by complaining that Great Britain was partial to the other side; and during the rest of the war she remained strictly neutral. In April 1865 the Confederates were defeated, and in October Palmerston died. Those two events mark a real epoch in the history of the nineteenth century.

## CHAPTER LI.

### DISRAELI AND GLADSTONE, 1865-1885.

- A. PERSONAL HISTORY OF VICTORIA. } See Chapter xlix.  
B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS. }

### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

#### (i) International: relations with—

- (1) France: §§ 777, 784.
- (2) Italy: § 773.
- (3) Austria: §§ 773, 785.
- (4) Prussia: §§ 773, 777.
- (5) Russia: §§ 784, 785.
- (6) Afghanistan: §§ 784, 785.
- (7) South African Republic: §§ 786, 787.
- (8) Egypt: §§ 778, 784, 788.
- (9) United States: § 777.

#### (ii) Constitutional.

- (1) Ministers: §§ 773, 774, 777, 782, 787, 790.
- (2) Parliament: §§ 773, 774, 779, 790.
- (3) Domestic Reform: §§ 776, 780, 781, 783, 790.
- (4) Ireland: §§ 776, 779, 783, 789.
- (5) Confederation: §§ 775, 778, 780.
- (6) India: §§ 784, 787.
- (7) South Africa: §§ 778, 786, 787.
- (8) Canada: §§ 775, 778.
- (9) Australia: § 778.

### I. THE LEAP IN THE DARK, 1865-1868.

§ 773. **Russell's Second Ministry, October 1865-June 1866.**—Earl Russell—as Lord John was now called—succeeded to the nominal headship of Palmerston's Cabinet; but the man who more and more took the real leadership of the Liberals was Gladstone. "There will be strange doings when I am gone," Palmerston had once said in reference to Gladstone's capacity for rapid and whole-hearted conversion to new ideas. Gladstone took up with ardour the idea of extending the franchise which had been coldly regarded by Russell and Palmerston; and his new point of view was expressed in his famous question about the unenfranchised classes—"are they not our own flesh and blood?" Early in 1866 he introduced a *Reform Bill* which seemed to Bright and the extreme Radicals too conservative, and to Lowe and a small group of Liberals whom Bright dubbed Adullamites to go too far in the direction of democracy. He proposed to confer the county and borough franchise on those who paid £14 and £10 in rent respectively; but in committee an amendment was carried substituting a rateable for a rental qualification. The Russell Ministry at once resigned, despite the

Queen's protest against the absurdity of making so much of "a mere matter of detail." The time of Russell's resignation was marked by the outbreak of the Seven Weeks' War between Prussia and Austria, which ended with the expulsion of the latter from Germany and also from Italy.

§ 774. **Derby's Third Ministry, June 1866-February 1868.**—Derby and Disraeli took office in the teeth of a hostile parliamentary majority; but this time their term of office was longer, and they left two enduring marks on British institutions. One of these was mainly due to Disraeli, the leader of the House of Commons, the other to Lord Carnarvon, the Colonial Secretary. Disraeli had long been trying to "educate his party" on the lines laid down in the political novels of his early years; and he believed that some further measure of parliamentary reform was necessary, not only for its own sake, but also to "dish the Whigs." His *Reform Bill* underwent many transformations during its six months passage through Parliament in the summer of 1867. The general effect of the *Second Reform Act*, which was accompanied by Bills effecting a slight distribution of seats and dealing with the franchise in Scotland and Ireland, was to extend the franchise in the towns to all adult male householders, and to lodgers paying £10 a year rent and residing in the same rooms for a clear year, and in the counties to £12 occupiers. It was estimated that these changes enlarged the electorate from about 1,350,000 to about 2,245,000; and that the new voters, mainly of the artisan class, were largely illiterate and quite unversed in politics. It is not surprising, therefore, that the Bill, especially coming from a Ministry that called itself "Conservative," should excite vehement opposition. Cranborne and Carnarvon threw up their offices to show their disapproval of a measure which the Prime Minister himself described as a "leap in the dark"; the Adullamites agreed with them, thinking that the people should be educated before they were entrusted with votes; while Bright and the Radicals, on the other hand, managed to strip the Bill of the "fancy franchises," and other devices which Disraeli had endeavoured to impose on the democracy.

§ 775. **British North America Act, 1867.**—About this time, also a notable new experiment was essayed in British Colonial government. Constitutional difficulties in Canada proper, and a general desire for greater union in view of the possibilities of invasion from the United States led to proposals for Federation which were authorized by Lord Carnarvon's *British North America Act* in March

1867. This Act erected certain British Colonies in North America into a "Dominion of Canada," in which each province should have local self-government, but should transact certain common business in a "Dominion Parliament" meeting at Ottawa. The nucleus of the federation was provided by Upper and Lower Canada—now again separated and named Ontario and Quebec respectively—Nova Scotia and New Brunswick; and this Dominion was later joined by Manitoba in 1870, Columbia (with Vancouver Island) in 1871, and Prince Edward Island in 1873. The creation and successful working of the Dominion of Canada—which may be regarded as consummated by the opening of the Canadian Pacific Railroad in 1886—has done much to promote the idea of Imperial Federation.

§ 776. **Disraeli's First Ministry, February–November 1868.**—Early in 1868 Lord Derby resigned the premiership through ill health and was succeeded by Disraeli. His short ministry was marked by the successful conclusion of an expedition led by Sir Robert Napier to release certain Europeans imprisoned at Magdala by Theodore, King of Abyssinia (September 1867–April 1868); by the passing of an Act authorizing the State to purchase British telegraphs; by the transfer of the decision of disputed elections from the House of Commons to the Judges; and by a keen parliamentary contest with Gladstone about Irish Questions. During the sixties there had been a recrudescence of discontent in Ireland, carefully fostered by the American Irish society of Fenians. In consequence, both the Russell and the Derby Ministries had suspended the operation of the *Habeas Corpus Act* in Ireland; and in 1867 the Fenians had retaliated by various abortive risings in Ireland, by a futile attempt to capture Chester (February), and by an attack on Clerkenwell Prison (December). Gladstone ascribed these outrages to the existence of real grievances in Ireland, partly ecclesiastical, partly agrarian; and in April 1868 he carried a resolution in favour of the disestablishment of the Protestant Episcopal Church of Ireland. Disraeli appealed to the country in November, but finding from the returns that he was hopelessly in the minority (265 to 393), he resigned without waiting for the assembling of Parliament.

## II. GLADSTONE'S FIRST MINISTRY, 1868–1874.

§ 777. **Foreign Affairs, 1868–1874.**—The Queen sent for Gladstone, who formed a Cabinet in which nearly all the leading names are familiar to the present generation. Lowe was Chancellor of the Exchequer; Bright was President of the Board of Trade; and

places were found for Granville, the Earl of Kimberley, the Marquess of Hartington (afterwards Duke of Devonshire), and G. J. Goschen; but the men who, after Gladstone himself, did the most to make the Ministry memorable were Cardwell, the Secretary of State for War, and W. E. Forster, the Vice-President of the Committee of Council on Education. This Ministry plunged into domestic legislation—characterized at the time as “reform by leaps and bounds”—and paid but little attention to affairs outside the British Isles. In foreign affairs the most notable event was the Franco-Prussian War of 1870–1871, which resulted in the overthrow of Napoleon III. and the establishment of the Third Republic in France, in the formation of a German Empire under the King of Prussia, and in the annexation of Alsace and Lorraine to Germany. Bismarck kept Great Britain neutral by divulging a scheme of Napoleon’s for the absorption of Belgium, and he kept Russia neutral by prompting her to denounce the Black Sea clauses of the *Treaty of Paris*—which were formally rescinded in 1871. In the same year Great Britain entered into a *Treaty of Washington* with the United States, whereby the claims of the latter Power to compensation for the damages inflicted by the *Alabama* were submitted to international arbitration; and in the following year the Geneva tribunal gave an award of £3,000,000, which was promptly paid. A widespread impression that Great Britain had been overreached both by Bismarck and by the Americans was a prime cause of the fall of the Gladstone Ministry.

§ 778. **Colonial Affairs, 1868–1874.**—In colonial affairs the period of the Gladstone Ministry was marked chiefly by the development of common action among the various groups of colonies. The principle of federation was not only further extended by accessions to the Dominion of Canada during these years (§ 775), but also applied to the Leeward Islands in 1871; and in the same year the Australian Colonies and Tasmania joined in a protest against Kimberley’s attempt to interfere with their mutual customs arrangements. In 1871 also Griqualand West, which had recently become valuable through the discovery of diamonds, was acquired from the Griqua chief, Waterboer, and the Orange Free State was compensated for abandoning its claims by receiving £90,000. In 1872 Cape Colony received responsible government by Order in Council, and further north the Dutch stations on the Gold Coast were acquired by the British Government. This transfer on the West Coast led to a war with the natives of Ashanti which was brought to a successful issue by Sir Garnet Wolseley in February 1874. Two other African

events of the period were destined to have a far-reaching importance: in 1869 Sir Samuel Baker, an Englishman, was sent by the Khedive to govern the Equatorial Provinces which have since become British territory, and Ferdinand Lesseps, a Frenchman, completed the Suez Canal, which at once revolutionized the conditions of trade between Europe and the East.

§ 779. **Irish Remedial Legislation, 1869-1870.**—The immediate interest of the Gladstone Ministry, however, lay with domestic legislation; and here Ireland had first place. Gladstone began in 1869 with a Bill to disestablish and disendow the Irish Church, which was passed without much difficulty. Practically the Protestant Episcopalian Church was liberated from its subordination to the State at the price of surrendering a great part of its endowments, which were to be used for education and other social work; the Church retained its cathedrals and other ancient church buildings and was organized as a self-governing body; and the four Irish bishops ceased to sit in the Parliament of the United Kingdom. At the same time Gladstone discontinued the *regium donum* paid by the State to the Irish Presbyterian Church since William III.'s day and the State grant begun by Peel in 1845 to the Roman Catholic seminary at Maynooth. Thus the various churches in Ireland were left "free," unhelped and unhindered by State favour or State control; and there seems little doubt that these changes have worked for good. Gladstone's agrarian legislation was less successful. Russell's *Encumbered Estates Act* of 1849 had caused the transfer of many estates in Ireland to landowners who were bent on making their investment remunerative; the peasantry in their eagerness to retain their lands, often promised rents which they could not pay; and the result was an immense increase in the number of evictions. Gladstone's *Irish Land Act* of 1870 gave to tenants a right to be compensated for unexhausted improvements when they gave up their tenancy (except in the case when they were ejected for non-payment of rent); and also, at Bright's suggestion, it arranged that the State should advance money to tenants to buy their holdings, when their landlords were willing to sell. The Act was disliked on principle by many Englishmen as an interference with "freedom of contract"; and it soon became even more disliked in practice by Irish peasants when they found that the Act provided no effectual remedy against rack-renting.

§ 780. **English Legislation, 1870-1873.**—Special legislation for England accompanied and followed these Irish measures



Forster's *Elementary Education Act*, which was going through Parliament in 1870, cheek by jowl with the *Irish Land Act*, was a long step towards furnishing England with a system which should deserve to be called "national" and "educational." This measure provided machinery for the establishment of elective school-boards in districts where adequate primary education was not provided by voluntary effort, and armed these school-boards with powers to levy rates for the erection and upkeep of schools, and to compel parents to send their children to school. The "religious difficulty" was surmounted by a "Cowper-Temple clause" which enacted that no "catechism or distinctive dogmatic formularies" should be taught in the board schools, and that no child should be in any way compelled to attend denominational instruction in the voluntary schools. Something had already been done for secondary schools by the establishment of an "Endowed Schools Commission" in 1869; and in 1871 the older English universities of Oxford and Cambridge were thrown open to all kinds of Nonconformists by the parliamentary abolition of religious tests. In 1872 a *Ballot Act* substituted secret voting by ballot for the old system of open voting, in the hope that thereby bribery, intimidation, and violence might prove less conspicuous features of elections of all kinds, parliamentary and municipal. Finally in 1873 the *Supreme Court of Judicature Act* partly amalgamated the three "Common Law" courts (Queen's Bench, Common Pleas, and Exchequer) and the Court of Chancery into four divisions of one High Court of Justice. This Act was completed in 1876 by an Act rearranging the Courts of Appeal; and together these Acts have done much for the simplification, cheapening, and quickening of judicial proceedings.

§ 781. **British Legislation, 1870-1871.**—Meanwhile measures were being carried which effected equally great changes for the British Isles as a whole. Trades Unions were legalized by an Act of 1871, and the military system of Great Britain was transformed by Cardwell. In 1870 the War Office was reorganized in three departments, which have since been reduced to two; and in 1871 the control of the subsidiary forces—militia, yeomanry, and volunteers—was transferred to the Secretary of State for War. But more important and more successful were the steps taken to make the army more efficient as a fighting instrument. Cardwell's *Army Enlistment Act*, 1870, introduced the "short-service system," whereby men were to be enlisted not for twelve or twenty years as heretofore, but for six (afterwards seven) years, and, after spending

this period with the colours, were to be passed to the reserve—i. e. were to be free to resume civil occupation, but to be liable to be called out if necessary. A Royal Proclamation put an end to the system whereby officers purchased their commissions.

§ 782. **Fall of the Gladstone Ministry, 1874.**—In the course of three or four years Gladstone had annoyed Protestant Nonconformists by his compromise on the question of religious education, Anglicans by his disestablishment of the Irish Church, landlords by his land legislation, the gentry generally by his army legislation, and the general public by his foreign policy. His parliamentary majority had therefore diminished gradually; and in March 1873 he was defeated on the *Irish University Education Bill*—a measure intended to set up an Irish University which should attract Roman Catholics as well as Protestants. Gladstone at once resigned but, as Disraeli declined to take office again without a parliamentary majority, he resumed office. Early in the following year, however, he dissolved Parliament in order to take the sense of the country on his extensive reforms and he promised that, if he were continued in office, he would abolish the income-tax. The elections resulted in a Conservative majority; and Gladstone at once resigned.

### III. DISRAELI'S SECOND MINISTRY, 1874-1880.

§ 783. **Disraeli's Home Policy.**—The Ministry which Disraeli formed—with Lords Derby, Carnarvon, and Salisbury at the Foreign, Colonial, and India Offices respectively—was naturally influenced by the results of its predecessor's policy. It was marked by great quietude in domestic politics, and by much stir in foreign politics. In 1873 the "Home Rule League" (formerly known as the Home Government Association) was formed to secure what O'Connell had called "the repeal of the Union"; and this League, at first under Isaac Butt, later under Charles Stewart Parnell, obtained almost complete control of Irish parliamentary representation, and did its best to compel attention to Irish grievances by "obstructing" all other business at Westminster. In 1879 Michael Davitt formed an "Irish Land League," with the objects of obtaining reductions in rent, and ultimately getting rid of landlords altogether.

§ 784. **Egypt and India, 1874-1880.**—The most prominent events in Disraeli's Second Ministry were connected with the East, and with South Africa; and of these two spheres of action the former especially attracted the "Oriental imagination" of the Prime Minister himself. In 1875 Disraeli purchased the Khedive's shares

in the Suez Canal, thus obtaining not only a remunerative investment but also an effective control over the direct route to the Far East. In 1879, Great Britain and France, acting principally as shareholders in the Suez Canal Company, intervened jointly in the affairs of Egypt, deposed the extravagant Khedive, Ismail, in favour of his son Tewfik, and established a system of Dual Control which led to further intervention a few years later. In all these Egyptian dealings—as in 1798 and 1840—Great Britain was mainly interested in Egypt as being on the road to India. Disraeli also showed his interest in that country in two other ways. In 1876 he passed an *Additional Titles Bill*, in virtue of which Queen Victoria was proclaimed Empress of India in a great durbar held at Delhi on New Year's Day, 1877. A little later he embarked on the search for a "scientific frontier" on the North-West of India; and this search brought about two Afghan Wars. In the Second Afghan War (November 1878–May 1879) Great Britain deposed Shír Ali for receiving a Russian envoy, and established Yakúb Khán as Amír on terms laid down on the *Treaty of Gandamak*, whereby the Amír ceded the Kurum, Pishin and Sibi Valleys, and promised to receive a British Resident at Kábul. The Third Afghan War arose out of the murder of the British Resident, Sir Louis Cavagnari, in September 1879. General Roberts occupied Kábul in December 1879, and thence made a march to Kandahar which resulted in the establishment of Abdur-Rahman Khán as Amír. Before that time a change of government had taken place at home, which involved a temporary abandonment of the "forward policy" on the North-West frontier.

§ 785. **Russia and Turkey, 1875–1878.**—Meanwhile suspicion of Russian designs, which was the prime cause of these Afghan Wars, had brought Great Britain to the verge of war with Russia in the Near East. The "atrocities" committed by the Turks in repressing Christian risings in Herzegovina and Bulgaria (1875–1876) led in April 1877 to the outbreak of a Russo-Turkish War, which ended in the *Treaty of San Stefano*, March 1878. Early in 1878 Disraeli, now Lord Beaconsfield, sent a British fleet to protect Constantinople; and in order to compel Russia to submit the *Treaty of San Stefano* to a European Congress, he later called out the reserves of the British Army, and brought Indian troops to Malta. Before the Congress met in Berlin in June, the British Government came to terms with Russia and Turkey: the "Greater Bulgaria" arranged in the San Stefano Treaty (including Roumelia and reaching to the Aegean Sea) was to be divided into two, and

Turkey was to hand over Cyprus to Great Britain in return for an annual tribute and a permanent guarantee of the integrity of Turkish dominions in Asia. The *Treaty of Berlin* embodied these arrangements, and also erected Roumania, Servia, and Montenegro into independent states, while it gave Kars, Batoum, and Bessarabia to Russia, and handed over to Austria-Hungary the administration of Bosnia and Herzegovina. The British representatives, Lords Beaconsfield and Salisbury, returned from the Congress declaring that they had brought back "Peace with Honour."

§ 786. **The Zulus and the Boers, 1875-1880.**—British intervention in the Russo-Turkish War is almost the only piece of work done by the Disraeli Ministry which can be judged as a whole. In Afghanistan and South Africa its work was still incomplete when it had to give place to another Ministry which had quite other views. In South Africa the difficulties of the time arose mainly out of the disturbed relations between the Transvaal Boers and various tribes on their borders. The dangers to the white population in South Africa were so generally felt that in 1875 Lord Carnarvon ventured to broach a scheme of general confederation; and in 1877 he sent Theophilus Shepstone to annex the Transvaal. Sir Henry Bartle Frere, who was Governor of Cape Colony and High Commissioner for South Africa from 1878 to 1881, determined to break the Zulu power. In 1879 Wolseley crushed Sekukuni in the Lydenburg district of the Transvaal, and Lord Chelmsford overthrew Cetuyayo, in the district known as Zululand, north of Natal and south-east of the Transvaal. The latter campaign was at first unsuccessful: in January a British contingent was overwhelmed at Isandhlwana, and another narrowly escaped the same fate at Rorke's Drift on the Tugela River; in June the Prince Imperial, son and heir of Napoleon III., was slain while fighting for Great Britain as a volunteer; but in July Chelmsford stormed Ulundi, the Zulu capital, and took the King prisoner. The native peril being thus overpast, the Transvaal Boers expected either independence or at least the self-government promised to them; but a change of Ministry at home distracted attention from them at a critical moment.

#### IV. GLADSTONE'S SECOND MINISTRY, 1880-1885.

§ 787. **Afghanistan and the Transvaal, 1880-1881.**—This change of Ministry followed a General Election, held in the spring of 1880, in which the Liberals obtained a large majority. Apparently the Electorate had been as much "harassed" by Beacons-

field's foreign activity as by Gladstone's domestic reforms; but it is possible also that a long depression in trade was made to count against the Ministry, and that Gladstone's denunciatory speeches in his "Midlothian Campaign" had helped to turn the scale. The Liberal victory at the polls was at once followed by the resignation of Lord Beaconsfield (who died in April 1881) and by the formation of a Ministry in which Gladstone's principal colleagues were Bright, Forster, Granville, Kimberley, Sir William Harcourt, and Joseph Chamberlain. Gladstone had spoken so strongly against Disraeli's policy that he was almost as much bound in conscience as in inclination to undo his acts wherever possible. He sent the Marquess of Ripon to India to reverse Lord Lytton's "forward policy" and to adopt a conciliatory attitude towards the natives, which made him by far the most popular of all Indian Viceroy's among them. In South Africa, also, for reasons which have been variously given, Gladstone reversed the "forward policy" of his predecessor. In December 1880 the Transvaal Boers proclaimed an independent republic under Paul Kruger, and defeated a British force under Sir George Colley at Laing's Nek and Majuba Hill (27 February 1881). In the following month Gladstone made peace with the Boers, recognizing the independence of the Transvaal State and the suzerainty of the Queen. Naturally enough the Boers ascribed this concession to their own valour and to the weakness of their adversaries; and this impression was confirmed in 1884 when the *Pretoria Convention* of March 1881 was replaced by a *London Convention* in which no mention was made of the Queen's "suzerainty" over what was now again formally styled "the South African Republic."

§ 788. **Egypt and the Soudan, 1881-1885.**—One explanation of Gladstone's policy in Afghanistan and the Transvaal is that he desired his Ministry to be a time of "peace, retrenchment, and reform." But hardly was the Transvaal trouble over for the present when disturbances broke out in Egypt which filled the rest of Gladstone's Ministry with a series of "little wars." In September 1881 Arabi Pasha, an officer in the Egyptian army, put himself at the head of a movement against the Dual Control, and raised the cry "Egypt for the Egyptians." As France refused to join in the work of restoring order, Great Britain undertook the task by herself. In July 1882 Admiral Seymour bombarded and occupied Alexandria; and in September Wolseley, who had advanced from the Suez Canal, defeated the Egyptian army at Tel-el-Kebir, and seized Cairo. Early in 1883 Granville issued a circular to the Powers announcing that

Great Britain had undertaken the duty of acting as adviser to the Khedive, but would withdraw her troops as soon as possible. But meanwhile a new danger had arisen in the Sudan. Muhammad Ahmad had proclaimed himself the Mahdi promised by the prophet Muhammad, who was to sweep away the rule of unbelievers and make the faithful masters of the earth. In November 1883 he destroyed a weak Egyptian army under Hicks Pasha, an Englishman, and thus won a general acceptance of his claims. In January 1884 the British Government sent Charles Gordon, who had governed the Egyptian territories on the Upper Nile with extraordinary success for five years (1874-1879), to withdraw Egyptian troops from the Sudan; but Gordon was shut up in Khartoum by the Mahdists, and the British Government was compelled, much against its will, to rescue him. After much hesitation between the Suakim and the Nile routes, the latter was chosen by Wolseley, now a peer. The advance column of the relief expedition defeated the Mahdists at Abu Klea (January 17, 1885) and came within sight of Khartoum two days after its fall and Gordon's death (January 26, 1885). Four days previously the Mahdi had died and had been succeeded by the Khalifa Abdallah. As Gladstone had no desire to avenge Gordon's death, or to rescue the Sudan from anarchy, British and Egyptian troops were withdrawn, and the southern boundary of Egypt was fixed at Wady Halfa.

§ 789. *Irish Affairs, 1880-1885.*—Irish questions proved even more perplexing to the Gladstone Ministry than those which beset them concerning the Nile Valley. "Boycotting," murder of landlords, and mutilation of cattle became so common in 1880, under the auspices of the Land League, that various Coercion Bills were passed early in 1881. But the Ministry wished to provide remedies for agrarian grievances as well as repression for agrarian outrages; and in April it passed a *Land Act*, creating a court empowered to fix rents for fifteen years. This Act satisfied no one, least of all the leaders of the "Home Rule" League and of the Land League; and when several of these, including Parnell, were imprisoned in October they issued from Kilmainham Jail a manifesto forbidding the payment of rent. Gladstone retaliated by proclaiming the Land League "an illegal and criminal association"; but in April 1882 he came to terms with Parnell in order to secure the parliamentary support of his followers. This agreement, known as the *Kilmainham Treaty*, led to the retirement of the Ministers directly responsible for Irish affairs, Earl Cowper, the Viceroy, and Forster, the Chief

Secretary for Ireland. In the following month Forster's successor, Lord Frederick Cavendish, and one of his permanent staff were murdered in Phoenix Park, near Dublin, by some members of a Club which called itself the "Invincibles"; and this fresh outrage was met by fresh measures of coercion. The Home Rule leaders repudiated responsibility for the murders but continued to resist the attempt to govern Ireland by exceptional means. During the rest of the Gladstone Ministry, Ireland was kept comparatively quiet under the rule of Earl Spencer and his Chief Secretary Mr. (afterwards Sir) George Trevelyan.

§ 790. **Third Reform Acts, 1884-1885.**—The Liberal Government had come into office in 1880 with a strong parliamentary majority; but its measures in South Africa, Egypt, and Ireland had not struck the average onlooker as either strong or wise or successful. Nor had it effected very much in its chosen sphere of domestic legislation. A *Burials Act*, giving Nonconformists the right to be buried in Anglican churchyards, a *Bankruptcy Act*, a *Married Women's Property Act*, and an *Employers' Liability Act* were almost the only notable measures; and these, being all of a highly technical nature, did not win for their authors a popularity proportionate to their usefulness. Bye-elections pointed to the probability that the next general election would go against the Government unless it could do something to win the favour of the electorate. For these and other reasons Gladstone, in January 1884, introduced a *Franchise Bill*, which assimilated the county and borough franchise, or in other words conferred a vote on the agricultural labourer. The Lords declined to pass this Bill unless accompanied by a Bill for the Redistribution of Seats; and in November such a Bill was arranged jointly by the Government and the leaders of the Opposition. This Bill cut up the historic constituencies into single-member districts, something after the fashion advocated by the Chartists, and gave twelve additional members to Scotland (bringing the total membership of the House of Commons up to 670). The *Franchise Act* was passed in December 1884 and the *Redistribution Act* in the following June. In the same month the Government was defeated on its Budget proposals by the combination of the Irish Home Rulers, disgusted with the continuance of coercion in Ireland, and the Conservatives. Gladstone thereupon resigned and was succeeded by Lord Salisbury; and this change of Ministry practically coincided with a complete transformation in the constitutional and international politics of Great Britain.

## CHAPTER LII.

### DEMOCRACY AND EMPIRE, 1885-1902.

A. PERSONAL HISTORY OF VICTORIA. } See Chapter xlix.  
B. CONTEMPORARY RULERS. }

#### C. TOPICS OF THE PERIOD.

(i) **International: relations with—**

- (1) France: §§ 797, 798, 799.
- (2) Germany: §§ 797, 798, 799.
- (3) Portugal: §§ 797, 800.
- (4) Russia: § 803.
- (5) China: §§ 796, 803.
- (6) Japan: §§ 796, 803, 804.
- (7) United States: § 797.

(ii) **Constitutional.**

- (1) Ministers: §§ 791-796.
- (2) England: §§ 791, 793, 794.
- (3) Ireland: §§ 791-794.
- (4) India: §§ 791, 803.
- (5) Africa: §§ 791, 793, 794, 796-802.
- (6) Australia: §§ 791, 805.

#### I. MINISTERIAL HISTORY, 1885-1901.

§ 791. **First Salisbury Ministry, June 1885-January 1886.**—On Gladstone's resignation Lord Salisbury formed a Conservative Ministry, including Sir Michael Hicks-Beach, W. H. Smith, and Lord Randolph Churchill. Like so many other Conservative ministries during the century, it was merely a stop-gap affair, lacking a parliamentary majority. Its seven-months' career was mainly notable for the passing of Acts authorizing the formation of a Federal Council for Australia (§ 805), and encouraging peasant proprietorship in Ireland (*Lord Ashbourne's Act*); for a Third Burmese War, which resulted in the annexation of the remainder of King Theebaw's dominions; for the proclamation of a British protectorate over Bechuanaland and Pondoland (§ 800); and above all, for the discovery of rich goldfields in the Transvaal, and for the completion of the Canadian Pacific Railroad. A General Election held towards the close of the year returned a House of Commons in which the Liberals had exactly half the total number of seats (335), while the Irish Home Rulers had 86 seats. The Home Rulers could turn the balance; and they chose to turn it against Lord Salisbury, who had threatened to suppress the Irish National League, by voting in favour of an amendment to the Address regretting the absence of labourers' allotments from the Queen's Speech.



**§ 792. Gladstone's Third Ministry, February-August 1886.**

—Gladstone then formed his third ministry, in which the most notable new men were Lord Rosebery, Foreign Secretary, and John Morley, Chief Secretary for Ireland. Under the circumstances it was inevitable that both the main parties in the British Parliament should bid for the support of the Home Rulers. Gladstone had allowed himself to be tossed to and fro in his former period of power, but he now decided to take a definite and irrefragable line of Irish policy. He introduced a *Home Rule Bill*, abolishing the representation of Ireland at Westminster, and establishing at Dublin a separate Parliament for the exclusive regulation of Irish affairs, and also a *Land Purchase Bill* lending to the new Irish Government £50,000,000 for buying out landlords under *Lord Ashbourne's Act*. Suspicions as to Gladstone's intentions towards Ireland had already excluded Lord Hartington and G. J. Goschen from his third Ministry: the realization of these suspicions at once led to the resignation of Joseph Chamberlain and George Trevelyan. The malcontents, who called themselves Liberal Unionists, numbered 93 members of the House of Commons; and their action caused the *Home Rule Bill* to be rejected on its second reading by 343 to 313 (June 7, 1886). A General Election followed in which Gladstone was beaten: the Gladstonian Liberals numbered only 191 against 317 Conservatives, the Liberal Unionists being 74 and the Irish Home Rulers 84.

**§ 793. Second Salisbury Ministry, August 1886-August 1892.**—Lord Salisbury formed a Ministry consisting exclusively of Conservatives, but supported by the Liberal Unionists. Lord Randolph Churchill was Chancellor of the Exchequer for some months; and shortly after his withdrawal Lord Salisbury took over the charge of Foreign Affairs, and his nephew, Arthur James Balfour, became Chief Secretary for Ireland. The Ministry, thus modified, lasted about six years. It was marked by the celebration of Queen Victoria's Jubilee in 1887 with great enthusiasm throughout the Empire; by a considerable number of domestic reforms, including the *Allotments Act*, 1887, Mr. Ritchie's *Local Government Act*, 1891; by many measures intended both to repress and to remedy Irish discontent; by a judicial inquiry into the connection between "Parnellism and Crime"; by a subsequent split in the ranks of the Irish Home Rulers; by the partition of most of Africa among various European States (§§ 797-799); and by the rise of Cecil Rhodes to commercial and political influence in South Africa. The General Election held

in the summer of 1892 resulted in the return of a majority of Liberals and Irish Home Rulers, and consequently in the defeat and resignation of Lord Salisbury.

**§ 794. Gladstone's Fourth Ministry, August 1892-March 1894.**—Gladstone took office for the last time with Harcourt, Rosebery, and John Morley in their old offices, and with Henry Asquith and Henry Campbell-Bannerman as Home and War Secretaries respectively. During the eighteen months which elapsed before ill-health compelled Gladstone to retire various large measures were introduced into Parliament. The only one of these which became law was Henry Fowler's *Parish Councils Act*, 1894, extending to rural parishes and districts a system of elective self-government similar to that which had already been established in boroughs and counties. Of the unsuccessful measures the most important were a *Home Rule Bill*, which was forced through the House of Commons, but which was thrown out in the Lords by an enormous majority (419 to 41), a *Welsh and Scottish Church Suspensory Bill*, intended to sever the connection between the State and the established churches in Wales and Scotland, and a *Liquor Traffic Bill* designed to make the number of public houses in any district dependent on "local option," that is on the wishes of the local ratepayers. The most notable events outside the British Isles were connected with the extension of British responsibilities in various parts of Africa (§§ 798-800).

**§ 795. Lord Rosebery's Ministry, March 1894-June 1895.**—On Gladstone's retirement in March 1894 (he died four years later), the Queen invited Lord Rosebery to take his place. Lord Rosebery accepted the post, handing over the charge of Foreign Affairs to the Earl of Kimberley; and all his former colleagues continued in office under him. The Ministry had only a small and uncertain majority in the House of Commons, and it was further weakened by internal dissensions—Lord Rosebery favouring, and Sir William Harcourt discouraging, an "Imperialist" policy. Almost its only notable achievements were the proclamation of a British protectorate over Uganda and the passing of Harcourt's Budget, which introduced a graduated scheme of death duties on a much larger scale than before. In June 1895 a snap division on the War Office Vote placed the Government in a minority; and Lord Rosebery seized the opportunity to resign.

**§ 796. Third Salisbury Ministry, June 1895-July 1902.**—Lord Salisbury then entered upon his third ministry, which lasted longer than any administration since that of Lord Liverpool at the

beginning of the nineteenth century, and which was ended by his retirement through ill-health. He himself took charge of Foreign Affairs until the General Election of 1900, when he handed them over to the Marquess of Lansdowne. His colleagues included such Conservatives as A. J. Balfour (who succeeded him as Prime Minister, July 1902) and Sir Michael Hicks-Beach, First Lord of the Treasury and Chancellor of the Exchequer respectively, and such Liberal Unionists as Joseph Chamberlain, the Colonial Secretary, and G. J. Goschen, First Lord of the Admiralty. A General Election held in the summer of 1895 gave the new Government a strong majority; and this was very little diminished at a new election held in the summer of 1900. This Ministry, which witnessed the celebration of the Great Jubilee of Queen Victoria in 1897, and the accession of her eldest son in January 1901, was almost entirely absorbed in foreign and colonial affairs. The weakness of China revealed in her defeat by Japan in the war of 1894-1895, gave to various European Powers opportunities for aggrandisement which inevitably interested the Government of the state having the largest trade with that country. In 1896 Great Britain was pressed by the necessities of her position in Egypt and Uganda to undertake the reconquest of the Sudan; and further south, political and economic jealousies between the Boer farmers and the foreign miners in the Transvaal issued in the Great Boer War of 1899-1902 and the acquiescence of the Boers in the reinclusion of their territories within the British Empire.

## II. THE SCRAMBLE FOR AFRICA, 1885-1902.

§ 797. **Africa at the Time of the Berlin Conference, 1884-1885.**—During the past twenty years or so the most striking general feature of world-history has been the "expansion of Europe"—that is to say, the sudden increase of interest on the part of European States in the non-European parts of the earth. Australasia had become definitely British during the first half of the nineteenth century, when the maritime supremacy of Great Britain was practically unchallenged. America, according to the "Monroe Doctrine" (which brought Great Britain and the United States to the verge of war in 1895 over the disputed boundary between British Guiana and Venezuela), had ceased to be a safe field for European aggrandisement. Hence this "expansion of Europe" has been practically limited to parts of Asia and Africa and to the Pacific. Of these fields of action Africa was the largest; and in 1884 the "scramble for Africa" had become so far developed that an international con-

ference was called to lay down the rules of the game. At that time France was securely planted in Algeria and Tunis, in the North, and Great Britain was definitely established in South and West Africa and informally in Egypt, while Portugal had settlements (dating from the fifteenth century) scattered along the East and West coasts, and Germany had just effected a footing in Damaraland and Namaqualand. The Berlin Conference (November 1884-February 1885) decided in favour of freedom of navigation on the Congo and the Niger (later applied also to the Zambesi) and in favour of the suppression of slavery in the basin of the Congo. This river had been fully revealed to Europe by H. M. Stanley less than ten years previously (in 1877); and its huge basin had been occupied by an "International Association" which had been financed by the King of the Belgians. African developments since the Berlin Conference fall into three well-defined geographical groups.

§ 798. *North-East Africa, 1885-1902.*—Germany tried to supplant Portugal, not only at the south end of her west coast claims (in Damaraland), but at the north end of her east coast claims; and this latter activity aroused the alarm of British missionary interests in Uganda, and British commercial interests in Zanzibar. Accordingly in 1888 William Mackinnon, the chairman of the principal steamship company trading to East Africa, obtained a charter for an "Imperial British East Africa Company" to administer the coast strip claimed by the Sultan of Zanzibar; and in 1890 an *Anglo-German Agreement* delimited the "spheres of interest" of the high contracting Powers in that region. Great Britain secured the protectorate of Zanzibar and Uganda (with Unyoro) in return for ceding Heligoland to Germany; and the East Africa Company was persuaded to undertake the administration of Uganda. It was partly because Great Britain had acquired control, not only of the mouth, but also of the sources of the Nile that the reconquest of the intermediate region was undertaken. Lord Cromer (Sir Evelyn Baring), who had for many years been adviser to the Khedive, recommended this enterprise, and had restored Egyptian finances to a condition to bear the strain; and meanwhile Sir Herbert Kitchener, the Sirdar of the Egyptian army, had put his troops into condition to face the Dervishes, as the fanatical followers of the Kalifa were called. In 1896 the Egyptian frontier was advanced southwards to Dongola; and in 1898 the Dervishes were decisively defeated at the Atbara, and at Omdurman. In 1899 an *Anglo-French Agreement* delimited the "spheres of influence" of the two Powers in North-East Africa.

§ 799. **West Africa, 1885-1902.**—In West as in East Africa Great Britain came into contact, and sometimes almost to conflict, with both France and Germany. In West Africa, Great Britain had various territories, some old, some new, such as Gambia, Sierra Leone, and Lagos, and also trading interests on the Oil Rivers, i.e. the region round the Niger delta. In 1879 George Taubman Goldie organized the British traders in this last-named district into a "United (afterwards National) African Company," which bought out competitors of other nations, and in 1886 received a charter, of the old East India Company pattern, as the "Royal Niger Company." Meanwhile in 1884 Great Britain had assumed a protectorate over the Niger Coast; and this had been formally recognized by the Berlin Conference. This Company had some difficulties with native chiefs in Benin and elsewhere, and also with the German claims in Togoland and the Kameruns; but its most serious difficulties arose from the desire of French officers to create a continuous colonial empire stretching southwards from Algeria to the Guinea coast, and behind Lake Tchad to the French Congo Territory. These difficulties were settled by the *Anglo-French Agreements* of 1890 and 1898. In 1901 the British Government relieved the Niger Company of its administrative duties and took over the government of all Nigeria. Mr. Chamberlain has also used his long tenure of office as Colonial Secretary to "develop the neglected estates" of Great Britain along the Guinea Coast by building harbours and railways.

§ 800. **South Africa, 1885-1893.**—In 1884 the British Government had abandoned, or seemed to abandon, all claims to suzerainty over the South African Republic (except a power to disallow its treaties with foreign Powers), and the German Government annexed Damaraland and Namaqualand. Thus there arose a possibility of an alliance between Germany and President Kruger which would have effectually stopped the extension of British South Africa northwards. It is true, that in 1884 the Transvaal was practically bankrupt, and that its boundaries were fixed by the *London Convention* of that year; but on the other hand gold was found in great quantities within the Transvaal in 1885, and new Boer Republics were being founded outside the treaty-limits of the Transvaal. The latter danger was overcome by the expedition of Sir Charles Warren in 1885, which put an end to the Republics of Stellaland and Goshen on the western frontier of the Transvaal, and annexed the whole region of Bechuanaland to the British Empire. On the other hand, an eastward extension of the Transvaal into Zululand was recognized as the

"New Republic" in 1886, but this was not allowed to reach the sea; and Boer extension northwards was practically prevented by the establishment in 1889 of the "British South Africa Company," which had acquired exclusive rights of mining from Lobengula, King of the Matabeles. The British South Africa Company was the creation and the instrument of Cecil Rhodes, who thus spent on "empire-building" the wealth he had won from the diamond mines in Kimberley. The operations of the Company involved it in difficulties with Portugal—ended by the *Anglo-Portuguese Agreement* of 1891—and with Lobengula, culminating in the First Matabele War of 1893. The Company also obtained for a time control over a vast region north of the Zambesi, extending to the south-east of Lake Tanganyika; and all this territory became known as Rhodesia. The Company has built railways connecting Buluwayo with both the Cape system and the Portuguese port of Beira.

§ 801. **The Boer Republics, 1895-1899.**—British authority had thus been asserted in divers ways over a vast territory in Austral Africa, extending from Cape Town to Lake Tanganyika—roughly speaking, over the lands explored by the Scots missionary, David Livingstone. But the future of this territory was still rendered uncertain by the presence of two Boer Republics in a large enclave intercepted between British and Portuguese territories, and by the neighbourhood of German territories in East and West. Three different schemes for the future were projected by three powerful personalities—Cecil Rhodes, Jan Hofmeyr and Paul Kruger. Rhodes, who added to his other labours those of Prime Minister of Cape Colony from 1890 to 1896, seems to have worked towards a self-governing federation of all British and Boer territories under the British flag; Hofmeyr, a Cape Dutchman, who directed an *Africander League* (chiefly Dutch) and whose support was necessary to Rhodes, seems to have had similar plans except that the Dutch, rather than the British, element was to predominate; and Kruger, an old man who had taken part in the Great Trek, and was marked by a passionate hatred of everything British, seems to have made up his mind that a wholly independent Dutch South Africa had been made possible by the mineral wealth of the Transvaal. Though defeated in his scheme for the extension of the Transvaal, he was able to keep the immigrant mining population of Johannesburg (*Uitlanders* or *Outlanders*) from sharing the political power of the Dutch farmers. The *Outlanders* asked for what they held to be their civil rights and fair taxation; and failing to get any concessions they plotted an

armed rising in Johannesburg with the help of Cecil Rhodes. The result was the abortive Jameson Raid from Mafeking, which was crushed at Krugersdorp on New Year's Day 1896, and which was followed by the resignation of Rhodes. The British Government disclaimed responsibility for the Raid, but as it inflicted no punishment on Rhodes or the Raiders its professions were not believed; and Kruger set himself to arm his burghers in such a way that, when Great Britain openly took up what was thought to be its settled intention of destroying the Boer Republics, he should be able to defeat the plan and turn the British out of South Africa.

§ 802. **The Great Boer War, 1899-1902.**—In the summer of 1899 Kruger, Steyn (President of the Orange Free State) and Sir Alfred Milner, High Commissioner for South Africa, met in conference at Bloemfontein to settle outstanding questions; and on the failure of their negotiations each side prepared for war. In October the Boer Republics sent a joint ultimatum requiring Great Britain to cease sending reinforcements to South Africa; and on her refusal they invaded Natal and the Cape Colony. They wasted time in laying siege to Ladysmith, Kimberley, and Mafeking; and, on the other hand, Sir Redvers Buller, who was sent out to take chief command against them, divided his forces so much that both he and his colleagues were badly defeated in December 1899. Thereupon the British Government sent out Lords Roberts and Kitchener at the head of large forces, regulars and volunteers from all parts of the Empire. In February 1900 they relieved Kimberley, and captured a large force under Cronje at Paardeberg; and about the same time Buller relieved Ladysmith. Bloemfontein was captured on March 13, and the Orange Free State was formally annexed on May 28. Pretoria was captured on June 5, and the Transvaal was formally annexed on September 1. It was thought that the war was over; but the Boers and their sympathisers in Cape Colony gave Lord Kitchener nearly two years hard work before peace was made on 31 May 1902. The war seems to have taught both British and Boers to respect one another; and it remains to be seen whether the politicians will be able to build a united South Africa on the basis of this mutual respect. The universal rejoicing at the conclusion of this great struggle found fitting expression in the coronation of King Edward VII. and Queen Alexandra on August 9, 1902.

§ 803. **Turkey and India, 1885-1902.**—The expansion of Europe and Great Britain has not been confined to Africa. In Asia, Turkish dominion has remained intact entirely through the jealousies

of the European Powers : no one dared to intervene effectively on behalf of the Armenians in 1895 ; and when Greece took up arms on behalf of Crete two years later, Europe merely intervened to save Greece from utter destruction. The future of Turkey and of Persia presents geographical, religious and diplomatic difficulties which, it may be dogmatically asserted, cannot be solved in a way satisfactory, or even tolerable, to all parties concerned. Further east, Great Britain has continued to strengthen her north-west frontier of India against the dreaded Russian invasion : the chief incidents in this sphere during recent years have been the Penjdeh Incident of 1884 (which nearly led to an Anglo-Russian war, but which ended in the joint delimitation of the Afghán frontier), the Chitral campaign of 1895, and the Afridi Rising of 1897. On the eastern side of India, Great Britain has strengthened her position by the annexation of Burmah in 1886 (followed by a long and arduous struggle against dacoits or bandits), and the conclusion of an *Anglo-French Agreement* regarding Siam in 1896.

§ 804. *China, 1895-1902.*—The chief Asiatic opportunity for aggrandisement, however, is furnished by the weakness of China, clearly demonstrated in the brief war of 1895 between China and Japan. Russia successively acquired a right to build and guard the Pacific end of her great Trans-Siberian railway across Manchuria, and later the lease of a terminal ice-free harbour at Port Arthur ; in 1897 Germany acquired the port of Kiao-Chau and the commercial rights in its vicinity ; and in 1898 Great Britain acquired the lease of a neighbouring port in Wei-hai-wei, which has not yet shown signs of rivalling Hong-Kong in importance. On the whole, Great Britain and the United States have favoured the policy of the "open door" in China, and have tried to prevent the partition of the Empire. The Chinese Government, however, naturally irritated by the greed of the European Powers, and by the aggressiveness of their missionaries, instigated and then openly countenanced an anti-foreign "Boxer" rising which broke out in the summer of 1900. For nearly two months the European colony in Peking was besieged in the British Legation, but was relieved by a joint force of Europeans, Japanese, and Americans. The suppression of the rising was followed by the outbreak of fresh rivalries and intrigues among the Powers ; and the fate of China is still as uncertain as that of Turkey. Early in 1902 Great Britain and Japan, two of the Powers most interested in preserving the integrity of China, entered into a close alliance which may become as important as the *Triple Alliance*



between Austria, Germany and Italy (dating from 1887) and the answering *Dual Alliance* of France and Russia (dating from 1891).

§ 805. **The Pacific and the Australian Commonwealth, 1901.**—The establishment of Russia and Germany in good positions on the eastern coast of Asia, the conclusion of the *Anglo-Japanese Alliance*, the annexation by the United States of Hawaii and the Philippine Islands (at the close of their brief war with Spain in the summer of 1898), and the *Anglo-German Agreement* of 1899 concerning Samoa, are among the principal recent illustrations of the growing importance of the Pacific Ocean. The annexation of Fiji by Great Britain in 1874 (with the good-will of the natives), the partition of New Guinea in 1884 between Great Britain, Holland, and Germany, and the proclamation in 1888 of a British protectorate over North Borneo, Brunei and Sarawak were earlier indications of the same significant fact. The growing interests of European Powers in the Pacific were the chief cause of the movement in favour of Australian, or even Australasian, federation. The principal stages in the movement were the erection of a Federal Council for Australia in 1885, the *Imperial Defence Act* of 1888 (which arranged for the formation of a special squadron in Australasian waters at the joint expense of the Mother Country and the Colonies), and the *Australian Commonwealth Act* of 1900, which gave imperial sanction to a federal constitution that had slowly been formulated by Australian statesmen and sanctioned by their democratic electorates. The Commonwealth was formally inaugurated on January 1901; and there is good hope that this new federation will prove more successful than the old-fashioned "union" inaugurated exactly a century before (§ 678). At the beginning of the twentieth century statesmen of all parties throughout the British Empire seem to be looking to federal government as the most likely means to overcome the difficulties long experienced in attempts to combine "democracy" with "empire." The Peace Conference held at the Hague in 1899, under the auspices of the Tzar of Russia, may even be regarded as an attempt to realize the dream of Tennyson—in many things the most representative British poet of the nineteenth century—

"For I dipt into the future, far as human eye could see,  
Saw the Vision of the world, and all the wonder that could be ;

\* \* \* \* \*

Till the war-drum throb'd no longer, and the battle-flag were furled  
In the Parliament of man, the Federation of the world."

# INDEX.

*N.B.—The references are to the sections, not to the pages, except where otherwise specified.*

The index covers the text only, not the tables, maps, or small-type chapter-headings. These should be consulted with the aid of the list on p. vi, whenever matters genealogical, military, or geographical are being looked up.

BATTLES, SIEGES, and TREASURES are arranged alphabetically under those headings: General Topics, such as Church, Foreign Policy, and English Kings since the Norman Conquest, are indexed only in a general way: details may be readily found with the help of the lists of topics in the chapter-headings.

Abbots, 65, 102, 148, 306  
 Abdallah, Khalifa: 788, 798  
 Abdur-Rahman Khán: 784  
 Abercromby, Sir Ralph: 675, 678  
 Aberdeen, George Gordon, E. of: 745, 752, 758-764  
 Abhorers, 469  
 Abjuration, 509, 531  
 Abolitionists, 655, 686, 722, 772  
 Abyssinia, 776  
 Acadie, 391, 456, 550, 600  
 Aché, Francis, Count of: 608  
 Aquitaine: its extent and acquisition by Henry II., 115, 146; defended by his sons, 132, 134, 138; attacked by France in Henry III.'s reign, 153, 158; in Edward III.'s reign, 208, 208, 209; lost by Henry VI., 246. See too GASCONY, GUIENNE: Maps, pp. 72, 120  
 Adams, Samuel: 404  
*Additional Petition and Advice: 437*  
*— Titles Bill, 784*  
 Aden, 747  
 Adullamites, 773, 774  
 Adulterine Castles: 114, 116, 152  
 Ælfgar, 85, 87  
 Ælfred the Atheling: 83, 84  
 — the Great, K. of the West Saxons: reign, 56-59, 82; continued influence, 61, 62, 67, 634  
 Ælle, K. of the South Saxons: 39  
 Æthelbald, K. of the West Saxons: 51, 56  
 Æthelberht, K. of the Kentings: 43, 44, 50  
 — K. of the West Saxons: 56  
 Æthelsæda, 62  
 Æthelfrith, K. of the Northumbrians: 40, 44, 45  
 Æthelred I., K. of the W. Saxons: 56  
 — II., K. of the English: 65, 69, 76-80, 90

Æthelric, K. of the Northumbrians: 40  
 Æthelstan, K. of the English: 35, 63  
 Æthelwulf, K. of the West Saxons: 54, 55, 56  
 Afghanistan, 746, 784, 785, 787, 803  
 Africa: Vandal settlements, 32; English settlements, 391, 430, 455, 456, 527; circumnavigated, 265; in Victorian age, 744, 760, 787, 788, 797-802  
 African Company, 297, 799  
 Afridis, 803  
 Agitators, 421  
 Agrarian Revolution, 662  
 Agricola, 26, 27, 42  
 Agriculture, 42, 73, 214, 269, 319, 662  
 Aidan, 45  
 Aids (Feudal), 133, 143, 156, 175  
 Alabama, 772, 777  
 Albany, Robert Stuart, E. of: 229  
 Albemarle, George Monk, D. of: during the Commonwealth, 407, 428, 430, 440; under Charles II., 448, 450, 454-456, 494  
 Alberoni, Giulio, Cardinal: 558, 560  
 Alexander I, Tzar, 690, 698, 705  
 — II., Tzar, 761  
 — III., Pope: 122, 125  
 — IV., Pope: 155  
 — VI., Pope: 238, 346  
 — III., K. of Scots: 170, 172  
*Alien Act, 539*  
 Alleghania, 600  
 Allegiance, 94, 97, 108, 203, 507, 511  
 Alliances: Anglo-Burgundian, 231, 235-241, 254, 256, 279; Anglo-Dutch, 353, 361, 362, 459, 491, 497; Anglo-Flemish, 177, 198, 279; Anglo-French, 132, 255, 256, 283, 288, 345, 357, 362, 460; Anglo-Imperial, 140, 287, 312; Anglo-Scottish, 278, 337, 341, 369, 413, 510; Anglo-Spanish, 208, 263, 271, 278 327-330,

- 332; Franco-Scottish, 171, 172, 201;  
 Franco-Spanish, 208, 523  
*Allotments Act*, 793  
 Althorpe, John Spencer, Lord: 717, 727  
 Alva, Ferdinand, D. of: 345-347  
 Amboyana, 429  
 America: discovered by Europeans,  
 265, 280 (cf. p. 170); colonized by  
 Spaniards, 265, 346, 347, 349, 455,  
 528; by French, 391, 455; by Eng-  
 lish, 12, 357, 370, 377, 391, 426, 456,  
 503; by Scots, 391; by Dutch, 391,  
 455, 456  
*American Import Duties Act*, 631  
 Amherst, Jeffrey, Lord: 606  
 —, William: 732  
 Anglesey, 25, 44, 104  
 André, Major: 643  
 Anjou, 115, 136, 137, 244  
 —, Francis, D. of: 349, 353, 354  
 —, Henry, C. of: see HENRY II.  
 —, Henry, D. of: see HENRY III.  
 —, René, D. of: 243, 244  
 Annates, 155, 179, 294, 297, 328  
 Anne, Q. of England: 370, 515, 529,  
 533-552  
 — of Bohemia: 219, 232  
 — Boleyn: 289, 295-297, 302, 330-4  
 — of Brittany: 271  
 — of Kleves: 309  
 Anselm of Aosta: 102, 105, 107  
 Anson, George: 575  
 Anti-Corn-Law League, 742, 751  
*Appeals, Statutes of: First*, 295;  
*Second*, 297  
 Appellants, Lords: 218-220  
 Appropriation of Supplies: 213, 381,  
 457, 505  
 Arabi Pasha, 788  
 Aragon, 271, 538  
 Arakan, 732  
 Archers, 88, 183, 201, 205, 234  
 Arcot, 598  
 Argyll, Archibald Campbell, 8th E.  
 of: opposes Charles I., 401, 416, 422;  
 relations with Charles II., 428, 450  
 —, Archibald Campbell, 9th E. of:  
 478, 490  
 Arkwright, Richard: 662  
 Arlington, Henry Bennet, E. of: 458,  
 460, 464  
 Armada, Spanish: defeat, 355, 356;  
 importance, 330, 357, 361  
 Armagnacs, 230, 231, 236, 237, 241  
 Armed Neutrality, 642, 674, 675  
 Arminians, 364, 388, 397  
*Arms, Assize of*: 129, 166  
*Army Enlistment Act*, 781  
 —, Standing: origin, 417-419;  
 controls Parliament, 421-426, 431,  
 437, 439; feared by Parliament,  
 443, 448, 465, 495; controlled by  
 Parliament, 480, 495, 501, 506, 526;  
 in Ireland, 412, 515; reformed, 781  
 Arnold, Benedict: 634, 643  
 Arran, James Hamilton, E. of: 337  
 Arras, Congress of: 241  
*Arrow, The*: 766  
 Arthur, Briton King: 37, 39  
 — of Brittany: 136, 137  
 —, Prince of Wales: 270, 278  
*Articles of the Barons*, 143  
 — of Religion: Ten, 307; Six, 305,  
 307-309; Forty-two, 322; Thirty-  
 Nine, 344, 361, 388, 392  
 Artillery, 237, 263  
 Arundel, Richard Fitz-Alan, 4th E. of:  
 218, 219, 220  
 —, Archbishop: real name, Thomas  
 Fitz-Alan, 220-222, 225, 231, 232  
 Ashanti War, 778  
*Ashbourne's Act*, 791, 792  
 Ashburton, John Dunning, Lord: 641,  
 646, 647  
 Ashley: see SHAFTESBURY  
 Asia: inhabitants invade Europe, 62,  
 103, 232; explored by Europeans,  
 265, 430; partitioned, 804  
 Aske, Robert: 303  
 Assam, 732  
 Assassination Plots: 352, 353, 355,  
 373, 523, 707  
 Assembly: of Nominees (English),  
 432, 433; of Scots Kirk, 395, 396,  
 401, 510, 511  
 Assiento, 550, 562, 574, 580  
 Assize, 108, 128, 129  
 Associations: "Eastern," 410-415;  
 "Loyal," 353, 523  
 Astley, Sir Jacob: 407, 419  
 Athlone, Godart de Ginkel, E. of: 514  
 Attainder, 267, 347, 399, 417, 478, 523  
 Atterbury, Francis: 564  
 Auckland, William Eden, Lord: 746  
*Augsburg: Religious Peace of*, 327;  
*League of*, 491  
 Augusta, Princess of Wales: 613, 614  
 Augustine, 43, 46  
 Aurangzeb, 596  
 Australia, 12, 532, 655, 759, 805  
*Australian Government Act*, 759  
 — *Commonwealth Act*, 805

**Austria: early relations with England,** 183, 271, 273, 327; in seventeenth century, 362, 378, 380, 525, 528; in *Anne's* reign, 533, 537, 538, 541, 542, 549-550; in *Walpole's* time, 566, 568, 570; during the Wars of Austrian Succession, 576-582, 586, 588; during the Seven Years' War, 591, 603-612; during the Great War, 660, 667-670, 673, 674, 685, 693, 698, 703; in the nineteenth century, 705, 710, 721, 745, 771, 773

**Austro-Prussian Wars,** 576, 588, 603-612, 773

**Avignon,** 188, 199

**Azores,** 357

**Babington, Anthony:** 355

**Bacon, Francis:** 331

**Baird, Sir David:** 675

**Baker, Sir Samuel:** 778

**Balance of Power:** 279, 327, 528

**Balfour, Arthur James:** 793, 796

**Ball, John:** 216

**Balliol, Edward, "K. of Scots":** 196

—, John, K. of Scots, 170-2, 176, 180

*Ballot Act,* 780

**Baltimore, Cecil Calvert, Lord:** 391

*Bank Charter Act,* 722

**Bank of England,** 518, 524, 527, 671, 706, 722

**Bar, Duchy of:** 570

**Barbados,** 370

**Barbon, Prayse** (nicknamed "Praise God"): 432

**Barclay, Sir George:** 523

**Baronets,** 376

**Barons: feudal relationship to King,** 73-75, 93, 94, 98, 101, 127; struggles for local independence, 96, 99, 104, 106, 109-114, 116, 126; collective struggles to control central government, 117, 131, 133, 141-145, 147, 150-159; work in Great Council, 127, 143, 147, 148, 151, 157, 159; work in Parliament, 148-150, 170, 172-175, 182, 185, 192; renewal of attempts at local independence, 193, 194, 213, 217-220, 252; repressed by Tudors, 261-263, 270, 305

**Barrow, Henry:** 359

**Basscin,** 639

**Bastwick, John:** 396

**Batavian Republic,** 669

*Batz's Case:* 374, 386

**Bath, William Pulteney, E. of:** 559, 571, 578, 585

**Battles:** Aboukir, 672; Abu Klea, 788; Adwalton (or Atherton), 410; Æscedun, 56; Aghrim (or Aughrim), 514; Agincourt, 190, 234, 235, 242; Albuera, 695; Alexandria, 675; Aliwal, 749; Allington, 54; Alma, 763; Almanza, 541; Almenara, 546; Anglesey, 104; Argaum, 680; Arsouf, 132; Ashdown, 56, 80; Ashington, 80; Aspern, 693; Assandun, 80; Assaye, 680; Atbara, 798; Auberoche, 201; Auray, 208; Auerstadt, 688; Austerlitz, 685, 686; Badbury, 39; Balaclava, 763; Baltic, 675; Bannockburn, 183, 185; Barnett, 255; Beachy Head, 513, 515; Beaugé, 237; Bedford, 39; Benburb, 427; Bensington, 52; Blackheath, 276; Blenheim, 537; Blore Heath, 249; Boomplatz, 760; Boroughbridge, 185; Bosworth, 260, 267, 273; Bothwell Brigg, 469, 484; Bouvines, 142; Boyne, 513; Bramham Moor, 229; Brémule, 109; Brentford, 409; Brenville, 109; Brest, 283, 517; Brihuega, 546; Brunanburh, 63; Bunker Hill, 633; Burford, 51; Burgos, 695; Buttington, 59; Buxar, 624; Calais, 190; Cambuskenneth, 176; Camperdown, 671; Carberry Hill, 340; Carham, 81; Castlebar, 677; Chalgrove Field, 410; Chastillon (or Castillon), 246; Cheriton, 415; Chester, 40; Chevy Chase, 219; Chillianwallah, 761; Chippenham, 57; Clifton, 584; Clontarf, 77, 123; Copenhagen, 675, 691; Corbisdale, 428; Coruña, 692; Creçy, 190, 201, 205; Crevant, 239; Cropredy Bridge, 415; Culloden, 584; Daegsastan, 40; Damme, 141; Dawstone, 40; Deorham (or Dyrham), 39, 41; Dettingen, 579; Dominica, 644; Dover, 151; Downs, 456; Drumclog, 469; Duffindale, 320; Dunbar, 171, 428; Dupplin Moor, 196; Edgecote, 254; Edgehill, 409; Edlington, 57; Ellandun, 52, 54; Ethandun, 57; Evesham, 159; Faddiley, 39; Falkirk, 176, 183, 584; Faughard (or Fagher), 184; Ferrybridge, 253; Fethanlea, 39; Finisterre, 587, 684; First of June, 668; Flodden, 263; Fontenoy,

- 582; Formigny, 244; Fretteval, 134; Friedland, 690; Fuentes d'Onoro, 695; Fulford, 87; Gisors, 134; Glenshiel, 560; Graupian Hill, 26; Gravelines, 356; Guadeloupe, 644; Guinegate, 283; Gujrat, 761; Halidon Hill, 196; Hastenbach, 606; Hastings, 88, 90; Heathfield, 44, 45; Heavenfield, 45; Hedgeley Moor, 253; Heights of Abraham, 607; Hengestesdun, 54; Herrings, 240; Hexham, 253; Hohenlinden, 674; Homildon Hill, 227, 228; Hyères, 580; Idle, 44; Inkerman, 763; Isandhlwana, 786; Jena, 688; Killiecrankie, 510, 512; Kilsyth, 416; Krugersdorp, 801; Lagos, 517, 607; La Gudina, 545; La Hogue, 516; Laing's Nek, 787; Landen, 517; Langside, 340; Lansdown, p. 258; La Rochelle, 209; Laswari, 680; Leipzig, 698; Lespagnols-sur-Mer, 209; Lewes, 158; Lexington, 633; Ligny, 702; Lincoln, 112, 151; Losecoat Field, 254; Lowestoft, 456; Ludford, 249; Maida, 687; Magenta, 771; Majuba, 787; Maldon, 76, 77; Malplaquet, 545; Marcngo, 674; Marston Moor, 414, 415; Maserfield, 45; Minden, 607; Moodkee, 749; Mortimer's Cross, 251; Myton, 185; Najara, 208; Naseby, 418; Navarete, 208; Navarino, 711, 712; Nechtansmere, 48; Neerwinden, 517; Neville's Cross, 201; Newburn, 397; Newbury, 410, 415; Newton Butler, 512; Nile, 672; Northallerton, 111; Northampton, 250; Ockley, 55; Omdurman, 798; Oswestry, 45; Otford, 52; Otterbourne, 219, 227; Oudenarde, 542; Paardeberg, 802; Passaro, 560; Patay, 240; Pen Selwood, 80; Pentland Hills, 450; Peterloo, 706; Philiphaugh, 416, 418; Pinkie Cleugh, 317; Plassey, 599; Poitiers, 190, 205; Polilore, 639; Portland, 430; Porto Novo, 639; Preston, 422; Prestonpans, 583; Pultawa, 541; Pyramids, 672; Pyrenes, 698; Quatre Bras, 702; Quiberon, 607, 669; Radcot Bridge, 217; Ramillics, 538; Rathmines, 427; Rochelle, 209; Rorica, 692; Rorke's Drift, 786; Rouvray, 240; Rowton Heath, p. 259; Rullion Green, 450; St. Albans, 248, 251; St. Mahé, 172; St. Thomé, 597; St. Vincent, 638, 671; Saintes, 154; Salamanca, 695; Sedgemoor, 478; Senlac, 88; Sevenoaks, 245; Shannon v. Chesapeake, 697; Sheriffmuir, 555; Shipton Moor, 229; Shrewsbury, 228, 229; Sinope, 762; Sluys, 190, 199, 209; Sobraon, 749; Solebay, 456; Solferino, 771; Solway Moss, 312; Southwold, 462; Spurs, 283; Stamford Bridge, 87, 88; Standard, 111; Steinkirk, 516; Stoke-on-Trent, 269; Stow-on-the-Wold, 419; Stratton, 410; Taillebourg, 154; Talavera, 694; Tel-el-Kebir, 788; Tewkesbury, 255; Tuxel, 430; The Saints, 644; Tinchebrai, 106; Tippermuir, 416; Toulouse, 699; Towton, 253; Trafalgar, 684; Truro, 419; Ulundi, 786; Ushant, 587, 638, 668; Verneuil, 239; Villa Viciosa, 546; Vimicro, 692; Vinegar Hill, 677; Vittoria, 698; Wagram, 693, 694; Wakefield, 251; Wainborough, 50; Wandiwash, 608; Waterloo, 702; Wimbledon, 39; Winchelsea, 209; Winnington Bridge, 440; Winward, 46; Worcester, 428; Yarmouth, 430; Yelowford, 358; Zaragoza, 546; Zutphen, 353
- Bayonne, 209, 246  
 Beaconsfield, Benjamin Disraeli, E. of: 751, 757, 761, 774, 776, 783-787  
 Beaufort Family: 268; Table, p. 141  
 —, Henry, 232, 238, 242, 243  
 Bec, 102, 107  
 Becket, Gilbert: 119  
 —, Thomas: see THOMAS  
 Bedchamber Question, 748  
 Bede, Venerable: 49, 50, 58  
 Bedford, 39, 57, 62, 463  
 —, John, D. of: 238-242  
 —, John Russell, 1st E. of: 320  
 —, Russell, D. of: 581, 618  
 Begams of Oudh, 651  
 Belgium, 716, 721, 797  
 Belleisle, 587, 612  
 Benbow, John: 535  
 Benedictines, 43, 65, 474, 487  
 Benevolences, 257, 259, 272, 313, 361, 376  
 Bengal, 532, 599, 603, 624, 628, 639  
 Bennet, Henry: see ARLINGTON  
 Bentham, Jeremy: 664

- Bentinck, Lord George: 751, 757  
 —, Lord William: 733  
 Berengaria of Navarre: 132  
 Beresford, William, Viscount: 695  
 Berkeley Castle: 186  
 Bermudas, 370  
 Bernicia, 40, 56, 60  
 Berwick, 171, 253, 275  
 —, James, D. of: 523, 541  
 Bible, 49, 308, 367, 372  
 Birmingham, 718  
 Biscop, Benedict: 49  
 Bishop's Wars: 395, 397, 413  
 Bismarck, Otto von: 777  
 Black Death: 190, 202, 214  
 — Hole, 599  
 — Prince: 205, 208, 209, 211, 212  
 — Sea, 762-765, 777  
 Blake, Robert: 426, 429, 430, 436, 445  
 Bloody Assize, 479  
 Bloomsbury Gang, 618  
 Blücher, Marshal: 702  
 Boadicea, 25  
 Board of Control, 651  
 Boers, 744, 761, 778, 786, 800, 801, 802  
 Bolingbroke, Henry St. John, Viscount: in Anne's reign, 534, 544, 548, 552, 553; afterwards, 564, 571, 578, 613, 615  
 Bombay, 454, 496, 639, 732, 767  
 Boniface VIII., Pope: 174, 179, 180  
 — of Savoy: 154  
 Bonner, Edmund: 318, 325, 329  
*Book of Common Prayer*: Edwardian, 318, 320, 322; Elizabethan, 333-4, 344, 388, 392, 420; Carolian, 449  
 — of *Homilies*: 318  
 — of *Rates*: 374  
 Booth, Sir George: 440  
 Bordeaux, 205, 209, 246  
 Bornio, 805  
 Borough, 149, 150, 165, 196, 198, 477  
 Boscawen, Edward: 601, 606, 607  
 Bosnia, 585  
*Boston Port Act*, 632  
 Boston Tea-Party, 632  
 Botany Bay, 655  
 Bothwell, James Hepburn, 4th E. of: 340  
 Boulogne, 20, 271, 312, 322, 684  
 Bounty, Queen Anne's: 551  
 Bourbon, House of: Tables, pp. 124, 190  
 Bouchier, Thomas: 247  
 Boys, The, 571  
 Braddock, Edward: 601  
 Bradshaw, John: 424, 445  
 Bradstreet, John: 606  
*Breda, Declaration from*: 441, 445  
 Bremen, 557  
 Brian Boru: 77, 123  
 Bright, John: 742, 769, 773, 774, 777, 779, 787  
 Bristol, 90, 151, 280, 410, 478, 718  
 —, John Digby, E. of: 384  
 Britain: in early times, 4, 15-20; partly occupied by the Romans, 21-30; political unification, 187, 278, 369  
 British and Foreign School Society, 723  
 — Columbia, 654, 749, 775  
 — South Africa Company, 800, 801  
 Britons: immigration into Albion, 19, 20; struggle with Rome, 21-30; with the English, etc., 36-48. See CHURCH, WALES  
 Brittany, 41, 109, 126, 136, 172, 213, 239, 259, 271  
 Broad-Bottom Administration, 581-589  
 Brougham, Henry, Lord: 728  
 Bruce, Edward: 184  
 —, Robert, the Elder: 180  
 —, Robert, the Younger: see ROBERT  
 Brumaire, 18th: 673  
 Buchan, John Stuart, E. of: 237, 239  
 Buckingham, Henry Stafford, 2nd D. of: 258, 259  
 —, Edward Stafford, 3rd D. of: 288  
 —, George Villiers, 1st D. of: 376, 380, 381-385, 388, 392  
 —, George Villiers, 2nd D. of: 458, 460, 464  
 Buenos Aires, 687  
 Bulgaria, 785  
 Bulls, Papal: 125, 174, 304, 342, 343  
 Bunyan, John: 463  
 Buonaparte, Jerome: 690  
 — Joseph: 687, 688, 692  
 —, Louis: 688, 754  
 —, Louis Napoleon: 754, 755, 762-765, 771, 777  
 —, Napoleon: 670-702  
 Burghley, William Cecil, Baron: 333, 347, 359  
 Burgoyne, John: 636  
 Burgundy: county, 230; duchy, 230, 235, 236, 241, 242, 255, 256, 271; kingdom, 32, 133, 134  
*Burials Act*, 790  
 Burke, Edmund: 620, 622, 635, 646, 647  
 Burma, 732, 761, 803  
 Burton, Henry: 394

- Bussy, Charles Palissier, Marquess of : 608  
 Bute, John Stuart, E. of : 571, 610, 611, 613-616, 619  
 Butler, Samuel : 458  
 Butt, Isaac : 783  
 Byng, George : 560  
 —, John : 603  
 Byron, George Gordon, Lord : 711  
 Cabal, 458, 459, 464, 465, 521  
 Cabinet : down to Walpole's time, 458, 521, 534, 544, 553, 572; after Walpole's time, 581, 648  
 Cabot, John : 265, 280, 331  
 Cade, Jack : 245, 276  
 Cadiz, 355, 357, 383, 684, 695  
 Cadwallon, 44, 45  
 Caedmon, 49  
 Caesar, Gaius Julius : 20-23, 68, 549  
 Calais : acquired by Edward III., 190, 201, 206, 209, 210; as an English naval station, 233, 246-250, 253; as an English military base, 234, 256, 271, 287; constitutional relations with England, 220, 306; importance of loss, 69, 330, 356, 454  
 Calcutta, 532, 597, 599  
 Calder, Sir Robert : 684  
 Caledonia, 26, 27, 36, 37, 60, 123  
*Calendar Act*, 589  
 Calvin, John : 266, 335, 337  
 Calvinism, 353, 864, 372, 394  
 Camalodunum : 22, 24, 25  
 Cambridge, 160, 308, 348, 487  
 —, Edmund, E. of : see YORK  
 —, Richard, E. of : 234  
 Camerou, Richard : 484  
 Campbell, Clan : 478, 511  
 Campion, Edmund : 350  
 Canada, 12, 391, 455, 600, 601, 612, 632, 636, 657, 743, 775  
 Canadian Pacific Railway, 773, 791  
 Canals, 662, 778  
 Canning, George : 691-696, 708-712  
 —, Charles, Viscount : 768  
 —, Sir Stratford : 762  
 Canon Law : 95, 293  
 Canterbury, 43, 55, 122, 126, 165, 329  
 Cape Breton, 587, 602, 612  
 —, Colony, 669, 687, 703, 744, 760, 778, 780, 802  
 Caradoc, 24  
 Cardwell, Edward, Lord : 777, 781  
 Carisbroke Castle : 421  
 Carlisle, 100, 179, 180, 583  
 Carlos, Don, son of Elizabeth Farnese : see CHARLES III.  
 —, brother of Ferdinand VII. : 731  
 Carnarvon, Henry Herbert, 4th E. of : 774, 775, 786  
 Carolina, 455, 629, 643  
 Caroline of Anspach, 567, 570  
 — of Brunswick, wife of George IV., 707  
 Carr, Robert : see SOMERSET  
 Carteret : see GRANVILLE  
 Cartwright, Thomas : 348  
 Carucage, 133  
 Cash payments, 671, 706  
 Cashel, Synod of : 125  
 Cassiterides, 20  
 Castile, 208, 216, 265, 271, 538  
 Castlereagh : see LONDONDERRY  
 Caswallon, 22  
 Catalonia, 538, 550  
 Catherine : see KATHARINE  
 Catholic Association, 714  
 Cato Street Conspiracy, 707  
 Cavagnari, Sir Louis : 784  
 Cavaliers, 403, 470, 473  
 Cavendish, Lord Frederick : 789  
 Cavour, Camillo Bensodi : 771  
 Caxton, William : 257  
 Ceawlin, K. of the West Saxons : 39, 40, 50  
 Cecil : see BURGHLEY, SALISBURY, WIMBLEDON  
 Cedd, 45  
 Celibacy of Clergy : 65, 95, 307, 325  
 Cenwulf, K. of the Mercians : 52  
 Ceorls, 42, 61, 214  
 Cerdic, K. of the W. Saxons : 39, 70, 123  
 Cetywayo, 786  
 Ceylon, 669, 676  
 Chad, 45  
 Chait Singh, 651  
 Chamberlain, Joseph : 787, 792, 796, 799  
 Champlain, Lake : 636  
 Chancellor, Richard : 331  
 Chandernagore, 596  
 Charlemagne : French name for—  
 Charles I., Emperor : 33, 52, 53, 54  
 — II., Emperor : 55  
 — V., Emperor : 286, 287, 288, 294, 296, 302, 311, 312, 317, 323-327, 361 : Table, p. 190  
 — VI., Emperor : as Archduke Charles, 528, 533, 534; as Emperor, 549, 550, 560, 566-570, 575-579, 587  
 — VII., Emperor : 579, 586

- Charles I., K. of England, etc.: before accession, 368, 376, 380, 381; reign, 382-424
- II., K. of England, etc.: before Restoration, 361, 428, 435, 438, 441, 477, 499; reign, 445-474, 475
- I., K. of Spain: see CHARLES V., EMPEROR
- II., of Spain: 528, 529
- III., of Spain (Don Carlos): as Duke of Parma, 568; as King of Naples, 570, 579, 588; as King of Spain, 609
- IV., K. of the French: 186, 197
- V., K. of the French: 208, 209
- VI., K. of the French: 227, 230, 238
- VII., K. of the French: 239, 240, 241, 242, 246
- VIII., K. of the French: 260, 271, 272, 283
- IX., K. of the French: 345
- X., K. of France: 715
- XII., K. of Sweden: 528, 541, 557, 560
- the Rash, D. of Burgundy: 254-6
- Charleston, 455, 643
- Chartered Companies, earlier group: 357, 377, 391, 455, 527, 532, 562, 733, 768; modern group, 798-801
- Chartists, 735, 741, 742, 753
- Chatham, William Pitt, First E. of: 571, 579, 584, 585, 591; First Ministry, 591, 594, 605-610, 614; later years, 617, 626, 635, 638
- Chaucer, Geoffrey: 118
- Chelmsford, Frederick Thesiger, Lord: 786
- Chesapeake, 697
- Chester, 24, 40, 62, 91, 94, 305, 776
- Chessterfield, Philip Stanhope, E. of: 571, 581, 589
- China, 733, 747, 766, 796, 804
- Chippenham, 57, 577
- Chits, The: 474, 476
- Chivalry, 101, 118, 208, 447
- Choiseul, Stephen Francis, D. of: 609
- Christian IV., K. of Denmark: 385
- Chronicle, The English*: its origin, 58; quoted, 53, 56, 62, 98, 99, 114
- Church (Christian) in Europe: division into East and West, 3; Eastern or Greek Church, 103; Western or Latin Church, 33, 65, 68, 95, 103, 188, 266; divisions in this Western Church, 266, 286, 335, 350. See below, CLERGY, PAPACY, SUPREMACY
- Church in the British Isles:—
- (a) *Keltic*: in South Britain, 30, 41, 43, 45; in North Britain, 30, 43, 45; in Ireland, 30, 43, 123, 125, 311; Table, p. 25
- (b) *Anglican*: foundation, 43, 44, 47; conflict between Keltic and Roman Missionaries, 46; unifying influences on the English, 4, 47, 52, 65, 68; effects of Danish invasions, 55, 65; effects of Norman Conquest, 68, 84, 95; mediæval relations with State, 95, 101, 102, 121, 122, 166, 204, 219, 225; remodelled in consequence of the Reformation—in government, 266, 292-298, 318, 328, 333-335, 348, 420; in ritual, 266, 318, 322, 325, 344, 394, 449; in doctrine, 266, 307, 308, 318, 322, 344, 367, 449; later, 472, 507, 547, 551, 561, 730
- (c) *Irish*: in Reformation times, 311, 351, 358; later, 725, 776, 779
- (d) *Scottish*: origins, 30, 43; changes at Reformation, 337, 338; under Stuarts, 372, 395, 420, 451, 510; later, 551, 750
- Churchill, Arabella: 523, 541
- , John, Lord: see MARLBOROUGH
- , Lord Randolph: 791, 793
- Cinque Ports: 141, 177, 198
- Circumspecte Agatis*: 166
- Cissa, K. of the West Saxons: 39
- Cistercians, 198
- Clare Election, 714
- Clarence, George, D. of: 254, 255, 257, 268
- , Lionel, D. of: 207, 269
- , Thomas, D. of: 231, 237
- Clarendon: Assize of*, 129; *Constitutions of*, 121, 125
- Clarendon, Edward Hyde, 1st E. of: 452-457, 465, 474
- , Henry Hyde, 2nd E. of: 476, 485
- Clarkson, Thomas: 655
- Claverhouse: see DUNDEE
- Claypole, Elizabeth, Lady: 438
- Clement VII., Pope: 288, 289, 294-7
- Clergy: division into orders, 47, 135; division into regular and secular, 65; division according to rank, 210, 211; summoned to Parliament, 150, 173; see CONVOCATION



*Clerical Disabilities Bill*: 405  
 Clerkenwell Prison, 776  
 Clifford, Thomas, Lord: 458, 460-464  
 Clinton, Henry: 638, 643  
 Clive, Robert, Lord: 598, 599, 624  
 Clontarf, 750  
 Clugniacs: 95, 101, 118, 155  
 Clyde, Sir Colin Campbell, Lord: 767  
 Cnut, K. of the English, Danes, and Norwegians: 69, 78-83, 86, 90  
 Coalition Ministries, 648, 686, 753  
 Coalitions: First, 667-670; Second, 673-674; Third, 683-690; Fourth, 698, 699; Fifth, 701, 702  
 Cobden, Richard: 742, 766, 771  
 Cobham, Eleanor: 242  
 —, Sir John Oldcastle, Lord: 232  
 Codes: Clarendon, 453; Commercial, 514; Justinian's, 167; Penal, 514  
 Codrington, Sir Edward: 711  
 Coinage, 75, 116, 313, 524  
 Coke, Edward: 383, 381, 387  
 Coleman, Edward: 466  
 Colley, Sir George: 787  
 Collingwood, Cuthbert, Lord: 681  
 Colman, 45  
 Colonies, English: in Ireland, 351, 377, 392; elsewhere, 503, 596-601, 629-636, 739, 743, 797-805, Table, p. 316.  
 See too AFRICA, AMERICA, AUSTRALIA, WEST INDIES  
 Columba, 43  
 Columbus, Christopher: 265  
 Combination Laws, 709  
 Comes: (*a*) *gesith*, 42, 72; (*b*) earl, 94  
*Comes Littoris Saxonici*: 27, 37  
 Comitatus: comradeship system, 72, 75; Norman name for shire, 95  
 Commendation, 74, 75  
 Commercial Treaties, 279, 536, 653, 771  
 Commission, Court of High: established, 344, 394; abolished, 400, 435, 443; revived, 482, 487, 495, 499  
 Commissions, Royal: 97, 318, 319, 333, 340, 445, 473  
 Committee of Both Kingdoms: 413, 417  
*Common Sense*, 634  
 Commons, Estate of the: meaning of the term, 150; composition, 173; partly represented in Parliament, 149, 150, 173; partly unrepresented, 214-216  
 Commons, House of: connected in origin with the Jury, 97, 129, 148; separated from the House of Lords, 149, 150, 185, 187, 196; growth

in financial powers, 192, 207, 213, 226; growth in administrative control, 192, 200, 211, 226, 245; weakness in fifteenth century, 193, 248-252, 257, 261, 280; changes in composition under Tudors, 306; influence on Tudor policy, 262, 287, 292, 325, 328, 339, 344, 360; general surveys of advances during Stuart Period, 363-368, 442-444, 496-503; increased importance after the Protestant Revolution, 552, 556, 572, 577, 585, 641, 618, 652, 686; reconstituted during the nineteenth century, 717-720, 774, 790  
 Commonwealth: events, 425-441, 442; influence, 445, 447, 448, 449, 451  
*Comprehension Bill*: 459, 507  
 Compton, Henry: 482  
 —, Spencer: see WILMINGTON  
 Comyn, John, of Badenoch: 176, 180  
 Concord, 633  
*Conduct of the Allies*, 549  
 "Confederate Catholics": 412, 427  
 Confederates, 771  
 Conferences: Hampton Court, 372; Savoy, 449  
*Confirmatio Cartarum*: 175, 207  
 Congé d'Elire: 143, 297  
 Congregation, Lords of the: 337  
 Congregationalism, 364, 420, 432  
 Connaught, 184, 392, 427  
 Connecticut, 600  
 Conservatives, 727  
 Consols, 589  
*Conspiracy to Murder Bill*, 769  
 Constables, Lord High: 175, 255  
 Constance, of Brittany: 136  
 — of Castile: 216  
 Constantine, Emperor: 29, 30  
 —, K. of the Picts and Scots: 92  
 Constantinople, 31, 264, 687, 785  
 Continental Congress, 634  
 — System, 689-698  
*Conventicle Acts*: 453, 459, 463  
 Conventions, 441-448, 495, 510, 511  
 Convicts, 655, 759, 760  
 Convocation: ecclesiastical work and organization, 165, 292, 293, 297, 328, 344, 348; civil work, 150, 173, 306  
 Cook, James: 655  
 Coote, Sir Eyre: 608, 639  
 Cope, Sir John: 583  
 Corn Laws, 706, 751  
 Oornwall, 20, 37, 276, 277.  
 —, Piers Gaveston, E. of: 181, 182, 217

- Cornwall, John, E. of:** 133  
 —, Richard, E. of: 155  
**Cornwallis, Charles, 1st M.:** 643, 644, 651, 678, 679 •  
**Coronation Oath:** 141, 186  
**Corporation Act:** 453, 567  
**Corsica,** 626, 668, 670  
**Cotton Famine,** 772  
**Councils, Civil:** of the North, 303, 400; of Wales, 306, 400; of Regency, 151, 213, 238, 316; of Officers, 421, 423, 431; of Agitators, 421; of State (Commonwealth), 425, 431. **See MAGNUM CONCILIUM, ORDINARY, PRIVY**  
 —, Ecclesiastical: General, 155, 188, 235, 266, 342; Arles, 30; Clermont, 103; Constance, 235; Lyons, 155; Rockingham, 102–103; Northampton, 122  
**County:** see **SHERE**  
*Coup d'Etat,* 755  
**Courtney:** see **DEVON**  
**Courts:** Local, 42, 66, 94, 159, 252, 270; Civil, 120, 127, 161; Ecclesiastical, 120, 225; see **COMMISSION**  
**Covenant, National (Scots):** First, 350; Second, 395, 417, 428, 450, 453  
**Covenanters,** 401, 411, 450, 469, 478, 484, 510  
**Coventry,** 242, 249  
*Craftsman, The:* 571  
**Cranborne, Lord:** see **SALISBURY**  
**Cranmer, Thomas:** 294–297, 309, 314, 318, 322, 325, 329  
**Cressingham, Hugh:** 171  
**Crimean War,** 735, 762–765  
**Criminal Law Reform,** 709  
**Cromwell, Oliver:** military work, 362, 407, 410, 414, 417, 418, 422, 423, 426–429; civil work, 431–438, 440, 442, 445, 540  
 —, Richard: 439, 440  
 —, Thomas: see **ESSEX**  
**Crusades:** First, 103, 104, 132; Third, 132; Seventh, 159; allusions, 155, 169, 181, 231, 265  
**Cuba,** 612  
**Cumberland, 41,** 100, 111, 169  
 —, Ernest, D. of: 740  
 —, William, D. of: 583, 584, 606  
**Cumbria,** 41  
**Cunobelin,** 22, 24  
**Curia Regis:** 107, 108, 121, 127, 128, 131, 162 •  
**Customs,** 161, 374, 393, 400  
**Cuthbert,** 45  
**Cyprus,** 132, 735  
**Dalhousie, James Ramsay, M. of:** 760, 761, 767  
**Dampier, William:** 532  
**Danby:** see **LEFDS**  
**Danegeld,** 77, 96, 120, 133  
**Danelagh, or Dai elaw:** 58, 61, 80  
**Danes in England:** plundering stage, 53–57; settling stage, 60–63; conquering stage, 76–82; influence, 66–69  
**Dangerfield, Thomas:** 466  
**Darc, Jeanne:** 240, 241  
**Dardanelles,** 687, 731, 745  
**Darien Scheme:** 527, 539  
*Darnley's Case,* 386  
**Darnley, Henry Stuart, Lord:** 339, 340  
**David I., K. of Scots:** 111  
 — II.: 195, 196, 201, 205  
 —, Earl of Huntingdon: 170  
 —, Prince of Wales: 163  
**Davitt, Michael:** 783  
**Davys, John:** 331  
**Deane, Richard:** 430  
**Deccan,** 597  
*Declaration of Independence,* 634, 650  
 — of Rights, 633  
*Declaratory Act,* 565, 631, 640  
*De Donis Conditionalibus,* 167  
*De Facto King,* Statute: 273  
**Defender of the Faith:** 287  
**Defoe, Daniel:** 531  
*De Heretico Comburendo,* 225  
**Deira,** 40, 44, 46, 58  
**Delaware,** 600, 629  
**Denmark:** unification, 56; personal union with England, 80, 82, 83; later relations, 385, 557, 642, 675, 690, 691, 703, 771  
**Deposition,** 194, 222, 354  
**Derby,** 585  
 —, Edward Stanley, 15th E. of: 757, 764, 769, 774, 776  
 —, Henry, E. of: see **HENRY IV.**  
 —, Thomas Stanley, E. of: 260  
*De Religiosis,* 167  
**Derwentwater, James Radcliffe, E. of:** 555  
**Desmond Rising:** 351, 352  
**Despenser, Hugh:** 185, 194  
*De Tollagio non Concedendo:* 175  
**Devon, Edward Courtney, E. of:** 326  
**Devonshire, William Cavendish, 4th D. of:** 605  
**Dictatorship,** 263, 363

Digby: see BRISTOL

*Directory of Public Worship*, 420

Directory, The Executive: 659, 669, 672, 673

"Disinherited, The": 196

Dispensing Power: meaning, 481; declared illegal, 495, 502, 508

Disraeli, Benjamin: see BEACONSFIELD

Dissenters: see NONCONFORMISTS

Divine Right: 365, 378, 495, 507

Diwani, 624

*Domesday Book*: 97

Dominicans, 160

Dominion of Canada, 775, 778

Dorchester Heights, 634

Dost Muhammad, 746

Douay, 316

Double Government, 622, 624

Douglas, Archibald, 4th E. of: 227, 228, 239

—, James, 2nd E. of: 219

Dover, 22, 84, 140, 441

Drake, Sir Francis: 331, 346, 349, 350, 354, 355, 356

*Drapier's Letters*, 565

Druids, 23, 25

Drunken Administration, 578

Dryden, John: quoted, 436, 458

Dual Control, 784

Dublin, 124, 269, 427, 512, 513, 792

—, Robert de Vere, Marquess of: 217

Dudley: LEICESTER, NORTHUMBERLAND

—, Lord Guildford: 324, 326

—, Sir Edmund: 280, 282, 314

Duncan, Adam: 671

Dundas, Henry: see MELVILLE

Dundee, John Graham, Viscount: 469, 510

Dunning: see ASHBURTON

Dunstan, 65, 76

Dupleix, François Joseph: 597, 598

Duquesne, 601

Durham, John George Lambton, E. of: 717, 743

Dutch Wars: First, 430, 436; Second, 456, 457; Third, 462; Fourth, 412-415

Eadgar Ætheling: 86, 89, 90, 106

—, K. of the English: 35, 64, 65, 69

Eadgyth, 84

Eadmund I., the Elder, K. of the English: 56

— II., Ironside: 79, 80, 86

Eadred, K. of the English: 63, 64

Eadric, Streona: 79, 80, 82

Eadweard, the Confessor, K. of the English: 69, 83-86, 94, 105

— the Elder: 35, 63, 63

— the Martyr: 65, 76

Eadwig, K. of the West Saxons: 64

Eadwin, K. of the Northumbrians: 41, 45

—, E. of Mercia: 85, 89, 91

Ealdgyth, 86

Ealdorman, 42, 61, 82

Ealdred, 89

Earl, 61, 73, 82, 94

East Anglia: as kingdom, 25, 52-53, 61, 62; as earldom, 80, 82, 85, 126

Eastern Question, 103, 132, 672, 711, 731, 745, 762-765, 784, 785, 803

East India Company: in the seventeenth century, 357, 370, 391, 532; in the eighteenth century, 593, 596-599, 621, 624, 628, 629, 639, 648-651, 679; in the nineteenth century, 680, 732, 733, 746, 747, 761, 767, 768

Ecclesiastical Commission, 729

*Ecclesiastical Titles Act*, 756

Egberht, K. of the W. Saxons: 54, 55

Egfrith, K. of the Northumbrians: 48, 49

Economical Reform, 416, 641, 646

*Edict of Nantes*: 357, 480

Edinburgh, 44, 126, 171, 317, 395, 428, 450, 478, 510, 577, 583

Edmund, E. of Kent: 186, 195

—, Crouchback, E. of Lancaster: 155

Education, 49, 58, 160, 210, 305, 319, 532, 723, 729, 779, 780, 782, 793

Edward, I., K. of England: before accession, 69, 147, 159; reign, 161-180

— II.: reign, 149, 181-186; contrasted with Richard II., 217

— III.: family, 150, 250, 281; reign, 195-212

— IV.: 250, 251-257

— V.: 258

— VI.: birth, 309, 312; reign, 315-324, 326, 344

— VII., K. of All the Britains: 796, 802

—, son of Henry VI.: 247, 249

Effingham, Charles, Lord Howard of: 356

Egypt: Buonaparte's Expedition, 672, 673, 676; under Mehemet Ali, 711, 731, 745; in modern times, 784, 788, 796, 798

Elba, 699, 701

Eleanor of Aquitaine : 115, 133, 137-139, 246  
 — of Castile : 168  
 — of Provence : 154  
 —, wife of Simon de Montfort : 154  
 —, daughter of Simon : 162  
 Elections, General : in the seventeenth century, 374, 398, 441, 531 ; in the eighteenth century, 556, 577, 649 ; in the nineteenth century, 686, 718, 722, 727, 757, 769, 776, 782, 787, 791-796  
 Elgin, James Bruce, 8th E. of : 759, 760  
 Eliot, Sir John : 383, 384, 387, 388, 389  
 Elliott, Gilbert : 644  
 Elizabeth, Q. of England : birth, 295 ; relations with half-sister, 326, 330 ; reign, 331-360  
 —, daughter of James I. : 375  
 — of York : 256, 260-267, 270, 279, 280  
 —, Tzarina of Russia : 610  
 — Farnese, Q. of Spain : 558, 560, 568  
 — Woodville : 254, 256, 258, 260  
 Ellenborough, Edward Law, 1st Lord : 746  
 Emma of Normandy : 77, 82, 83, 90  
 Emmett, Robert : 683  
 Empire : Angevin, 115, 130, 146 ; Austrian, 31 ; British, 3, 370, 391, 532, 739, 805 ; Byzantine, 31, 103, 264 ; German, 31 ; Greco-Macedonian, 21 ; Holy Roman, 81, 230, 264, 283, 688 ; Northern, 81 ; Ottoman, 31 ; Roman, 20-31  
*Employers' Liabilities Act*, 790  
 Empson, Sir Richard : 280, 282  
 Enclosure, 319, 662  
*Engagement, The* : 421  
 Eorls, 42, 66, 72  
 Episcopacy. (a) *In the Church of England* : assailed, 210, 348, 364, 372, 394, 402 ; abolished, 405, 413, 417, 420 ; restored, 443, 449. (b) *In the Church of Scotland* : restored, 372, 395 ; abolished, 395, 420 ; again restored, 450 ; again abolished, 510  
 Erastianism, 420, 730  
 Essex : foundation of kingdom, 22, 32, 39 ; evangelized, 43, 45 ; overrun by Danes, 54, 58, 80, 85 ; men of, 215  
 —, Robert Devereux, 2nd E. of : 357-359, 360  
 —, Robert Devereux, 3rd E. of : 405, 407, 409, 410, 415, 417

Essex, Thomas Cromwell, E. of : 290, 294, 296, 300-311  
 Estates : meaning landed property, 94 ; meaning classes of the community, 150, 173, 196 ; Scottish (= Parliament), 338, 395, 484, 539  
 Eugene of Savoy, Prince : 542, 545  
 Eupatoria, 763  
 Europe : in the Middle Ages, 17, 27, 31-35, 69, 71, 103, 128, 132, 188 ; in modern times, 31, 262, 266, 361, 362, 499, 590-594, 659, 660, 703-705, 736  
 Eustace, Count of Boulogne : 84  
 Evangelicals, 308, 367  
 Exchequer, 108, 128, 164  
*Excise Bill*, 569, 570  
*Exclusion Bill*, 468, 471, 508  
 Excommunication, 139, 145, 225, 342  
 Exhibition, Great : 756  
*Factory Acts*, 664, 724, 756  
 Fairfax, Ferdinand, Lord : 410, 414  
 —, Sir Thomas, 3rd Baron : 407, 410, 414, 417-419, 421, 422, 426, 428  
 Falkes de Breauté : 152  
 Falkland Islands, 626  
*Family Compacts*, 570, 580, 609, 619, 637  
 Famines, 628, 750, 753  
 Fancy Franchises, 769, 774  
 Pastolf, Sir John : 240  
 Fawkes, Guy : 373, 492  
 Fealty, 97, 107, 297  
 Federal Council for Australia, 791, 805  
 Federation, Imperial : 739, 775, 805  
 Fenians, 30, 776  
 Fenwick, Sir John : 523  
 Ferdinand I., K. of Spain : 263, 271, 278, 283, 286  
 — VII., K. of Spain : 692  
 — I., Emperor : 327  
 — II. : 360  
 Feudalism : general sketch, 70-75 ; developments in England, 94, 97, 101, 105, 111-8, 126-9, 167, 213, 214, 252 ; late survivals, 374, 447, 477  
 Feversham, Louis Duras, E. of : 478  
 "Fidei Defensor" : 287  
 Fief, 118, 137, 140, 230  
 "Field of the Cloth of Gold" : 287  
 Fiji, 805  
 Finchley, 583  
 First-fruits : see ANNATES  
 Fisher, John : 299

- Fitz-Alan : see ARUNDEL; Table, p. 108  
 Fitz-Gerald Family : Kildare branch, 124, 269, 274, 311; Desmond branch, 351  
 —, Vesey : 714  
 Fitz-Peter, Geoffrey : 135, 141  
 Fitz-Stephen, Robert : 124  
 Fitzwilliam, Lord : 669, 677  
 "Five Boroughs, the" : 58, 62  
*Five Knights' Case* : 386  
 Five Members : 404  
*Five Mile Act* : 453, 463  
 Five Points, 742  
 Flambard, Ralf : 101, 105  
 Flanders : political connection with England, 142, 175, 189, 235; commercial connection with England, 84, 109, 177, 198, 199, 213, 230, 269, 272, 273, 275, 279; quarrels between its burghers and its counts, 198  
 Fleetwood, Charles : 428  
 Fleury, Cardinal : 566, 568, 576  
 Florida, 570, 612, 645  
 Forbes, 606  
 Forster, Thomas : 555  
 —, W. E. : 777, 780, 789  
 Fort William : in Scotland, 511; in Bengal, 532, 559  
 FORTH, Patrick Ruthven, E. of : 407  
 Fox, Charles James : 635, 646-649, 666, 683, 686  
 —, Henry, Lord Holland : 602, 614  
 Fraucalmoign : 101  
 France : growth of a united kingdom in France, 32, 35, 130, 138, 142, 189, 263; general surveys of its relations with England, 7, 11-13, 63, 154-138, 171-177, 189-191, 362, 499, 590-594, 659, 660; for details see TOPICS IN CHAPTER-HEADINGS  
 Francis I., K. of the French : 286, 287, 288, 345  
 — II. : 317, 332, 337, 338  
 — I., Roman Emperor : 570, 586  
 — II., Roman Emperor : 688  
 —, D. of Alençon-Anjou : 349, 353, 354  
 Franciscans, 160  
 Franco-German War, 777  
 Franklin, Benjamin : 634  
 Franks, 32, 35, 55, 103, 197  
 Frederick I., Emperor : 122  
 — II., Emperor : 155  
 — V., Elector Palatine : 375, 377, 378, 380, 385  
 —, Prince of Wales : 571, 589  
 Frederick II., the Great : 576, 586, 591, 603-612  
 Fredericks-hall, 560  
 Free Church of Scotland, 750  
 Freedom of Debate, 339, 344, 379, 495  
 Freeman, Mrs. : 534  
 Free Ships make Free Goods, 642  
 Free Trade, 640, 737, 751, 757  
 French Revolutions, 659, 680, 665-673, 715, 716, 754  
 Frere, Sir Partle : 786  
 Friars, 155, 160  
 Frobisher, Sir Martin : 331, 349  
 Fyrd, 94, 116, 129  
 Gackwar, 680  
 Gage, Sir George : 633, 634  
 Galway, Ruigny, E. of : 545  
 Gama, Vasco da : 265  
 Ganges, 597  
 Gardiner, Stephen : 309, 314, 318, 325, 326, 329  
 Garibaldi, Giuseppe : 771  
 Gascony : acquired by Henry II., 115; held against French King by Edward I., 158, 162, 168, 172, 175, 177, 186, 201; lost by Henry VI., 246, 283  
 Gaveston : see CORNWALL  
 Gaunt, John of : see LANCASTER  
 Gemot : see HUNDRED, SHIRE, WITAN  
 Geneva, 266, 335  
 Genoa, 626  
 Geoffrey, C. of Anjou : 110, 111, 115, 146  
 — of Brittany : 126, 130  
 George I., K. of Great Britain : 553-566  
 — II., 567, 589, 595-610  
 — III., 592, 593, 594, 610-707  
 — IV., 656, 696, 707-715  
 Georgia, 570, 573, 580, 600, 629, 633, 638  
 Germans : as invaders of the Roman Empire, 4, 21, 31-41; institutions, 33, 42, 66, 71; take over the Western Empire, 33, 35, 54, 63  
 Germany : connection with the Holy Roman Empire, 35, 63, 81, 133, 142, 155; birthplace of the Protestant Reformation, 266, 285-287, 308, 317, 327; the Counter-Reformation, 342, 362, 378-381, 385, 491; in the eighteenth century, 535, 537, 549, 557, 576, 579, 581, 591, 603-612, 667-670; in the nineteenth century, 685, 688, 690, 698, 703, 736, 754, 773, 777, 797-805

- Gesiths, 42, 66, 72  
 Ghent, 175, 198, 209, 697  
 Gibraltar, 537, 550, 566, 638  
 Giffard, Bona Ventura : 487  
 Gilbert, Sir Mumfrey : 331  
 Gilds, 135, 160, 215, 319  
 Ginkel : see *ATHLONE*  
 Gladstone, William Ewart : early career, 727, 758, 773 ; ministries 777-782, 787-790, 792, 794  
 Glanvil, Ranulf : 128, 135  
 Glastonbury, 65  
 Glencoe, 511  
 Glendower, Owen : 227, 228, 229  
 Glenfinnan, 353  
 Gloucester, 98, 151, 329, 410  
 —, Humfrey, D. of : 238, 239, 242-5  
 —, Richard de Clare, E. of : 157, 158  
 —, Richard, D. of : see *RICHARD III.*  
 —, Thomas, D. of : 213, 217-220  
 —, William, D. of : 529  
 Godfrey of Harcourt : 201  
 —, Sir Edmund Berry : 466  
 Godolphin, Sidney, Viscount : 474, 476, 504, 518, 521, 534-548  
 Godwin, Earl of Wessex : 82-85  
 Gold Coast, 455  
 Gondomar, 376, 377  
 Gordon, Charles : 788  
 —, Katharine : 275, 277  
 — Riots, 641  
 Goree, 612  
 Gorm the Old : 56  
 Gortz, George Henry, Baron : 558  
 Goschen, George Joachim, Viscount : 777, 792, 796  
 Gough, Sir Hugh : 749  
 Grace, Act of : 509  
 Gramsc's Dyke : 27, 60  
 Grafton, A. H. Fitzroy, 3rd D. of : 581, 620, 621, 622, 623  
 Graham : see *DUNDEE, MONTROSE*  
 Grampound, 708  
 Grand Alliance, The : 531  
 Grand Army Remonstrance, 423  
 Granville, John Carteret, E. : 563, 565, 571, 578-581, 585, 589  
 Grasse, François, Comte de : 644  
 Grattan, Henry : 640  
 Grattan's Parliament, 640, 677  
 Great Contract : 374  
 — Fire : 456  
 — Pestilence : 202  
 — Plague : 456  
 — Schism : 166, 231, 235, 266  
 — Seal : 232, 284, 529  
 Great War, 594, 660, 666-703  
 Greece, 711, 803  
 Greene, Nathanael : 643  
 Greenwood, John : 359  
 Gregory V., the Great, Pope : 43  
 — VII., Pope : 95, 155  
 — XIII., Pope : 342, 350, 351, 589  
 Grenada, 612  
 Grenville, Sir Richard : 357  
 —, George : 581, 615, 617-620, 627, 631  
 —, William Wyndham, Lord : 683, 686, 687, 696  
 Grey, Charles, 2nd E. : 666, 696, 717-725  
 —, John de : 139  
 — de Wilton, Arthur, Lord : 351  
 — of Groby, Sir John : 254  
 —, Lady Jane : 323, 324, 326  
 —, Sir George : 759  
 Grindal, Edmund : 348  
 Griqualand West, 778  
 Grosseteste, Robert : 158  
 Gruffydd-ap-Ilewelyn : 85, 86  
 Guadeloupe, 612  
 Gualo, 151  
 Guarda Costas, 574  
 Guesclin, Bertrand du : 190, 209  
 Guiana, 377, 456  
 Guienne, 115, 172, 177, 186, 198, 201, 241, 246  
 Guise, House of : 317, 337, 354  
 Guthrum, or Æthelstan : 57, 58  
 Gwynedd, 85, 162  
 Habeas Corpus Act : 386, 468, 480  
 Hadrian IV., Pope : 125  
 Hague Conference, 805  
 Haidar Ali, 639  
 Haidarabad, 598, 679  
 Hales, Sir Edward : 481  
 Halifax, 634  
 —, Charles Montague, Earl of : 518, 521, 524, 530, 532  
 —, George Savile, Marquess of : 470, 476, 479, 504  
 Hamilton, James, D. of : 422  
 Hampden, John : 393, 398, 403, 404, 410  
 Hanover, or Brunswick, House of : 529  
 Hapsburg, House of : 263, 327, 332, 361, 362, 378, 385, 528 ; Tables, pp. 190, 332  
 Harald Bluetooth, K. of the Danes : 63  
 — Fairhair, K. of the Norwegians : 56

- Harald Hardrada: 86  
 Harcourt, Sir William: 787, 795  
 Hardwicke, Philip Yorke, Lord: 589  
 Hargreaves, James: 662  
 Harlech, 419  
 Harley, Robert: see OXFORD  
 Harold I., Harefoot, K. of the English: 83  
 — II., Godwinson, K. of the English: 85-88, 90, 94, 95, 104, 146  
 Harrington, William Stanhope, E. of: 578, 581  
 Harthacnut, K. of the English: 83  
 Hartington, Spencer Compton Cavendish, M. of: 777, 792  
 Hastings, Francis Rawdon, M. of: 732  
 —, Warren: 421, 593, 628, 639  
 —, William, Lord: 258  
 Havana, 611  
 Havelock, Sir Henry: 767  
 Havre, 338  
 Hawke, Edward, Lord: 587, 607  
 Hawkins, Sir John: 331, 346, 356  
 Hawley, Henry: 584  
 Haxey, Sir Thomas: 220  
 Hazlerigg, Sir Arthur: 404  
*Heads of Proposals*: 421  
 Heavy Brigade, 763  
 Heligoland, 691, 703, 798  
 Hengist, 36  
 Henrietta Maria: 367, 381, 383, 399, 404  
 —, D. of Orleans: 454, 460, 529  
 Henry I., K. of the English: before accession, 99; reign, 105-111  
 — II., K. of the English: before accession, 113; reign, 115-132, 138, 169  
 — III., K. of England: 151-160  
 — IV.: before accession, 190, 201, 218, 220, 221; reign, 222-231  
 — V.: reign, 231-237; allusions, 190, 228, 246  
 — VI.: reign, 238-251; restoration and death, 255  
 — VII.: before accession, 251, 256, 259, 260; reign, 267-280, 285  
 — VIII.: reign, 281-314; allusions, 273, 274, 316, 321, 329, 351, 369  
 — V., Emperor: 109, 110  
 — VI., Emperor: 133  
 — II., K. of the French: 327, 330, 337  
 — III., K. of the French: 345, 354  
 — IV., K. of France: 354, 357, 362  
 —, E. of Huntingdon: 111  
 Henry of Huntingdon: 139  
 —, son of Henry II.: 126, 130  
 —, son of James I.: 373, 375  
 — the Lion: 133  
 — of Trastamare: 206  
 —, Bp. of Winchester: 112, 113  
 —, Patrick: 634  
 Herat, 766  
 Herbert, Sidney: 764  
 Hereford, Humfrey de Bohun, E. of: 175  
 —, Henry, D. of: see HENRY IV.  
 Hereward the Wake: 91  
 Hertford, Sir William Seymour, Marquess of: 369  
 Hicks-Beach, Sir Michael: 791, 796  
 — Pasha, 788  
 Hidage, 96, 133  
 High Church, 547, 730  
 — Court of Justice: 424  
 Highland Regiments, 584  
 Highlands, 171, 178, 416, 428, 510, 511  
 Hildebrand: see GREGORY VII.  
 Hoche, Lazare: 677  
 Hofmeyr, Jan: 801  
 Hohenstaufen, House of: 188  
 Holkar, 639  
 Holles, Denzil: 389, 400  
 Holmes, Sir Robert: 455, 462  
 Holy Alliance, 705  
 — League: 283  
 — Places, 762  
 Homage, 107, 124, 132, 136, 161, 169, 181, 197, 205  
 Home Rule, 783, 789, 792, 794  
 Honduras, 612  
 Hong-Kong, 747  
 Honorius III., Pope: 151, 160  
 Hood, Sir Samuel: 614, 667  
 Hooker, Richard: 331  
 Hooper, John: 329  
 Hopton, Sir Ralph: 410, 415, 419  
 Hotham, Sir John: 405  
 Howard: see EFFINGHAM, NORFOLK, STAFFORD, SURREY  
 —, John: 655  
 Howe, Admiral Lord: 634  
 —, General Sir Wm.: 634, 636, 638  
 Hozier, Francis: 566  
 Hubert de Burgh, 151-153  
 Hudson's Bay Territory, 550  
 Hudson Valley, 600, 636  
 Hugh, Bp. of Lincoln: 135  
 — of Lusignan: 137, 154  
 — the Great, D. of the Franks: 63  
 Hughes, Edward: 639, 644

- Huguenots, 338, 348, 354, 357, 385, 388, 390, 480  
 Humanitarianism, 655, 786, 722-725  
 Humbert, Jean Joseph: 677  
*Humble Petition and Advice*: 437  
 Hundred, 42, 66, 74, 129, 149  
 — Days, 701-703  
 — Years War (Anglo-French):  
   First, 7, 189-192, 198, 261; Second,  
   11-13, 497  
 Hunt, Henry: 706  
 Huntingdon, Earldom of: 111, 116,  
   161, 169, 224  
 Hus-carls, 82  
 Huskisson, Wm.: 708, 709, 715, 716  
 Hyde, Family: 454, 476, 483, 486  
  
 Ibrahim Pasha, 711  
*Idea of a Patriot King*, 571, 613  
 Ignatius Loyola: 266  
 Impeachment: early uses, 211, 245;  
   revived, 379, 381, 384, 399, 457, 465,  
   467, 529, 530, 548, 554, 651, 655, 686  
 Impositions, 365, 374, 383, 400  
 "Incident, The": 401  
 Income Tax, 782  
*Indemnity and Oblivion, Acts of*: 431,  
   445, 567  
*Indemnity of Lords and Commons*, 226  
 Independents, 417, 418, 420, 421, 457  
 India, 12, 153, 370, 391, 532, 596-599,  
   608, 624, 639, 679, 680, 732, 733,  
   *India Bills*, 648, 651 [766, 803  
*Indulgence, Declarations of*: Charles  
   II.'s, 463, 464, 486; *Black* (in Scot-  
   land), 450; James II.'s, *First*, 486,  
   487; *Second*, 488  
 Indulgences, 286  
 Industrial Revolution, 661-665  
 Ine, K. of the W. Saxons: 50, 51, 54  
 Innocent III., Pope: 139, 140, 141,  
   145, 155  
 Inquest, Sworn: 97, 128; see *Jury*  
*Instrument of Government*: 433-435  
*Intercursus Magnus & Malus*: 279  
 Interdict, 139  
 Intolerable Acts, 632  
 Inventions, 662  
 Inverness, 584  
 Investitures, 108  
 Invincibles, 789  
 Iona, 45  
 Ireland: early history, 17, 19, 23, 26,  
   27; christianized, 30, 36, 43; North-  
   man invasions, 60, 63, 77, 84,  
   104, 123; Norman invasion, 123-  
   125, 139, 181, 184-186; connection  
   with the Houses of Mortimer and  
   York, 207, 219, 221, 244, 249, 269;  
   under the Tudors, 272-277, 311,  
   347, 351; first English conquest, 358,  
   361, 377; second English conquest,  
   392, 401, 412, 418, 427; Restoration  
   Settlement, 451, 469, 485; third  
   English conquest, 512-514; consti-  
   tutional relations with England, 12,  
   274, 433, 434, 451, 514, 565, 640, 678;  
   in the nineteenth century, 678, 683,  
   720, 722, 725, 750, 753, 776, 779, 782,  
   789-796  
 Ireland, Robert de Vere, D. of: 217  
 Irenaeus, 30  
 Ireton, Henry: 421, 427, 445  
 Irish Brigade, 582  
 Ironsides, 80, 414  
 Isabella, Queen of Castile: 263, 265,  
   271, 278.  
 — of Angoulême: 137  
 —, wife of Edward II.: 177, 181  
   186, 195, 197  
 —, wife of Richard II.: 220, 227  
 Ismail, Khedive of Egypt: 784  
 Italy, 29, 33, 263, 265, 283, 287, 290,  
   294, 538, 550, 570, 670, 705, 771  
 Ivernians, 18, 26, 123  
  
 Jacobitism, 510, 516, 520, 523, 542, 555  
 Jacobins, 667, 671, 677  
 Jacqueline of Hainault: 239  
 Jacquerie, 206  
 Jacquetta of Luxemburg: 241, 254  
 Jamaica, 436  
 James I., K. of Scots: 229, 239  
 — IV., 275, 276, 278, 283  
 — V., 321  
 — VI.: reign in Scotland, 339, 341,  
   353; succeeds Elizabeth as—  
 — I., K. of England, etc., 368;  
   reign, 369-381, 383, 391  
 — II., K. of England etc.: before  
   accession, 454-456, 462, 464, 468,  
   469, 471, 472; reign, 364, 444, 475-  
   493, 499, 507; attempts at restora-  
   tion, 510-516, 520, 523, 530  
 — VIII., 585  
 —, Prince of Wales, 530  
 Jarl, 61, 82  
 Jarrow, 49  
 Jeffreys, George, Lord: 472, 479, 482  
 Jenkiu's Ear, 574, 575  
 Jennings, Sarah: 533, 547  
 Jerusalem, 85, 103, 132, 762



- Jervia, Sir John : 671  
 Jesuits, 350, 372, 374, 483, 494  
 Jews, 133, 168, 266  
 Joan Darc : 240  
 — of Kent : 213  
 —, sister of Edward III. : 195, 196  
 John, K. of England : before accession, 130-134 ; reign, 136-145 ; allusions, 146, 151, 153, 154, 162, 175, 207  
 —, K. of the French : 205, 206  
 — of Gaunt : see LANCASTER  
 —, Don, of Austria : 341  
 —, D. of Burgundy : 230, 235, 236  
 Jones, Michael : 427  
 Joseph, Electoral Prince : 528  
 Jubilees, Queen Victoria's : 793, 796  
 Judges : as supporters of Prerogative, 217, 374, 386, 387, 393, 481 : parliamentary attempts to secure their independence, 393, 463, 504, 529  
*Judicature Act's*, 730  
 Judith, 55, 56  
 Julius II., Pope : 283  
 Junius, 592, 622  
 Junot, Andoche, Marshal : 692  
 Junto, The : 521, 530  
 Jury, 97, 129, 135, 141, 211, 270, 472, 489  
 Justiciar, 108, 113, 119, 126, 128, 133, 152, 182  
 Justinian, Emperor : 32, 167  
 Jutes, 37, 38, 39, 55  
 Kábul, 746, 784  
 Kafir Wars, 760  
 Kandahar, 746, 784  
 Kars, 785  
 Katharine of Aragon : 273, 282, 288-296, 302, 325, 330  
 — II. of Russia, 610  
 — of Braganza : 454  
 — of France : 236  
 — Howard : 309, 314  
 — Parr : 314, 321  
 Kannitz, Wenceslas, Prince of : 603  
 Keble, John : 730  
 Kemp, John : 247  
 Kendal, Duchess of : 565  
 Kenmuir, William Gordon, Lord : 555  
 Kenneth MacAlpine, K. of the Picts and Scots : 60  
 Kent : as a kingdom, 22, 37, 38, 43, 52, 54, 58 ; as an earldom, 80, 85, 90, 224 : political restlessness, 215, 245, 250, 276, 326  
 Keppel, Augustus, Viscount : 633  
 Kerouaille, Louise de : see PORTSMOUTH  
 Kett, Robert : 320  
 Khartoum, 788, 798  
 Kildare, Gerald Fitz-Gerald, 8th E. of : 274  
 Kimberley, John Wodehouse, 1st B. of : 777, 778, 787, 795  
 King's Bench : 164, 386, 389, 479, 481, 489  
 — College, London : 729  
 — Friends, 614, 625  
 Kirke, David : 391  
 —, Percy : 479, 512.  
 Kitchen, Anthony, Bp. of Elandaff : 335  
 Kitchener, Sir Herbert, Viscount : 798, 802  
 Knighthood, 73, 101, 118, 135, 157, 172, 196, 386, 393, 400, 447  
 Knights Templars : 181  
 Knox, John : 337  
 Kossuth, Louis : 755  
 Kruger, Paul : 787, 801, 802  
 La Bourdonnais, Bertrand de : 587, 597  
*Labourers, Statutes of* : 202, 203, 214  
 Lake, Gerard, Lord : 677, 680  
 Lally, Thomas, Count : 608  
 Lamb, William : see MELBOURNE  
 Lambert, John : 440, 445  
 Lancaster, 583  
 —, House of : 188, 190, 193, 252, 253, 255, 268  
 —, John of Gaunt, D. of : 209, 210-213, 215-221, 255, 268  
 —, Thomas, E. of : 181, 182, 183, 194, 195  
*Land Act*, 779  
 Land tenure : 72, 73, 101, 167, 447, 526, 662, 779  
 Lansdowne, William Petty, 3rd M. of : 796  
 Lantranc, 95, 99, 101, 102  
 Langland, William : 214  
 Langton, Stephen : 139-141, 144, 153  
 Languages used in the British Isles : English, 38, 49, 157, 207, 222, 318 ; French, 157, 161 ; Gaelic, 19 ; Ivernian, 18 ; Latin, 29, 157, 264, 318 ; Welsh, 29, 41  
 Languedoc, 250  
 Latimer, Hugh : 308, 329  
 —, William, 4th Baron : 211  
 Laud, William : 364, 367, 388, 393-396, 398, 417, 449  
 Lauderdale, John Muirland, D. of : 450, 458, 464

Lawrence, Henry : 749, 761, 767  
 —, John : 761, 767  
 Leake, Sir John : 548  
 Leczinski, Stanislaus : 570  
 Leeds, Thomas Osborne, D. of : political career as Lord Danby (1673-1689), 465, 467, 492; as Marquess of Caermarthen (1689-1694), 504  
 Legislation : see ASSIZES, CANONS, ORDINANCES, STATUTES  
 Leicester, 28, 58, 62, 289  
 —, Robert Duffley, E. of : 339, 353  
 —, Robert de Beaumont, E. of : 119  
 —, Simon de Montfort, E. of : 154, 157-160, 162  
 Lenthal, William : 439  
 Leo X., Pope : 284, 286  
 Leofric, 83, 84  
 Leofwin, 82, 85  
 Leopold I., D. of Austria : 133  
 Leslie, David : 418, 428  
 Letters Patent : 302, 381  
 —, Papal : 95, 294  
 Levellers, The : 426  
 Leven, Alexander Leslie, E. of : 395, 414, 418  
 Lewis IV., Emperor : 199  
*Lex Regia* : 310  
 Liberalism, 704  
 Liberal Unionists, 792, 796  
 Liberty of the Press, 627  
 — of the Subject : in Person, 144, 387, 400, 402, 468, 503, 506; in Property, 143, 387, 402; in Thought, 334, 377, 402, 441, 507, 522  
*Licensing Act* : 452, 503, 522  
 Lichfield, 52  
 Light Brigade, Charge of : 763  
 Lilburne, John : 426  
 Lincoln, 40, 58, 62, 95, 112, 179, 410  
 —, John, E. of : 268, 269  
 Lindisfarne, 49  
 Lindsey, Montague Bertie, E. of : 407  
 Lisle, John, Lord : see NORTHUMBERLAND  
 Liturgy, Anglican : 318, 320, 322, 325, 334, 395, 420, 449  
 Liverpool & Manchester Railway, 716  
 —, Robert Jenkinson, E. of : 696-712  
 Livery, 252, 259, 270  
 Livingstone, David : 801  
 Llewelyn-ap-Gruffydd, 162, 163  
 — ap-Iorwerth, 162  
 Local Government, 42, 66, 97, 128, 146, 728, 738, 793, 794  
 Locke, John : 524

Lockhart, Sir William : 436  
 Lollards, 210, 216, 223, 225, 232, 329  
 Lombardy, 670  
 London : Roman, 27, 39; Old English, 43, 55, 57, 59, 62; Norman, 89, 111, 112, 126; Angevin, 133, 171, 178, 186; later Plantagenet, 215, 221, 250, 251, 258; Tudor, 276, 289, 324, 326, 357; Stuart, 397, 404, 407, 411, 415, 422, 440, 441, 456, 489, 493, 517  
 — University, 729  
 Londonderry, Robert Stewart, Viscount Castlereagh, M. of : 691, 693, 705-708  
 Longchamp, William : 133  
 Lords, House of : origins, 42, 67, 98, 127, 143, 148; becomes distinct from the House of Commons, 143, 149, 150, 173, 187, 196; constitutional relations with the Commons, 211, 215, 226, 373, 383, 399, 403-405, 465, 468, 470, 494, 529; abolished, 424, 425, 442; restored, 443; lords spiritual, 150, 306, 405, 420, 449; privilege, 127, 200, 384  
 Lorraine, 570, 626, 777  
 Lothian, 44, 64, 81, 92, 126, 169, 196  
 Louis VI., K. of the French : 109  
 — VII., 113, 115, 126  
 — VIII., 151, 152  
 — IX., 158  
 — X., 197  
 — XI., 255, 256, 257, 263  
 — XII., 283, 286  
 — XIII., K. of France : 381  
 — XIV., 362, 444, 454, 459-462, 472, 480, 483, 491, 497, 525-555  
 — XV., 555, 558  
 — XVI., 639, 667  
 — XVIII., 669, 703  
 — Philippe, 716, 752, 754  
 — Napoleon : see BUONAPARTE  
 —, son of Philip Augustus : 145, 151  
 —, son of Louis XIV. : 528  
 Louisiana, 600, 612, 645, 682  
 Lovell, Francis, Viscount : 269  
 Lowe, Robert : 770, 773, 777  
 Lowlands, 92, 176, 178, 180, 183, 413, 416, 469, 510, 555, 583, 584  
 Lucy, Richard de : 119, 128  
 Luther, Martin : 266, 286, 287  
 Lutterworth, 216  
 Luttrell, Henry Lawes : 623  
 Luxembourg, Henry de Montmorency, D. of : 517  
 Lytton, Lord : 787

- Macaulay, Thomas, Lord : 727  
 Macbeth, K. of Scots: 85  
 Macdonald, Flora : 584  
 MacDonald, Ian : 511  
 Mackintosh, Sir James : 666  
 Madras, 391, 596, 597, 639  
 Magna Carta : 143-145, 151, 152, 156, 162, 175  
 Magnum Concilium : 127, 135, 143, 148, 149, 151, 155, 156, 159, 161, 397  
 Magnus Bareleg, K. of Norwegians : 104  
 Mahdi, 788  
 Mahé, 596  
 Maine, 115, 136, 137, 244  
 Maintenance, 252, 259, 270  
 Majors-General, Cromwellian : 435  
 Malcolm II., K. of Scots : 81  
 — III., Canmore : 90, 92, 100  
 — IV., the Maiden : 116  
 Malta, 672, 674, 676, 682, 703  
 Manchester, Edward Montague, 3rd E. of : impeached when Lord Kimbolton, 404; head of the Eastern Association, 410, 414, 417  
 Manila, 611  
 Manitoba, 775  
 Mansfeld, Ernst, Count von : 380, 381  
 Mar, John Erskine, E. of : 555  
 Maráthá Wars, 639, 680, 732  
 March, Roger Mortimer, 1st E. of : 186, 195, 197  
 —, Roger, 4th E. of : 219, 221  
 —, Edmund, 5th E. of : 223, 228, 229, 234  
 Margaret Beaufort : 260, 268, 299  
 —, daughter of Henry VII. : 278, 369  
 — of Anjou : 243, 245, 248-255  
 — of Burgundy (or York) : 254, 268, 272, 273, 275, 279  
 — of France : 177  
 —, Saint : 92, 100, 106  
 — the Maid, Queen of Scots : 170  
 Maria Louisa, 693  
 — Theresa, Q. of Hungary : 568, 576, 586, 603  
 Marlborough, John Churchill, D. of : 478, 513, 515, 517, 534-549, 553  
 — Sarah Jennings, D. of : 534, 547  
 Marlowe, Christopher : 331  
 Marmont, August Louis : 695  
*Marriage Act*, 589  
 —, *Royal* : 627  
 Marshal, William, 1st E. of Pembroke : 151  
 —, William, 2nd Earl : 154  
 Marshal, Richard, 3rd Earl : 154  
 Martial Law : 386, 387, 435, 506  
 Martin V., Pope : 235, 241  
 Marvell, Andrew : 424  
 Mary I., Queen of England : before accession, 288, 297, 303, 323; sole reign, 324-327; reign with Philip, 263, 315, 328-330, 333, 337, 351  
 — II., Queen of England : before accession, 465, 471, 490-495; reign, 504-519; effects of death, 520, 521  
 — of Guise, 317, 337  
 —, Queen of Scots : youth, 312, 317; claim to English crown, 332, 336; French Queen, 337; in Scotland, 338, 339; in England, 340-355  
 — Tudor, younger daughter of Henry VII. : 283, 323  
 — of Modena : 464, 493  
 Maryland, 391, 600, 629  
 Masham, Abigail, Lady : 547  
 Mason, 772  
 Massachusetts, 391, 600, 633  
*Massachusetts Government Act*, 632  
 Masséna, André, Marshal : 694, 695  
 Massey, John : 482  
 Matilda, dau. of Henry I. : 110-115  
 —, wife of Henry I. : 106  
 —, wife of Stephen : 111, 112  
 Matthews, Thomas, 579, 580  
 Maud : see MATILDA  
 Maurice, Prince : 407  
 Mauritius, 608, 703  
 Maximilian I., Emperor : 271, 273, 283  
*Mayflower, The* : 377  
 Maynooth, 779  
 Mazarin, Julius, Cardinal : 362  
 Mediterranean Sea : in Roman times 16, 20, 21, 34; in Stuart times, 265, 426, 454; later, 537, 543, 580, 603, 672-674, 731, 732, 745, 778, 784  
 Meerut, 767  
 Mehmet Ali, 711, 731, 745  
 Melbourne, 748  
 —, William Lamb, Viscount : 715, 717, 725-731, 740-748  
 Mellitus, 43  
 Melville, Henry Dundas, Viscount : 651, 668, 686  
 Mentchikoff, Prince : 763  
 Mercenaries, 116, 145, 320  
*Merchants, Statute of* : 166  
 Mercia : a composite English kingdom, 40; struggle with Northumbria, 44-46, 50; supremacy, 51, 52; divided

- between Wessex and Danes, 54, 56, 57, 58, 61; an earldom, 79, 82, 85  
**Mesne Tenants**: 73, 97, 167  
**Methodists**, 579  
**Methuen, Paul**: 536  
**Metternich, Prince**: 705, 711, 754  
**Middlesex**: a Saxon settlement, 39, 85; later historical associations, 472.  
 See **LONDON**  
 —, **Lionel Cranfield, E. of**: 381  
**Midlothian Speeches**, 787  
**Miguel, Dom**: 741  
**Milan**, 283, 528, 580  
**Miles (Knight)**, 118  
**Militia**, 66, 96, 116, 401, 405, 452, 500, 781  
*Millenary Petition*: 372  
**Milton, John**: 458  
**Minorca**, 550, 580, 604, 605, 612, 645  
**M'Intosh**, 555  
**Minute Men**, 633  
**Mir Kásim**, 624  
*Mises*: of **Amiens**, 158; of **Leves**, 159  
**Missionaries, Christian**: (a) *To Britain*:  
 Keltic, 31, 33, 43, 46; Roman, 30, 31, 33, 46, 123, 350; Oriental, 33;  
 (b) *From Britain*: Keltic, 30, 31, 43; English, 532, 733, 744, 804  
**Mississippi**, 600, 612  
**Missolonghi**, 711  
**Mogul Empire**, 596, 767  
**Moidart**, 583  
**Moir, Lord**: see **HASTINGS**  
**Moleyns, Adam, Bp. of Chichester**: 245  
**Mompesson, Sir Giles**: 379  
**Monasteries**, 65, 285, 300, 301, 303, 305, 306, 311, 319, 325  
**Money Grants**, 192, 200, 226, 400, 502  
**Monk, George**: see **ALBEMARLE**  
**Monmouth, James, D. of**: 462, 469, 471, 472, 478, 490, 492  
**Monopolies**, 360, 365, 379, 381  
**Monroe Doctrine**, 710, 797  
 —, **Robert**: 412, 427  
**Montacute, Lord**: see **SALISBURY**  
**Montague**: see **HALIFAX, MANCHESTER, SANDWICH**  
 —, **John Neville, Lord**: 253, 255  
**Montcalm, Louis Joseph, M. of**: 605, 607  
**Montfort, John of**: 201, 208  
 —, **Simon de**: see **LEICESTER**  
**Montgomery, Richard**: 634  
**Montreal**, 607  
**Montrose, James Graham, Marquess of**: 407, 416, 418, 428  
**Moore, Sir John**: 692  
**Moots**: see **HUNDRED, SHIRE**  
**Moray, James Stuart, E. of**: 337, 341  
**More, Sir Thomas**: 290, 296, 299, 331  
**Moreau, John Victor**: 674  
**Morgan, Sir Henry**: 574  
**Morkere**, 85, 86-89, 91  
**Morley, Mrs.**: 534  
**Mornington, Lord**: see **WELLESLEY**  
**Mortimer, House of**: 185, 194, 215, 269. See **MARCH**  
*Mortmain, Statutes of*: 167, 219  
**Morton, John**: 259, 280  
**Moscow**, 698  
**Mountjoy, Charles Blount, Lord**: 358  
**Mowbray, Thomas**: see **NORFOLK**  
**Munchengratz**, 731  
**Muhammad**, 34, 103  
*Municipal Corporations Reform Act*, 728, 738  
**Munro, Hector**: 624, 639  
**Murray**: see **MORAY**  
*Mutiny Act*: 501, 506, 649  
**Mysore Wars**, 639, 679  
**Nagapatnam**, 645  
**Napier, Sir Charles**: 745, 749, 763  
 —, **Sir George**: 741  
**Naples, Kingdom of**: 283, 327, 528, 550, 570, 673, 676, 703, 705  
**Napoleon**: see **BONAPARTE**  
**Narrow Seas**: 38, 189, 199, 248, 430  
**Natal**, 744, 786, 787, 802  
**National Debt**: 518, 526, 662, 689, 706  
**Nationality**: England, 138, 145, 207; France, 191, 241; Ireland, 358, 401, 412, 485, 514; Scotland, 176; modern developments, 665, 736  
*Navigation Acts*: 430, 456, 630, 631, 709, 756  
**Navy, English**: under **Tudors**, 305, 331, 356, 357; under **Stuarts**, 383, 393, 405, 430, 456, 457, 461, 462, 505, 516; see too **CINQUE PORTS**  
**Nelson, Horatio, Viscount**: 671, 672, 675, 681, 634  
**Netherlands**: gathered together by **Valois Dukes of Burgundy**, 230, 271; pass to **Hapsburgs**, 263, 345; rise in rebellion against **Philip II.**, 345-347, 349; henceforth divided into two parts — as below; reunited, 703, 716. See also **FLANDERS**  
 —, **Spanish**: 459, 515, 550, 667, 716  
 —, **United**: political alliance with **England**, 352-357, 361, 362, 371;

- commercial rivalry, 372, 429, 430, 456, 460, 462; alliance renewed, 459, 465, 472, 478, 491, 525; in eighteenth century, 533, 550, 558, 586, 642, 654, 669
- Neutrality, The Armed: 642, 674
- Neville, Family: 211, 247, 257, 259; see MONTAGUE, SALISBURY, WARWICK
- New Amsterdam, 455; New Caledonia, 527; New England, 377, 391, 392, 402, 455, 479, 629; New Forest, 104; New Jersey, 600, 629; New Learning, 255, 264; New Model, 417, 418; New Monarchy, 188, 263; New South Wales, 759; New Testament, 308; New World, 265, 331, 346, 357; New York, 455, 600, 629, 631, 636, 638; New Zealand, 759
- Newark, 145, 269, 419
- Newcastle, William Cavendish, E. of: 410, 414
- , Thomas Pelham, 1st D. of: 565, 581, 589, 602, 605, 614, 620
- Newfoundland, 280, 550, 645
- Newman, John Henry: 730
- Newspaper Stamp Act*, 552
- Newton, Isaac: 524
- Nicholson, John: 767
- Nigel, Bp. of Ely: 112
- Niger, 797, 799
- Nineteen Propositions*: 405
- Ninian, 30
- Nithsdale, William Maxwell, Lord: 555
- Nizâm, 597, 679
- Nonconformists in England: (a) Catholic, 390, 444, 463, 484, 486-8, 641, 686, 714; (b) Protestant, 390, 444, 453, 459, 463, 470, 478, 483, 484, 486-8, 499, 507, 551, 567, 713
- Non-Intervention, 665, 705, 710
- Non-jurors, 507
- Non-Resistance, 449, 453, 465, 483, 507
- Nore, Mutiny at the: 671
- Norfolk, Ralf Guader, E. of: 96
- , Roger Bigod, E. of: 175
- , Thomas Mowbray, D. of: 218, 220
- , John Howard, 1st D. of: 260
- , Thomas Howard, 2nd D. of: as E. of Surrey, wins battle of Flodden, 277, 283
- , Thomas Howard, 3rd D. of: 290, 294, 303, 309, 314
- , Thomas Howard, 4th D. of: 341, 347, 471
- Norham, Award of: 170
- Norman Conquest: of England, 68, 73-75, 88-95, 101, 127; of Ireland, 124
- Normandy: foundation, 59, 93; marriage connections with England, 77, 82, 84; personal union with England, 89-98, 106-110, 115-137, 236-244; conquered by English kings, 104, 106, 109, 236; thrice lost, 115, 137, 244
- Norris, Sir John: 580
- North Briton*, 616
- North, Frederick, Lord: 592, 593, 621, 623, 625-632, 640, 644-648
- Northmen: general view of their activity, 31, 34, 35, Table, p. 32; in Ireland, 63, 123; in Scotland, 60; in England, see DANES
- Northumberland, Henry Percy, 2nd E. of: 221, 227, 228, 229
- , Thomas Percy, 7th E. of: 341
- , John Dudley, D. of: 314, 320-324, 339
- Northumbria: a union of Anglian settlements, 40, 43, 44; supremacy, 45, 46; divided between Danes and Scots, 48, 50, 54, 56, 57, 61, 62; earldom, 82, 84, 85, 90
- Norway: growth of united kingdom, 56; joined by personal union to England, 69, 81, 83; later relations, 86, 170, 171, 560, 703
- Norwegians: in North Atlantic, 53; in Ireland, 123; in England, 61; in Scotland, 68
- Nottingham, 56, 58, 62, 195, 405
- , Thomas Mowbray, E. of: see NORFOLK
- , Daniel Finch, E. of: 504
- Nova Scotia: 291, 391, 456, 550, 600
- Noy, William: 393
- Oates, Titus: 466, 472
- O'Brien, Smith: 753
- Obstruction in Parliament, 783
- Occasional Conformity Act*, 551, 561
- O'Connell, Daniel: 714, 725, 750
- O'Connor, 124
- , Feargus: 742, 753
- Odo, Bishop of Bayeux: 90, 99
- Offa, K. of the Mercians: 52, 53
- Oglethorpe, James: 570
- Ohio Valley, 600, 632
- Olaf Trygvasson, K. of the Norwegians: 76, 77
- Oldcastle, Sir John: 232

- Oligarchy: Baronial, 149, 156-159, 182, 217; Presbyterian, 364; Whig, 581, 590, 591, 605, 613  
*Olive Branch Petition*, 633  
 O'Neil, Hugh: 858  
 —, Owen Roe: 427  
 —, Shane: 351  
 Opdam, 456  
 Opium War, 747  
 Opposition, The: 396, 399, 403, 465-71  
 Orange Free State, 744, 760, 802  
 —, William the Silent, Prince of: 352, 361. See also WILLIAM III.  
 Ordainers, Lords: 149, 182, 217  
 Orders in Council, 689, 697  
 Ordinances: distinguished from statutes, 202, 405; Baronial, 149, 182, 185; Parliamentary, 405, 417, 425, 434, 500; Royal, 202, 203  
 Ordinary Council: 127, 213, 217, 226, 231, 238, 258; see PRIVY COUNCIL  
 Orford, Edward Russell, E. of: 504, 516, 521, 530  
 —, Robert Walpole, E. of: see WALPOLE  
 Orleans, Charles, D. of: 242  
 —, Philip, D. of: 454, 556  
 —, Louis, D. of: 230  
 Ormonde, James Butler, 1st D. of: 412, 414, 427, 451, 476  
 —, James Butler, 2nd D. of: 548, 550, 551, 555  
 Orsini's Plot, 769  
 Ostend Company, 566, 568  
 Oswald, K. of the Northumbrians: 45, 46  
 Oswini, 46  
 Oswiu, K. of the Northumbrians: 45, 46, 48  
 Othiere, 58  
 Otto I., the Great, Emperor: 35, 63  
 — IV., Emperor: 140, 142  
 Oudh, 761, 767  
 Overbury, Sir Thomas: 376  
 Oxenham, John: 349  
 Oxford: Town, 66, 141, 156, 160, 186; City, 305, 409, 415, 418, 419, 471; University, 160, 161, 210, 348, 482, 487, 780  
 —, Robert de Vere, E. of: 217  
 —, Robert Harley, 1st E. of: 524, 534, 544, 547, 548, 552, 554  
 Pacific, 64, 69, 349, 372, 805  
 Paine, Tom: 634, 666  
 Palatinate, 375, 385  
 Palestine, 103, 133, 161, 162, 672, 762  
 Palliser, Admiral Sir Hugh: 638  
 Palmerston, Henry Temple, 3rd Viscount: early career, 715, 717; foreign policy, 721, 728, 731, 745, 752, 755-753, 762; Prime Minister, 764-766, 770-772  
 Panama, 550, 574  
 Pandulf, 140, 153  
 Papacy: rise to importance, 33; early relations with England, 43, 47, 52, 68; attempts to extend its sphere of influence, 86, 103, 125; royal attempts to control its relations with Anglican clergy, 95, 107, 121, 177, 179, 204, 219; England its vassal kingdom, 140, 145, 153, 155, 207; struggle with Conciliar Movement, 188, 231, 235, 266; loses the obedience of England, 287-298, 328, 334; attacks Elizabeth, 331, 342, 350, 351. See IRELAND, NONCONFORMISTS, PENAL CODE  
 Paris, 43, 237, 241, 242, 256, 699, 702  
 Parish, 47, 97, 360, 726, 797  
 Parker, Matthew: 344, 348  
 —, Richard: 671  
 —, Samuel: 487  
 Parliament: English, 6-9, 147-150, 192, 193, 261-263, 363-368, 442-444, 498-502; Scottish, 337, 398, 450; Irish, 207, 274, 435, 514; parliamentary unions, 306, 540, 678, 805. See COMMONS, LORDS  
 Parliaments (English), known by special names: Addled, 376; Barebones, 432; Bats, 242; Cavalier, 452, 453, 457, 465; Convention (1st), 445-449, 452; Convention (2nd), 494, 495, 497, 505-508; Good, 211, 212; Great, 173; Healing, 448; Little, 431; Long (Reformation) 291-301; Long (Puritan Revolution), 398-405, 420-425, 431, 441, 500, 503; Long (Restoration), 443, 445, 452, 451, 466; Mad, 156; Merciless, 218, 220, 224; Model, 173; Montfort's, 159; Nominees, 432; Oxford, 471; Pension, 465; Reformation, 291, 294, 301; Rump, 423-425, 427, 430, 431, 439, 440, 497; Seven Years', 291-301, 307; Short, 396; Shrewsbury, 220, 224; Wonderful, 218  
 Parma, 568, 570, 588  
 —, Alexander Farnese, Prince of: 356

- Parnell, Charles Stewart: 783, 789, 793  
 Parsons, Robert: 350  
 Party-Government: early stages, 11, 366, 501, 521, 534, 544, 548; in Walpole's time, 553, 559, 571, 572, 578, 581; later, 589, 613-623, 646-649, 683, 686, 727  
*Paston Letters*, 252  
 Paterson, William: 527  
 Patrick, 30  
 "Patriot King," 571, 613  
 "Patriots," 571, 578  
 Patronage in the Scots Church, 551, 750  
 Paul I., Tzar of Russia: 674, 675  
 — III., Pope: 304, 342  
 — IV., 330  
 Paullinus, 43, 44, 45  
 —, Suetonius: 25  
 Pauperism, 330, 669, 726  
 Peasant Risings: 213, 215, 216, 319  
 Peel, Sir Robert (the younger): early offices, 708, 709, 712, 715, 717, 725; ministries, 727, 748-751  
 Peelites, 757, 758, 764  
*Peerage Bill*, 561  
 Peers: ordinary meaning, 143, 200; for special meaning, see LORDS  
 Pegu, 761  
 Pelagios, or Morgan: 30  
 Pelham, Henry: 581, 582, 584, 589  
 —, Thomas: see NEWCASTLE  
 Pembroke, John Hastings, E. of: 209  
 Penal Code: (a) England, 338, 343, 350, 359, 372, 374, 477, 500, 507, 529; (b) Ireland, 392, 485, 514, 665  
 Penda, K. of the Mercians: 44-46, 51  
 Penjeh, 603  
 Penn, Sir William: 430, 436  
 —, William: 486  
 Pennsylvania, 486, 600, 629  
 Penruddock, John: 435  
 Penry, John: 359  
*People's Charter*, 742, 753  
 Pepperell, Sir William: 587  
 Pepys, Samuel: 459  
 Perceval, Spencer: 691-696  
 Percy, Henry, Hotspur: 227, 228  
 Permanent Settlement of Bengal, 651  
*Perpetuation Bill*: 431  
 Perrers, Alice: 210  
 Persia, 766, 803  
 Perth, 583  
 Peter des Roches: 152-154  
 — I., the Great: 541  
 — the Cruel: 208, 216  
 Peterborough, Charles Mordaunt, E. of: 538  
 Peterhead, 555  
 Peter-Pence: 52, 297  
*Petition of Right*: 386, 388  
 Petitions, 387, 423, 452, 469, 489, 495  
 Petre, Edward: 483  
 Pevensey, 39, 88  
 Philadelphia, 633, 638  
 Philip, Arthur: 655  
 —, Don, D. of Parma: 570  
 — II., Augustus K. of the French: 130, 132, 134, 136-142, 158  
 — IV., the Fair: 172, 175-177, 181  
 — VI., 189, 197, 198, 201  
 — I., K. of Castile: 271, 273, 279  
 — II., K. of Spain: as K. of England, 263, 326-330; relations with Elizabeth, 332, 334, 336, 339, 345-347, 349, 352, 354-359, 361  
 — V., of Spain: 528, 531, 533, 550, 558  
 — the Good, D. of Burgundy: 238, 242  
 —, C. of Flanders: 126  
 Philippines, 612  
 Philipot, Sir John: 213  
 Philippa of Hainault: 195, 210  
 Phoenix Park, 789  
 Piacenza, 568, 570, 588  
 Picts, 4, 30, 36, 37, 40, 43, 48, 60, 68  
 Piedmont, 670  
*Piers Plowman*: 214  
 Pilgrim Fathers: 377  
 Pilgrimage of Grace: 303, 304  
 Pindaris, 732  
 Pitt, William, the Elder: see CHATHAM  
 Pitt, William, the Younger: First Ministry, 594, 649-657, 666-675, 677, 678; Second Ministry, 683-686  
 Pittsburg, 601  
 Pius IV., Pope: 334  
 — V., Pope: 342, 345, 350  
*Placemen's Bill*: 465  
 Plantagenets: 146  
 Plots: Army, 399; Assassination, 523; Babington, 355; Bye, 369; Cato Street, 707; Gunpowder, 373; Incident, 401; Main, 369; Popish, 444, 466; Ridolfi, 347; Rye-House, 472, 478; Southampton, 234; Windsor, 223; Throgmorton, 352  
 Pluralities, 291  
 Plymouth: Old, 419; New, 377, 391  
 Poitou, 115, 126, 138

- Poland, 626, 667, 690, 703, 705, 716, 721  
 Poje, Reguiald : 304, 326-330  
 —, de la : see **SUFFOLK, LINCOLN**  
 Polish Election War of : 570, 571  
 Poll-tax, 213, 215  
 Pondicherry, 596, 608  
 Pontefract, 185, 224, 251  
 Ponthieu, 201, 206  
*Poor Law, First General* : 360  
 Porteous Riots, 577  
 Portland, Richard Weston, E. of : 333  
 —, William Bentinck, D. of : 530  
 —, William Bentinck, 3rd D. of : 648, 668, 686  
 Portobello, 550, 566, 575  
 Portsmouth : 199, 245, 388  
 —, Louise de la Kerouaille, D. of : 464, 474  
 Portugal, 265, 346, 352, 357, 362, 454, 517, 536, 691-695, 705, 710, 731, 797-801  
 Post Office, 741  
 Power Loom, 662  
*Poynings' Law* : 274, 311, 640  
 Poynings, Sir Edward : 274, 275  
*Præmunire, Statutes of* : 204, 219, 292, 343, 481  
 Pragmatic Army, 579  
*Pragmatic Sanction*, 566, 568  
 Presbyterianism : in England, 318, 364, 413, 417, 420 ; in Scotland, 395, 413, 420, 450, 510  
 Press, Printing : invention, 257, 264 ; Government restrictions, 344, 452, 503, 522  
 Preston, 583  
 Pretender : see **STUART**  
 "Pride's Purge" : 423, 425, 440, 445  
 Prime Minister : 458, 521, 672  
 Primer Seisin : 101  
 Prince Edward's Island, 575  
 Prises, 175  
 Privilege of Parliament : 226, 339, 344, 374, 379, 389  
 Privy Council : 231, 242, 247, 258, 270, 274, 285, 303, 309, 333, 373, 392, 400, 467, 475, 529  
*Property Qualification Act*, 552  
 Prophecysing, 348, 372  
 Protector : title held by York, 248 ; Gloucester, 258 ; Somerset, 316-321 ; Oliver Cromwell, 433-438 ; Richard Cromwell, 439  
 Protestant Ascendancy, 590, 640  
*Protestant Interests Act*, 561  
 Protestant Succession, 558-560, 590  
 Protestantism, 296, 308, 317, 322, 342, 348, 361-366  
*Protestation, The* : 379  
 Protesters, 422  
 Providence, 391  
*Provisions : of Oxford*, 149, 156, 157, 159 ; *of Westminster*, 157  
*Provisors, Statutes of* : 204, 219  
 Prussia : in the eighteenth century, 566, 576, 586, 590, 603-612, 621, 626, 654, 667, 669 ; in the nineteenth century, 685, 688, 690, 698-703, 705, 745, 773, 777  
 Prynne, William : 394, 398  
*Public Advertizer*, 622  
 Pulteney, William : see **BATH**  
 Punjab, 749, 761, 767  
 Puritans, 335, 344, 364, 367, 372, 377, 391, 394, 403, 406, 427, 439, 443  
 Pusey, Edward Bouverie : 730  
 Pym, John : 383, 387, 399, 403, 404, 413, 445  
 Pytheas, 20  
  
*Quadruple Alliance*, 560, 705, 731, 745  
 Quakers, 589  
*"Quamdiu se bene gesserint"* : 529  
 Quebec, 391, 606, 607, 631, 657, 743, 775  
*Quebec Act*, 632  
 Queen Anne's Bounty, 551  
 — Regnant : 324-360, 504-519  
*Quia Emptores* : 167, 168  
  
 Radicals, 623, 704  
 Rædwald, K. of the East English : 40, 44  
 Raffles, Sir Stamford : 747  
 Raglan, Fitzroy Somerset, Lord : 763  
 Railways, 662, 716  
 Raleigh, Sir Walter : 351, 357, 359, 371, 377, 378  
 Ralf Flambard, 101  
 Ravenspur, 221, 255  
 Ré, or Rhé, Isle of : 385  
*Reciprocity of Duties Act*, 709  
*Recognition of the Headship* : 292  
 Recusants, 359, 372, 385, 463, 464, 507  
 "Redress before Supply" : 226, 384  
*Reflections on the French Revolution*, 666  
*Reform Act, First* : 187  
 — *Bills*, 652, 718-720, 770, 773, 774, 790  
 Reformation : Hildebrandine, 95 ; Protestant, 266, 296, 322, 337 ; Tridentine, 342, 350



- Regency Act*, 553  
 — *Bill*, 618, 656  
*Regicides*, 445, 509  
*Reginald of Canterbury*: 139  
*Regium Donum*, 779  
*Regnans in Excelsis*: 342, 343, 315  
*Regulating Act*, 628, 629  
*Reign of Terror*, 668  
*Relief*, 101, 105, 143  
*Remittal, Bill of*: 313  
*Remonstrance, Grand*: 403  
*Renascence*, 264, 265, 281, 331, 361  
*Renunciatory Act*, 617  
*Repeal Agitation*, 725, 750  
*Representation*, 149, 150, 159, 163, 165, 185, 433, 473, 540, 652, 678, 717-720  
*Republics*: Roman, 22; Parliamentary, 368, 425, 429, 431; Presidential, 368  
*Rescissory Act*: 450  
*Responsibility of Ministers to Parliament*: mediaeval methods, 200, 211, 213, 226; seventeenth-century methods, 381, 383, 400, 402, 529  
*Restoration, The*: 440-454, 498-501  
*Resumption Act*: 526  
*Retainers*, 252  
*Revolution*: American, 590, 593, 594, 629-637, 641; French, 591, 600, 661, 667-710; Industrial, 13, 594, 662-665; Protestant, 10, 11, 362, 365, 467, 461, 496, 497, 503; Puritan, 9, 365, 367  
*Rhine, Confederation of the*: 688  
*Rhode Island*: 391, 600  
*Rhodes, Cecil*: 793, 800, 801  
*Rich, Edmund*: 154  
*Richard I., K. of the English*: 130-135  
 — II., K. of England: reign, 212-222; allusions, 224, 229, 252, 268, 374  
 — III.: 255, 258-260, 268, 280  
 —, son of Edward IV.: 272  
 —, brother of Henry III.: 158  
*Richelieu*, 362, 385  
*Ridley, Nicolas*: 329  
*Right of Search*, 642, 675, 697  
*Rights: Bill of*, 499, 529; *Declaration of*, 495; *Petition of*, 386, 387, 388  
 — *of Man*, 666  
*Rights of the People*, 616, 623  
*Rinuccini*, 427  
*Riot Act*, 554  
*Ripon, Frederick Robinson, 1st E. of*: 708, 725  
 —, *George Robinson, 2nd E. of*: 787  
*Ripperda, John, Baron*: 566  
*Robert I., the Bruce, K. of Scots*: 180-184, 185, 196  
 — II., first Stuart K. of Scots: 229  
 — III., K. of Scots: 229  
 — of Bellesme: 106  
 — of Gloucester: 112  
 — of Jumièges: 84  
 — of Normandy: 96, 99, 104, 110, 114  
*Roberts, Sir Frederick, Viscount*: 784, 802  
*Robespierre, Maximilian*: 668  
*Robin of Redesdale, rising of*: 254  
*Robinson, John*: 377  
 —, *Sir Thomas*: 602  
*Rochefort*, 605, 702  
*Rochester, Lawrence Hyde, E. of*: 474, 476, 548  
*Rockingham, Charles Wentworth, M. of*: 620, 640, 646, 647  
*Rodney, George Brydges, Baron*: 644  
*Roger le Poer*: 108, 112  
 — of Shrewsbury: 99  
*Rohillas*, 651  
*Rolf or Rollo*: 59, 93  
*Roman Catholics*: see PAPACY, NON-CONFORMISTS  
*Rooke, Sir George*: 517, 537  
*Root and Branch Bill*: 402  
*Rose, Hugh James*: 730  
*Roses, Wars of*: 193, 244, 252, 278  
*Rotten Boroughs*, 652, 708, 720  
*Roundheads*, 403, 470  
*Rousseau, Jean Jacques*: 659  
*Rowan, Hamilton*: 677  
*Royal Marriage Act*, 627  
*Royalists*, 406-429, 441, 446-451  
*Rumbold, Horace*: 478  
*Rupert, Prince*: 407, 410, 414, 422, 426, 429, 456  
*Rupertsland*, 550  
*Russell, John, Earl*: early career, 708, 718, 728, 758, 764, 770; Ministry, 752-756, 759  
 —, *William, Lord*: 465, 472  
 —: see BEDFORD, ORFORD  
*Russia*: in the eighteenth century, 541, 576, 587, 603, 604, 610, 626, 642, 654, 673, 674; in the nineteenth century, 675, 685, 690, 695, 698-705, 711, 713, 716, 721, 731, 745, 762-765, 777, 785, 804, 805  
*Rutland, Edward, E. of*: 224  
*Ruyter, Michael Hadrian*: 430, 456, 462  
*Sac and Soc*: 74  
*Sacheverell, Dr. Henry*: 548, 551

- St. Albans, 22, 30, 141  
 —, Francis Bacon, Viscount: 376, 379  
 — Bartholomew's Day: 348  
 — Brice's Day: 77  
 — Calixtus' Day: 88  
 — Crispin's Day: 234  
 — George, Chevalier de: 542  
 — Helena, 465, 702  
 — John, Henry: see BOLINGBROKE  
 —, Knights of: 672, 676  
 — Lawrence, 587, 600, 634  
 — Ruth, 514  
 Saladin, 132  
 Salic Law: 197, 731, 740  
 Salisbury, 50, 97, 98, 259, 435  
 —, John Montacute, E. of: 221, 224  
 —, Thomas Montacute, E. of: 239, 240  
 —, Richard Neville, E. of: 217-251  
 —, Robert Cecil, E. of: 359, 368, 371, 373, 374, 375  
 —, William Longsword, E. of: 141, 142  
 —, Margaret Pole, C. of: 304  
 Salsette, 639  
 Sancroft, William: 489, 507  
 Sandwich, Edward Montague, 1st E. of: 456, 462  
 —, John Montague, 4th E. of: 618  
 Sandys, Edwin: 578  
 Sanguhar Declaration: 484  
 Saracens, 31, 34, 103  
 Sardinia, 543, 550, 560, 588, 764, 771  
 Sarsfield, Patrick: 513, 514  
 Satî, 733  
 Saunders, Sir Charles: 598, 607  
 Savage, Sir Arnold: 226  
 Savile: see HALIFAX  
 Sawtre, William: 225  
 Saxe, Marshal: 582  
 Saxon Shore: 27, 38, 39  
 Saxons, 32, 38, 39  
 Saxony, 603, 604, 703  
 Schism Act, 551, 561  
 Schleswig-Holstein, 771  
 Schmalkaldic War: 317, 327, 362  
 Scone, 171, 180, 196, 428  
 Scotland: growth of an Anglo-Pict-Scottish kingdom, 4, 40, 60, 68, 81; feudal relations with England, 62-64, 81, 90-92, 111, 116, 126, 132, 169, 170; War of Independence, 171-184; personal union with England, 278-369; under Stuarts, 373, 396-398, 417-422, 428, 450, 469, 484, 510; in eighteenth century, 539, 540, 551, 555, 583, 584, 641  
 Scottish Patronage Act, 551, 750  
 Scroggs, Sir William: 472  
 Scrooby, 377  
 Scrope, Richard: 229  
 —, Thomas, Lord: 234  
 Scutage, 117, 118, 143  
 Sea Powers: 362, 528  
 Secrecy of Debate, 627  
 Secretariate, 504, 559, 584, 616, 668, 759  
 Security, Act of: 539  
 Self-denying Ordinance, 417  
 Senegal, 612, 645  
 Separatists, 359  
 Septennial Act, 556, 561  
 Settlement, Act of: 529, 530, 539, 557  
 Seven Bishops, The: 489, 490, 504, 507  
 — Men of Moidart, 583  
 — Years' War, 588, 591, 595-612, 631, 637, 638, 642  
 Seymour: see HERTFORD, SOMERSET  
 —, Jane: 309, 316  
 —, Thomas, of Sudeley: 321  
 Shaftesbury, Anthony Ashley Cooper, E. of: 444, 455, 458, 459, 464, 465, 468, 469, 471, 472  
 —, Evelyn Ashley, Lord: 724  
 Shâh Shûja, 746  
 Shakspeare, William: 15, 22, 255, 331  
 Sharpe, James: 450, 469  
 Shelburne, William Petty, E. of: 646, 647  
 Sheppey, 55  
 Sheridan, Richard Brinsley: 651  
 Sheriff, 66, 94, 108, 135, 141, 150, 159, 163, 384  
 Ship-money, 365, 393, 398, 400  
 Shippen, William: 571  
 Shir Ali, 784  
 Shire, 66, 128, 141, 148, 149, 163  
 Shiremoot, 66, 74, 211  
 Shore, Sir John: 679  
 Shrewsbury, 52, 59, 94, 220  
 —, John Talbot, E. of: 246  
 —, Charles Talbot, D. of: 504  
 Sicily, kingdom: 132, 155, 156, 528, 560, 570  
 Sidmouth, Henry Addington, Viscount: 676, 682, 683, 686, 696, 706, 708  
 Sidney, Algernon: 472  
 —, Philip: 331, 353  
 Sieges: Acre, 132; Alexandria, 687; Alnwick, 100, 126; Alost, 109; Anderida, 39; Arcot, 598; Ath-

- lone, 514; Badajos, 695; Baltimore, 697; Barcelona, 538; Boston, 633, 634; Boulogne, 312; Buenos Aires, 687; Calais, 201, 249, 330; Canton, 766; Carthage, 575; Cawnpore, 767; Chaluz, 134; Cherbourg, 244; Ciudad Rodrigo, 695; Cirencester, 224; Colchester, 22, 422; Constantinople, 687; Copenhagen, 691; Delhi, 767; Drogheda, 427; Dunkirk, 436; Edinburgh Castle, 341; Enniskillen, 512; Flushing, 693; Fort Duquesne, 606; Fort Frontenac, 606; Fort St. David, 608; Fort William Henry, 606; Gerberoi, 96; Gibraltar, 537, 566, 638, 644; Gloucester, 410; Gwalior, 767; Harfeur, 234; Herat, 766; Hull, 405, 410; Khartoum, 788; Kimberley, 802; Kinsale, 358; Ladysmith, 802; La Rochelle, 385, 388; Leith, 337; Lille, 542; Limerick, 513, 514; Londonderry, 512; Lostwithiel, 415; Louisburg, 587, 606; Lucknow, 767; Madras, 587, 597, 608; Mafeking, 802; Magdala, 776; Mahé, 639; Maidstone, 422; Mirabeau, 137; Mons, 516; Monte Video, 687; Montreal, 634; Namur, 516, 523; New Orleans, 697; Odessa, 763; Orleans, 240; Oswego, 605; Peking, 804; Pembroke, 422; Philadelphia, 636; Plymouth, 410; Pondicherry, 608, 639; Porto-Bello, 566, 575; Preston, 555; Quebec, 377, 404; Rochefort, 605; Rouen, 236; St. Andrews, 317; Saratoga, 593, 636; Savannah, 638; Sebastopol, 763, 764; Seringapatam, 679; Smerwick, 351; Terouenne, 283; Torres Vedras, 694; Toulon, 667; Trichinopoly, 598; Ulm, 685; Washington, 697; Waterford, 275; Wexford, 427; Yorktown, 593, 643
- Sigismund, Emperor: 235  
Sikh Wars, 749, 761  
Silesia, 576, 603  
Simmel, Lambert: 269, 274  
Simon de Montfort: see LEICESTER  
— of Sudbury: 215  
Simony, 101  
Sindh, 749  
Sindhia, 639, 680  
Singapore, 747  
Siráj-ud-daulá, 599
- Siward, the Stout, E. of Northumbria: 84, 85, 96  
*Six Acts*, 706  
Sixtus V., Pope: 342  
Slavery, 346, 550, 655, 686, 722, 744  
Slidell, 772  
Smith, Sir Harry: 749, 760  
—, Sir Sydney: 672  
*Solemn League and Covenant*: 411, 413, 420, 449, 453  
Somers, John, Lord: 489, 521, 524, 530, 539, 544, 553  
Somerset, Edmund Beaufort, D. of: 244-248  
—, Edward Seymour, D. of: 314, 316-319, 321, 322  
—, Robert Carr, D. of: 376  
Sophia of Hanover: 529  
Sout, Nicholas: 694, 695, 699  
South African Republic, 760, 786, 787, 800-802  
— Sea Bubble, 562, 563, 574  
— Sea Company, 562  
Southampton, 199, 234, 277  
Spain: early English dealings with Spanish kingdoms, 33, 208, 209, 216, 219; union of Castile and Aragon, 263; Anglo-Spanish relations under Henry VII., 278; under Henry VIII., 282, 283; under Mary, 329, 330; under Elizabeth, 332, 346, 348, 361; under James I., 371, 373; under Charles I., 382-386; during the Commonwealth, 436; under Charles II., 454, 464; the Spanish Succession Question, 526-550; under Elizabeth Farnese, 558, 560, 566, 568, 570, 574-588; in the latter half of the eighteenth century, 609-612, 621, 626, 637-645, 654, 667-671; in the nineteenth century, 682-684, 687, 692-695, 703, 705, 710, 736, 752, 805  
Spanish Marriages, 752  
Speaker, The: 226, 290, 389  
Spenser, Edmund: 331, 351  
Spice Islands: 370, 429, 532  
Spithead, Mutiny at: 671  
Stafford, Thomas Howard, Viscount: 471  
Stahremberg, 546  
*Stamp Act*, 617, 620, 631  
Stanhope, Sir James, E.: 543, 546, 553, 559, 561, 563  
Stanley: see DERRY  
—, Sir H. M.: 79.

- Stanley, Sir William: 260, 273  
 Star Chamber: 270, 285, 344, 393, 394, 398, 400, 443  
 Statute-Law: distinguished from Ordinances, 202, 45; made paramount over Canon Law, 193; not to be set aside without parliamentary assent, 464, 495  
 Statutes, English, known by place-names: Acton Burnell, 166; Rhuddlan (Wales), 163; Westminster, I, 161; Westminster, II, 167; Winchester, 166, 168; York, 119, 185  
 —, Irish: Drogheda, 214; Kilkenny, 207, 274; *Settlement and Expatriation*, 451, 512; *Supremacy*, 311  
 Stayner, Sir Richard: 436  
 Steam Engine, 662  
 Stephen, K. of the English: 111-114, 116, 119, 132, 152, 160  
 Stigand, 84, 95  
 Stop of the Exchequer: 461  
 Strafford, Thomas Wentworth, E. of: 383, 384, 387, 392-394, 398-400, 401, 417, 437  
 Stratford, John: 200  
 Strathelyde, 41, 48, 60, 62, 63, 100, 169  
 Straw, Jack: 215  
 Strickland, 314  
 Strode, Wilham: 389, 401  
 Strongbow, 124  
 Stuart, Arabella: 369  
 —, Charles Edward: 583, 584  
 —, House of: acquires Scottish throne, 229; acquires English throne, 369; expelled, 494, 512  
 —, James Francis Edward: 490, 493, 520, 530, 512, 555, 583-585  
 —, Period: general survey, 361-366; First Struggle, 9, 367, 368; Second Struggle, 10, 412-414  
 Stubbs, Bp., quote 1: 129, 144, 173  
*Submission of the Clergy*: 293, 297  
 Subsidiary Treaties, 679  
*Succession Acts* (English): in fifteenth century, 226, 267; under Henry VIII.—First, 299, Second, 302, Third, 311; Elizabethan, 343, 355; under Stuarts, 369, 495, 529  
 Succession, Royal, in England: originally elective, 78, 80, 83, 86, 89, 105, 111, 145, 186; tends to become hereditary, 113, 131, 151, 161, 212, 222; regulated by *Parliament*, 192, 250, 495, 529, 540  
 —, Wars: Austrian, 575, 576, 591, 597; British, 201, 208; French, 189, 190, 197, 233-241; English Protestant, 497, 510-517, 525, 528, 569; Scottish, 168, 171, 196; Spanish, 528, 534-550  
 Sudan, 788, 798  
 Suez Canal, 778, 784  
 Suffolk, House of: 339, 369  
 —, Charles Brandon, D. of: 283  
 —, Edmund de la Pole, D. of: 288  
 —, Michael de la Pole, D. of: 217  
 —, William de la Pole, D. of: 243, 244, 245  
 Suffren, Pierre André, Baillie de: 639, 644  
 Sunderland, Charles Spencer, 3rd E. of: 554, 559-563  
 —, Robert Spencer, 1st E. of: 474, 476, 483, 489, 521  
*Supremacy Acts* (English): First, 298, 328, 333; Second, 333, 334, 344  
 Supremacy, Oath of: 333, 507  
 —, Royal (in England): mediæval, 102, 167, 124, 204, 219; Tudor development, 293, 298, 302, 305, 328, 344; under Stuarts, 388, 391, 464, 507  
*Supremacy-Treasons Act*: 293, 299  
 Supreme Head of the Church: 232, 248, 334  
 Sursum, 15  
 Surrey, John Warrane, E. of: 171, 176  
 —, Henry Howard, E. of: 314, 331.  
*See too NORFOLK*  
 Suspending Power: 481, 489, 495, 502  
 Sussex, 32, 39, 51, 58, 80  
 —, Thomas Radclyffe, 3rd E. of: 341  
 Suzerainty, 92, 163, 171, 193, 787, 800  
 Swartz, Martin: 269  
 Sweden, 136, 449, 511, 537, 549, 576, 642, 654, 680, 692, 703  
 Swegu, K. of the Danes and English: 78  
 —, K. of the Danes: 91  
 —, son of Godwin, 81, 85  
 Swift, Jonathan: 564  
 Switzerland, 673, 682, 752  
 Syria, 672, 673, 731, 745  
 Tacitus, 26, 42, 72  
 Talents, Ministry of All the: 686, 687  
 Tallage, 133, 174, 175  
 Tallard, 537  
 Talleyrand, Charles Maurice, de: 700  
 Talma-sh, Thomas: 517, 617  
*Tamworth Manifesto*, 727  
 Tangier, 454, 479

Taxation : on land, 77, 97, 101, 113, 446; on personal property, 129, 213, 386, 518; in direct, 192, 207, 261, 477  
 Telegraphs, 711, 776  
 Temp. e. George (Grenville, Earl) : 618  
 —, Richard Grenville, Earl : 619  
 —, Sir William : 179, 467, 468  
 Tenants-in-Chief, 73, 95, 101, 117, 133, 447  
 Tertullian, 20  
*Test Act*, 164, 168, 180, 482, 561, 567  
 Thagi, 733  
 Thanet, 20, 36, 75  
 Thegn, 66, 72, 118  
 Theobald, Abp. : 113, 119  
 Theodere, Abp. : 47, 52  
 Theows, 42, 214  
 Thiers, Adolphe : 745  
 Thirt, Years War : 362, 382, 395, 407, 411  
 Thomas of Canterbury : 119-122, 126  
 — of Woodstock : see GLOUCESTER  
*Thoughts on the Cause of the Present Discontents*, 622  
 Threngmorton, Francis : 352  
 Thurlow, Edward, Baron : 618  
 Thurstan, Abp. of York : 111  
 Tiptoft : see WORCESTER  
 Tipu Sultan, 679  
 Tithes, 432  
 Tobago, 615  
*Toleration Act* : 499, 507  
 Toleration, Religious : 364, 380, 391, 459, 470, 478, 500, 507, 561, 611, 713, 714  
 Tone, Theobald Wolfe : 677  
 Torbay, 492  
 Tories, 469, 470, 473, 477, 494, 508, 509, 520, 521, 526, 529, 531, 571, 708  
 Torres Vedras, 694  
 Torrington, Arthur Herbert, Lord : 504, 513, 515  
 Tostig, 85, 86, 87  
 Touraine, 115, 136, 137  
 Tourville, 513, 516, 517  
 Tower of London, The : 253, 255, 257, 259, 268, 277, 377, 389, 467  
 Townshend, Charles, 2nd Viscount : 553, 559, 563  
 —, Charles : 621, 631  
 Townships, 42, 66, 97, 141, 172  
 Tractarian Movement, 730  
 Trades Unions, 709  
*Transportation Act*, 632  
 Transubstantiation, 95, 307, 464

Transvaal : see SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC

*Treason, Statute of* : 293, 399

*Treason-Trials Act* : 533

Treasurer, 182, 270, 599

Treaties known by place-names :  
 Aachen, or Aix-la-Chapelle, 362, 159, 588, 589, 597; Adrianople, 713; Alkmaar, 673; Allabad, 624, 658; Alney, 80; Amboise, 255; Amiens, 676, 681, 682; Antwerp, 371; Aug-burg, 491; Bartenstein, 699; Basel, 669; Berlin, 576, 785; Berwick, 337, 395; Blomfontein, 760; Breda, 456; Breslau, 576; Briegny, 190, 208, 208; Brigham, 170; Bruges, 209; Cambay, 283; Campo-Formio, 670; Cateau-Cambrésis, 332, 337; Chartres, 177; Cintra, 692; Conway, 162; Dover, 460, 161, 161; Esplanin, 200; Estaples, 271, 272; Falaise, 126; Gandamak, 784; Ghent, 697; Hanover, 566, 568; Hubersburg, 612; Kilkenny, 112, 427; Kilmahnam, 789; Klosterseven, 606; Kutaya, 731; Kutluk-Kamardji, 762; Lambeth, 151; Leith, 338; Limerick, 514; London, 371, 711, 721, 787, 800; Lunville, 675, 682; Madrid, 290; Medina del Campo, 278; Nan-King, 747; Newport, 423; Northampton, 195; Nymwegen, 362, 465; Oxford, 409; Paris, 612, 615, 615, 658, 699, 701, 765, 777; Peckigny, 256, 257; Pressburg, 685; Pretoria, 787; Pyrenees, 362, 436; Ripon, 397; Ryswick, 525; St. Germain-en-Laye, 391; Sand River, 760; San Stefano, 785; Seville, 568; Susa, 390; Tientsin, 766; Tilsit, 690, 691, 698; Tours, 243, 214; Troyes, 190, 236, 231, 250; Unkiar-Skelessi, 731; Utrecht, 570, 558, 560, 561, 574, 575; Usbridge, 417; Versailles, 603, 604, 645, 647, 658; Vervins, 357; Vienna, 566, 568, 570; Wallingford, 113, 116; Washington, 777; Westmore, 57; Westfalia, 362, 429, 647; Westminster, 430, 603, 694; Worms, 580; Yandabu, 732

Treaties known by special names :  
 Ashburton, 719; Assiento, 550, 562, 571, 580; Broken, 614; Cession, 411, 412; Holy League, 283;

- Methuen, 526; Partition, First, 528, 530; Partition, Second, 528, 530; Shameful, 195; Solemn League and Covenant, 491, 413, 421, 419; Triple Alliance, 440, 460, 558, 651, 804  
 Trial by Jury: 97, 129, 143, 270  
*Triennial Acts: First*, 409; *Second*, 452, 473; *Third*, 519, 556  
 Tricors, 425  
 Trinitarians, 364, 507  
*Tripartite Convention*: 229  
 Tromp, Martin van: 430  
 Tudor, Period: 8, 191, 262, 357, 360  
 —, Owen: 251  
*Tumultuous Petitioning, Act against*: 452  
 Tunnage and Poundage: 220, 265, 374, 383, 388  
 Turks: Seljuks, 31, 103; Ottomans, 31, 221, 232, 261, 266, 690, 711, 803  
 Tuscany, 570  
 Tyler, Wat: 215, 276  
 Tyndale, William: 308, 331  
 Tyrconnel, Richard Talbot, E. of: 483, 485  
 Ulster, 184, 351, 358, 377, 392, 393, 401, 412, 427  
 Undertakers, 376  
*Uniformity, Acts of: First*, 318; *Second*, 322; *Third*, 333, 364; *Fourth*, 419, 453, 482  
*Union, Acts of*: 540, 678, 805  
 Union: Anglo-Scottish, 11, 540; Anglo-Welsh, 306, 310; Brito-Irish, 14, 678; Anglo-Spanish, 328-330; Personal, 361, 369, 370, 374, 557  
 Unionists, 736  
 Unitarians, 507  
 United Irishmen, 677  
 — Provinces: see NETHERLANDS  
 — States, 643, 645, 647, 697, 772  
 Universities, 135, 160, 294, 308, 391, 482, 729, 730, 780, 782  
 Urban II, Pope: 102, 103  
 Utilitarians, 664  
*Vagrancy Act*: 319  
 Valentin, 27  
 Valentino, Benjamin: 389  
 Valois, 230, 271, 332  
 Vancouver Island, 654, 775  
 Van Diemen's Land, 759  
 Vane, Sir Harry: 413, 430, 431, 445  
 Varna, 763  
 Venables, Robert: 436  
 Venice, 265, 283, 670, 676  
 Verden, 557  
 Vere, Robert de: see OXFORD  
 Vergennes, Charles Gravier, Comte de: 637  
 Vernon, Edward: 575  
 Viceroy of India, 768  
 Victoria: the Queen, 740-805; Colony, 759  
 Vikings, 53, 58, 316  
 Vilna, 73, 117, 133, 214, 215  
 Villars, 545  
 Villeneuve, Peter: 684  
 Villeroy, 538  
 Villiers, Charles: 742  
 —: see BUCKINGHAM  
*Indicia Galliae*, 666  
 Virginia, 357, 377, 455, 600  
 Volunteers, 610, 769, 781, 802  
 Vortigern, 36  
 Wade, George: 583  
 Wakefield, Edward Gibbon: 759  
 Walcheren, 693  
 Wales: before the Norman Conquest, 41, 50, 85; after the Norman Conquest, 91, 100, 116, 139, 159; Conquest by Edward I., 162, 164, 169, 181, 186; in the fifteenth century, 220, 227-229, 260; represented in English Parliament, 184, 306, 361  
 Walker, Obadiah: 482  
 Wallace, Sir William: 176-180, 183  
 Wallachia, 690, 765  
 Waller, Edmund: 410  
 —, Sir William: 407, 415, 417  
 Walpole, Horace: 607  
 —, Sir Robert: 544, 561-578, 617, 625  
 Walsingham, Francis: 333  
 Walter, Hubert: 135, 136, 139  
 — of Coutances: 133  
 — of Merton: 161  
 Waltheof, 96  
 Walworth, Sir William: 213  
 Warbeck, Perkin: 272-275, 277-279  
 Wardship: 101, 105, 113  
 Warham, William: 296  
 Warwick, Guy Beauchamp, E. of: 182  
 —, Richard Beauchamp, E. of: 242  
 —, Thomas Beauchamp, E. of: 218, 220  
 —, Richard Neville, E. of: 248-251, 253-255, 257, 259  
 —, Edward, E. of: 268, 269, 278  
 Washington, George: 601, 634, 636, 643

- Watt, James : 662  
 Wellesley, Arthur : see WELLINGTON  
 —, Richard, Marquess : 679, 680, 694, 696  
 Wellington, Arthur Wellesley, D. of :  
   as warrior, 680, 692, 694-699, 701 ;  
   as politician, 705, 712-717, 727, 756  
 Wentworth, Thomas : see STRAFFORD  
 Wesley, Charles : 573  
 —, John : 570, 573  
 Wessex, 45, 50, 52, 51, 55, 56, 58, 61,  
   63, 77, 79, 80, 82, 85  
 Western Australia, 759  
 Westfalia, 690  
 West Indies : 265, 346, 370, 426, 479  
   — Point, 613  
 Westminster, 89, 98, 105, 116, 171,  
   186, 220, 241, 257, 270, 280, 398, 420,  
   445, 492  
 Westmorland, Charles Neville, E. of :  
   341  
 Weston, Richard : see PORTLAND  
 Wharton, Sir Thomas, D. of : 521,  
   514  
 Whigs, 444, 469-473, 478, 494, 521,  
   529, 544, 553, 571, 613, 668, 717  
 Whitby, 46, 47, 49  
 Whitefield, George : 573  
 Whitelocke, Henry : 687  
 Wilberforce, William : 655  
 Wilfred, 46  
 Wilkes, John : 592, 616, 617, 623, 627  
 William I., K. of the English : before  
   accession, 69, 84, 86-88 ; conquest of  
   England, 70, 89 ; reign, 90-98 ; allu-  
   sions, 107, 115, 120, 146, 149, 293, 298  
 — II., K. of the English : 99-104,  
   105, 162  
 — III., K. of England, etc. : rela-  
   tions with Charles II., 456, 462,  
   471 ; relations with James II., 465,  
   483, 487, 490-495 ; reign with Mary,  
   504-519 ; sole reign, 520-531  
 — IV., K. of Great Britain : 716-733  
 —, son of Henry I. : 109, 110  
 William Clito : 109  
 — the Lion, K. of Scots : 126, 132,  
   170  
 — the Silent, Prince of Orange :  
   352, 353, 361  
 Williams, Roger : 399  
 Wilmington, Sir Spencer Compton,  
   Lord : 567, 578, 581  
 Wimbledon, Sir Edward Cecil, Vis-  
   count : 883  
 Winchelsey, Robert of : 174, 175  
 Winchester, 56, 89, 98, 105, 134, 141,  
   154, 309, 325  
 Witenagemot, 42, 67, 77, 78, 80, 89,  
   98, 127  
 Witt, John de : 430, 456  
 Wolfe, James : 607  
 Wolseley, Sir Garnet, Viscount : 773,  
   786, 788  
 Wolsey, Thomas : 284-290, 292, 296,  
   300, 310, 481  
 Wood's Half-pence, 565  
 Woodvilles, The : 254, 258  
 Worcester, 308, 329, 409  
 —, John Tiptoft, E. of : 255  
 Wren, Sir Christopher : 456  
 Wulfhere, K. of the Mercians : 46  
 Wyatt, Sir Thomas : 326, 331  
 Wyclif, John : 210-216, 232  
 Wykeham, William of : 210, 213  
 Wyndham, Sir William : 571  
 Yákuḅ Khán, 784  
 Year of Anarchy, The : 368, 440, 441  
 Yeomanry, 280, 406, 407, 781  
 York, 26, 27, 43, 56, 87, 91, 165, 165,  
   303, 340, 397, 405, 414  
 —, Edmund, D. of : 213, 221  
 —, Richard Plantagenet, D. of : 212  
   244-251  
 —, Frederick, D. of : 667, 673  
 Zambesi River, 800  
 Zanzibar, 798  
 Zulu War, 786







